Printing System(2)

Print Controller

UG-1

PostScript3 Option

IB-1

Network Interface Card Option

User's Manual

Thank you very much for purchasing the Print Controller.

This User's Manual includes instructions for printing, handling the machine correctly, and safety precautions. Please read this manual before performing any printing operations or using the equipment in any way.

In order to maintain satisfactory printing performance, Please read this manual before printing or using the equipment in any way.

COPYRIGHT:

© 2002 by Kyoceramita Corporation

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT:

Microsoft, MS and MS-DOS are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc. in the United States.

Windows™ is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

HP and PCL are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Agfa Microtype font is a registered trademark of Agfa Corporation.

PEERLESS is a registered trademark of PEERLESS SYSTEMS CORPORATION.

Apple, Macintosh and Mac are registered trademarks or trademarks of Apple Computer.Inc.

Adobe, Adobe Logo, Acrobat, Acrobat Logo, PostScript and PostScript Logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems, Inc.

Other company names and product names used in this manual are the registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

MAINTENANCE AGREEMENT:

The Print Controller will give you many years of trouble-free service. To ensure high quality performance and to prevent premature wear and failure of precision parts and components, schedule regular cleaning and routine adjustments.

We recommend that you contact your service center to discuss the benefits and advantages of Kyoceramita's Customer Service Maintenance Agreement and to be shown how a maintenance plan can be tailored to your individual needs.

NOTICE:

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC. has made every effort to ensure that the information in this manual is complete and accurate. However, constant efforts are also being made to improve and update the product. Therefore, KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC. shall not be liable for errors in this manual or for any consequential damages resulting from the use of this manual. The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

FEDERAL OR STATE STATUTES MAY PROHIBIT THE COPYING OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS OR INFORMATION, RESULTING IN FINES OR IMPRISONMENT FOR VIOLATORS.

WEBSITE ADDRESS:

http://www.kyoceramita.com/home/index.cfm

CORRESPONDENCE:

Correspondence regarding this manual may be mailed to the address shown below.

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.
Headquarters. MARKETING DEPARTMENT
225 Sand Road, P.O. Box 40008
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008

The print controller is designed to be used as the built-in type server of the main body printer/copier. It enables direct printing from Windows-compliant computers. It can also enable use of the copier as a network printer when an optional network interface card is used.

FCC Regulation

Warning:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential area.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the distance between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit other than the circuit to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Canadian Department of Communications Regulations

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Patent Notice

The product includes an implementation of LZW licensed under U.S.Patent 4,558,302.

Built-in Fonts

The print controller includes support for PCL5e Language (HP PCL clone) and includes the 80 built-in Agfa Microtype fonts. For a complete list, refer to "Appendix C Font".

Note

- A part or all of this User's Manual may not be used or copied without permission.
- Kyoceramita will have no liability for any influences caused by using the printing system and this manual.
- Information written in this User's Manual is subject to change without notice.
- Kyoceramita Corporation maintains the copyright of this printer driver.

SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This package contains the following materials provided by Kyoceramita Corporation (Kyoceramita): software included as part of the printing system, the digitally-encoded machine-readable outline data encoded in the special format and in the encrypted form ("Font Programs"), other software which runs on a computer system for use in conjunction with the Printing Software ("Host Software"), and related explanatory written materials ("Documentation").

The term "Software" shall be used to describe Printing Software, Font Programs and/or Host Software and also include any upgrades, modified versions, additions, and copies of the Software.

The Software is being licensed to you under the terms of this Agreement.

Kyoceramita grants to you a non-exclusive sublicense to use the Software and Documentation, provided that you agree to the following:

1. You may use the Printing Software and accompanying Font Programs for imaging to the licensed output device(s), solely for your own internal business purposes.
2. In addition to the license for Font Programs set forth in Section 1 ("Printing Software") above, you may use Roman Font Programs to reproduce weights, styles, and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols ("Typefaces") on the display or monitor for your own internal business purposes.
3. You may make one backup copy of the Host Software, provided your backup copy is not installed or used on any computer. Notwithstanding the above restrictions, you may install the on any number of computers solely for use with one or more printing systems running the Printing Software.
4. You may assign its rights under this Agreement to an assignee of all of Licensee's right and interest to such Software and Documentation ("Assignee") provided you transfer to Assignee all copies of such Software and Documentation Assignee agrees to be bound by all of the terms and conditions of this Agreement.
5. You agree not to modify, adapt or translate the Software and Documentation.
6. You agree that you will not attempt to alter, disassemble, decrypt, reverse engineer or decompile the Software.
7. Title to and ownership of the Software and Documentation and any reproductions thereof shall remain with Kyoceramita.
8. Trademarks shall be used in accordance with accepted trademark practice, including identification of the trademark owner's name. Trademarks can only be used to identify printed output produced by the Software. Such use of any trademark does not give you any rights of ownership in that trademark.
9. You may not rent, lease, sublicense, lend or transfer versions or copies of the Software Licensee does not use, or Software contained on any unused media, except as part of the permanent transfer of all Software and Documentation as described above.
10. In no event will Kyoceramita be liable to you for any consequential, incidental or special damages, including any lost profits or lost saving, even if Kyoceramita has been advised of the possibility of such damages, or for any claim by any third party. Some states or jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental, consequential or special damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.
11. Notice to Government End Users: The Software is a "commercial item," as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. 2.101, consisting of "commercial computer software" and "commercial computer software documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 and 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, all U.S. Government End Users acquire the Software with only those rights set forth herein.

NON-EXCLUSIVE LICENSE AGREEMENT
(Exclusive for PostScript3 Option)

READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY

BY USING THE PRODUCTS DESCRIBED IN THIS USER MANUAL, BY OPENING A SHRINK-WRAP PACKAGE CONTAINING SOFTWARE OR DOWNLOADING SOFTWARE OR PRINTER DRIVERS TO YOUR COMPUTER YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE.

The computer programs embedded in the equipment and User Documentation are licensed (not sold) to You by Kyoceramita Corporation ("Kyoceramita or LICENSOR"). The term "Software" shall be used to describe accompanying Printer Drivers, software included as part of the printing system including PostScript software and other Adobe software ("Printing Software"), digitally-encoded machine-readable outline data encoded in the special format and in the encrypted form ("Font Programs"), and/or other software which runs on a computer system for use in conjunction with the Printing Software ("Host Software"), and related explanatory written materials ("Documentation"), Upgrades, Modified Versions, Additions, and Copies of the Software (the "Software"). This license agreement represents the entire agreement concerning the Software between You and Kyoceramita and it supersedes any prior proposal, representation, or understanding between the parties. Kyoceramita reserves any rights not expressly granted to You. This package may contain third-party software provided by Adobe Systems Incorporated ("Adobe") or other suppliers in which case Kyoceramita grants to you a non-exclusive sublicense to use the Software and Documentation, provided that you agree to the following:

1. LICENSE GRANT. You do not receive title to the Software or User Documentation. Licensor grants to You, and You accept, a nonexclusive license to use the Software embedded in the Equipment in machine-readable, object code form only (referred to as the "Computer Program"), the accompanying User Documentation, and Printer Drivers furnished to You, (collectively the "Licensed Articles") only as authorized in this License Agreement. The Computer Program may be used only on the Equipment in which it is embedded and may not be shared with or transferred to any other equipment or product. The Printer Drivers shall be used only with printer products designed to work with the equipment containing the embedded Computer Program. You may make a single archive copy of the Printer Drivers for back-up purposes, provided that it includes all copyright notices, markings and proprietary legends on the original, including the markings of any other company contained therein. This archive copy may not be in use at any time, may only be used for back-up purposes and must remain in Your possession and control. You may not copy the drivers to a bulletin board or similar system.

a) You may use the Printing Software and accompanying Font Programs for imaging to the licensed output device(s), solely for your own internal business purposes.

b) In addition to the license for Font Programs set forth in (a), you may use Roman Font Programs to reproduce weights, styles, and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols ("Typefaces") on the display or monitor for your own internal business purposes.

c) Notwithstanding the restrictions in 1 above, you may install the Adobe Driver and/or other third-party's Driver Software on any number of computers solely for use with one or more printing systems running the Printing Software.

d) You agree not to modify, adapt or translate the Software and Documentation.

e) You agree that you will not attempt to alter, disassemble, decrypt, reverse engineer or decompile the Software or use any other method to discover the printer driver's or Software's source code.

f) You may not rent, lease, sublicense, modify, adapt, pledge, lend, share or transfer versions or copies of the Software You do not use, or Software contained on any unused media, or any of Your rights under this Agreement except as part of the permanent transfer of all Software and Documentation as described in (g) below or to the extent expressly permitted by the laws of the country in which you use the Software and Licensed Articles, You may not create derivative works based upon the Software or any part thereof. You may not copy the Licensed Articles except as specifically provided in this License Agreement.

g) You may assign your rights under this Agreement to an assignee of all of Your rights and interest to such Software and Documentation (''Assignee'') provided you transfer to Your Assignee all copies of such Software and Documentation and the Assignee agrees to be bound by all of the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

2. TITLE: Title to and ownership of the Software and Documentation and any reproductions thereof shall remain with the owner of the third-party software and Kyoceramita.

3. TRADEMARKS: Trademarks shall be used in accordance with accepted trademark practice, including identification of the trademark owner's name. Trademarks can only be used to identify printed output produced by the Software. Such use of any trademark does not give you any rights of ownership to that trademark.

4. LICENSOR'S RIGHTS. You acknowledge and agree that the Licensed Articles, including but not limited to the Software and the Documentation, are owned by Licensor and its suppliers, and its structure, organization and code are proprietary and valuable trade secrets of Licensor or its suppliers. United States Copyright Law and International Treaty Provisions also protect the Licensed Articles and Documentation, including but not limited to the Software and the Documentation. You further acknowledge and agree that all right, title and interest in and to the Licensed Articles, including associated intellectual property rights, are and shall remain, with Licensor or its supplier. Licensor's suppliers may protect their rights in the Licensed Articles in the event of a violation of this License Agreement. This License Agreement does not convey to You an interest in or to the Licensed Articles, but only a limited right of use revocable in accordance with the terms of this License Agreement.

5. TERMINATION. This License Agreement is effective upon the purchase and acceptance of the Equipment by You or the downloading of any Software or Printer Driver from Kyoceramita'S Website or other authorized electronic medium and shall continue until terminated. This License Agreement will terminate upon Your sale, transfer or disposal of the Equipment having the Software embedded therein. Licensor may terminate this License Agreement upon the breach by You of any term hereof. Upon such termination by Licensor, You agree to delete the Software and Printer Drivers from the hard drive of the Product, destroy all copies of the Software and Printer Drivers from the hard drive of the Equipment and destroy all copies of the Software and Printer Drivers and User Documentation.

6. LICENSE FEES. The license fees of $250.00 (included in the purchase price of the Equipment) paid by You are paid in consideration of the license granted under this License Agreement.

7. LIMITED WARRANTY. Licensor warrants, for Your benefit alone, for a period of 90 days from the date of commencement of this License Agreement (referred to as the ''Warranty Period''), that the Software and Printer Drivers shall operate substantially in accordance with the functional specifications in the User Documentation. Kyoceramita specifically does not warrant that the Software or Printer Drivers will operate uninterrupted or error-free. If during the Warranty Period, a defect in the Software or Printer Drivers appears, You may contact the Licensor for either a replacement or, if so elected by Licensor, refund of amounts paid by You under this License Agreement. You agree that the foregoing constitutes Your sole and exclusive remedy for breach by Licensor of any warranties made under this Agreement. EXCEPT FOR THE WARRANTIES SET FORTH ABOVE, THE LICENSED ARTICLES, AND THE SOFTWARE CONTAINED THEREIN, ARE LICENSED ''AS IS,'' AND, TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, THE LICENSOR DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ANY AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

8. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.To the maximum extent permitted by law, and except for claims which result in personal injury or death caused by Licensor's negligence or intentional acts, Licensor's, or any of its affiliates or subsidiaries, cumulative liability to You or any other party for any loss or damages resulting from any claims, demands, or actions arising out of or relating to this License Agreement shall not exceed $250.00. In no event shall Licensor, or Adobe, the owner of other third party software or any of their affiliates or subsidiaries be liable to you or any third party for any indirect, incidental, consequential, special, or exemplary damages or lost profits, even if Licensor has been advised of the possibility of such damages or for any claim by any third party. Some states do not allow the limitation or exclusion of liability for incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to You.

9. GOVERNING LAW. This License Agreement shall be construed and governed in accordance with the laws of the State of Connecticut, United States of America. Should any court of competent jurisdiction declare any term of this License Agreement void or unenforceable, such declaration shall have no effect on the remaining terms hereof.

10. COSTS OF LITIGATION. If any action is brought by either party to this License Agreement against the other party regarding the subject matter hereof, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover, in addition to any other relief granted, reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses of litigation.

11. NO WAIVER. The failure of any party to enforce any rights granted hereunder or to take action against the other party in the event of any breach hereunder shall not be deemed a waiver by that party as to subsequent enforcement of rights or subsequent actions in the event of future breaches.

12. Notice to Government End Users: U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS: The Licensed Articles are provided with restricted rights. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.277-7013, and paragraph (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clause at FAR 52.277-19. The Software is a "commercial item," as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. 2.101, consisting of "commercial computer software" and "commercial computer software documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 and C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, all U.S. Government End Users acquire the Software with only those rights set forth herein. The manufacturer is: Kyocera Mita America, Inc., 500 Day Hill Road, Windsor, Connecticut 06095

13. THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY: You are hereby notified that Adobe Systems Incorporated, a Delaware corporation, located at 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, CA 95110-2704 is a third-party beneficiary to this Agreement to the extent that this Agreement contains provisions which relate to Licensee's use of the Software, Font Programs, Typefaces and the trademarks licensed hereby. Such provisions are made expressly for the benefit of Adobe and are enforceable by Adobe in addition to Kyoceramita.

Contents

Introduction 3

About this Product 18

Folder structure on the CD-ROM (Print Controller) 19

Folder structure on the CD-ROM (PS3 Option) 20

About this Manual 21

Notation of each product 22

How to read this Manual 23

Section 1 Before Using the Print Controller

Chapter 1 Overview of the Print Controller 25

Features of the Print Controller 25

The Print Controller Functions 26

Print Controller Options 28

Chapter 2 Connections of the Print Controller 29

Parallel Connection 29

Ethernet Connection 30

Chapter 3 Overview of the Preparation Task 34

Using as a Printer 34

Printer Driver 35

Using as a Network Scanner 36

Section 2 How to Print

Chapter 4 How to Setup 38

The Flow of the Setup 38

Items Required for the Setup 40

Connecting the copier 41

Installing a Printer Driver 42

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e) 43

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3) 49

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) 55

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) 63
Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) 71
Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) 81
Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) 91
Installing to Windows XP (PS3) 101
Installing to Macintosh (PS3) 111
Test Page Print 114
Setting Optional Devices (Windows) 115
Setting Optional Devices (Macintosh) 117
Updating a Printer Driver 119
Updating the Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me) 120
Updating the Printer Driver (Windows NT4.0) 121
Updating the Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 124
Updating the Printer Driver (Windows XP) 126
Updating the Printer Driver (Macintosh) 128
Chapter 5 Printing from Windows 129
Basic printing method 129
Printer [Properties] window 130
[Properties] window of Windows 95/98/Me 132
[Properties] window of Windows NT4.0 135
[Properties] window displayed from Windows 2000 139
[Properties] window of Windows XP 145
To set the paper-related items 151
To set the orientation 153
To print in rotation 155
To set the size of the output paper 157
To set the type of manual-feed paper 160
To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio 164
To set the printing position of the wide paper 167
To set the margins 169
To set the paper tray 171
To set the Large Capacity Tray 173
To set the Bypass tray (Manual feed) 176
To set the Finisher 179
To set the Output tray 182
To print multiple copies 185
To set the number of copies to be printed 187

To print by sets 189
To print page by page collectively 191
To output offset copies 194
To print multiple pages 197
To set to print on both sides 199
To print the document of multiple pages on a single page 202
To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big 205
To print a twofold booklet 209
To print a specific page on the front face 212
To print pages in reverse order 214
To set the Front & Back & Thick Cover / Insertion Sheet 216
To set a Front Cover 218
To set a Back Cover 222
To set an Insertion Sheet 226
To set a Thick Cover 229
To set for finishing 232
To set stapling 234
To set the Punch Unit 238
To set punching 241
To adjust printing position inside the paper 245
To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit) 248
To print a confidential document 253
To specify a user 254
To print with protection by a password 256
To use an internal hard disk 259
To save and print a print job 260
To re-set a Job ID 263
To set a Watermark 265
To create a Overlay 268
To print a Overlay 270
To delete a Overlay 272
To create a new Watermark 273
To print a Watermark 277
To change a Watermark 282
To delete a Watermark 285
To set an image and shade 287
To set Halftoning 290
To set a printing density 291
To save toner consumption by controlling print density 292

To set a resolution 294
To print a curved section smoothly 296
To print an image by reversing white and black 298
To print an image by reversing image 300
To print a text in gray or black more clearly 301
To print an image in gray or black more clearly 302
To set font-related items 303
To print without using printer fonts 304
To replace TrueType with the printer font 306
To set a method for sending PostScript 308
To add the Euro currency mark to the font 310
To download the font information 311
To adjust settings of PostScript output format 312
To adjust basic settings of PostScript output format 313
To adjust detailed settings of PostScript output format 316
Checking the Printer Driver Setting 318
To test printing to check the settings 319
To check the current settings before printing 323
To check the version of the printer driver 327
To set printer memory 329
To set printer memory configuration 330
Chapter 6 Printing from Macintosh 331
Basic printing method 331
Dialog boxes used for configuring this printing system 333
Displaying the [Configure] dialog box 334
Displaying the [Page Setup] dialog box 335
Displaying the [Print] dialog box 336
About descriptions in this chapter 338
To set the paper-related items 339
To set the orientation 341
To set the size of the output paper 342
To set the type of manual-feed paper 344
To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio 347
To set the printing position of the wide paper 348
To set the margins 349
To set a custom size paper 350
To set the paper tray 351

To set the Large Capacity Tray 353
To set the Manual Feed Tray 354
To set the Finisher 356
To set the Output tray 357

To print multiple copies 359
To set the number of copies to be printed 361
To print by sets 362
To print page by page collectively 363
To output offset copies 364

To print multiple pages 365
To set to print on both sides 367
To print the document of multiple pages on a single page 368
To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big 370
To print a twofold booklet 372
To print pages in reverse order 374

To set the Front Cover / Back Cover / Thick Cover 375
To set a Front Cover 376
To set a Back Cover 378
To set a Thick Cover 380

To set for finishing 381
To set stapling 383
To set the Punch Unit 386
To set punching 387
To adjust a printing position inside the paper 389
To set center binding, folding and cutting (Trimmer Unit) 390

To set a Watermark 392
To print a Watermark 393
To create a new Watermark 395
To change a Watermark 397

To set an image and shade 399
To save toner consumption by controlling a print density 401
To set a Resolution 402
To print a curved section smoothly 403
To print an image by reversing white and black 404
To print an image by reversing image 405
To print a bitmapped image more clearly 406

To set font-related items 407
To print without using printer fonts 408
To restrict fonts that can be downloaded 409

To check the printer driver setting 410
To test print to check the settings 411
To check the current settings before printing 413
To check the version of the printer driver 415
To set the memory installed in the printer 416
Chapter 7 Tandem Print 417
To print with two copiers 417
Chapter 8 Managing the Number of Prints 421
Overview of the Printer ECM/EKC 421
Setting of Printer ECM/EKC 422
Printing with Printer ECM/EKC 423
ECM/EKC Limit 424
Chapter 9 Troubleshooting 425
Basic Troubleshooting 425
General Problems of Printing 426
General Problems of PostScript 429
Checking on non complete jobs 430
Section 3 How to Scan
Chapter 10 Overview of the Scanning Features 432
Available Scanning Features 432
Process of the Settings and Operations 434
Scanning Screen of the Control Panel 435
Chapter 11 Configuring Destination/Storage Location Settings .. 436
Scan to HDD 436
Scan to Email 438
Setting of Destinations (FTP) 441

Chapter 12 Scanner Operation 444
Scanning 444
Scanner Basic screen 450
Special Original 454
Application 456
Check Deciphering and Settings for Scanning 459
Chapter 13 Loading in the Scanned Image Data 460
Reading In From HDD 460
Deleting images stored in the HDD 468
Images Scanned to FTP or E-mail 469
Chapter 14 Troubles Concerning the Scanner 470
Cannot connect to the scanner 470
When an Error Message Appears 471
Scan ErrorList 472
Section 4 Control Panel (for Administrator)
Chapter 15 Control Panel 474
Names and Functions of the Control Panel 474
Switching Between Modes 475
LCD Touch Screen 476
Basic Screen 478
Confirming the Status of a Print Job 479
Chapter 16 Configuration of Printer Setting Menu 481
Setting up the Printer from the Control Panel 481
Printing the Test Print 484
Setting the Banner Page 486
Setting the Banner Page Tray 488
Setting the Job Time Out 489

Setting the Copier Time Out 490
Setting the ScanDataAutoDel. 492
Setting the PDL 494
Setting the Default Paper size 496
Setting the Resolution 498
Setting the Default Value for the Duplex 499
Setting the Default Orientation 501
Setting the Number of Pages to Copy 503
Setting the Override Paper 504

Chapter 17 Print Job Control 505

Using the Forced Output Function 505
Reserving a Print Job 506
Canceling a Print Job 507
Confirming the Canceled Print Job 509
Deleting a Password Print Job 510

Section 5 Network Settings (for Administrator)

Chapter 18 Network Function Overview 513

Network Function of Print Controller 513
Accompanied Utilities 514
Network setting procedures 515

Chapter 19 Copier Setup 519

General Description of the Network Setup 519
Outputing the Status Page 524
Setups on the Control Panel 525
Using MAP 540

Chapter 20 Printing by IP Peer-to-Peer from Windows 95/98/Me . 544

Using IP Peer-to-Peer 544

Installation of Printer Driver 550
Using IPX Peer-to-Peer 552

Chapter 21 Printing by LPD/LPR from Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP 557

LPD/LPR Setup 557

Chapter 22 Printing by IPP from Windows 2000/XP 564

Internet Printing 564

Chapter 23 NetWare Configuration 568

Setup for NetWare 3.x 568
Setup for NetWare 4.x 569

Chapter 24 UNIX Configuration 571

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP 571

Chapter 25 Apple Talk Configuration 581

Preparation to print from Macintosh 581

Chapter 26 Troubleshooting of Network 582

Resetting the Network Interface Card to Factory Default 582
How to Diagnose Problems 583

Appendices

Appendix A Product Specifications 588

Product Specifications (Printing System (2)) 588

Product Specifications (Network Interface Card (NIC)) 592

UTP cable specifications 593

Factory Default Settings (NIC) 594

Appendix B Function List 595

Function List (Print Controller) 595

Function List (PostScript3 Option) 601

Appendix C Font 604

Font List (Print Controller) 604

Font List (PostScript3) 607

Font Number List (Control Panel-PCL Setup) 610

Screen Fonts 613

Downloading New Fonts 620

Appendix D Symbol Set 621

About Symbol Sets 621

Symbol Set List 623

Index 632

Index (Object) 632

Index (Item) 635

● Package Contents

The following items are supplied with the Print Controller:

- Notice Sheet
- Interface Board
- User Software CD

(Windows)

- Printer Driver
- Scanner Driver (compatible with TWAIN)
- Network Connection Utilities
  - BOOTP
  - IP-P2P
  - IPX-P2P
  - MAP
  - NW Setup
  - UNIX Utilities
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
- User's Manual (this manual)
- Release Note (describes the latest information as well as limits of the system and the user software.)
- Screenfonts
- Web Utilities User's Reference Guide

(Macintosh)

- Adobe Acrobat Reader
- User's Manual (this manual)
- Web Utilities User's Reference Guide

The following items are supplied with the PostScript3 Option:

- PS protection chip
- User Software CD

(Windows)

- Printer driver / PPD file
- Screen Fonts
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
- User’s Manual (this manual)
- Web Utilities User’s Reference Guide
- Release Note (describes the latest information as well as limits of the system and the users software.)

(Macintosh)

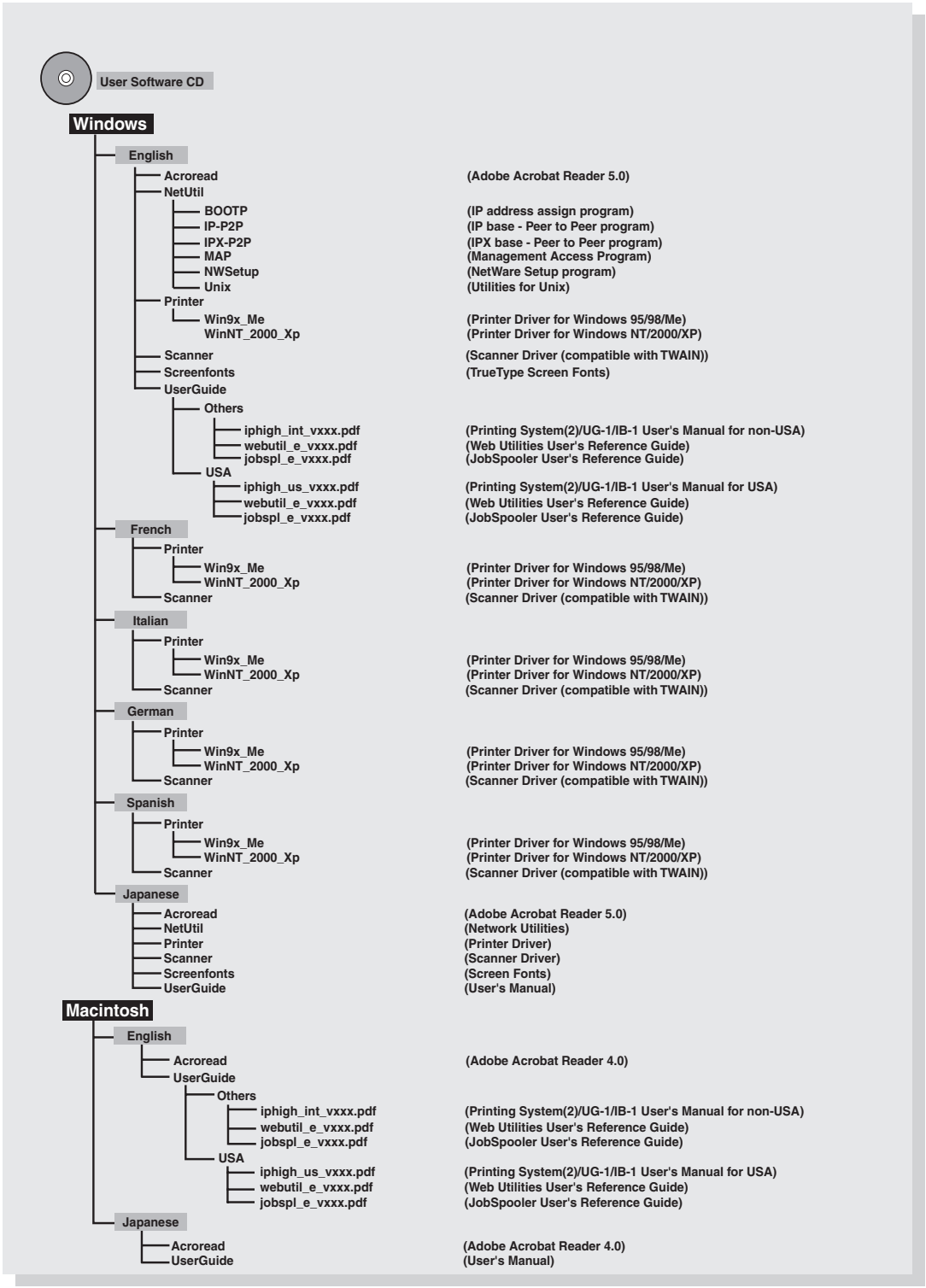
- Printer driver / PPD file
- Screen Fonts
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
- User’s Manual (this manual)
- Web Utilities User’s Reference Guide
- Release Note (describes the latest information as well as limits of the system and the users software.)

Folder structure on the CD-ROM (Print Controller)

The folders included on the accompanying CD-ROM for print controller are structured as shown below.

This illustration will be helpful for locating specific folders or files.

- In this manual, folder names and file names are not preceded by the root directory.
- You may use the files in the English folder.

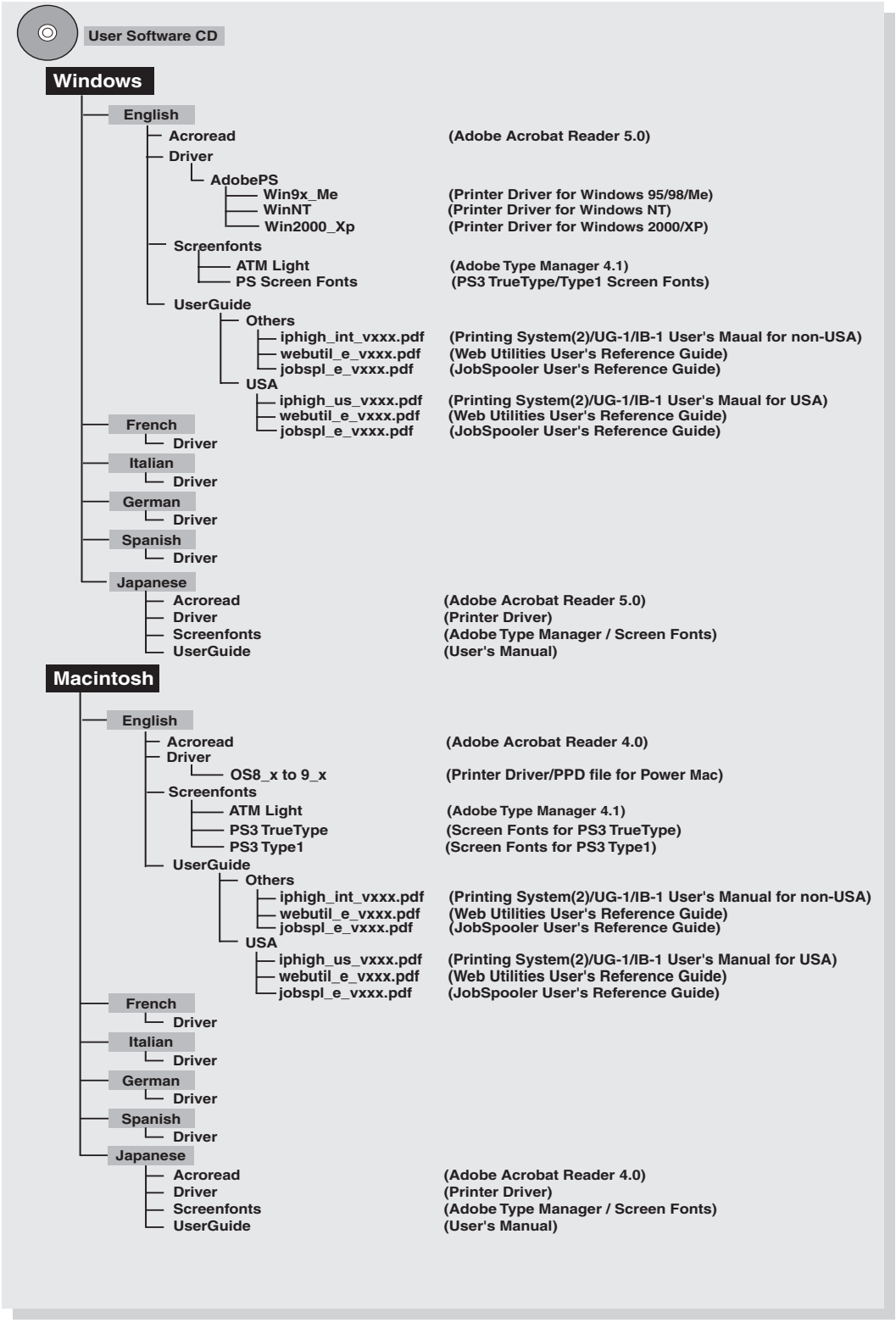


Folder structure on the CD-ROM (PS3 Option)

The folders included on the accompanying CD-ROM for PostScript 3 option are structured as shown below.

This illustration will be helpful for locating specific folders or files.

- In this manual, folder names and file names are not preceded by the root directory.
- You may use the files in the English folder.



This manual describes how to operate the Print Controller when the Copier is used as a printer by connecting it to computers.

This manual assumes you are familiar with the basic operation of your operating system and the KM-8530.

The KM-8530 comes is with user's manuals. Refer to these manuals as needed.

For detailed operations of Windows 95/98/Me and Windows NT4.0/2000/XP, refer to the operating manuals for each operating system. For application operations, refer to the operating manuals provided with each application.

Important

This manual explains operating procedures for Printing System(2) Print Controller. The procedures may vary depending on models of machine.

This manual is composed of the following five sections and appendices:

Section 1: Before Using the Print Controller

Section 1 describes the print controller hardware and the overview of its functions, and briefly explains how to connect the parallel and Ethernet ports of computers to the print controller and the main body printer (copier).

Section 2: How to Print

Section 2 describes how to install the printer driver (user software included on the user software CD) to Windows-compliant computers and Macintosh.

It enables printing from each application to the main body printer by way of a parallel port/network.

Section 3: How to Scan

Section 3 describes procedures on using the copier as the network scanner.

Section 4: Control Panel (for Administrator)

Section 4 describes the layout of the control panel of the main body printer and explains how to operate and set functions on the control panel.

Section 5: Network Setting (for Administrator)

Section 5 describes how to set and use network.

Appendices

Appendix A describes product specifications for the print controller.

Appendix B describes function list.

Appendix C lists the built-in printer fonts included with the print controller.

Notation of each product

The following abbreviations are used in this manual:

(1) Printing System(2) Print Controller:	print controller
(2) IB-1 optional Network Interface Card:	network interface card (or NIC)
(3) UG-1 PostScript3 option:	PS3 option
(4) KM-8530 Printer/Copier:	copier (or main body printer)
(5) A printing system that combines the above (1), (2), (3) and (4) products:	printing system
(6) Microsoft Windows 95:	Windows 95
Microsoft Windows 98:	Windows 98
Microsoft Windows Me:	Windows Me
Microsoft Windows NT4.0:	Windows NT4.0 or Windows NT
Microsoft Windows 2000:	Windows 2000
Microsoft Windows XP:	Windows XP
Above OSs:	Windows 95/98/Me Windows NT4.0/2000/XP Windows NT/2000/XP Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP

Important

- The network interface card (IB-1) is an optional.
- PostScript3 option is an optional.

Shows an object and feature of a procedure.

PCL5e

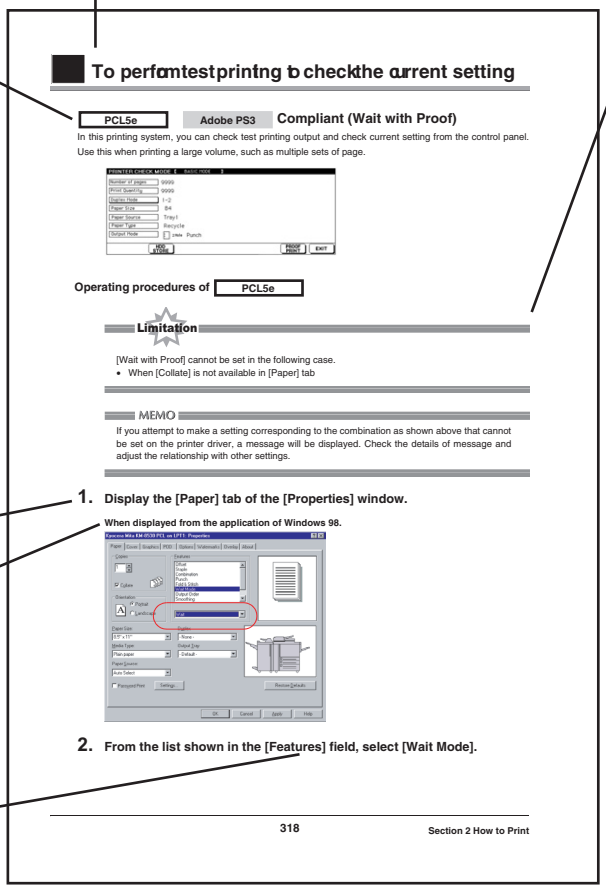
Adobe PS3

Two types of printer drevers, PCL5e Printer Drever, are explained in this document. Shows about which printer drever explained.

Describes operating procedures.

Describes status of hardware and software when an operation is done.

[ ] are used for the terms displayed on the



To perform test printing to check the current setting

PCL5e Adobe PS3 Compliant (Wait with Proof)

In this printing system, you can check test printing output and check current setting from the control panel. Use this when printing a large volume, such as multiple sets of page.

Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Wait with Proof] cannot be set in the following case.
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the combination as shown above that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Display the [Paper] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from the application of Windows 98.

2. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Wait Mode].

318 Section 2 How to Print

This document contains column spaces in the body. Types of columns shown in this way are as follows.

Explains cautions and restrictions or operating hardware and software.

Limitation

Expalains function principles and other functions that cannnot be used together.

Important

Explains impertant notices on operating procedures.

MEMO

Explanations to supplement the body. Memoes may be included in the body.

Reference

Shows a page to refer. Refer to if necessary. References may be included in the body.

Tips

Hints and Advices on operating procedures.

This page does not exist in the document.

Section

1

Before Using the Print Controller

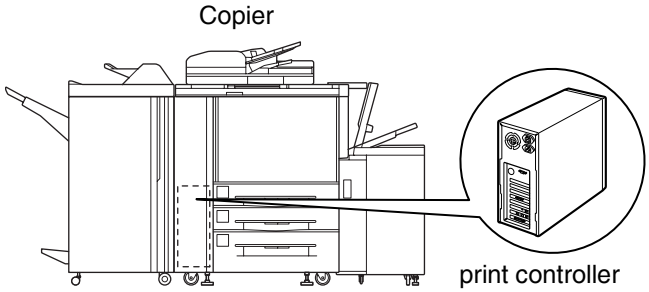
Chapter 1 Overview of the Print Controller 25

Chapter 2 Connections of the Print Controller 29

Chapter 3 Overview of the Preparation Task 34

Features of the Print Controller

This print controller is the built-in print controller for the copier. You can use the copier as a printer by connecting it to a computer or a network.



The print controller:

- Adopts PCL5e as a PDL (page description language).
  You can use it as a PostScript3 printer by installing a PS3 option.
- Supports Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0/2000/XP.
  It also supports a Macintosh OS by using a PS3 option. (Mac OS X is not supported.)
- Includes a standard parallel port (IEEE 1284) and an Ethernet-compatible network card as an option, enabling you to use the copier as a network printer.

Important

Never use the parallel port and Ethernet at the same time. It may cause a system error.

- Includes standard network scanning features.
  You can store scanned images in an internal hard disk in the print controller.By configuring TCP/IP settings, you can send the images via Email or upload them to an FTP server.
- Can receive subsequent print jobs while the copier is printing/copying. It can copy while the print controller receives a print job or a scan job.
- Has the Printer ECM/EKC function to manage the number of prints on the copier.
  Setting the Printer ECM/EKC feature means that, provided you enter a password previously established on the printer to request a print job, the copier counts printouts based on the ECM/EKC counter to know when a preset limit is hit, and also rejects a print request from a client having no valid password.

  MEMO
  The writing may be different depending on the specification of each country.
  - USA market : Printer ECM
  - Other : Printer EKC

  The term Printer ECM/EKC is used for the description here.
- Adopts E-RDH (Electronic Recirculating Document Handler).
  The E-RDH system temporarily stores print data in the E-RDH memory in the copier and prints it as the selected setting. The copier has 128 MB of memory as standard and can be expanded to 512 MB.

  MEMO
  E-RDH memory varies depending on models of machine. For details, refer to the "Copier's User's Guide."

The Print Controller Functions

The main functions of this print controller fall into three broad categories:

- Print controller features
- Scanning features
- Network features

Important

The network interface card is an optional.

●Print controller features

These features allow you to use the copier as a printer.

When a print job is executed from an application on a computer, the print data is sent to the print controller via a parallel interface (IEEE 1284) or a network.

The interpreter in the print controller rasterizes the print data to image data (the bitmap extracting process).

The image data is sent to the print engine in the copier via the PCI bus.

The print engine in the copier receives the image data from the video interface card through the PCI bus and starts printing.

Even while the copier is printing jobs or receiving print data, the print controller can receive print jobs from an application.

This printing system can continuously print A4/Letter paper at the maximum print speed of 85 ppm (400 dpi/ 600 dpi).

MEMO

Print speed and resolution vary depending on models of machine.

The system supports the duplex function and the finisher function which enables the use of five paper trays, stapling, folding, stitching and hole-punching.

●Scanning features

You can store original image data (scanned data) scanned from the copier's RADF or the platen glass in the hard disk in the print controller as TIFF/PDF files and use it in a TWAIN-compliant application such as Adobe Acrobat. The scanned data can be transmitted as an attached data via Email or uploaded to an FTP server.

When scanning an original image, you can configure image quality, scaling, resolution, scan size, Scan mode and so on.

The scanning features fall into three categories: "Scan to HDD," "Scan to Email," and "Scan to FTP."

The Print Controller Functions (Continued)

● Network features

The network card (optional) can be installed in this print controller. The copier can work as a network printer with this option.

The network features:

- Select 100Base-TX (Fast Ethernet)/10 Base-T automatically.
- Support multi-protocol (TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk (EtherTalk)).
- Support peer-to-peer printing over TCP/IP from Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me (by using a dedicated utility).
- Support LPD/LPR printing over TCP/IP for Microsoft Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP (by using a dedicated utility).
- Support IPP (Internet Printing Protocol). You can print via internet or intranet from Windows 2000/XP.
- Support both Bindery mode and Novell Directory Services (NDS) to accommodate Novell NetWare print server features.
- Include a HTTP server that supports Java to enable the printing system management in conjunction with the attached Management Access Program (MAP) and a standard Web browser.
- Allocate IP addresses automatically with DHCP.
- Include a flash memory that allows you to upgrade a firmware via network.

Print Controller Options

This print controller has following options. For more detailed information, contact your service representative.

●Add-on memory

For optimum printing performance, expanding the memory capacity is recommended.

Most of the print controller memory is used for rasterizing images (bitmap extracting process), font cache, form overlay or other functions. Only a small part of the memory is used for system operation.

The basic memory setting for the print controller can print with 1 bit mode (400 dpi/600 dpi) in all paper sizes. The memory of the print controller can be expanded.

MEMO

Basic memory, maximum memory and resolution of print controller vary depending on models of machine.

The more memory is in the print controller, the more pages can be rasterized while waiting for a job to print. When A4 size paper is used, approximately 4,345 KB memory is required to print 1 bit data at 600 dpi.

The E-RDH memory in the copier is used for the print process, which can be expanded.

MEMO

E-RDH memory varies depending on models of machine. For details, refer to the "Copier's User's Guide."

The memory capacity of the print controller may be insufficient if:

- Print data for a page to be rasterlized by the print controller is too complicated.

If this is the case, expanding the memory capacity is recommended.

For printouts using features such as Multiple copies, the Booklet mode and the Wait mode, all data about the entire set of pages rasterized by the print controller (one job) must be stored in the E-RDH memory first. Therefore, there are occasions when attempting to produce a large number of pages using those features will not produce the correct printouts.

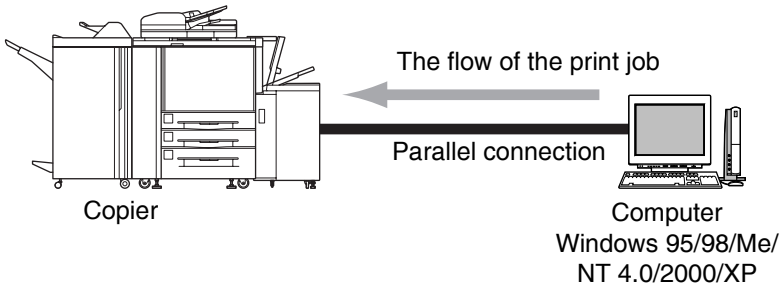
If such is the case, install additional E-RDH memory in the copier.

●PostScript3 option

Installing the PostScript3 option in the print controller, you can print data from the application on Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0/2000/XP or Macintosh with your copier as the PostScript3 printer. Before printing data with PostScript, you must set up attached Adobe PS3 printer driver in your system.

Parallel Connection

You can connect your Windows computer to the print controller via the parallel port (IEEE 1284).



In this example, the print controller and the computer are connected via parallel port with a parallel cable. Once you set up the printer driver in the computer, you can print from it.

Important

Never use the parallel port and Ethernet at the same time. It may cause a system error.

Tips

You can use the copier as a network printer by executing a print server function or a printer sharing function on the computer that is connected to the copier via parallel port.

Ethernet Connection

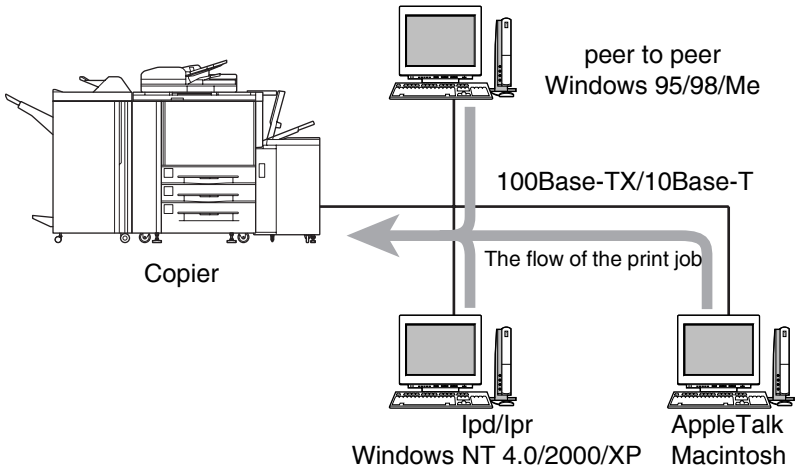
You can connect the copier to computers supporting Ethernet via the network card in the print controller. Several alternatives can be considered in the Ethernet connection. In any of them, you must set up the printer driver in each computer after configuring the network (such as TCP/IP settings) for the print controller or the computers. The following shows examples of them.

- Connection without a print server
- Connection using IPP (Internet Printing Protocol)
- Connection using Novell NetWare
- Connection using the network scanning function

Important

Never use the parallel port and Ethernet at the same time. It may cause a system error.

●Connection without a print server



MEMO

The PS3 option is required to print data from Macintosh.

You can use the copier as the network printer without a print server on the network. If such is the case, the printing protocol is different depending on your OS. Each computer treats the copier as the local printer.

Windows 95/98/Me

The IP peer to peer is used for the connection from Windows 95/98/Me. To connect, use the program "IP-P2P" and "IPX-P2P" is stored in the attached CD-ROM.

Reference (p.544)

Reference (p.552)

Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP

Use lpd/lpr (the standard print server protocol for TCP/IP) to print data from Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP.

Reference (p.557)

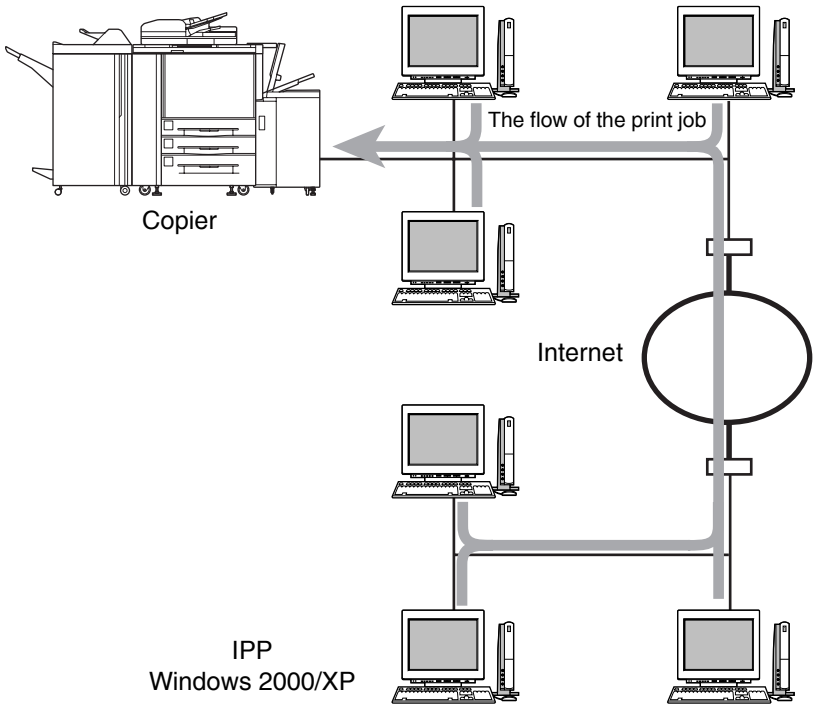
Macintosh (Mac OS X is not supported)

Use AppleTalk (EtherTalk) to print data from Macintosh; the PS3 option must be installed in the computer to print from Macintosh.

Reference (p.581)

Ethernet Connection (Continued)

●Connection using IPP (Internet Printing Protocol)

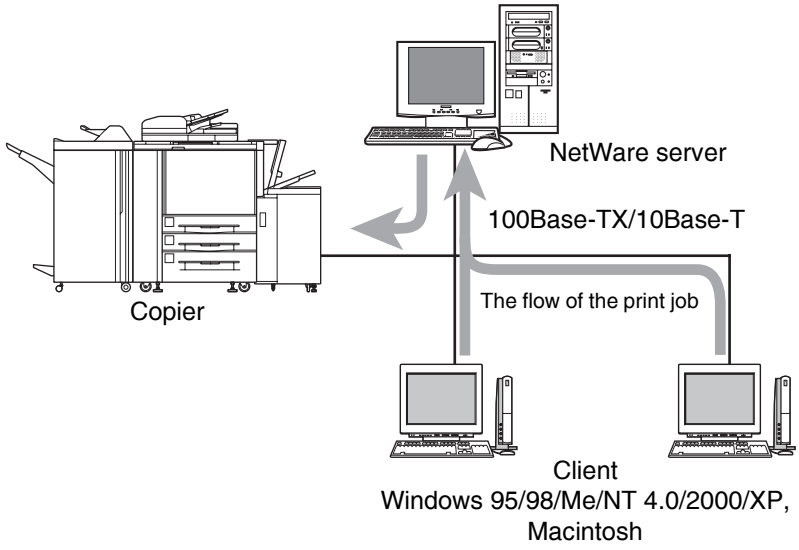


IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) is the protocol used to print data from the printer that is connected Internet or Intranet. When you print data with IPP, TCP/IP is used. Each computer treats the copier as the network printer.

Reference (p.564) Internet Printing

Ethernet Connection (Continued)

●Connection using Novell NetWare



You can use Novell NetWare, too. In this case, the configuration procedures may be different depending on NetWare version or resource management method. Each computer treats the copier as the network printer.

Reference (p.568) Setup for NetWare 3.x

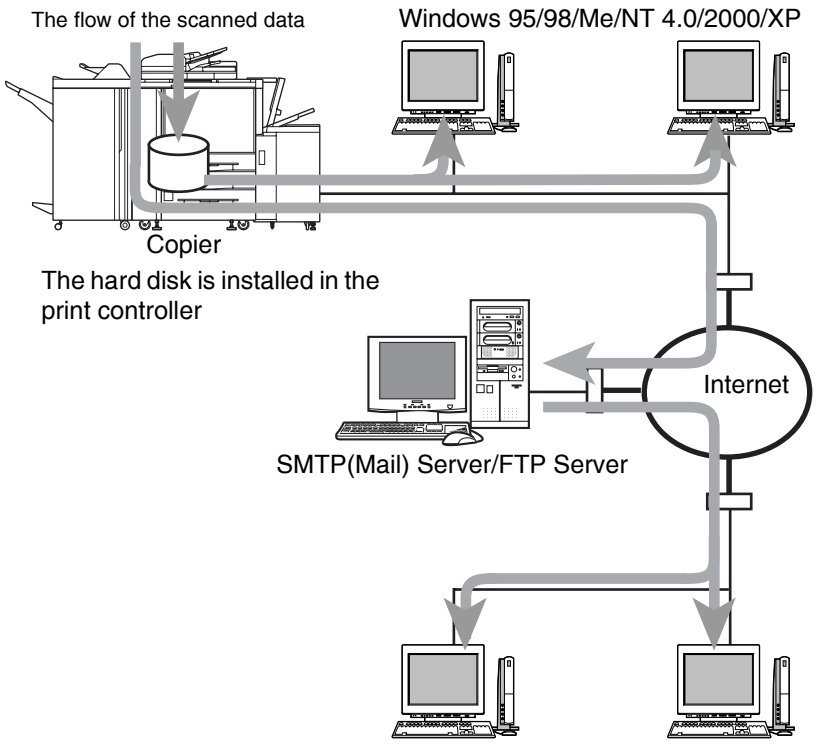
Reference (p.569) Setup for NetWare 4.x

MEMO

The PS3 option is required to print data from Macintosh.

Ethernet Connection (Continued)

●Connection using the network scanning function



You can retrieve scanned data stored in the hard disk of the print controller from a Windows computer in the same LAN. The scanned data can be transmitted as attached data via Email or uploaded to an FTP server.

Reference ●●► (p.432)

Using as a Printer

You must decide whether to connect the computer to the print controller with a parallel connection or an Ethernet connection. The following shows the outline of the preparation procedures for each connection.

●Parallel connection

You can use the copier from a computer running Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0/2000/XP with a parallel connection.

MEMO

Refer to "Section 2 How to Print" for detailed procedures.

Reference (p.37)

1. Connect the computer to the print controller with a parallel cable.

2. Install the printer driver in the computer.

The standard Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver and the optional Adobe PS3 printer driver are available as printer drivers.

3. Set up the property of the printer as required.

●Ethernet connection

You can use the copier from a computer in which Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0/2000/XP is running in the Ethernet connection. Using Adobe PS3 printer driver, you can use it from Macintosh.

MEMO

Refer to "Section 5 Network Settings (for Administrator)" for detailed procedures.

Reference (p.512)

1. Connect the print controller to Ethernet with an UTP cable.

Configure computers that are connected to the LAN first.

2. Set up the network configuration such as the IP address for the print controller and so on.

Configure the IP address from the control panel of the copier for the first time.

3. Install the printer driver in the computer.

The standard Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver and the optional Adobe PS3 printer driver are available as the printer driver.

4. Set up the property of the printer as required.

Important

The network interface card is optional.

Printer Driver

The printer driver is the software that is required to print data with a printer. It must be installed in a using computer. The standard Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver and the optional Adobe PS3 printer driver are provided for this printing system.

MEMO

Refer to "Section 2 How to Print" for detailed information on the printer driver.

Reference (p.37)

The installation procedures of each driver are different depending on your OS or the connection between the copier and the computer. Install it with the appropriate procedures.

Using as a Network Scanner

You must connect the printing system to Ethernet (100Base-TX/10Base-T) to use the network scanning features.

Important

The network interface card is optional.

MEMO

Refer to "Section 5 Network Settings (for Administrator)" for detailed procedures on connecting to Ethernet.

Reference (p.512)

You can retrieve scanned data stored in the hard disk installed in the print controller from the computer in which Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0/2000/XP.

It is recommended that you register the destination from the control panel of the copier before sending the scanned data via Email or upload it to an FTP server.

The following shows the outline of the preparation procedures of the network scanner.

MEMO

Refer to "Section 3 How to Scan" for detailed information on the network scanner features.

Reference (p.431)

1. Connect the print controller to Ethernet with a UTP cable.

Configure computers that are connected to the LAN first.

2. Set up the network configuration such as the IP address for the print controller and so on.

Configure the IP address from the control panel of the copier for the first time.

3. Register the destination.

Register the SMTP server or the FTP server to which the scanned data is sent from the control panel of the copier.

4. Install the network scanner driver in the computer.

Tips

The network scanner driver is required to use your computer to retrieve or delete the scanned data stored in the hard disk of the print controller.

Important

When scanning large amount of drafts, print data will not be printed while the scanned data is transferred to the hard disk of the print controller.
Wait until the transfer completes.

Section

2

How to Print

Chapter 4 How to Setup 38

Chapter 5 Printing from Windows 129

Chapter 6 Printing from Macintosh 331

Chapter 7 Tandem Print 417

Chapter 8 Managing the Number of Prints 421

Chapter 9 Troubleshooting 425

The Flow of the Setup

The setup procedures are required before using this printing system.

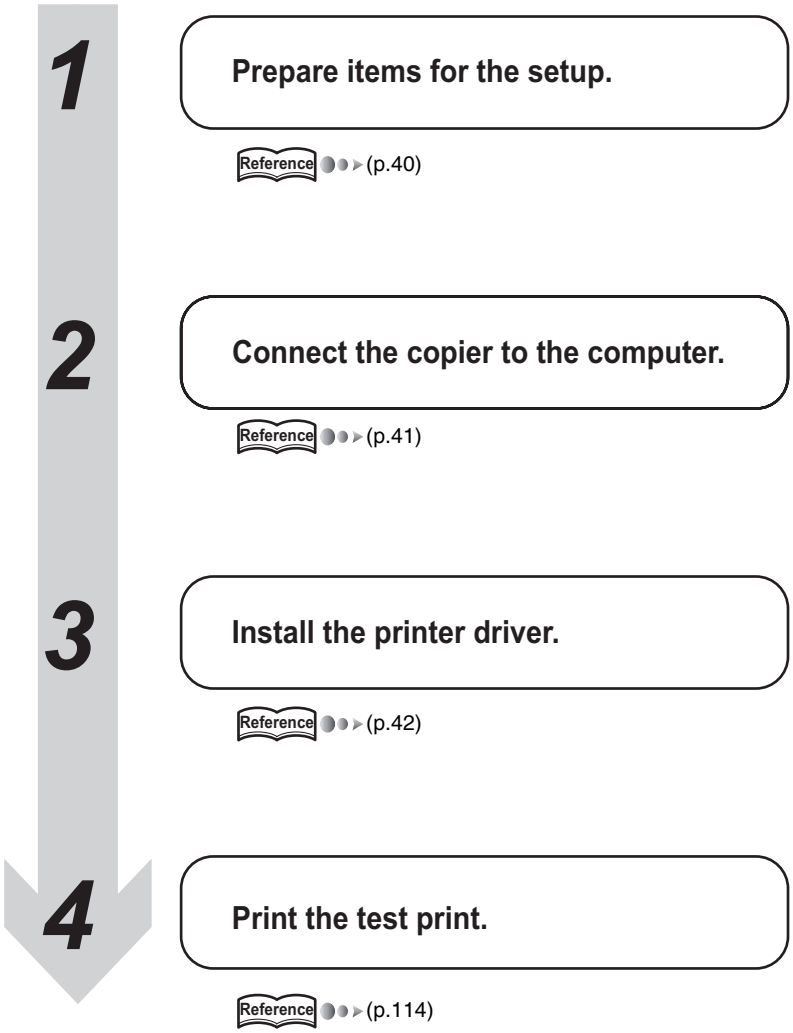
The setup procedures are the series of preparation to connect the copier to the computer and install the printer driver in the computer.

If you use this printing system in your computer for the first time, perform the setup as shown in "New Setup."

If you have been using this printing system and you want to install a new printer driver, perform the setup as shown in "Updating a Printer Driver."

●New Setup

To perform the setup for the first time:



The Flow of the Setup (Continued)

●Updating a Printer Driver

To update the current printer driver:

1 Prepare items for the setup.

Reference ▸(p.40)

2 Delete the current printer driver.

Reference ▸(p.119)

3 Restart the computer.

4 Install the printer driver.

Reference ▸(p.42)

5 Print the test print.

Reference ▸(p.114)

The installation procedures of the printer driver may be different depending on the printer driver or OS.

The deletion procedures of the printer driver may be different depending on the OS.

Items Required for the Setup

The following items are required for the setup.

Prepare them before starting the setup:

- User Software CD

  The contents of the User Software CD

  Reference (p.19)

- Parallel cable (centronics IEEE 1284)
  or
  Ethernet cable (100Base-TX or 10Base-T)

Important

Use the parallel cable if you want to connect the copier to the computer in parallel.

Reference (p.29) Parallel Connection

Use the Ethernet cable if you want to connect the copier to the computer in Ethernet.

Reference (p.30) Ethernet Connection

Connecting the copier

Connect the copier to the computer or the network after preparing the items required for the setup.

The following two connection types are available:

●Parallel connection

This is the connection type to directly connect this printing system to the computer with a parallel cable.

Connect the parallel connecter at the back of this printing system to the parallel connecter at the back of the computer directly with the parallel cable.

Reference ▶(p.29) Parallel Connection

●Ethernet connection

This is the connection type to take if you want to use this printing system on the network.

Connect the Ethernet connector (8-pin modular connector) on the optional network interface card at the back of this printing system to the network with the Ethernet cable.

Reference ▶(p.30) Ethernet Connection

Installing a Printer Driver

Make sure that the copier is connected to the computer or network before installing a printer driver. The installation procedures may be different depending on the printer driver or OS.

Installing on Windows 95/98/Me

- Install Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

Reference (p.43) Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e)

- Install Adobe PS3 printer driver (option)

Reference (p.49) Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3)

Installing on Windows NT 4.0

- Install Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

Reference (p.55) Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e)

- Install Adobe PS3 printer driver (option)

Reference (p.63) Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3)

Installing on Windows 2000

- Install Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

Reference (p.71) Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e)

- Install Adobe PS3 printer driver (option)

Reference (p.81) Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3)

Installing on Windows XP

- Install Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

Reference (p.91) Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e)

- Install Adobe PS3 printer driver (option)

Reference (p.101) Installing to Windows XP (PS3)

Installing on Macintosh (Adobe PS3 printer driver (option) only)

Reference (p.111) Installing to Macintosh (PS3)

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e)

To install the printer driver to Windows 95/98/Me, perform the following steps.

Please keep the "User Software CD" on hand; it is required to install the printer driver.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows 95/98/Me.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

2. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] from the Start menu to click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

The [Printers] window will appear.

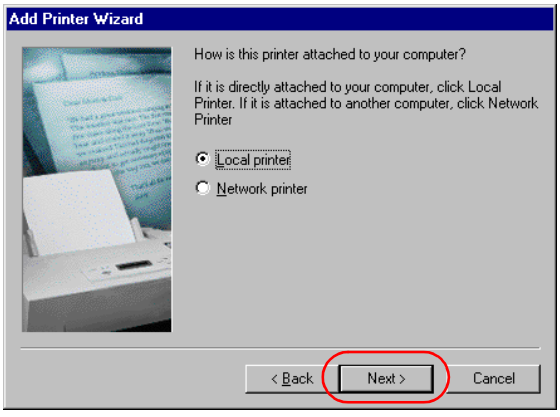
3. Double-click the [Add Printer] icon of the [Printers] window.

The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear for setting the printer.

Add Printer Wizard
This wizard will help you to install your printer quickly and easily.
To begin installing your printer, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

4. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
How is this printer attached to your computer?
If it is directly attached to your computer, click Local Printer. If it is attached to another computer, click Network Printer
Local printer
Network printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If your computer does not have the network setting, go to step 6.

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e) (Continued)

5. Select [Local printer] or [Network printer].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [Local printer].

When personal computers are connected to a network and you want to print via the network, select [Network printer].

Tips

When using the network printer, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

MEMO

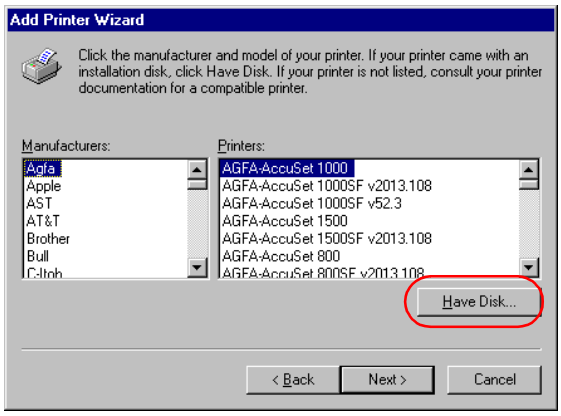
If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting the [Local Printer]" step 1 .

Reference (p.45)

6. Click the [Next] button.

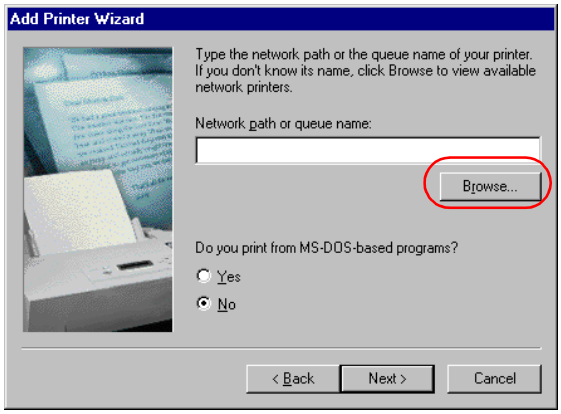
If you have selected the [Local printer] at step 5, the window to select the printer manifacturer and model will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Local Printer]".

Reference (p.45)



If you have selected [Network printer] at step 5, the window to set the network path or queue name will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Network printer]".

Reference (p.48)

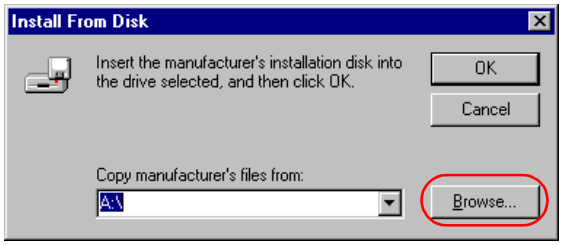

Add Printer Wizard
Type the network path or the queue name of your printer. If you don't know its name, click Browse to view available network printers.
Network path or queue name:
Browse...
Do you print from MS-DOS-based programs?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Local Printer]

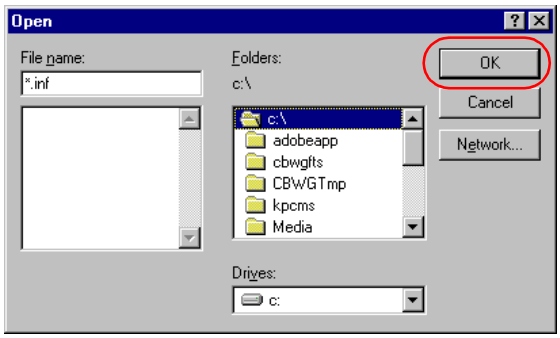
1. Click the [Have Disk] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



2. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Open] window will appear.



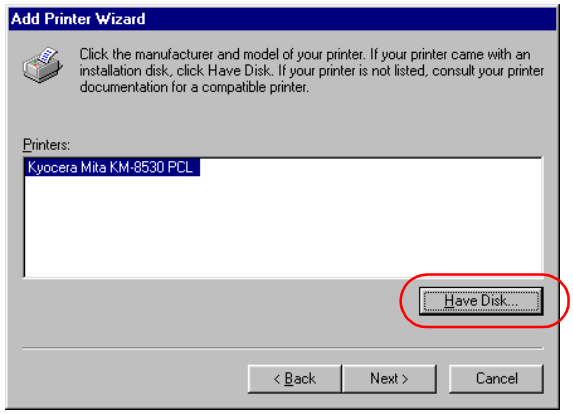
3. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

4. Change [Drive] to CD-ROM drive.

5. Select the [oemsetup.inf] file in the "\English\Printer\Win9x_Me" folder of the "User Software CD" and click the [OK] button.

6. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Click the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Printers:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e) (Continued)

7. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is highlighted.

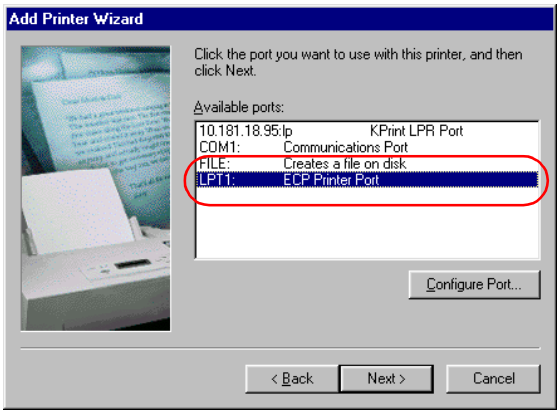
[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is the printer name of the default.

MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

8. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to assign a port will appear.

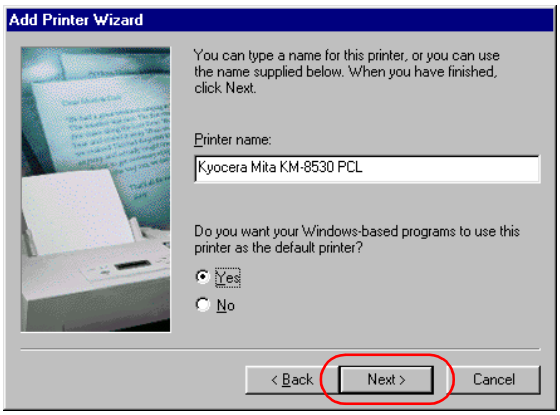

Add Printer Wizard
Click the port you want to use with this printer, and then click Next.
Available ports:
10.181.18.95:lp KPrint LPR Port
COM1: Communications Port
FILE: Creates a file on disk
LPT1: ECP Printer Port
Configure Port...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Select the port to which the printing system is connected.

Select LPT port when the printing system is used as a local printer.

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to specify the printer name will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
You can type a name for this printer, or you can use the name supplied below. When you have finished, click Next.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

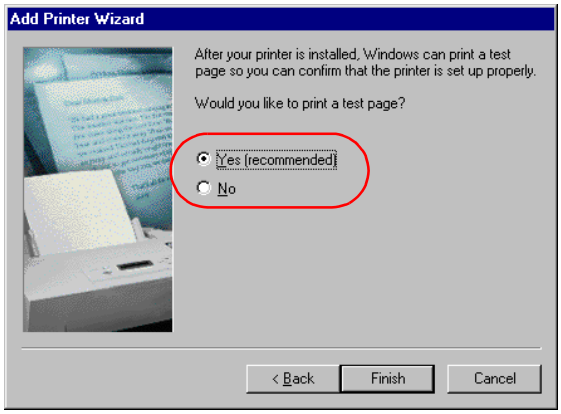
MEMO

If you are installing the first printer to your computer, the [Default printer] setting will not appear. The first printer installed automatically becomes the default printer.

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e) (Continued)

13. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
After your printer is installed, Windows can print a test page so you can confirm that the printer is set up properly.
Would you like to print a test page?
Yes (recommended)
No
< Back
Finish
Cancel

14. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes (recommended)] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

15. Click the [Finish] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation.

If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 15, printing of the test page starts.

16. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 15, the test page will not be printed.
If the test page is printed properly, click the [Yes] button.

17. The installation is completed.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Network printer]

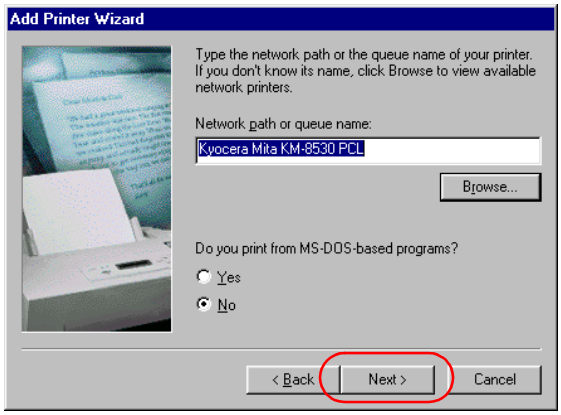
1. If you have selected the [Network printer] at step 5 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard" type the [Network path or queue name] text box and click the [Next] button.

Tips

If you don't know its name, click the [Browse] button to view available network printers.

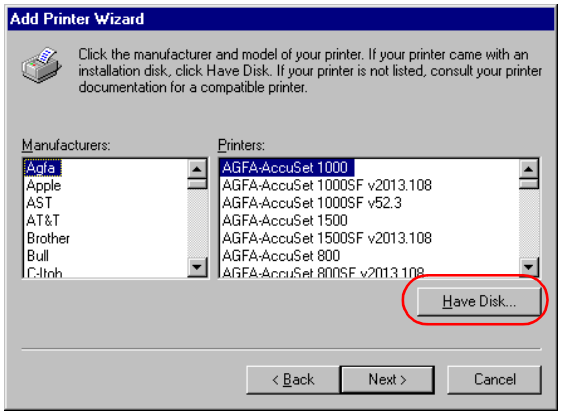
If the printer driver for Windows 95/98/Me is saved in the server, the window to check/change the printer name will appear. In this case, go to step 12 of "When selecting the [Local Printer]".

Reference (p.46)


Add Printer Wizard
Type the network path or the queue name of your printer. If you don't know its name, click Browse to view available network printers.
Network path or queue name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Browse...
Do you print from MS-DOS-based programs?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If the printer driver for Windows 95/98/Me is not saved in the server, the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. In this case, go to step 1 of "When selecting the [Local Printer]".

Reference (p.45)



Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3)

To install the Adobe PS3 printer driver to Windows95/98/Me, perform the following steps.
Please keep the "User Software CD" on hand; it is required to install the printer driver.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows 95/98/Me.

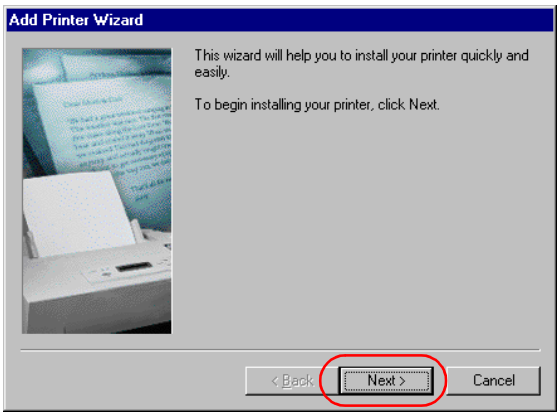
MEMO
Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

2. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] from the Start menu to click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

The [Printers] window will appear.

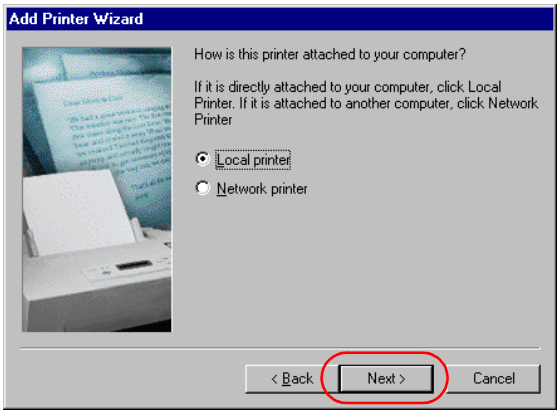
3. Double-click the [Add Printer] icon of the [Printers] window.

The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear to set the printer.


Add Printer Wizard
This wizard will help you to install your printer quickly and easily.
To begin installing your printer, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

4. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
How is this printer attached to your computer?
If it is directly attached to your computer, click Local Printer. If it is attached to another computer, click Network Printer
Local printer
Network printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3) (Continued)

5. Select the [Local printer] or the [Network printer].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [Local printer].

When personal computers are connected to a network and you want to print via the network, select [Network printer].

Tips

When using the network printer, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

MEMO

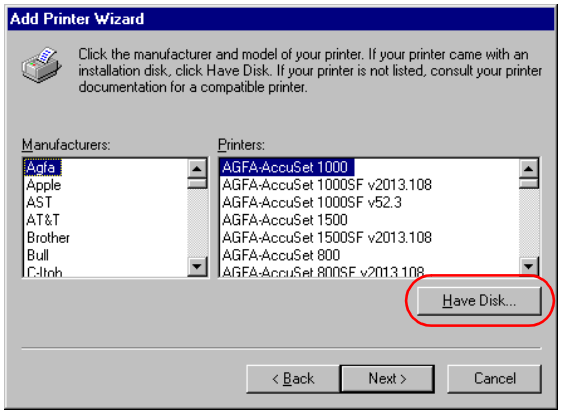
If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting the [Local Printer]" step 1 .

Reference (p.45)

6. Click the [Next] button.

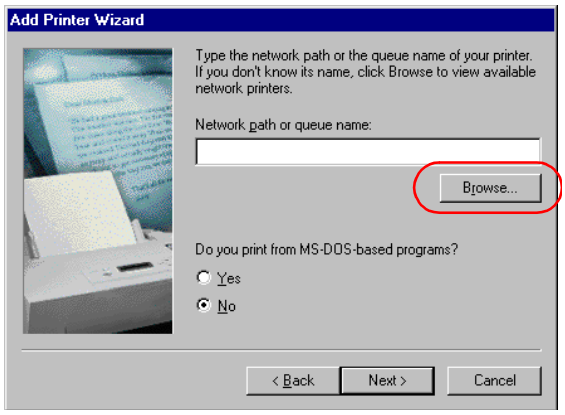
If you have selected the [Local printer] at step 5, the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Local Printer]".

Reference (p.45)



If you have selected [Network printer] at step 5, the window to set the network path or queue name will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Network printer]".

Reference (p.48)

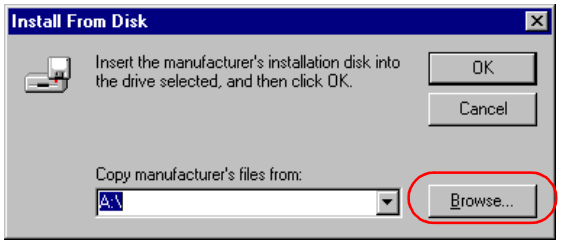

Add Printer Wizard
Type the network path or the queue name of your printer. If you don't know its name, click Browse to view available network printers.
Network path or queue name:
Browse...
Do you print from MS-DOS-based programs?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Local printer]

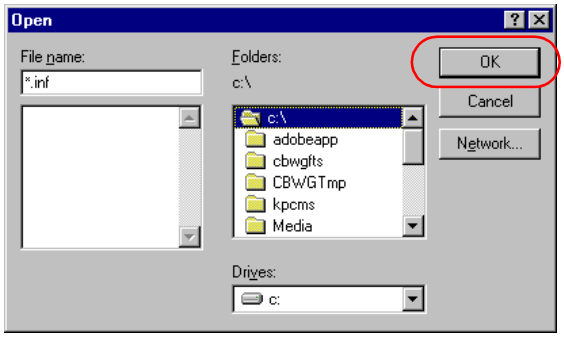
1. Click the [Have Disk] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



2. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Open] window will appear.



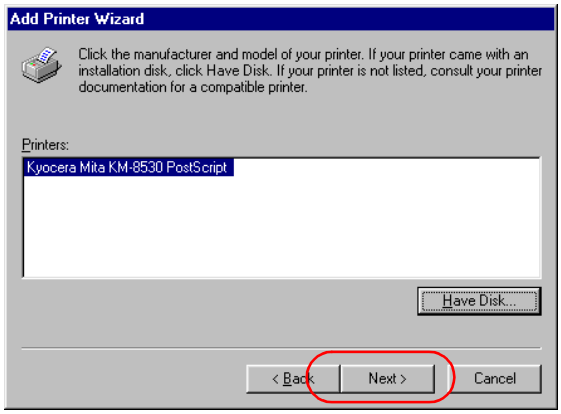
3. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

4. Change [Drive] to CD-ROM drive.

5. Select the [oemsetup.inf] file in the "\English\Driver\AdobePS\Win9x_Me" folder of the "User Software CD" and click the [OK] button.

6. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Click the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Printers:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3) (Continued)

7. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is highlighted.

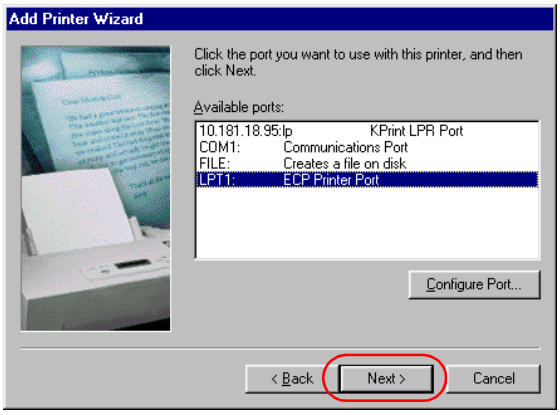
[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is the printer name of the default.

MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

8. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to assign a port will appear.

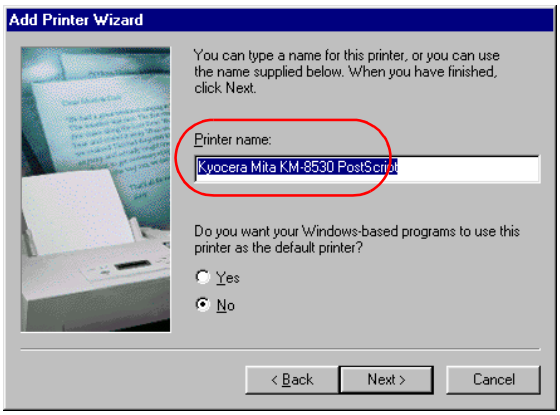

Add Printer Wizard
Click the port you want to use with this printer, and then click Next.
Available ports:
10.181.18.95:lp KPrint LPR Port
COM1: Communications Port
FILE: Creates a file on disk
LPT1: ECP Printer Port
Configure Port...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Select the port to which the printing system is connected.

Select LPT port when the printing system is used as a local printer.

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to specify the printer name will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
You can type a name for this printer, or you can use the name supplied below. When you have finished, click Next.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

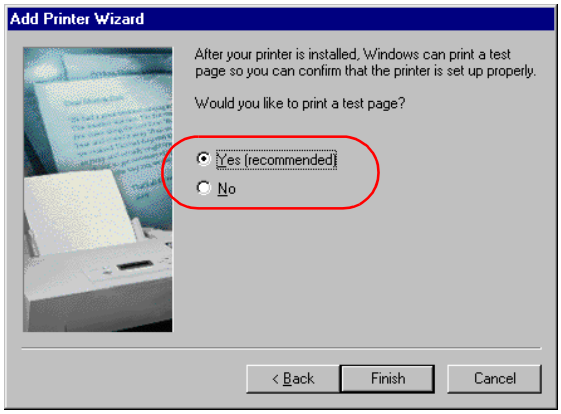
MEMO

If you are installing the first printer to your computer, the [Default printer] setting will not appear. The first printer installed automatically becomes the default printer.

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3) (Continued)

13. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
After your printer is installed, Windows can print a test page so you can confirm that the printer is set up properly.
Would you like to print a test page?
Yes (recommended)
No
< Back
Finish
Cancel

14. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes (recommended)] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

15. Click the [Finish] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation.
If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 15, performing of the test print starts.

16. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 15, the test page will not be printed.
If the test page is printed properly, click the [Yes] button.

17. The installation is completed.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows 95/98/Me (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Network printer]

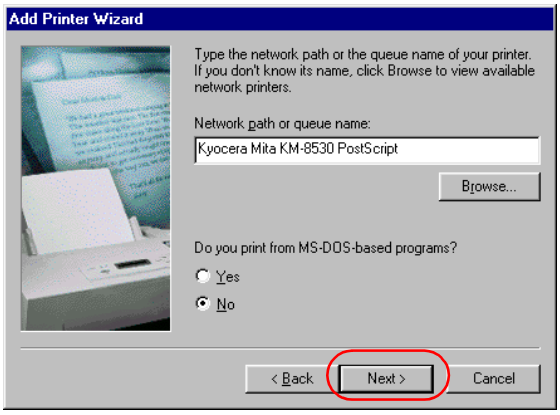
1. If you have selected the [Network printer] at step 5 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard," type the [Network path or queue name] text box and click the [Next] button.

Tips

If you don't know its name, click the [Browse] button to view available network printers.

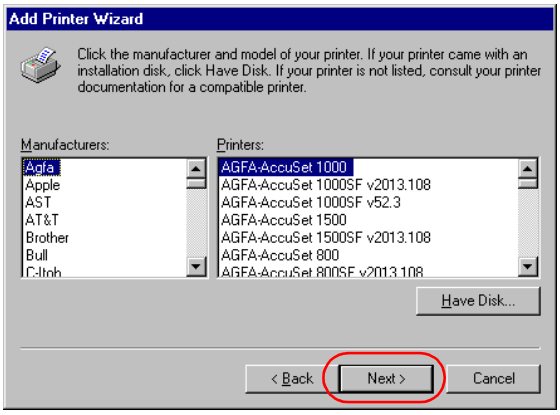
If the printer driver for Windows 95/98/Me is saved in the server, the window to check/change the printer name will appear. In this case, go to step 12 of "When selecting the [Local printer]".

Reference (p.52)


Add Printer Wizard
Type the network path or the queue name of your printer. If you don't know its name, click Browse to view available network printers.
Network path or queue name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Browse...
Do you print from MS-DOS-based programs?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If the printer driver for Windows 95/98/Me is not saved in the server, the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. In this case, go to step 1 of "When selecting the [Local printer]".

Reference (p.51)



Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e)

To install the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver to Windows NT4.0, perform the following steps. The installation should be performed by a qualified system administrator or printer administrator.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows NT4.0.

2. Log on as an administrator (or a user entitled to install a printer).

3. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] of the Start menu and click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

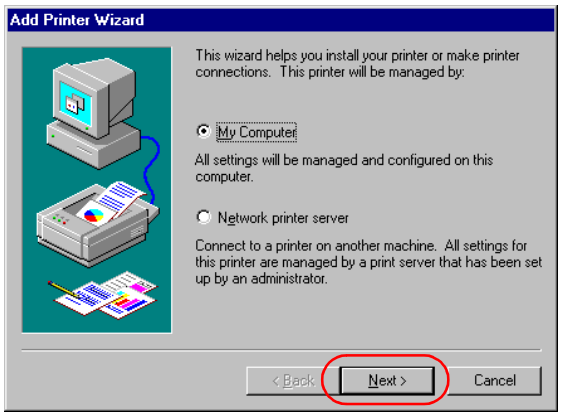
The [Printers] window will appear.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

4. Double-click the [Add Printer] icon of the [Printers] window.

The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear to add the printer.


Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install your printer or make printer connections. This printer will be managed by:
My Computer
All settings will be managed and configured on this computer.
Network printer server
Connect to a printer on another machine. All settings for this printer are managed by a print server that has been set up by an administrator.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. Select [My computer] or [Network printer server].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [My computer]. When the printing system is managed in a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, also select [My computer].

When personal computers or workstations are connected to the network and you want to print via the network, select [Network printer server].

Tips

When using the network printer server, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

MEMO

If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting [My computer]" step 1.

Reference ▸▸ (p.57)

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) (Continued)

6. Click the [Next] button.

If you have selected [My Computer] at step 5, the window to select the printer port will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the My computer."

If you have selected the [Network printer server] at step 5, the [Printer Connection] window will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the Network printer server."

Reference ▸ (p.57) When selecting [My computer]

Reference ▸ (p.61) When selecting the [Network printer server]

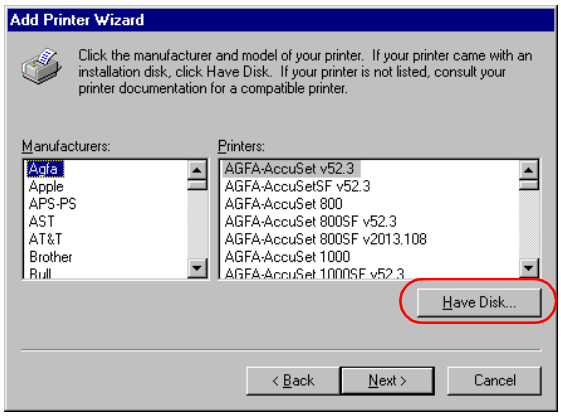
Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting [My computer]

1. If you have selected [My Computer] at step 5 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard," select the checkbox of the port connecting the printer, and click the [Next] button.

Select the port to which the printing system is directly connected.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.



MEMO

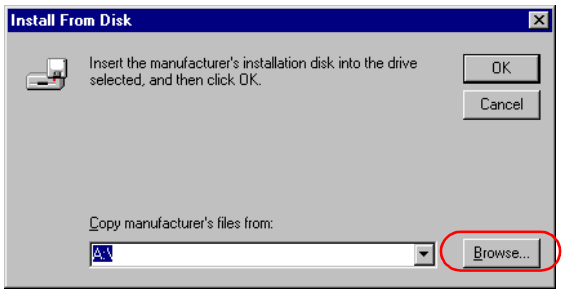
If you want to print directly to the printing system via the network, select the LPR port. For details, see your network administrator.

Refer to Section 5, "Network Settings (for Administrator)" for more details.

Reference (p.557) LPD/LPR Setup

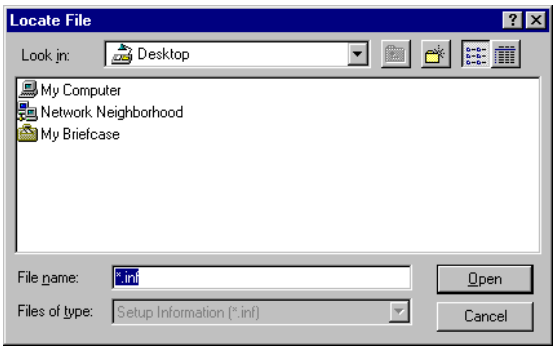
2. Click the [Have Disk] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



3. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Locate File] window will appear.



Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) (Continued)

4. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

5. Change [Look in] to CD-ROM drive.

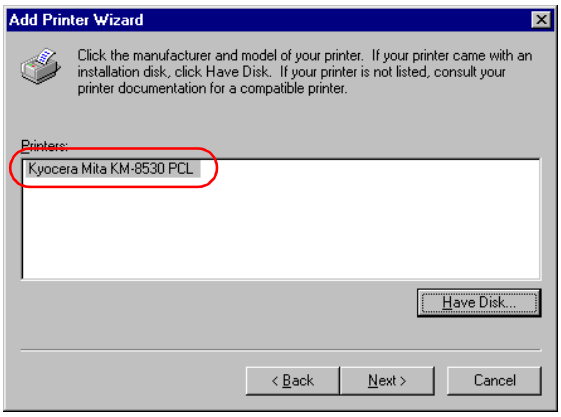
6. View the [\English\Printer\WinNT_2000_Xp] folder in the list.

7. Click [Printer.inf] in the [File name] text box, then click the [Open] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.

8. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the manufacturer and model of the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Click the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Printers:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is highlighted.

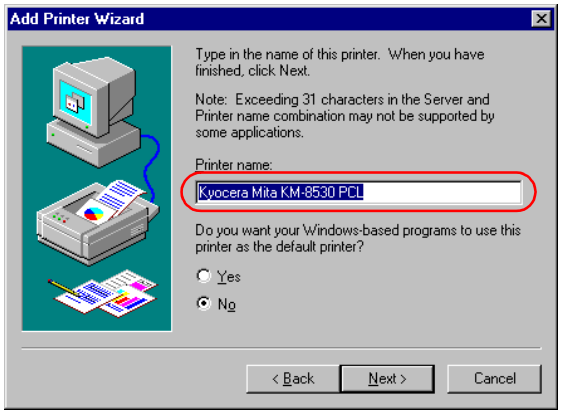
[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is the printer name of the default.

MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Type in the name of this printer. When you have finished, click Next.
Note: Exceeding 31 characters in the Server and Printer name combination may not be supported by some applications.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) (Continued)

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

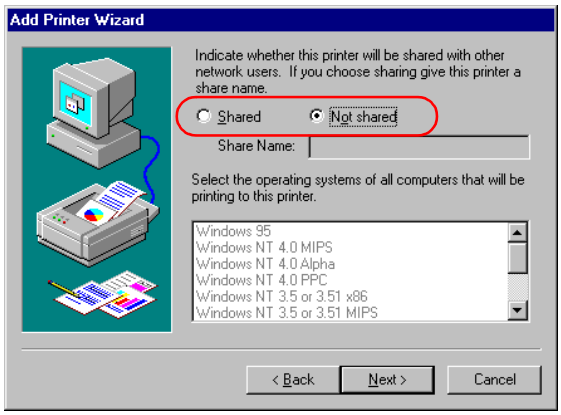
Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

MEMO

If you are installing the first printer to your computer, the [Default printer] setting will not appear. The first printer installed automatically becomes the default printer.

13. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.

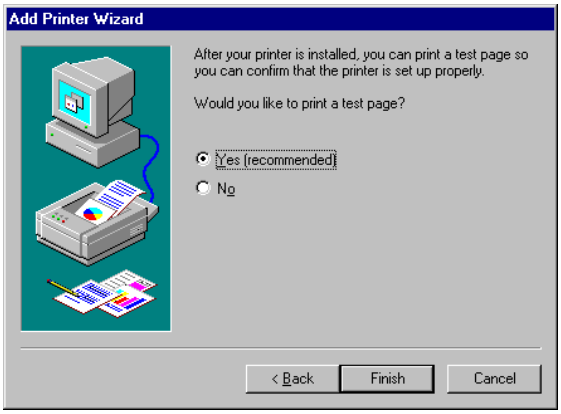

Add Printer Wizard
Indicate whether this printer will be shared with other network users. If you choose sharing give this printer a share name.
Shared
Not shared
Share Name:
Select the operating systems of all computers that will be printing to this printer.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51 MIPS
< Back
Next >
Cancel

14. Select whether to share the printer or not.

Select [Shared] or [Not shared] checkbox.
You can select the Network Client OS using the shared printer from the list displayed at the lower part of the window.

15. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
After your printer is installed, you can print a test page so you can confirm that the printer is set up properly.
Would you like to print a test page?
Yes (recommended)
No
< Back
Finish
Cancel

16. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

MEMO

Printing the test page is also possible after the installation of the printer driver.

Reference ▶▶ (p.114) Test Page Print

17. Click the [Finish] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation.
If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 16, performing of the test print starts.

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) (Continued)

18. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 16, the test page will not be printed.
If the test page is printed properly, click the [Yes] button.

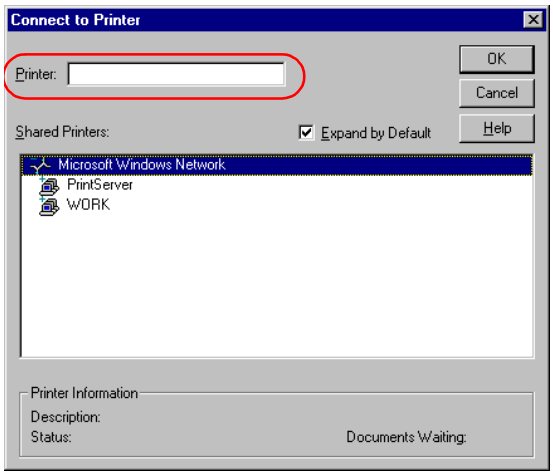
19. The installation is completed.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Network printer server]

1. If you have selected the [Network printer server] at step 5 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard," type the network path in the [Printer] textbox, and click the [OK] button.



Tips

If you don't know the network path, search in the [Shared Printer] list to view and select available network printers.

Important

Depending on your server and the state of your computer, steps differ as follows.

- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is installed in the server and a different printer is installed in the computer:
  Go to step 2.
  Reference (p.62)
- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is installed in the server and the printer will be the first printer installed on the computer:
  Go to step 3.
  Reference (p.62)
- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is not installed in the server and a different printer is installed in the computer:
  A message is displayed. If you click [OK], the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. Follow the same procedure from step 2 to 10 of "When selecting [My computer]," and install the printer driver for Windows NT4.0.
  Reference (p.57)
  After the installation, go to step 2.
  Reference (p.62)
- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is not installed in the server and the printer will be the first printer installed on the computer:
- A message is displayed. If you click [OK], the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. Follow the same procedure from step 2 to 10 of "When selecting [My computer]," and install the printer driver for Windows NT4.0.
  Reference (p.57)
  After the installation, go to step 3.
  Reference (p.62)

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e) (Continued)

2. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not, and follow the procedure from step 15 of "When selecting [My computer]."

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

Reference (p.59)

3. Click the [Finish] button.

The installation is completed. The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3)

To install the AdobePS3 printer driver to Windows NT4.0, perform the following steps. The installation should be performed by a qualified system administrator or printer administrator.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows NT4.0.

2. Log on as an administrator (or a user entitled to install a printer).

3. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] of the Start menu and click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

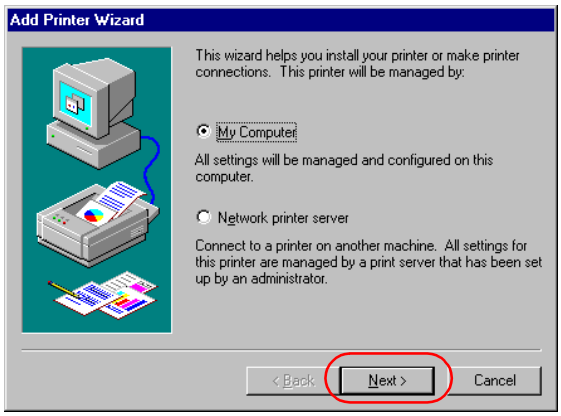
The [Printers] window will appear.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

4. Double-click the [Add Printer] icon of the [Printers] window.

The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear to add the printer.


Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install your printer or make printer connections. This printer will be managed by:
My Computer
All settings will be managed and configured on this computer.
Network printer server
Connect to a printer on another machine. All settings for this printer are managed by a print server that has been set up by an administrator.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. Select [My Computer] or the [Network printer server].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [My computer]. When the printing system is managed in a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, also select [My computer].

When personal computers or workstations are connected to the network and you want to print via the network, select [Network printer server].

Tips

When using the network printer server, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

MEMO

If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting [My computer]" step 1.

Reference ▶▶ (p.65)

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) (Continued)

6. Click the [Next] button.

If you have selected [My Computer] at step 5, the window to select the printer port will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting [My computer]".

Reference (p.65) When selecting [My computer]

If you have selected the [Network printer server] at step 5, the [Printer Connection] window will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Network printer server]".

Reference (p.69) When selecting the [Network printer server]

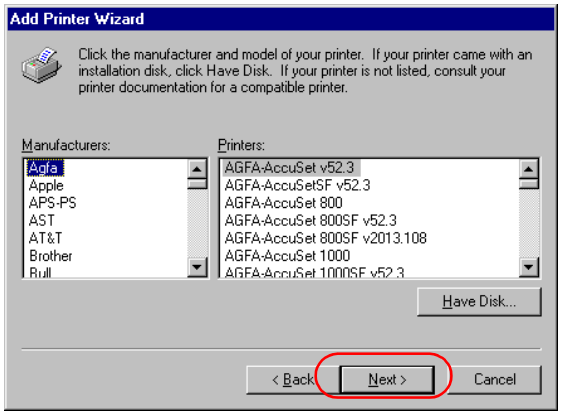
Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting [My computer]

1. If you have selected [My Computer] at step 5 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard," select the checkbox of the port connecting the printer, and click the [Next] button.

Select the port to which the printing system is directly connected.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.



MEMO

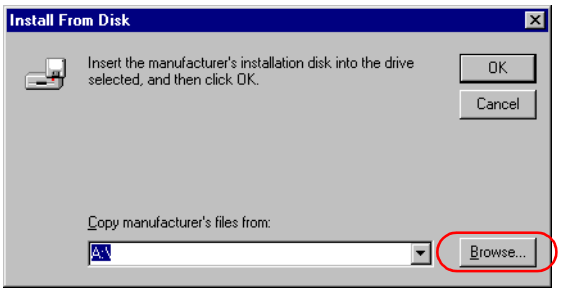
If you want to print directly to the printing system via the network, select the LPR port. For details, see your network administrator.

Refer to Section 5, "Network Settings (for Administrator)" for more details.

Reference ▶▶ (p.557) LPD/LPR Setup

2. Click the [Have Disk] button.

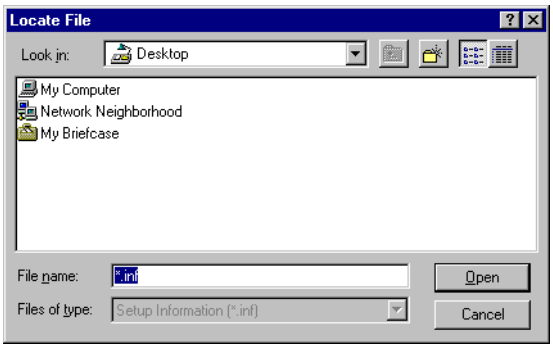
The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) (Continued)

3. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Locate File] window will appear.



4. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

5. Change [Look in] to CD-ROM drive.

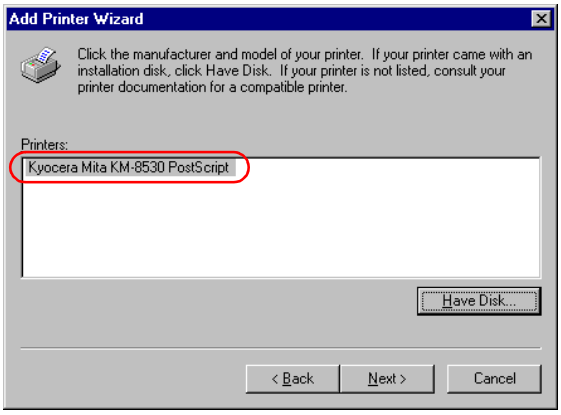
6. View the [\English\Driver\AdobePS\WinNT] folder in the list.

7. Click [OEMSETUP.inf] in the list of [File name] text box, then click the [Open] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.

8. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the manufacturer and model of the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Click the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Printers:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript] is highlighted.

[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript] is the printer name of the default.

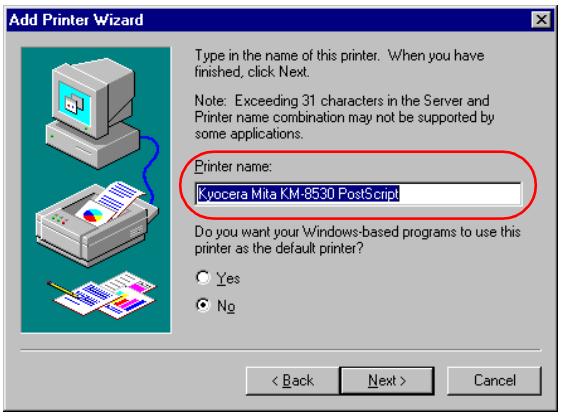
MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) (Continued)

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Type in the name of this printer. When you have finished, click Next.
Note: Exceeding 31 characters in the Server and Printer name combination may not be supported by some applications.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

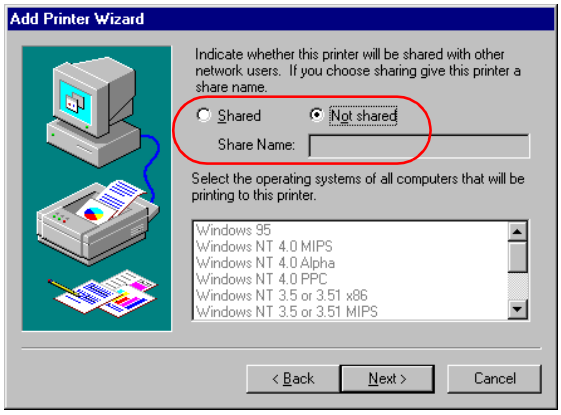
Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

MEMO

If you install a printer to the computer for the first time, [Default printer] setting will not appear, and the first printer installed will be the default printer.

13. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select whether to share the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Indicate whether this printer will be shared with other network users. If you choose sharing give this printer a share name.
Shared
Not shared
Share Name:
Select the operating systems of all computers that will be printing to this printer.
Windows 95
Windows NT 4.0 MIPS
Windows NT 4.0 Alpha
Windows NT 4.0 PPC
Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51 x86
Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51 MIPS
< Back
Next >
Cancel

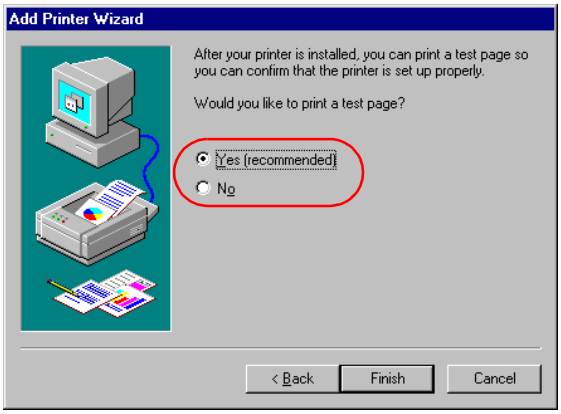
14. Select whether to share the printer or not.

Select [Shared] or [Not shared] checkbox.
You can select the Network Client OS using the shared printer from the list displayed at the lower part of the window.

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) (Continued)

15. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
After your printer is installed, you can print a test page so you can confirm that the printer is set up properly.
Would you like to print a test page?
Yes (recommended)
No
< Back
Finish
Cancel

16. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

MEMO

Printing the test page is also possible after the installation of the printer driver.

Reference (p.114) Test Page Print

17. Click the [Finish] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation.

If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 16, performing of the test print starts.

18. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 16, the test page will not be printed.

If the test page is printed properly, click the [Yes] button.

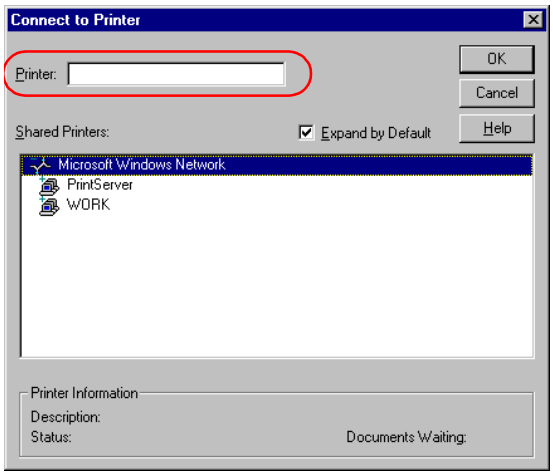
19. The installation is completed.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Network printer server]

1. If you have selected the [Network printer server] at step 5 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard," type the network path in the [Printer] textbox, and click the [OK] button.



Tips

If you don't know the network path, search in the [Shared Printer] list to view and select available network printers.

Important

Depending on your server and the state of your computer, steps differ as follows.

- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is installed in the server and a different printer is installed in the computer:
  Go to step 2.
  Reference (p.70)
- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is installed in the server and the printer will be the first printer installed on the computer:
  Go to step 3.
  Reference (p.70)
- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is not installed in the server and a different printer is installed in the computer:
  A message is displayed. If you click [OK], the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. Follow the same procedure from step 2 to 10 of "When selecting [My computer],"and install the printer driver for Windows NT4.0.
  Reference (p.65)
  After the installation, go to step 2.
  Reference (p.70)
- If the printer driver for Windows NT4.0 is not installed in the server and the printer will be the first printer installed on the computer:
- A message is displayed. If you click [OK], the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. Follow the same procedure from step 2 to 10 of "When selecting [My computer]," and install the printer driver for Windows NT4.0.
  Reference (p.65)
  After the installation, go to step 3.
  Reference (p.70)

Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PS3) (Continued)

2. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not, and follow the procedure from step 15 of "When selecting [My computer]."

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

Reference (p.68)

3. Click the [Finish] button.

The installation is completed. The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e)

To install the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver to Windows 2000, perform the following steps.

The installation should be performed by a qualified system administrator or printer administrator.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

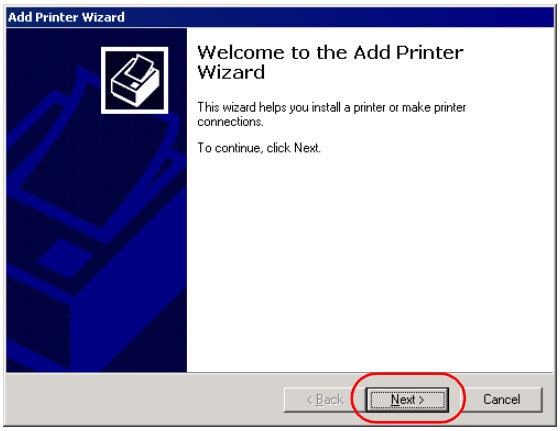
1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows 2000.**
2. **Log on as an administrator (or a user entitled to install a printer).**
3. **Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] of the Start menu and click [Printers] from the sub-menu.**

   The [Printers] window will appear.

   MEMO

   Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.
4. **Double-click the [Add Printer] icon of the [Printers] window.**

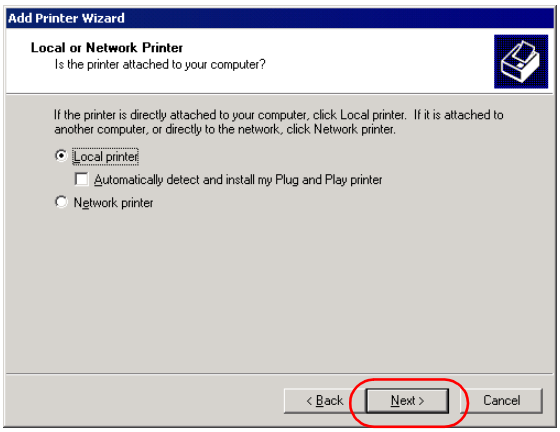
   The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear to add the printer.


Add Printer Wizard
Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install a printer or make printer connections.
To continue, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

5. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
Is the printer attached to your computer?
If the printer is directly attached to your computer, click Local printer. If it is attached to another computer, or directly to the network, click Network printer.
Local printer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
Network printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. Select the [Local printer] or the [Network printer].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [Local printer]. When the printing system is managed in a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, also select [Local printer].

When selecting the [Local printer], turn the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] setting "off".

When personal computers or workstations are connected to the network and you want to print via the network, select [Network printer].

Tips

When using the network printer, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

MEMO

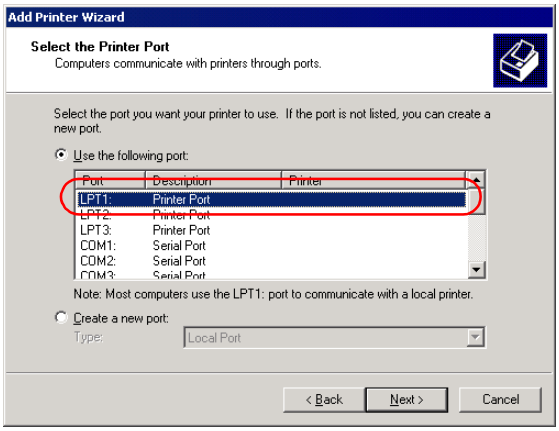
If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting the [Local printer]" step 1 .

Reference (p.74)

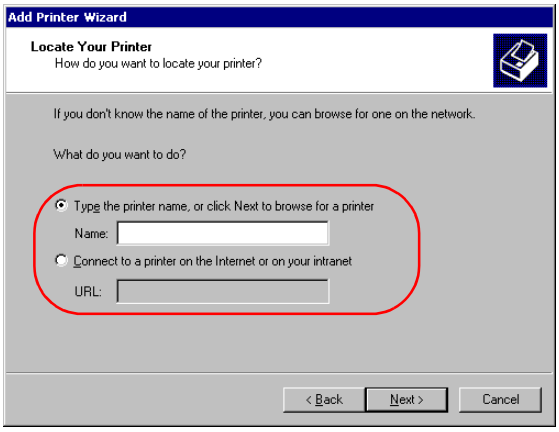
Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

7. Click the [Next] button.

If you have selected the [Local printer] at step 6, the window to select the printer Port will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Local printer]".



If you have selected [Network printer] at step 6, the window to set the printer name will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Network printer]".


Add Printer Wizard
Locate Your Printer
How do you want to locate your printer?
If you don't know the name of the printer, you can browse for one on the network.
What do you want to do?
Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer
Name:
Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet
URL:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

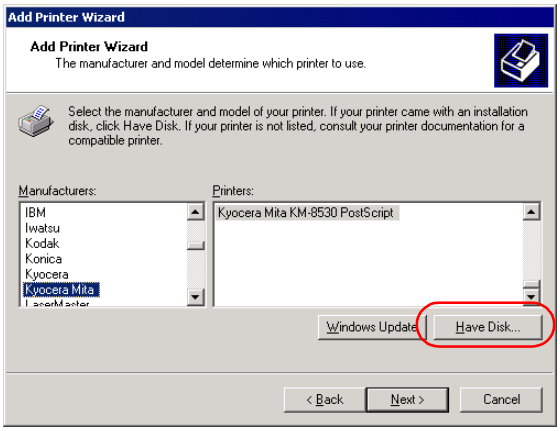
Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Local printer]

1. If you have selected [Local printer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", select the port connecting the printer, and click the [Next] button.

Select the port to which the printing system is directly connected.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Add Printer Wizard
The manufacturer and model determine which printer to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Manufacturers:
Printers:
IBM
Iwatsu
Kodak
Konica
Kyocera
Kyocera Mita
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

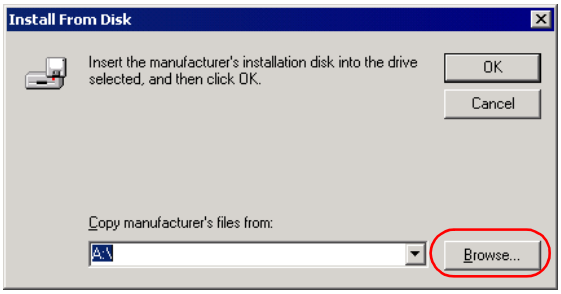
If you want to print directly to the printing system via the network, select the LPR port. For details, see your network administrator.

Refer to Section 5, "Network Settings (for Administrator)" for more details.

Reference (p.557) LPD/LPR Setup

2. Click the [Have Disk] button.

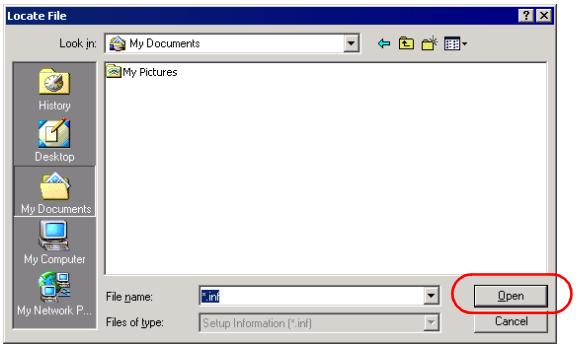
The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

3. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Locate File] window will appear.



4. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

5. Change [Look in] to CD-ROM drive.

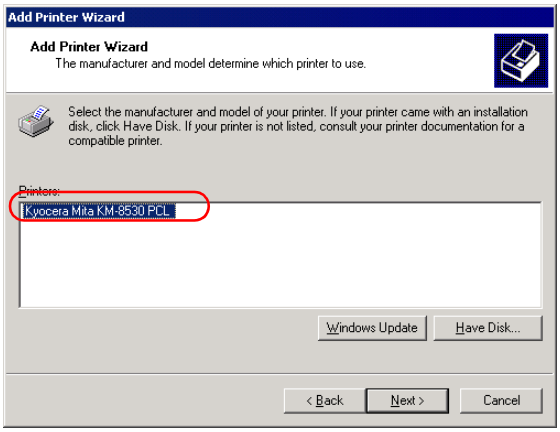
6. View the [\English\Printer\WinNT_2000_Xp] folder in the list.

7. Click [Printer.inf] in the [File name] text box, then click the [Open] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.

8. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the manufacturer and model of the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Add Printer Wizard
The manufacturer and model determine which printer to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Printers:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is highlighted.

[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is the printer name of the default.

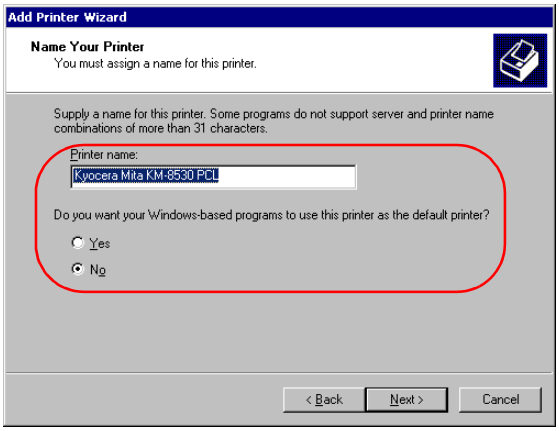
MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Name Your Printer
You must assign a name for this printer.
Supply a name for this printer. Some programs do not support server and printer name combinations of more than 31 characters.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

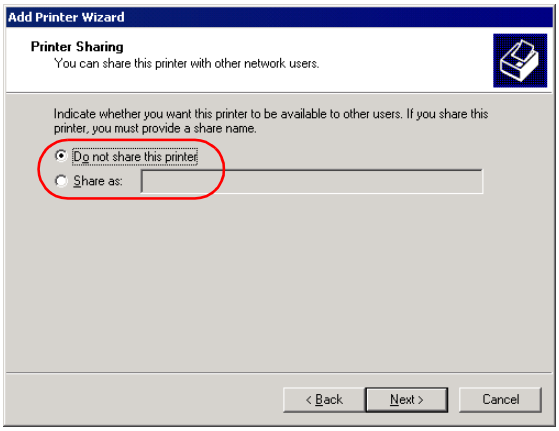
Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

MEMO

If you are installing the first printer to your computer, the [Default printer] setting will not appear. The first printer installed automatically becomes the default printer.

13. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Printer Sharing
You can share this printer with other network users.
Indicate whether you want this printer to be available to other users. If you share this printer, you must provide a share name.
Do not share this printer
Share as:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

14. Select whether to share the printer or not.

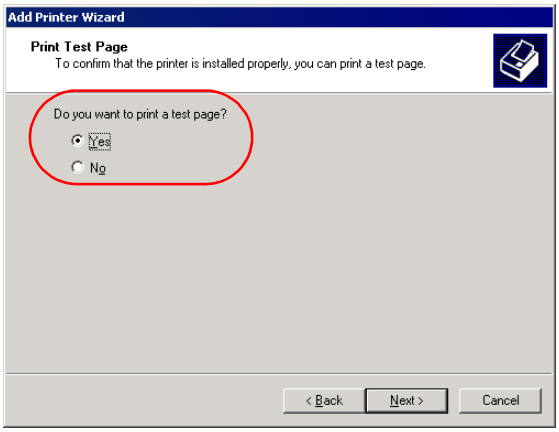
Select [Share as] or [Do not share this printer] checkbox.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

15. Click the [Next] button.

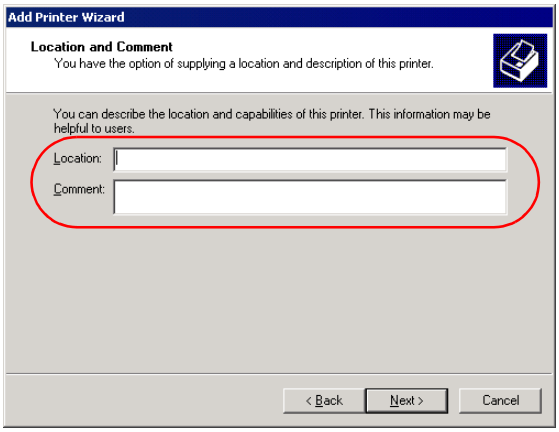
If you have selected [Do not share this printer] at step 14, the next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear. In this case, go to step 18.

Reference (p.78)


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If you have selected [Share as] at step 14, the next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear. In this case, go to step 16.

Reference (p.77)

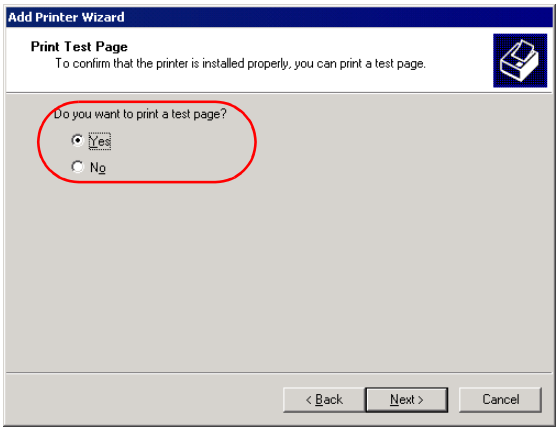

Add Printer Wizard
Location and Comment
You have the option of supplying a location and description of this printer.
You can describe the location and capabilities of this printer. This information may be helpful to users.
Location:
Comment:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

16. If you have selected [Share as] at step 14, enter the location of the shared printer and comment in the [Location] and [Comment] textbox.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

17. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

18. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes (recommended)] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

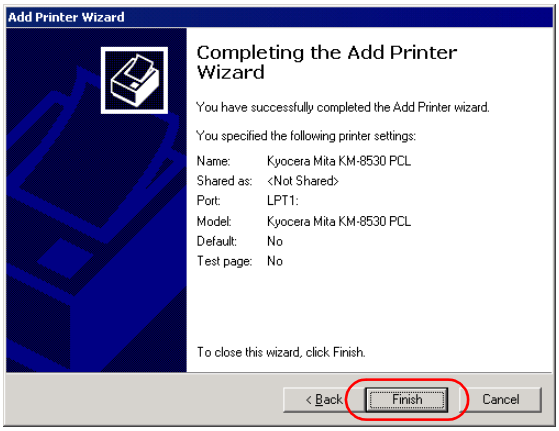
MEMO

Printing the test page is also possible after the installation of the printer driver.

Reference (p.114) Test Page Print

19. Click the [Next] button.

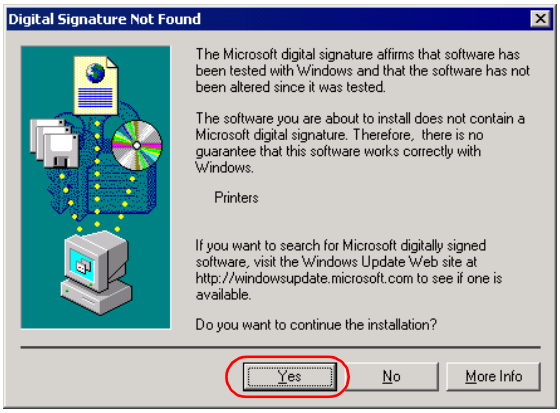
The [Add Printer Wizard] completion window will appear.



Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

20. Click the [Finish] button.

[Digital Signature Not Found] window will appear.


Digital Signature Not Found
The Microsoft digital signature affirms that software has been tested with Windows and that the software has not been altered since it was tested.
The software you are about to install does not contain a Microsoft digital signature. Therefore, there is no guarantee that this software works correctly with Windows.
Printers
If you want to search for Microsoft digitally signed software, visit the Windows Update Web site at http://windowsupdate.microsoft.com to see if one is available.
Do you want to continue the installation?
Yes
No
More Info

21. Click the [Yes] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation. The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer. If you click the [No] button, the installation will not complete.

If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 18, performing of the test print starts.

22. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 18, the test page will not be printed.

If the test page is printed properly, click the [OK] button.

23. The installation is completed.

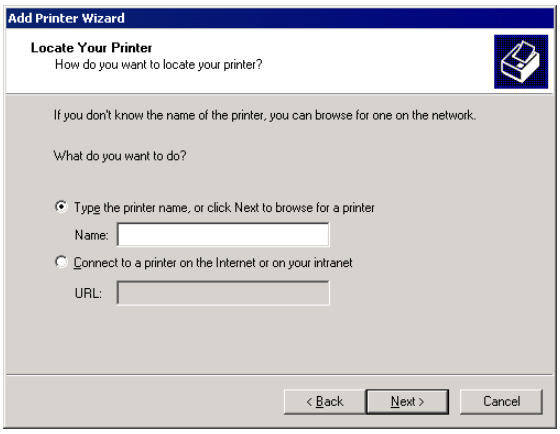
The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Network printer]

1. If you have selected the [Network printer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", type the network printer name in the [Name] textbox or type the URL in the [URL] textbox, and click the [Next] button.

If the printer driver for Windows 2000 is saved in the server, the window to set the default printer will appear. In this case, go to step 2.


Add Printer Wizard
Locate Your Printer
How do you want to locate your printer?
If you don't know the name of the printer, you can browse for one on the network.
What do you want to do?
Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer
Name:
Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet
URL:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Tips

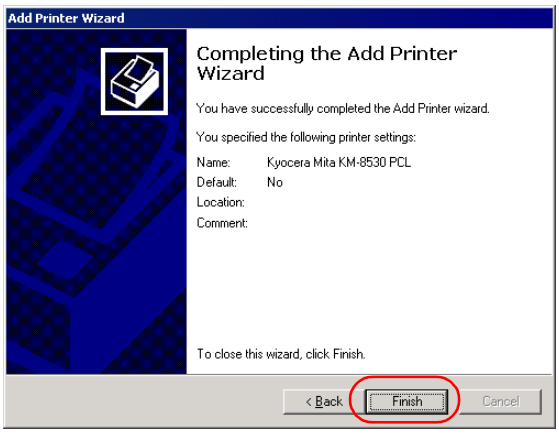
If you don't know the network printer name, click the [Next] button and search the network printer in the window to browse printer, and select available network printers.

2. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

3. Click the [Next] button.

The [Add Printer Wizard] completion window will appear.



4. Click the [Finish] button.

The installation is completed.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3)

To install the AdobePS3 printer driver to Windows 2000, perform the following steps. The installation should be performed by a qualified system administrator or printer administrator.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

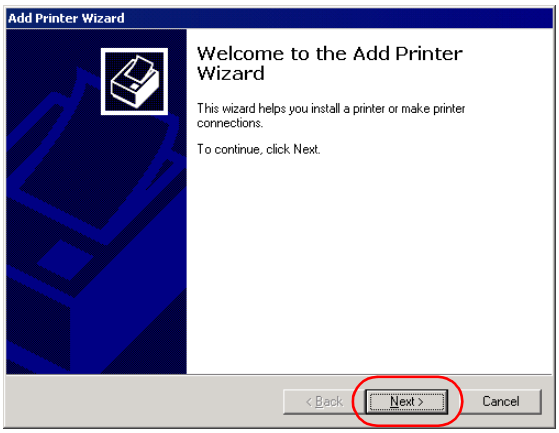
1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows 2000.**
2. **Log on as an administrator (or a user entitled to install a printer).**
3. **Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] of the Start menu and click [Printers] from the sub-menu.**

   The [Printers] window will appear.

   MEMO

   Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.
4. **Double-click the [Add Printer] icon of the [Printers] window.**

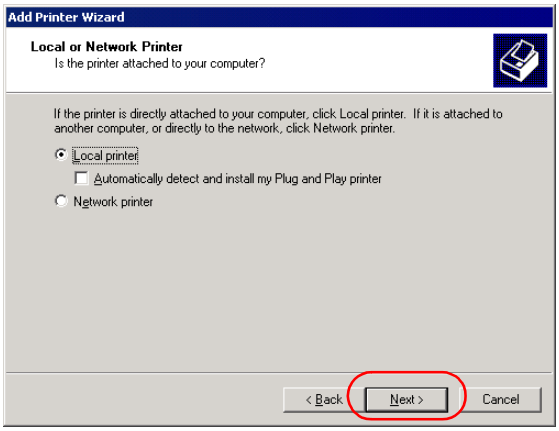
   The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear to add the printer.


Add Printer Wizard
Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install a printer or make printer connections.
To continue, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

5. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
Is the printer attached to your computer?
If the printer is directly attached to your computer, click Local printer. If it is attached to another computer, or directly to the network, click Network printer.
Local printer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
Network printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. Select the [Local printer] or the [Network printer].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [Local printer]. When the printing system is managed in a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, also select [Local printer].

When selecting the [Local printer], turn "off" the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box setting.

When personal computers or workstations are connected to the network and you want to print via the network, select [Network printer].

Tips

When using the network printer, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

MEMO

If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting [Local printer]" step 1 .

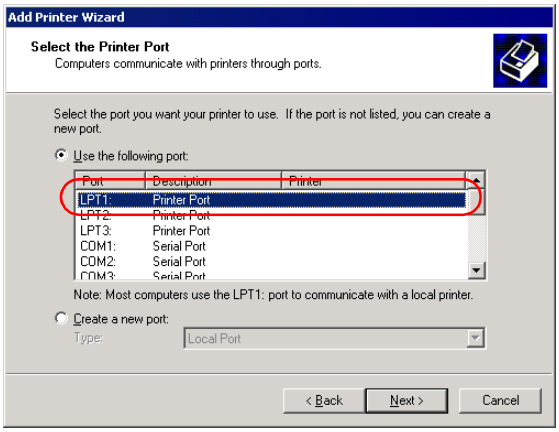
Reference (p.84)

Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

7. Click the [Next] button.

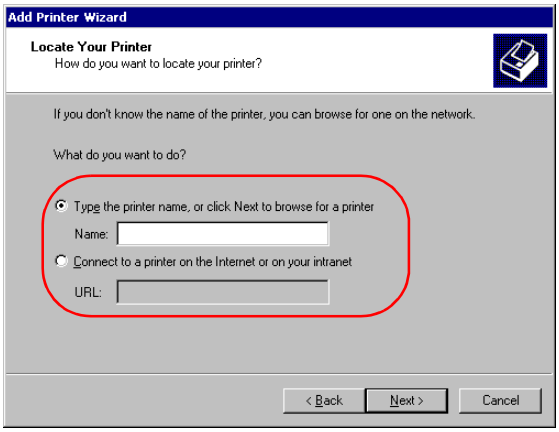
If you have selected the [Local printer] at step 6, the window to select the printer port will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Local printer]".

Reference (p.84)



If you have selected [Network printer] at step 6, the window to set the printer name will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Network printer]".

Reference (p.90)


Add Printer Wizard
Locate Your Printer
How do you want to locate your printer?
If you don't know the name of the printer, you can browse for one on the network.
What do you want to do?
Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer
Name:
Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet
URL:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

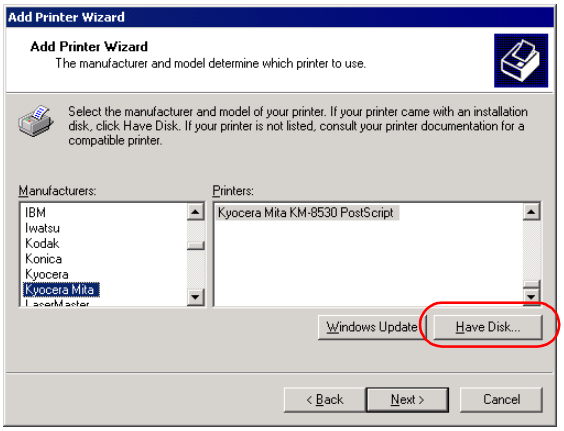
Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Local printer]

1. If you have selected the [Local printer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", select the port connecting the printer, and click the [Next] button.

Select the port to which the printing system is directly connected.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Add Printer Wizard
The manufacturer and model determine which printer to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Manufacturers:
IBM
Iwatsu
Kodak
Konica
Kyocera
Kyocera Mita
Printers:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

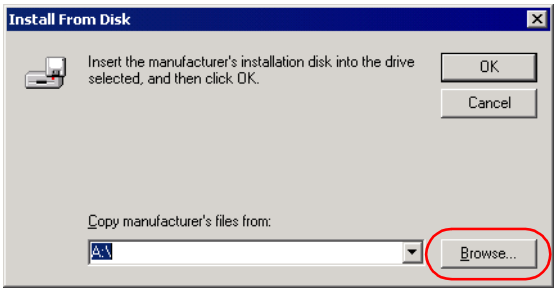
If you want to print directly to the printing system via the network, select the LPR port. For details, see your network administrator.

Refer to Section 5, "Network Settings (for Administrator)" for more details.

Reference (p.557) LPD/LPR Setup

2. Click the [Have Disk] button.

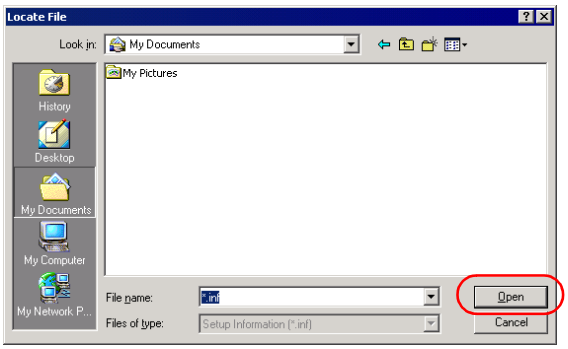
The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

3. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Locate File] window will appear.



4. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

5. Change [Look in] to CD-ROM drive.

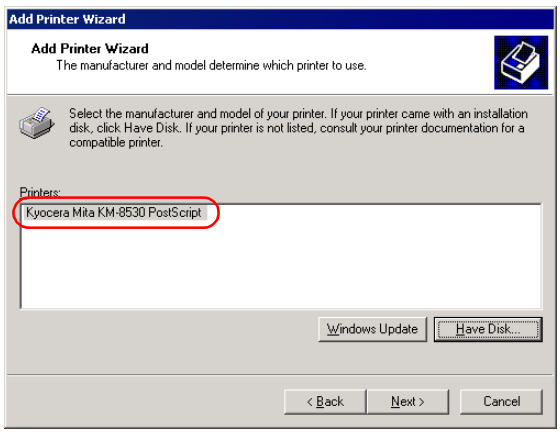
6. View the [\English\Driver\AdbePS\Win2000_Xp] folder in the list.

7. Click [OEMSETUP.inf] in the [File name] text box, then click the [Open] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.

8. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the manufacturer and model of the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Add Printer Wizard
The manufacturer and model determine which printer to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compatible printer.
Printers:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript] is highlighted.

[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript] is the printer name of the default.

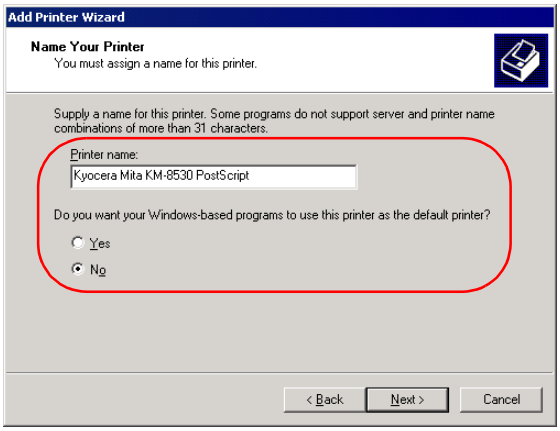
MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to check/change the printer name will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Name Your Printer
You must assign a name for this printer.
Supply a name for this printer. Some programs do not support server and printer name combinations of more than 31 characters.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

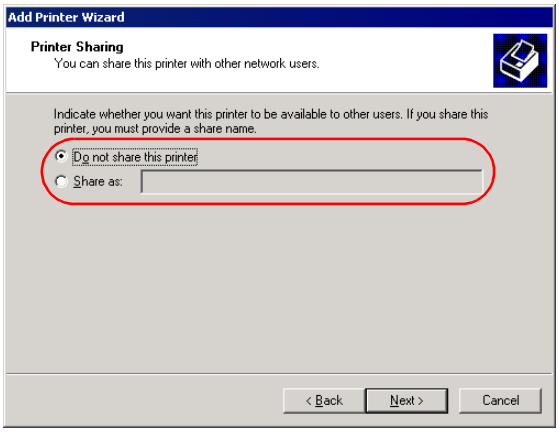
Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

MEMO

If you are installing the first printer to your computer, the [Default printer] setting will not appear. The first printer installed automatically becomes the default printer.

13. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select whether to share the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Printer Sharing
You can share this printer with other network users.
Indicate whether you want this printer to be available to other users. If you share this printer, you must provide a share name.
Do not share this printer
Share as:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

14. Select whether to share the printer or not.

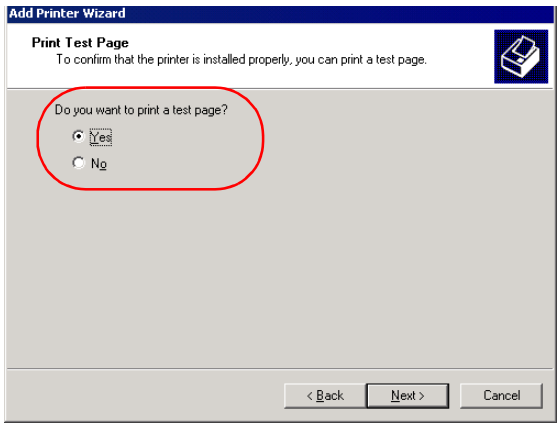
Select [Share as] or [Do not share this printer] checkbox.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

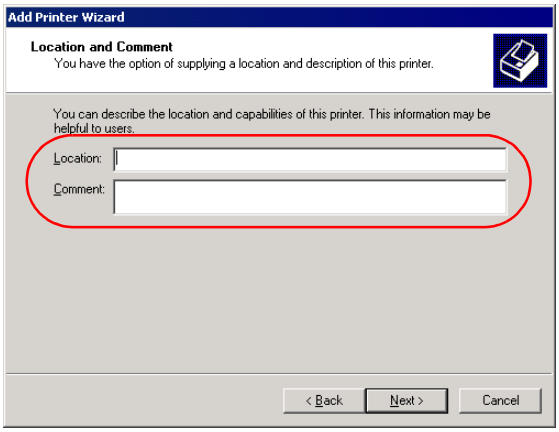
15. Click the [Next] button.

If you have selected [Do not share this printer] at step 14, the next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear. In this case, go to step 18.

Reference (p.88)


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If you have selected [Share as] at step 14, the next [Add Printer Wizard] window to enter location and comment will appear. In this case, go to step 16.

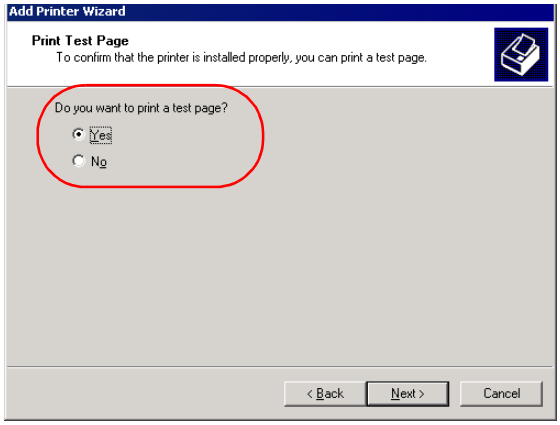

Add Printer Wizard
Location and Comment
You have the option of supplying a location and description of this printer.
You can describe the location and capabilities of this printer. This information may be helpful to users.
Location:
Comment:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

16. If you have selected [Share as] at step 14, enter the location of the shared printer and comment in the [Location] and [Comment] textbox.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

17. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

18. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes (recommended)] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

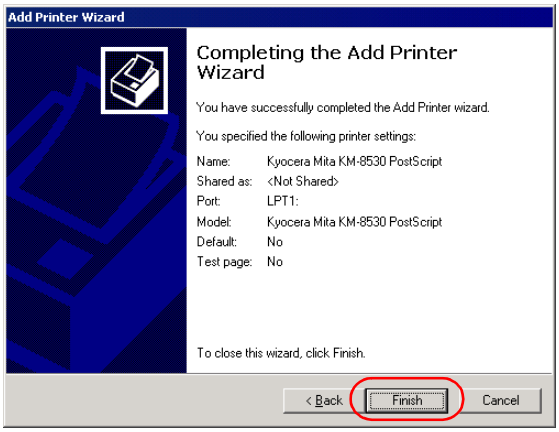
MEMO

Printing the test page is also possible after the installation of the printer driver.

Reference (p.114) Test Page Print

19. Click the [Next] button.

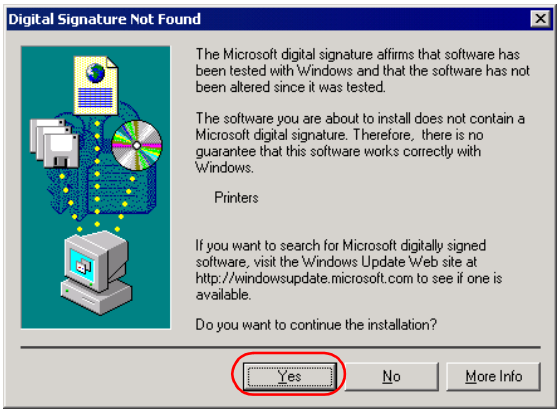
The [Add Printer Wizard] completion window will appear.



Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

20. Click the [Finish] button.

[Digital Signature Not Found] window will appear.


Digital Signature Not Found
The Microsoft digital signature affirms that software has been tested with Windows and that the software has not been altered since it was tested.
The software you are about to install does not contain a Microsoft digital signature. Therefore, there is no guarantee that this software works correctly with Windows.
Printers
If you want to search for Microsoft digitally signed software, visit the Windows Update Web site at http://windowsupdate.microsoft.com to see if one is available.
Do you want to continue the installation?
Yes
No
More Info

21. Click the [Yes] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation. The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer. If you click the [No] button, the installation will not complete.

If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 18, performing of the test print starts.

22. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 18, the test page will not be printed.

If the test page is printed properly, click the [OK] button.

23. The installation is completed.

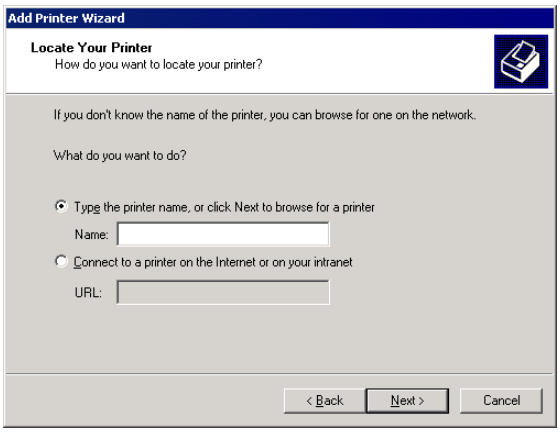
The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows 2000 (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Network printer]

1. If you have selected the [Network printer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", type the network printer name in the [Name] textbox or type the URL in the [URL] textbox, and click the [Next] button.

If the printer driver for Windows 2000 is saved in the server, the window to set the default printer will appear. In this case, go to step 2.


Add Printer Wizard
Locate Your Printer
How do you want to locate your printer?
If you don't know the name of the printer, you can browse for one on the network.
What do you want to do?
Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer
Name:
Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet
URL:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Tips

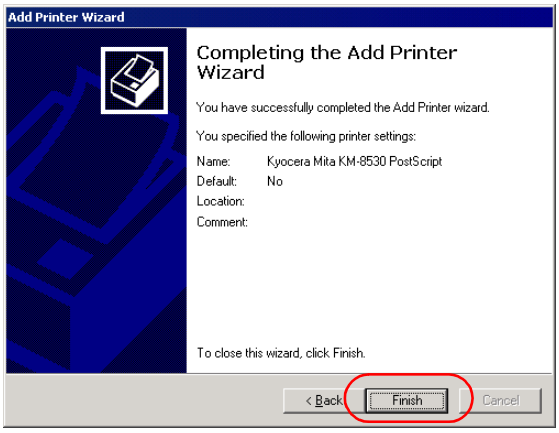
If you don't know the network printer name, click the [Next] button and search the network printer in the window to browse printer, and select available network printers.

2. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

3. Click the [Next] button.

The [Add Printer Wizard] completion window will appear.



4. Click the [Finish] button.

The installation is completed.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e)

A qualified system administrator or printer administrator should perform the installation of the printer driver in Windows XP.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows XP.

2. Log on as an administrator (or a user entitled to install a printer).

3. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Printers and Faxes] of the Start menu.

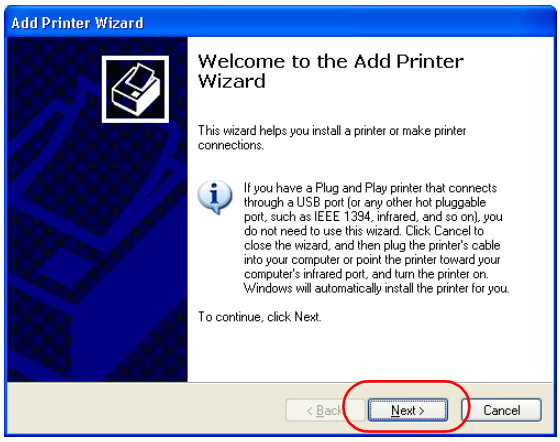
The [Printers and Faxes] window will appear.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

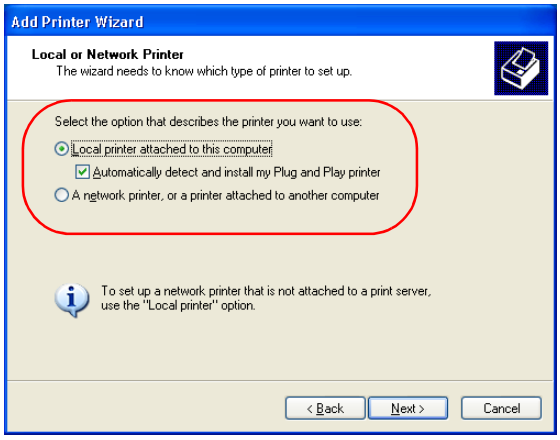
4. Click the [Add a printer] icon of the [Printers and Faxes] window.

The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear to add the printer.


Add Printer Wizard
Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install a printer or make printer connections.
If you have a Plug and Play printer that connects through a USB port (or any other hot pluggable port, such as IEEE 1394, infrared, and so on), you do not need to use this wizard. Click Cancel to close the wizard, and then plug the printer's cable into your computer or point the printer toward your computer's infrared port, and turn the printer on. Windows will automatically install the printer for you.
To continue, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. Click the [Next] button.

The [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the printer connection will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
The wizard needs to know which type of printer to set up.
Select the option that describes the printer you want to use:
Local printer attached to this computer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer
To set up a network printer that is not attached to a print server, use the "Local printer" option.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

6. Select the [Local printer attached to this computer] or the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [Local printer attached to this computer]. When the printing system is managed in a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, also select [Local printer attached to this computer].

When selecting the [Local printer attached to this computer], turn the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] setting "off".

Tips

When using the network printer, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting [Local printer attached to this computer]" step 1 .

MEMO

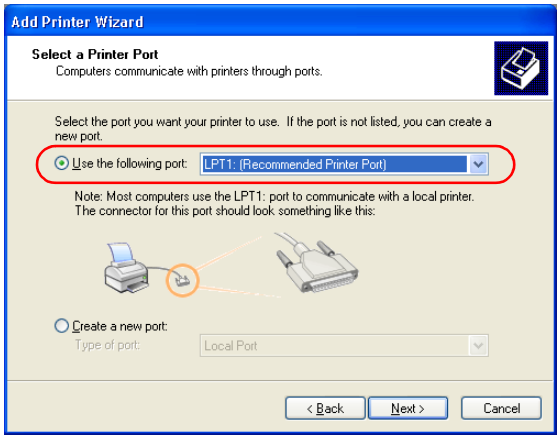
Reference ▶ (p.94)

Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

7. Click the [Next] button.

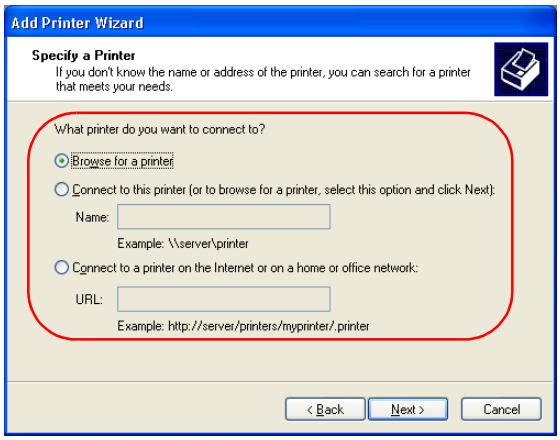
If you have selected the [Local printer attached to this computer] at step 6, the window to select the printer port will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [Local printer attached to this computer]".

Reference (p.94)


Add Printer Wizard
Select a Printer Port
Computers communicate with printers through ports.
Select the port you want your printer to use. If the port is not listed, you can create a new port.
Use the following port:
LPT1: (Recommended Printer Port)
Note: Most computers use the LPT1: port to communicate with a local printer. The connector for this port should look something like this:
Create a new port:
Type of port:
Local Port
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If you have selected the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer] at step 6, the window to set the printer name will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer]".

Reference (p.100)


Add Printer Wizard
Specify a Printer
If you don't know the name or address of the printer, you can search for a printer that meets your needs.
What printer do you want to connect to?
Browse for a printer
Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):
Name:
Example: \\server\printer
Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:
URL:
Example: http://server/printers/myprinter/.printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

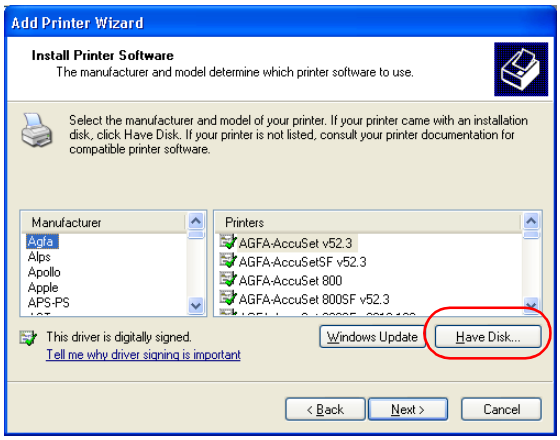
Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Local printer attached to this computer]

1. If you have selected [Local printer attached to this computer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", select the port connecting the printer from the list displayed by clicking [▼] at the side of the [Use the following port:] box, and click the [Next] button.

Select the port to which the printing system is directly connected.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Install Printer Software
The manufacturer and model determine which printer software to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for compatible printer software.
Manufacturer
Agfa
Alps
Apollo
Apple
APS-PS
Printers
AGFA-AccuSet v52.3
AGFA-AccuSetSF v52.3
AGFA-AccuSet 800
AGFA-AccuSet 800SF v52.3
This driver is digitally signed.
Tell me why driver signing is important
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

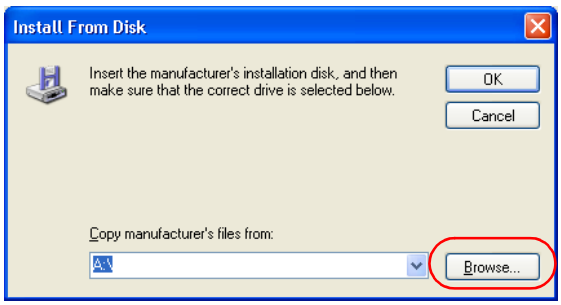
If you want to print directly to the printing system via the network, select the LPR port. For details, see your network administrator.

Refer to Section 5, "Network Settings (for Administrator)" for more details.

Reference ●●► (p.557) LPD/LPR Setup

2. Click the [Have Disk] button.

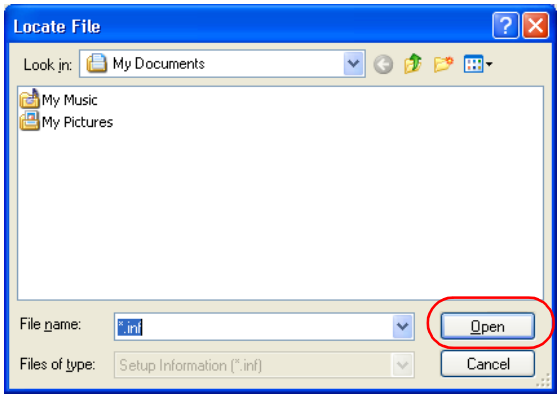
The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

3. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Locate File] window will appear.



4. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

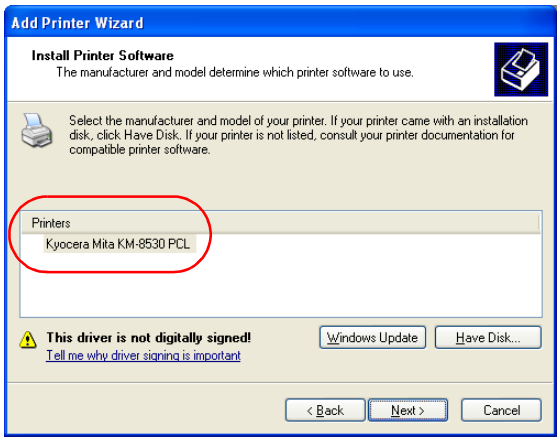
5. Change [Look in] to CD-ROM drive.

6. View the [\English\Printer\WinNT_2000_Xp] folder in [File Location].

7. Click [Printer.inf] in the [File name] text box, then click the [Open] button.

8. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the manufacturer and model of the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Install Printer Software
The manufacturer and model determine which printer software to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for compatible printer software.
Printers
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
This driver is not digitally signed!
Tell me why driver signing is important
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is highlighted.

[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is the printer name of the default.

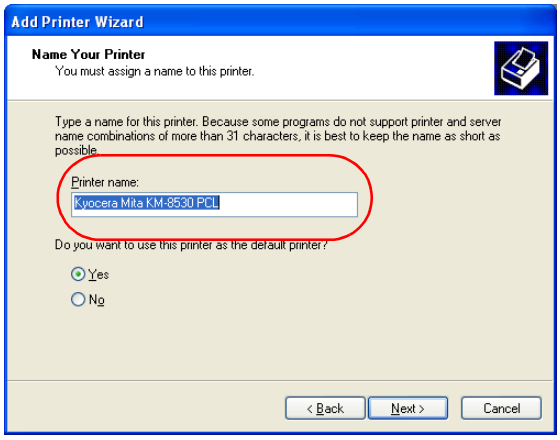
MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to check/change the printer name will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Name Your Printer
You must assign a name to this printer.
Type a name for this printer. Because some programs do not support printer and server name combinations of more than 31 characters, it is best to keep the name as short as possible.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL
Do you want to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

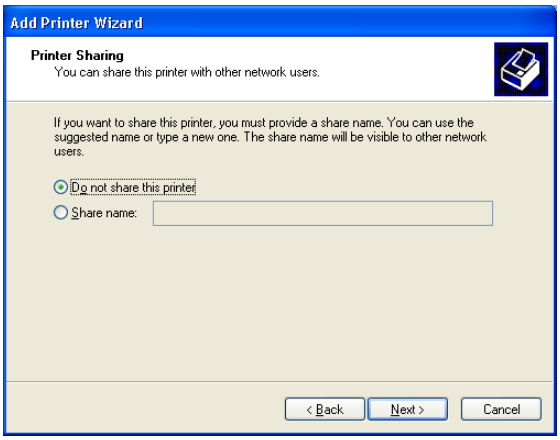
If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

13. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select whether to share the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Printer Sharing
You can share this printer with other network users.
If you want to share this printer, you must provide a share name. You can use the suggested name or type a new one. The share name will be visible to other network users.
Do not share this printer
Share name:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

14. Select whether to share the printer or not.

Select [Share as] or [Do not share this printer] checkbox.

MEMO

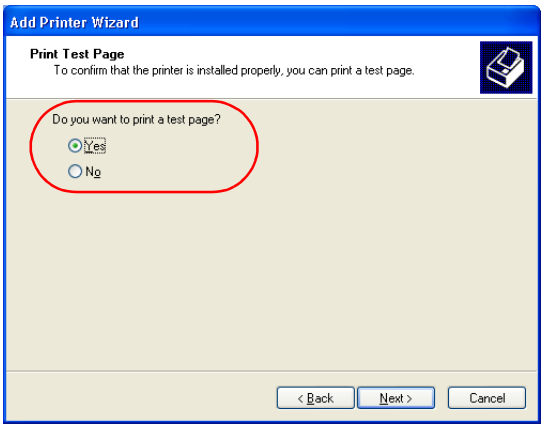
When you select [Share as], you can input the shared name in the textbox.

Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

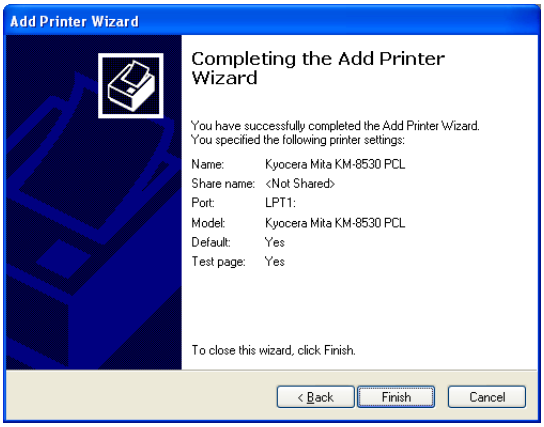
15. Click the [Next] button.

If you have selected [Do not share this printer] at step 14, the next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear. In this case, go to step 18.

Reference (p.98)


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If you have selected [Share as] at step 14, the next [Add Printer Wizard] window to enter location and comment will appear. In this case, go to step 16.

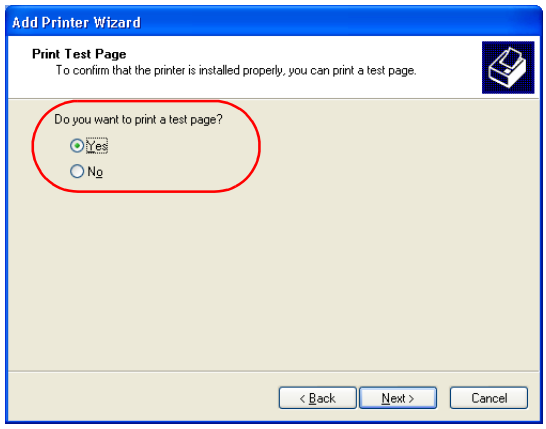


16. If you have selected [Share as] at step 14, enter the location of the shared printer and comment in the [Location] and [Comment] textbox.

Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

17. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

18. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

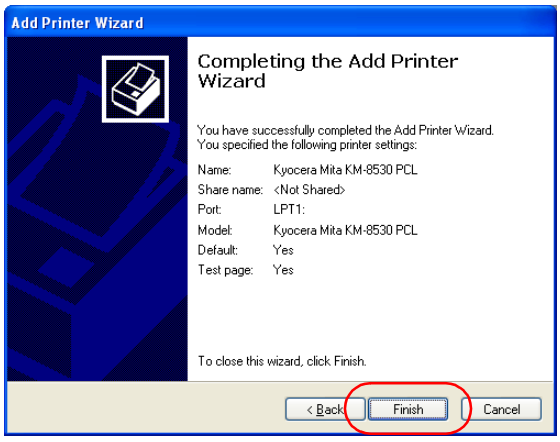
MEMO

Printing the test page is also possible after the installation of the printer driver.

Reference (p.114) Test Page Print

19. Click the [Next] button.

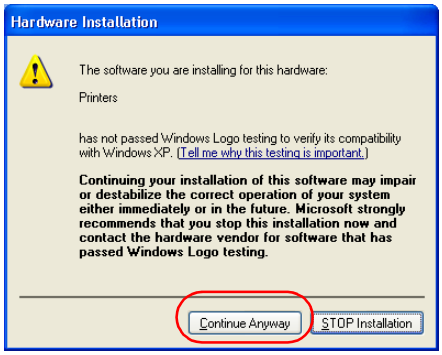
The [Add Printer Wizard] completion window will appear.



Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

20. Click the [Finish] button.

[Hardware Installation] window will appear.


Hardware Installation
The software you are installing for this hardware:
Printers
has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP. (Tell me why this testing is important.)
Continuing your installation of this software may impair or destabilize the correct operation of your system either immediately or in the future. Microsoft strongly recommends that you stop this installation now and contact the hardware vendor for software that has passed Windows Logo testing.
Continue Anyway
STOP Installation

21. Click the [Continue Anyway] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD."

If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 18, performing of the test print starts.

22. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 18, the test page will not be printed.

If the test page is printed properly, click the [OK] button.

23. The installation is completed.

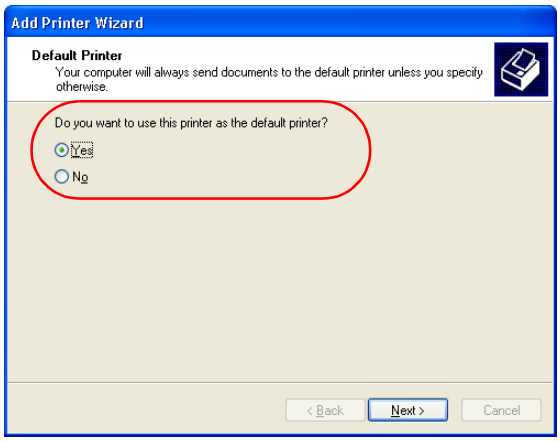
The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e) (Continued)

●When selecting the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer]

1. If you have selected [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", type the network printer name in the [Name] textbox or type the URL in the [URL] textbox, and click the [Next] button.

If the printer driver for Windows XP is saved in the server, the window to set the default printer will appear. In this case, go to step 2.


Add Printer Wizard
Default Printer
Your computer will always send documents to the default printer unless you specify otherwise.
Do you want to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Tips

If you don't know the network printer name, click the [Next] button and search the network printer in the window to browse printer, and select available network printers.

If the printer driver for Windows XP is not saved in the server, a message is displayed. If you click the [OK] button, the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. Follow the same procedure from step 2 to 10 of "When selecting [Local printer]", and install the printer driver for Windows XP.

After the installation, the same window to set the default printer described above appears. Go to step 2.

Reference ▸ (p.94)

2. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not, and perform operation from step 17 of "Printers and Faxes."

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

Reference ▸ (p.98)

3. Click the [Finish] button.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows XP (PS3)

To install the Adobe PS3 printer driver to Windows XP, perform the following steps. A qualified system administrator or printer administrator should perform the installation.

●Start the Add Printer Wizard

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows XP.

2. Log on as an administrator (or a user entitled to install a printer).

3. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Printers and Faxes] of the Start menu.

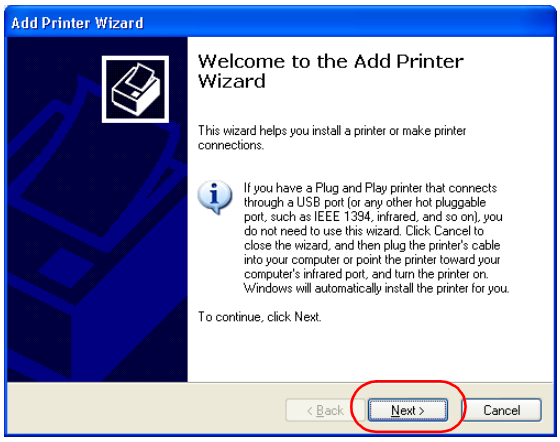
The [Printers and Faxes] window will appear.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

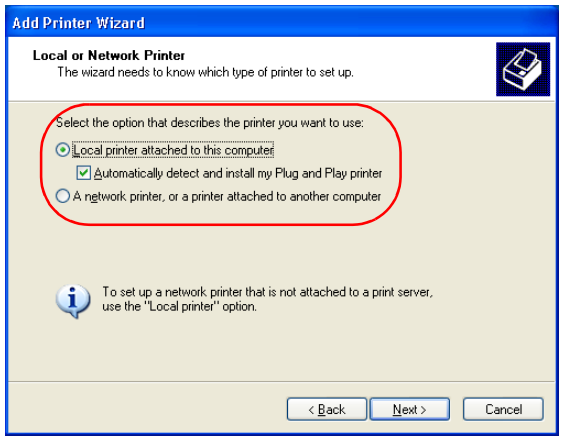
4. Click the [Add a printer] icon of the [Printers and Faxes] window.

The [Add Printer Wizard] window will appear to add the printer.


Add Printer Wizard
Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install a printer or make printer connections.
If you have a Plug and Play printer that connects through a USB port (or any other hot pluggable port, such as IEEE 1394, infrared, and so on), you do not need to use this wizard. Click Cancel to close the wizard, and then plug the printer's cable into your computer or point the printer toward your computer's infrared port, and turn the printer on. Windows will automatically install the printer for you.
To continue, click Next.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the printer connection will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
The wizard needs to know which type of printer to set up.
Select the option that describes the printer you want to use:
Local printer attached to this computer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer
To set up a network printer that is not attached to a print server, use the "Local printer" option.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

6. Select the [Local printer attached to this computer] or the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer].

When the printing system is directly connected to a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, select [Local printer attached to this computer]. When the printing system is managed in a computer in which the printer driver will be installed, also select [Local printer attached to this computer].

When selecting the [Local printer attached to this computer], turn "off" the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] setting "off".

When personal computers or workstations are connected to the network and you want to print via the network, select [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer].

Tips

When using the network printer, it is necessary to complete the network settings on the network interface card and on the personal computers. For details, see your network administrator.

MEMO

If your computer does not have the network setting, go to "When selecting the [Local printer attached to this computer]" step 1 .

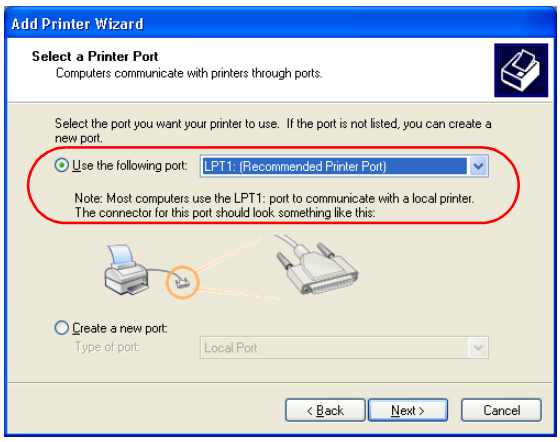
Reference (p.104)

Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

7. Click the [Next] button.

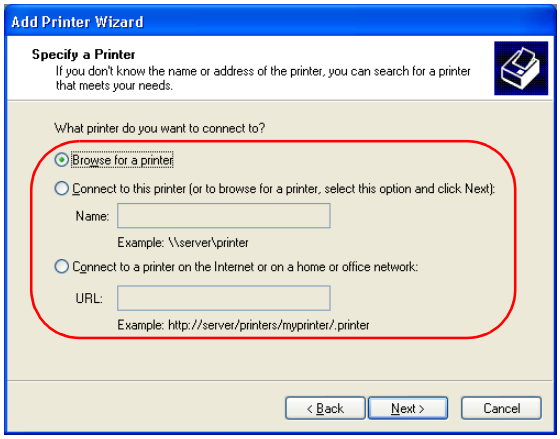
If you have selected [Local printer attached to this computer] at step 6, the window to select the printer port will appear.

Reference (p.104)


Add Printer Wizard
Select a Printer Port
Computers communicate with printers through ports.
Select the port you want your printer to use. If the port is not listed, you can create a new port.
Use the following port:
LPT1: (Recommended Printer Port)
Note: Most computers use the LPT1: port to communicate with a local printer. The connector for this port should look something like this:
Create a new port:
Type of port:
Local Port
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If you have selected the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer] at step 6, the window to set the printer name will appear. In this case, go to "When selecting the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer]"

Reference (p.110)


Add Printer Wizard
Specify a Printer
If you don't know the name or address of the printer, you can search for a printer that meets your needs.
What printer do you want to connect to?
Browse for a printer
Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):
Name:
Example: \\server\printer
Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:
URL:
Example: http://server/printers/myprinter/.printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

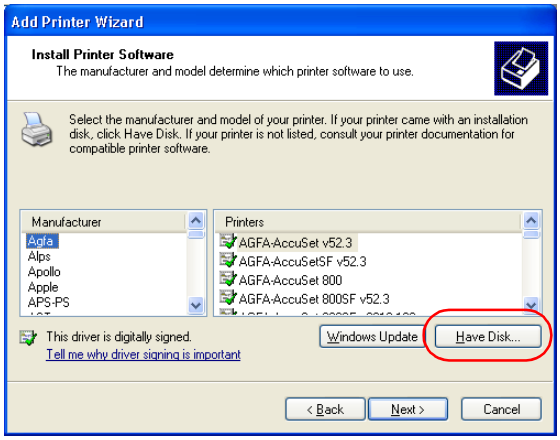
Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting the [Local printer attached to this computer]

1. If you have selected [Local printer attached to this computer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", select the port connecting the printer from the list displayed by clicking [▼] at the side of the [Use the following port:] box, and click the [Next] button.

Select the port to which the printing system is directly connected.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Install Printer Software
The manufacturer and model determine which printer software to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for compatible printer software.
Manufacturer
Agfa
Alps
Apollo
Apple
APS-PS
Printers
AGFA-AccuSet v52.3
AGFA-AccuSetSF v52.3
AGFA-AccuSet 800
AGFA-AccuSet 800SF v52.3
This driver is digitally signed.
Tell me why driver signing is important
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

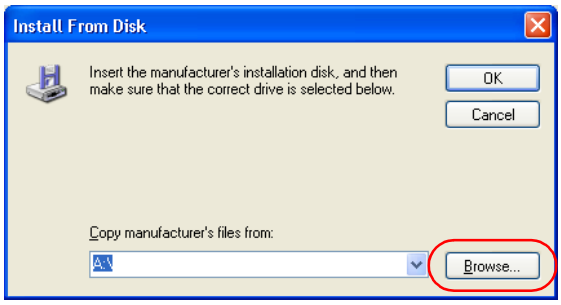
If you want to print directly to the printing system via the network, select the LPR port. For details, see your network administrator.

Refer to Section 5, "Network Settings (for Administrator)" for more details.

Reference ●●► (p.557) LPD/LPR Setup

2. Click the [Have Disk] button.

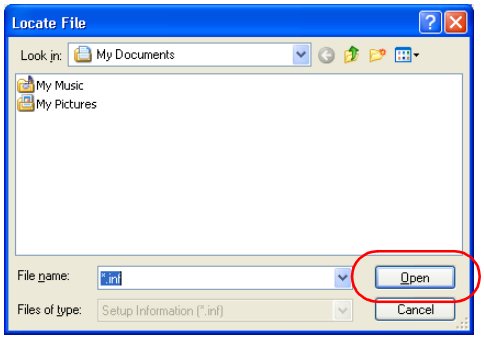
The [Install From Disk] window will appear.



Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

3. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Locate File] window will appear.



4. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

5. Change [Look in] to CD-ROM drive.

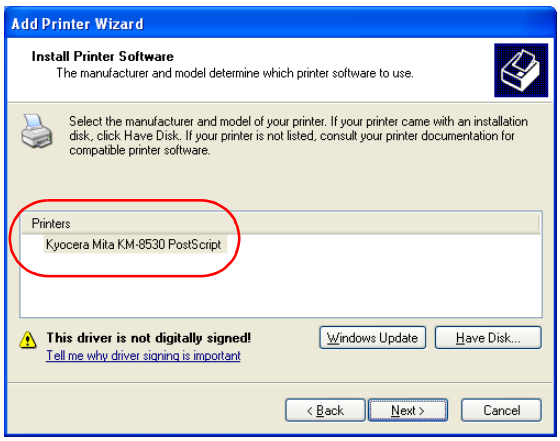
6. View the [\English\Driver\AdobePS\Win2000_Xp] folder in [File Location].

7. Click [OEMSETUP.inf] in the [File name] text box, then click the [Open] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.

8. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the manufacturer and model of the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Install Printer Software
The manufacturer and model determine which printer software to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for compatible printer software.
Printers
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
This driver is not digitally signed!
Tell me why driver signing is important
Windows Update
Have Disk...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

9. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript] is highlighted.

[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript] is the printer name of the default.

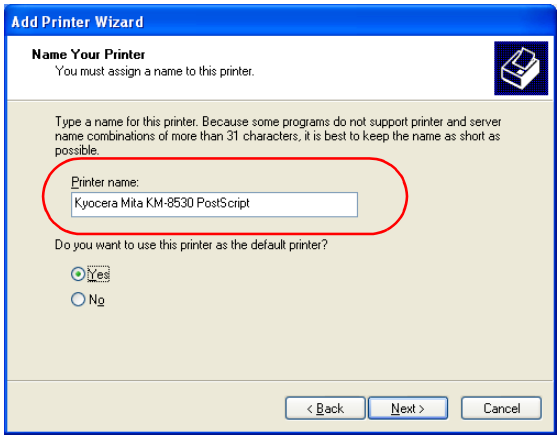
MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

10. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to check/change the printer name will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Name Your Printer
You must assign a name to this printer.
Type a name for this printer. Because some programs do not support printer and server name combinations of more than 31 characters, it is best to keep the name as short as possible.
Printer name:
Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript
Do you want to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

11. In the [Printer name] text box, check the printer name.

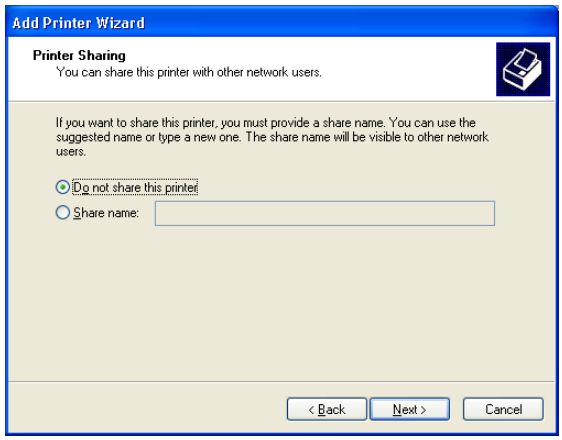
If you want to change the printer name, enter the new printer name in the [Printer name] text box.

12. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not.

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

13. Click the [Next] button.

The window to select whether you share the printer will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Printer Sharing
You can share this printer with other network users.
If you want to share this printer, you must provide a share name. You can use the suggested name or type a new one. The share name will be visible to other network users.
Do not share this printer
Share name:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

14. Select whether to share the printer or not.

Select [Share name:] or [Do not share this printer] button.

MEMO

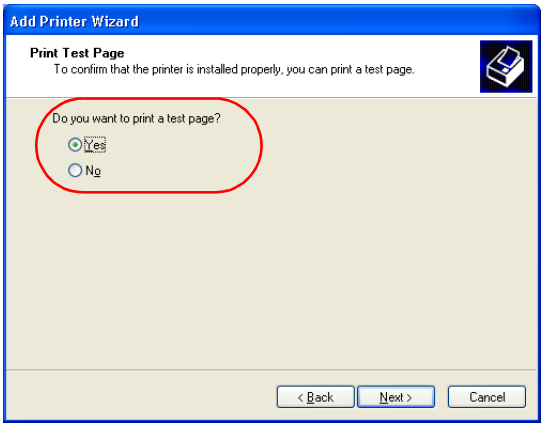
When you select [Share name:], you can input the shared name in the textbox.

Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

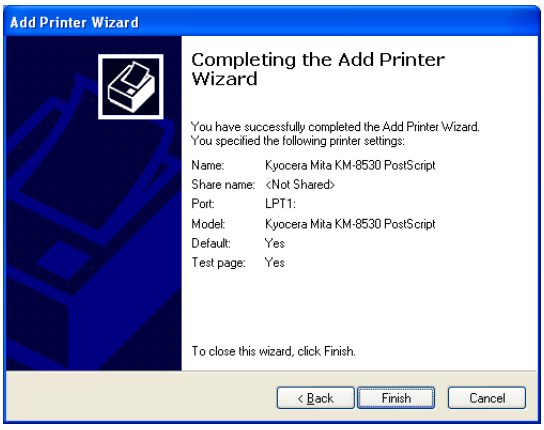
15. Click the [Next] button.

If you have selected [Do not share this printer] at step 14, the window to perform the test print will appear. In this case, go to step 18.

Reference (p.108)


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

If you have selected [Share name:] at step 14, the window to enter location and comment will appear. In this case, go to step 16.

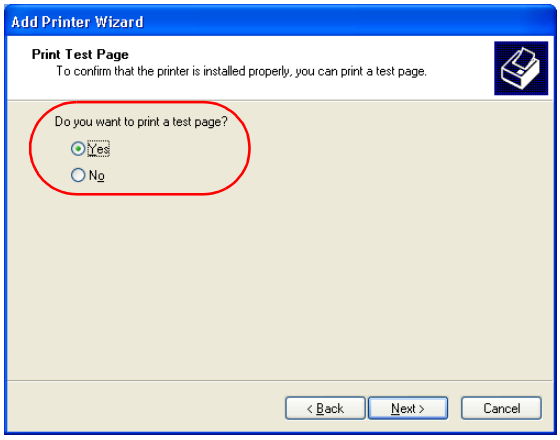


16. If you have selected [Share name:] at step 14, enter the location of the shared printer and comment in the [Location] and [Comment] textbox.

Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

17. Click the [Next] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to perform the test print will appear.


Add Printer Wizard
Print Test Page
To confirm that the printer is installed properly, you can print a test page.
Do you want to print a test page?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

18. Select Whether to perform the test print or not.

Select [Yes] to perform the test print, or select [No] to not.

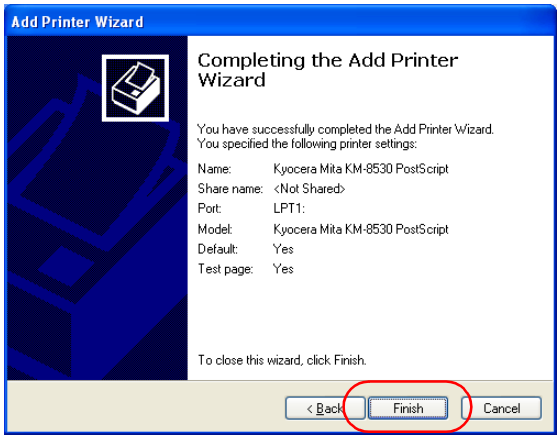
MEMO

Printing the test page is also possible after the installation of the printer driver.

Reference (p.114)

19. Click the [Next] button.

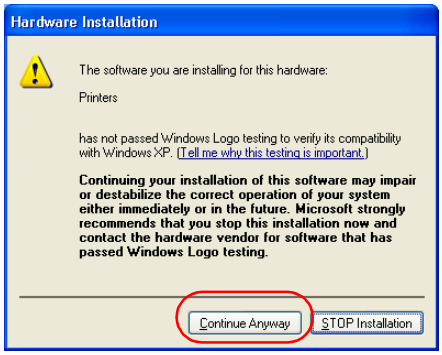
The [Add Printer Wizard] completion window will appear.



Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

20. Click the [Finish] button.

[Hardware Installation] window will appear.


Hardware Installation
The software you are installing for this hardware:
Printers
has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP. (Tell me why this testing is important.)
Continuing your installation of this software may impair or destabilize the correct operation of your system either immediately or in the future. Microsoft strongly recommends that you stop this installation now and contact the hardware vendor for software that has passed Windows Logo testing.
Continue Anyway
STOP Installation

21. Click the [Continue Anyway] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD."

If you have selected [Yes (recommended)] at step 18, performing of the test print starts.

22. Make sure the test page printed properly.

If you have selected [No] at step 18, the test page will not be printed.

If the test page is printed properly, click the [OK] button.

23. The installation is completed.

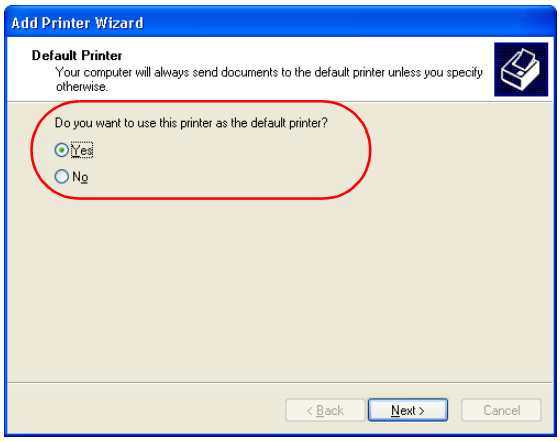
The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Windows XP (PS3) (Continued)

●When selecting the [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer]

1. If you have selected [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer] at step 6 of "Start the Add Printer Wizard", type the network printer name in the [Name] textbox or type the URL in the [URL] textbox, and click the [Next] button.

If the printer driver for Windows XP is saved in the server, the window to set the default printer will appear. In this case, go to step 2.


Add Printer Wizard
Default Printer
Your computer will always send documents to the default printer unless you specify otherwise.
Do you want to use this printer as the default printer?
Yes
No
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Tips

If you don't know the network printer name, click [next] to search the network, and select the appropriate printer.

If the printer driver for Windows XP is not saved in the server, a message is displayed. If you click the [OK] button, the window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear. Follow the same procedure from step 2 to 10 of "When selecting [Local printer]", and install the printer driver for Windows XP.

After the installation, the same window to set the default printer described above appears. Go to step 2.

Reference (p.104)

2. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer or not, and perform operation from step 17 of "Printers and Faxes."

Select [Yes] to use this printer as the default printer, and select [No] to not.

Reference (p.108)

3. Click the [Finish] button.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Installing to Macintosh (PS3)

To install the Adobe PS3 printer driver to Macintosh, perform the following steps.

●Start the setup program

1. Turn on the computer and start Macintosh.

MEMO

Exit from all active applications, if required.

2. Set the "User Software CD" in the CD-ROM drive.

The driver and PPD file may be different depending on the version of Macintosh.

Power Macintosh:

Verify the version of your OS.

Mac OS 8.5 - Mac OS 9.x

Open the [\English\Driver\OS8_x to 9_x] folder in the User Software CD.

Mac OS X

Mac OS X is not supported at September 2002.

Other Macintosh

Open the [\English\Driver\OS7_1 or more] folder in the User Software CD.

3. Copy the PPD file into the hard disk.

Select the [K8530xxx.ppd] file and copy it into the [HDD] - [System Folder] - [Extensions] - [Printer Descriptions].

MEMO

PPD file name varies depending on models of machine.

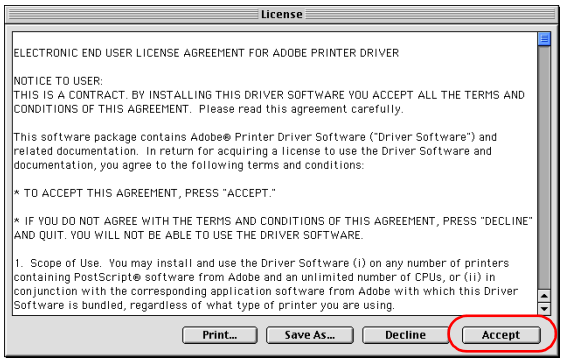
4. Execute the installer.

Select and double-click [AdobePS Installer].

The dialog box will appear.

5. Click the [Continue...] button.

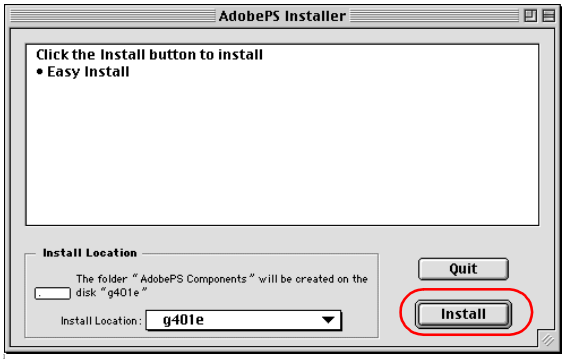
The [License] dialog box will appear.


License
ELECTRONIC END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR ADOBE PRINTER DRIVER
NOTICE TO USER:
THIS IS A CONTRACT. BY INSTALLING THIS DRIVER SOFTWARE YOU ACCEPT ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. Please read this agreement carefully.
This software package contains Adobe® Printer Driver Software ("Driver Software") and related documentation. In return for acquiring a license to use the Driver Software and documentation, you agree to the following terms and conditions:
* TO ACCEPT THIS AGREEMENT, PRESS "ACCEPT."
* IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PRESS "DECLINE" AND QUIT. YOU WILL NOT BE ABLE TO USE THE DRIVER SOFTWARE.
1. Scope of Use. You may install and use the Driver Software (i) on any number of printers containing PostScript® software from Adobe and an unlimited number of CPUs, or (ii) in conjunction with the corresponding application software from Adobe with which this Driver Software is bundled, regardless of what type of printer you are using.
Print...
Save As...
Decline
Accept

Installing to Macintosh (PS3) (Continued)

6. Click the [Accept] button.

The [AdobePS Installer] dialog box will appear.



MEMO

You must agree to the license to use the printer driver for the PS3 printing system. Click the [Accept] button and go to the next step.

7. Click the [Install] button.

The installation starts.

When the installation is completed, the following message appears.

Installation was successful. If you are finished, click Quit to leave the Installer. If you wish to perform additional installations, click Continue.
Continue
Quit

8. Click the [Quit] button.

Then, go to "Selecting the printer with the selector".

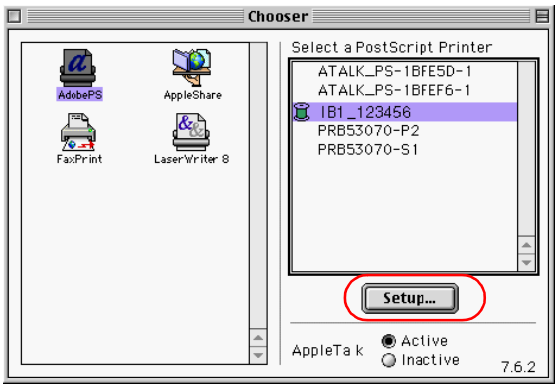
(It is recommended that you restart your computer if you select Other Macintosh at step 2.)

Reference (p.113)

Installing to Macintosh (PS3) (Continued)

●Selecting the printer with the Chooser

1. **Select [Chooser] in the [Apple Menu Items].**
2. **Make sure that [AdobePS] is selected in [AppleTalk] box**
3. **Click the [AdobePS] icon.**
4. **Click the printer name for your PS3 printing system from the [Select a PostScript Printer] list.**



MEMO

Refer to "Status Page" for your printer name.

Reference (p.524) Outputing the Status Page

5. **Click the [Setup...] button if you are using the PS3 printing system printer for the first time.**

Select the PPD file that is copied from the CD-ROM.

The following dialog will appear.

6. **Click each items to set the options for the PS3 printing system printer.**
7. **Click the [OK] button.**

The [Chooser] dialog will appear.

8. **Close the [Chooser] dialog.**

Test Page Print

●Windows

You can make sure whether or not the printer driver is installed properly by printing the test page that comes standard in Windows.

To print the test page:

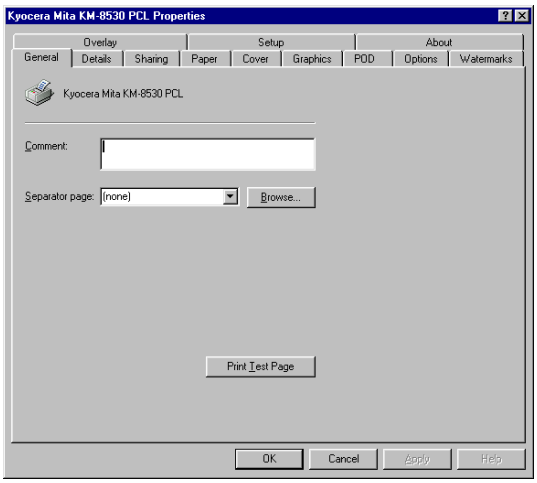
1. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] of the Start menu and click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

The [Printers] window will appear.

2. Right-click the printer icon on the [Printers] window. Then select [Properties].

[Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL Propeties] dialog box will appear.
The property window may different depending on your OS.

Windows 98



MEMO

- Click [Printers and Faxes] in Windows XP.
- The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

3. Select the [General] tab in the [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL Properties]dialog box and click the [Print Test Page].

The test page is printed and the confirmation window will appear.

4. Verify that it is printed properly. Then, click the [Yes] button.

The test print is completed.

MEMO

If it is not printed properly, verify the current status of this printing system.

Reference ●●► (p.426) You cannot print the test print.

●Macintosh

Macintosh has no standard test print function. Double-click [ReadMe.txt] in the User Software CD. Then, select [Print...] from [File] menu and make sure it is printed properly.

Setting Optional Devices (Windows)

You can store print data and print settings in a pair in the internal hard disk in this printing system and print the data as required.

To set the Large Capacity Tray

PCL5e Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional Large Capacity Tray in the [Properties] - [Setup] tab in this printing system.

Reference (p.173) To set the Large Capacity Tray

To set the Finisher

PCL5e Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional Finisher in the [Properties] - [Setup] tab in this printing system.

Reference (p.179) To set the Finisher

To set the Cover Sheet Feeder

PCL5e Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional cover sheet feeder in the [Properties] - [Setup] tab in this printing system.

Reference (p.229) To set a Thick Cover

To set the Punch Unit

PCL5e Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional punch unit in the [Properties] - [Setup] tab in this printing system.

Reference (p.238) To set the Punch Unit

To set the Trimmer Unit

PCL5e Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional trimmer unit in the [Properties] - [Setup] tab in this printing system.

To set printer memory

Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the memory used by the printer in the [Properties] screen if you use the Adobe PS3 printer driver.

Reference ▶ (p.329) To set printer memory

To set printer memory configuration

PCL5e Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the memory mounted on the printer in the [Properties] screen.

Reference ▶ (p.330) To set printer memory configuration

Setting Optional Devices (Macintosh)

You can store print data and print settings in a pair in the internal hard disk in this printing system and print the data as required.

To set the Large Capacity Tray

Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional Large Capacity Tray by selecting the unit from [Large capacity Tray] in the [Installable Options] in the [Option Configuration] screen.

Reference ▶ (p.353) To set the Large Capacity Tray

To set the Finisher

Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional finisher by selecting the unit from [Finisher] in the [Installable Options] in the [Option Configuration] screen.

Reference ▶ (p.356) To set the Finisher

To set the Cover Sheet Feeder

Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional cover sheet feeder by selecting the feeder from [Sheet Feeder] in the [Installable Options] in the [Option Configuration] screen.

Reference ▶ (p.380) To set a Thick Cover

To set a Punch Unit

Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional punch unit by selecting the unit from [Punch Unit] in the [Installable Options] in the [Option Configuration] screen.

Reference ▶ (p.386) To set the Punch Unit

To set the Trimmer Unit

Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the optional trimmer unit by selecting the unit from [Trimmer Unit] in the [Installable Options] in the [Option Configuration] screen.

To set the memory installed in the printer

Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize the memory mounted on the printer in the [Properties] screen if you use the Adobe PS3 printer driver.

Reference ▶ (p.416) To set the memory installed in the printer

Updating a Printer Driver

You must delete the current printer driver at first if you want to update/reinstall the printer driver. The deleting procedures of the printer driver may be different depending on the type of the driver and the OS running in the computer.

- Updating the Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me)

  Reference (p.120)

- Updating the Printer Driver (Windows NT 4.0)

  Reference (p.121)

- Updating the Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

  Reference (p.124)

- Updating the Printer Driver (Windows XP)

  Reference (p.126)

- Updating the Printer Driver (Macintosh) (only when the PS3 option is installed)

  Reference (p.128)

Updating the Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me)

To update the Windows 95/98/Me-compatible printer driver:

●Updating in the the [Printers] window

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows 95/98/Me.

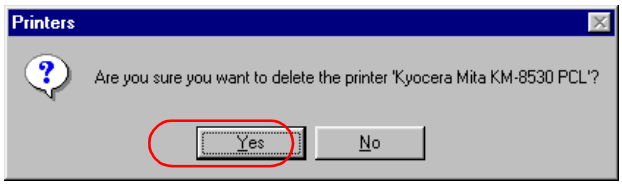
2. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] from the Start menu to click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

The [Printers] window will open.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

3. Right-click the icon for the printer you want to delete. Then, select [Delete] button.



4. Click the [Yes] button.

5. Restart the computer.

The printer driver is uninstalled.

MEMO

If the printer has been set as the default printer, the message saying the default printer is deleted appears after the deletion.

6. Then, go to "Installing a Printer Driver".

Reference ▸▸ (p.42)

Updating the Printer Driver (Windows NT4.0)

To update the printer driver, perform the following steps.

Important

To delete the PCL5e printer driver, you must delete the files related to the printer driver. Delete them after following the procedures on this page.

●Updating the Printer

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows NT 4.0.

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

2. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] from the Start menu to click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

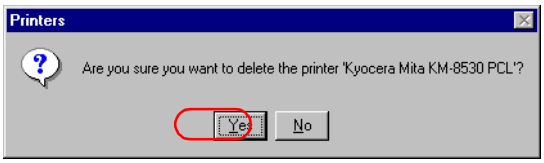
The [Printers] window will appear.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

3. Right-click the icon for the printer you want to delete. Then, select [Delete] button.

The confirmation message will appear.



4. Click the [Yes] button.

The printer driver is uninstalled. After completion of uninstall, close the [Printers] window.

5. Delete the files related to the printer driver. (PCL5e printer driver only)

To delete the PCL5e printer driver, you must delete the files related to the printer driver. Go to "Deleting the files related to the printer driver" and follow the procedures from step 6. When using PS3 printer driver, ignore the operations described in this section and go to Step 6.

Reference (p.122)

MEMO

If the printer has been set as the default printer, the message saying the default printer is deleted appears after the deletion.

6. Restart the computer.

Important

To avoid the system failure, make sure to restart the computer after deleting the printer driver.

Updating the Printer Driver (Windows NT4.0) (Continued)

7. Then, go to "Installing a Printer Driver"

Reference (p.42)

●Deleting the files related to the printer driver

MEMO

This operation is required to delete the PCL5e printer driver.

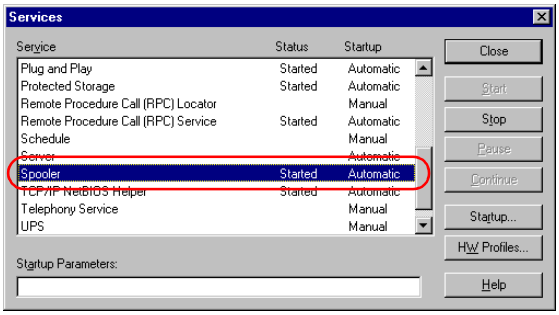
⚠ The files for the old driver may be left if you have problems during updating the driver. If such is the case, delete them all.

1. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] from the Start menu to click [Control Panel] from the sub-menu.

The [Control Panel] window will appear.

2. Double-click the [Services] icon.

The [Services] window will appear.



3. Select [Spooler] from the list in the [Services] window. Then, click the [Stop] button.

The confirmation message will appear.

4. Click the [Yes] button.

5. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Find] from the Start menu to click [Files or Folders...] from the sub-menu.

The [Find. All Files] window appears.

6. Type "K8530" in [Files or Folders...] the [NAME] textbox and search it form the [Winnt] folder including its subfolder.

7. Select and right-click the files in the list. Then, select the [Delete] button.

The confirmation message will appear.

8. Click the [Yes].

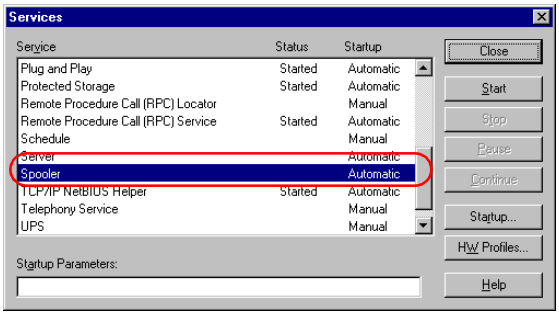
Updating the Printer Driver (Windows NT4.0) (Continued)

9. Close the [Find. All Files] window.

Tips

If you cannot delete a file because Windows is using it, log off the computer and log in again.

10. Select [Spooler] from the list in the [Services] window. Then, click the [Start] button.



11. Follow the procedure from step 6 of "Updating the Printer".

Reference (p.121)

Updating the Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

To update the Windows 2000-compatible printer driver:

Important

To delete the PCL5e printer driver, you must delete the files related to the printer driver.

●Updating the printer

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows 2000.

2. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] from the Start menu to click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

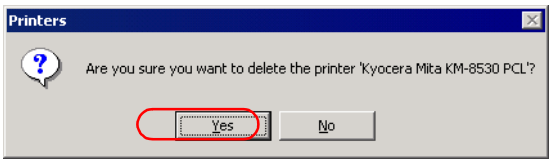
The [Printers] window will appear.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

3. Right-click the icon for the printer you want to delete. Then, select [Delete] button.

The confirmation message will appear.



4. Click the [Yes].

The printer is uninstalled.

MEMO

If the printer has been set as the default printer, the message saying the default printer is deleted appears after the deletion.

5. Select the [Server Properties] from the [File] menu of the [Printers] window.

The [Print Server Properties] window will appear.

6. Open the [Drivers] tab of the [Print Server Properties] window.

7. Select the printer driver you want to delete from the [Installed printer drivers:]. Then click the [Remove].

The confirmation message will appear.

Updating the Printer Driver (Windows 2000) (Continued)

8. Click the [Yes].

The printer driver is deleted (uninstalled) .

9. Restart the computer.

Important

To avoid the system failure, make sure to restart the computer after deleting the printer driver.

10. Then, go to "Installing a Printer Driver".

Reference ▶▶ (p.42)

Updating the Printer Driver (Windows XP)

To update the Windows XP-compatible printer driver:

Important

To delete the PCL5e printer driver, you must delete the files related to the printer driver.

●Updating the printer

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows XP.

2. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Printers and Faxes] from the Start menu.

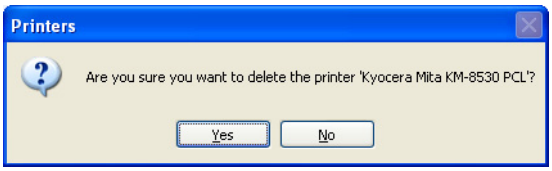
The [Printers and Faxes] window will appear.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

3. Select the icon for the printer you want to delete. Then, click [Delete this printer].

The confirmation message will appear.



4. Click the [Yes] button.

The printer is uninstalled.

MEMO

If the printer has been set as the default printer, the message saying the default printer is deleted appears after the deletion.

5. Select the [Server Properties] from the [File] menu of the [Printers and Faxes] window.

The [Print Server Properties] window will appear.

6. Open the [Drivers] tab of the [Print Server Properties] window.

7. Select the printer driver you want to delete from the [Installed printer drivers:]. Then click the [Remove].

The confirmation message will appear.

Updating the Printer Driver (Windows XP) (Continued)

8. Click the [Yes].

The printer driver is deleted (uninstalled) .

9. Restart the computer.

Important

To avoid the system failure, make sure to restart the computer after deleting the printer driver.

10. Then go to "Installing a Printer Driver"

Reference ▶▶ (p.42)

Updating the Printer Driver (Macintosh)

To update the Macintosh-compatible printer driver:

●Updating the printer

1. Turn on the computer and start Macintosh.

2. Select the icon for the printer that you want to delete from the desktop and drag it onto [Trash].

The desktop printer is deleted (uninstalled).

The files for the old driver may be left if you have problems updating the driver. If such is the case, delete them all.

3. Select [Kyocera Mita KM-8530v01000.xxxx] in [HDD] - [System Folder] - [Extensions] - [Printer Descriptions] and drag it onto [Trash].

The files related to the driver file are deleted.

Tips

[Kyocera Mita KM-8530v01000.xxxx] loses its effect on the printer just by removing it from the [Extensions] folder.

MEMO

PPD file name varies depending on models of machine.

4. Then, go to "Installing a Printer Driver"

Reference (p.42)

Basic printing method

This section explains how to use this printing system for printing from a Windows.

1. Check the printing system to ensure it is turned on. Then turn on the computer.

2. Open the file to be printed.

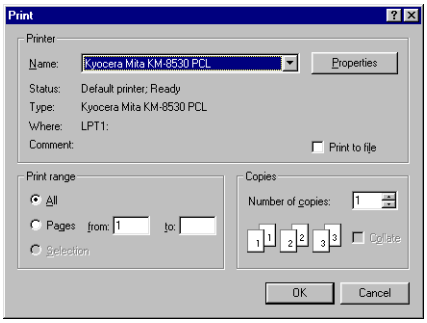
MEMO

When there are any applications started, exit them all in advance.

3. Select [File] - [Print] in an application.

The [Print] dialog box will appear.

For Windows 98



4. Ensure [Name] is the name of this printing system.

MEMO

When [Name] does not show the name of this printing system, click the "▼" button to display a list, and select this printing system from the list.

5. Check the settings of the [Print] dialog box.

MEMO

From the [Print] dialog box, you can also display the window to set up the printer and set up the detailed functions of this printing system.

Reference (p.132)

6. Click the [OK] button.

Printing will be executed.

Printer [Properties] window

●The [Properties] window used in this section

You can set up this printing system by using each window shown in the table below.

OS	Display method	
	From the [Print] dialog box of an application	**From the menu displayed by right clicking the printer icon of the [Printers] window**
Windows 95/98/Me	Window displayed by clicking the [Properties] button	Window displayed by selecting [Properties]
Windows NT4.0	Window displayed by clicking the [Properties] button	Window displayed by selecting [Presetting of document], Window displayed by selecting [Properties].
Windows 2000	Window displayed by clicking the printer icon, Window displayed by clicking the [Detailed setting] that has been displayed by clicking the printer icon	Window displayed by selecting [Print setting], Window displayed by selecting [Properties]
Windows XP	Window displayed by clicking the printer icon, Window displayed by clicking the [Detailed setting] that has been displayed by clicking the printer icon	Window displayed by selecting [Print setting], Window displayed by selecting [Properties]

The name and the details of these windows vary depending on the type of the OS and the printer driver used. Refer to the following for the difference due to the OS and printer driver.

- For Windows 95/98/Me

  Reference (p.132)
- For Windows NT4.0

  Reference (p.135)
- For Windows 2000

  Reference (p.139)
- For Windows XP

  Reference (p.145)

In this section, these Windows are collectively called the [Properties] window.

The following explanation will be given by using the [Properties] window (corresponding to those encircled a bold line in the table above) displayed from the [Print] dialog box that is frequently used.

The OS is Windows 98 in this manual as an example.

Supplementary explanation are given when differences arise due to Operating System.

PCL5e is mentioned in the explanation of the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver-related matters.

Adobe PS3 is mentioned in the explanation of the Adobe PS3 printer driver-related matters.

Printer [Properties] window (Continued)

●Components of the [Properties] window

The [Properties] window is made up of the following components.

[OK] button

By clicking the [OK] button, you can save all the tab settings and close the [Properties] window.

[Cancel] button

By clicking the [Cancel] button, you can close the [Properties] window without saving all the changes to the tab settings.

[Apply] button

By clicking the [Apply] button, you can save the current tab settings.

When using successively other tabs for setting, this button is used to register the current tab settings before proceeding to the other tabs.

[Help] button

By clicking the [Help] button, you can display the help information of each of the tabs.

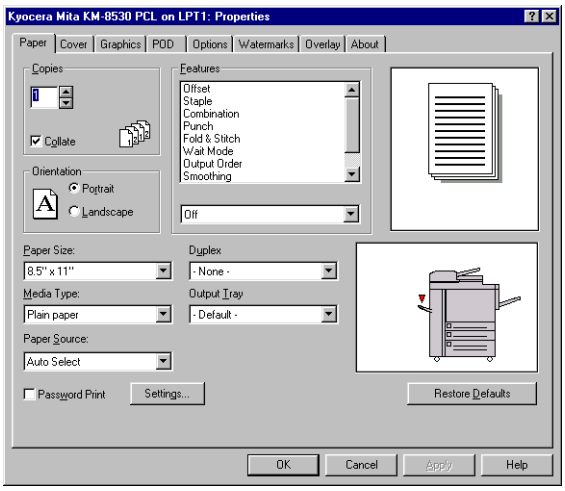
Clicking the [Help] button displayed by right clicking an item of which you want to display the information displays pop-up help of the item.

[Properties] window of Windows 95/98/Me

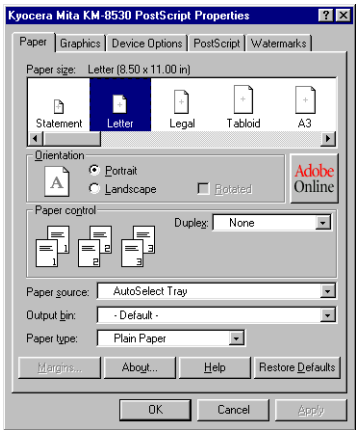
●The [Properties] window displayed from an application

By clicking the [Properties] button with the [Print] dialog box displayed from an application of Windows 95/98/Me, the following [Properties] window appears.

For Windows 98 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows 98 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermarks], [Overlay], and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[Paper], [Graphics], [Device Options], [PostScript] and [Watermarks]

[Properties] window of Windows 95/98/Me (Continued)

●The [Properties] window displayed from the [Printers] window

By clicking the [Properties] button with the [Printers] window displayed from an application of Windows 95/98/Me, the following [Properties] window appears.

1. Turn on the computer to start up Windows 95/98/Me.

2. Select [Start] - [Settings] - [Printers] from the task bar.

The [Printers] window will appear.

3. Right click the printer icon of this printing system and then click [Properties].

The [Properties] window of this printing system will appear.

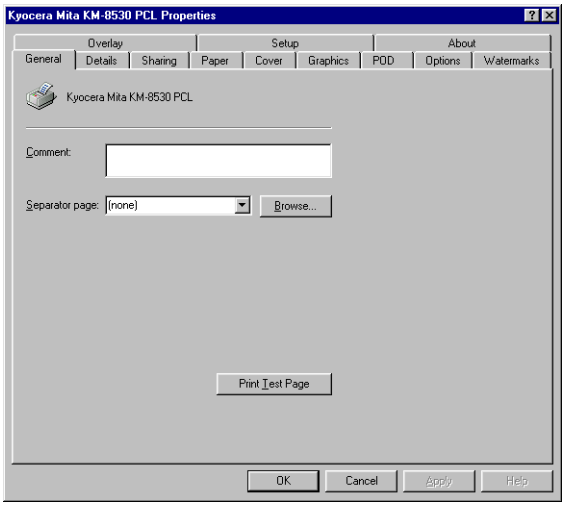
MEMO

The name of the printer icon may be changed by conditions and settings used.

Important

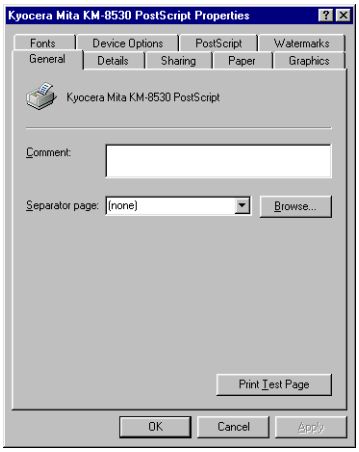
- The configuration set at [Printers] - [Properties] will be applied for all applications.
- The configuration set at [Properties] window opened from an application will be applied during an application is running. The configuration will be discarded when you exit from an application.

For Windows 98 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



[Properties] window of Windows 95/98/Me (Continued)

For Windows 98 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[General], [Details], [Sharing], [Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermarks], [Overlay], [Setup] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[General], [Details], [Sharing], [Paper], [Graphics], [Fonts], [Device Options], [PostScript] and [Watermarks]

MEMO

The tabs such as [General] and [Details] are standard Windows tabs.

[Properties] window of Windows NT4.0

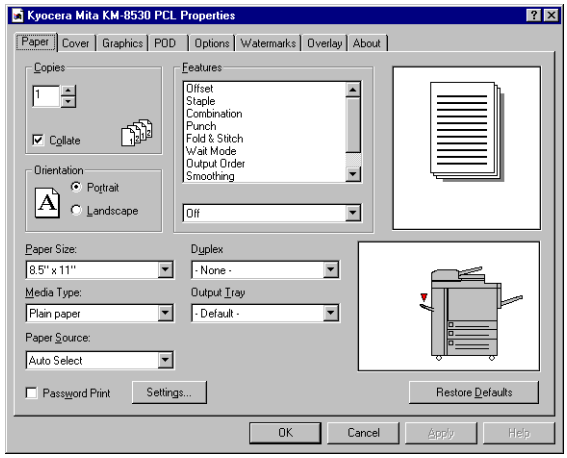
●The [Properties] window displayed from an application

By clicking the [Properties] button with the [Print] dialog box displayed from an application of Windows NT4.0, the following [Properties] window appears.

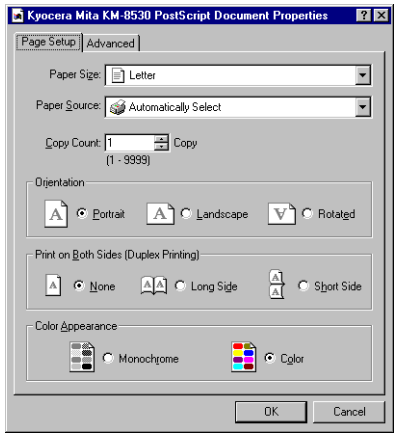
Important

The configuration set at [Properties] window opened from an application will be applied during an application is running. The configuration will be discarded when you exit from an application.

For Windows NT4.0 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows NT4.0 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermarks], [Overlay], and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[Page Setup] and [Advanced]

[Properties] window of Windows NT4.0 (Continued)

●The [Properties] window displayed from the [Printers] window

When the [Properties] window of Windows NT4.0 is displayed from the [Printers] window, the two [Properties] windows appear as shown below. The following procedures are used.

When using the [Properties] menu:

1. Turn on the computer to start up Windows NT4.0.

2. Select [Start] - [Settings] - [Printers] from the task bar.

The [Printers] window will appear.

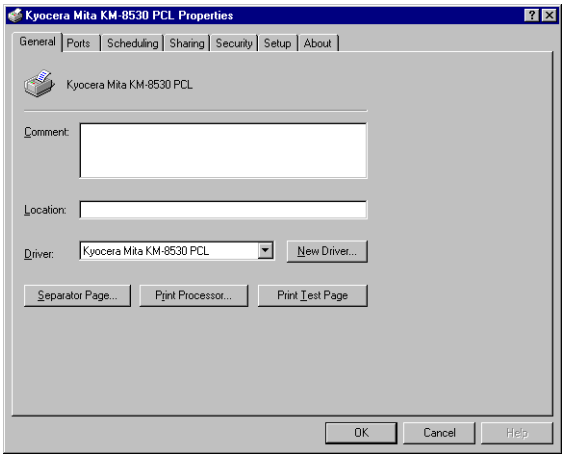
3. Right click the printer icon of this printing system and then click [Properties].

The [Properties] window of this printing system will appear.

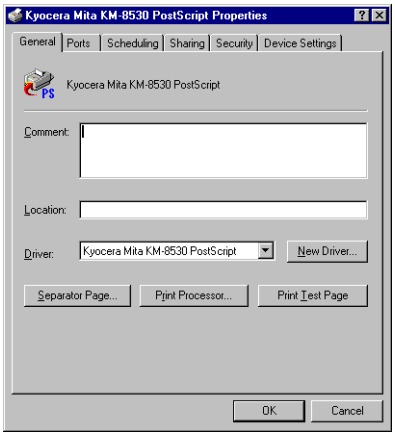
MEMO

The name of the printer icon may be changed by conditions and settings used.

For Windows NT4.0 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows NT4.0 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



[Properties] window of Windows NT4.0 (Continued)

The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[General], [Ports], [Scheduling], [Sharing], [Security], [Setup] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[General], [Ports], [Scheduling], [Sharing], [Security] and [Device Settings]

When using the [Document Defaults...] menu

1. Turn on the computer to start up Windows NT4.0.

2. Select [Start] - [Settings] - [Printers] from the task bar.

The [Printers] window will appear.

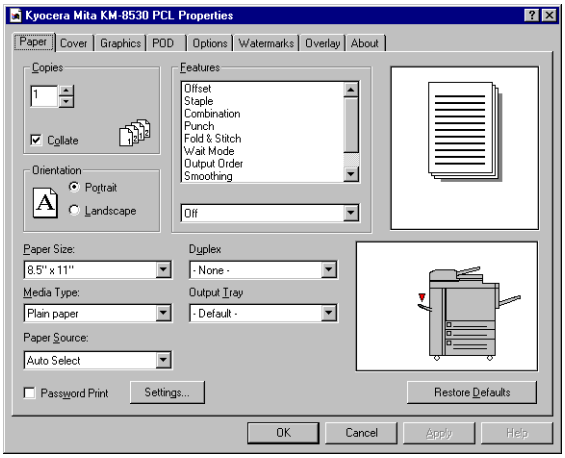
3. Right click the printer icon of this printing system and then click [Document Defaults...].

The [Properties] window of this printing system will appear.

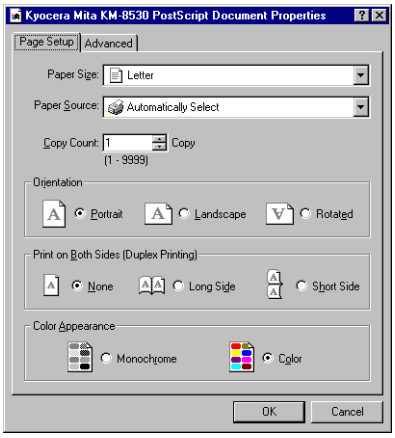
MEMO

The name of the printer icon may be changed by conditions and settings used.

For Windows NT4.0 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows NT4.0 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



[Properties] window of Windows NT4.0 (Continued)

The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermarks], [Overlay] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

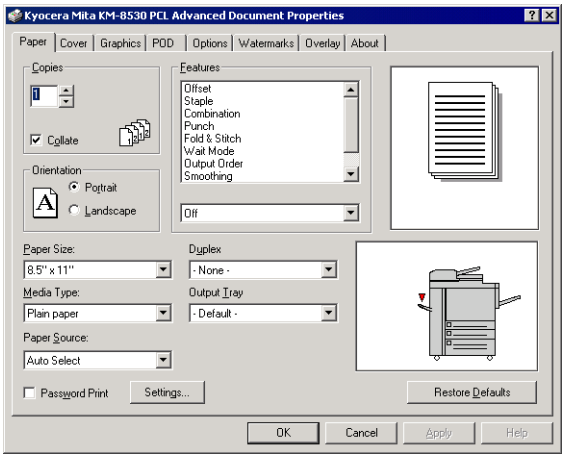
[Page Setup] and [Advanced]

[Properties] window displayed from Windows 2000

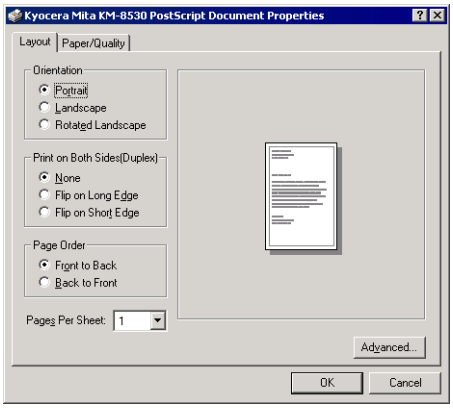
●The [Properties] window displayed from an application

When the [Print] dialog box is displayed from an application of Windows 2000, the following [Properties] window will appear.

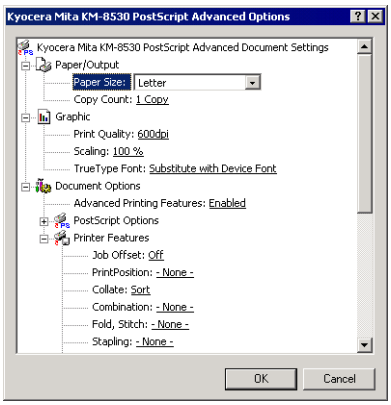
For Windows 2000 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows 2000 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



For Windows 2000 (Adobe PS3 printer driver), the window displayed by clicking [Layout] - [Advanced...].



MEMO

The window displayed by clicking the [Advanced] tab is referred to as the [Properties] window in this section.

[Properties] window displayed from Windows 2000 (Continued)

The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermarks], [Overlay] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[Layout] and [Paper / Quality]

[Properties] window displayed from Windows 2000 (Continued)

●The [Properties] window displayed from the [Printers] window

When the [Properties] window of Windows 2000 is displayed from the [Printers] window, the two [Properties] windows appear as shown below. The following procedures are used.

When using the [Properties] menu:

1. Turn on the computer to start up Windows 2000.

2. Select [Start] - [Settings] - [Printers] from the task bar.

The [Printers] window will appear.

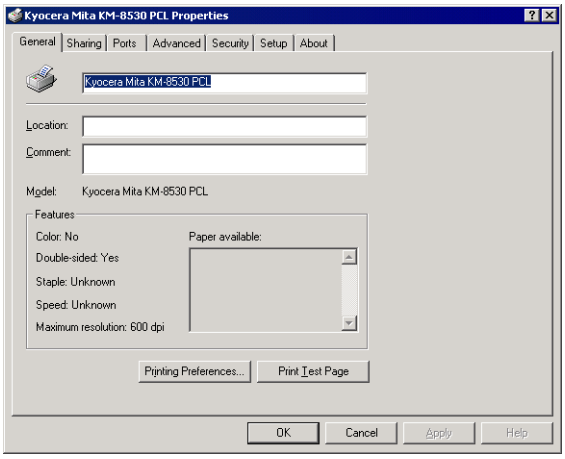
3. Right click the printer icon of this printing system and then click [Properties].

The [Properties] window of this printing system will appear.

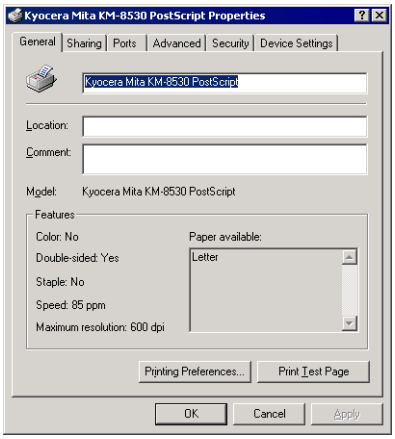
MEMO

The name of the printer icon may be changed by conditions and settings used.

For Windows 2000 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows 2000 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



MEMO

By clicking the [Printing Preference] button of the [General] tab, you can display the same window as the one displayed by using the [Printing Preference] shown on the next page.

Reference (p.143)

[Properties] window displayed from Windows 2000 (Continued)

The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[General], [Sharing], [Ports], [Advanced], [Security], [Setup] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[General], [Sharing], [Ports], [Advanced], [Color Management], [Security] and [Device Settings]

[Properties] window displayed from Windows 2000 (Continued)

When using the [Printing Preference] menu:

1. Turn on the computer to start up Windows 2000.

2. Select [Start] - [Settings] - [Printers] from the task bar.

The [Printers] window will appear.

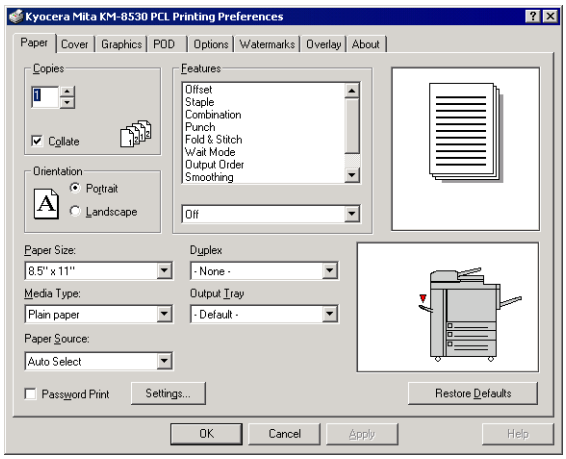
3. Right click the printer icon of this printing system and then click [Printing Preference].

The [Properties] window of this printing system will appear.

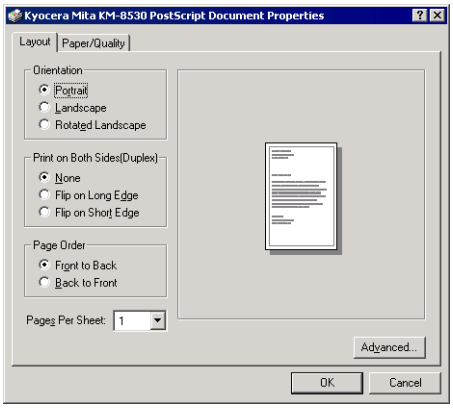
MEMO

The name of the printer icon may be changed by conditions and settings used.

For Windows 2000 (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows 2000 (Adobe PS3 printer driver)

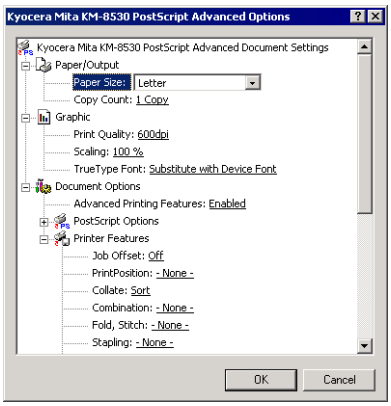


MEMO

- The window displayed by clicking [Printer Preference] is referred to as the "[Properties] window (Printer Preference)" in this section.
- Also, the window displayed by clicking [Advanced] tab is referred to as the "[Properties] window (Printer Preference - Advanced)" in this section.

[Properties] window displayed from Windows 2000 (Continued)

For Windows 2000 (Adobe PS3 printer driver):
The window displayed by clicking [Layout] - [Advanced...].



The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermark], [Overlay] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

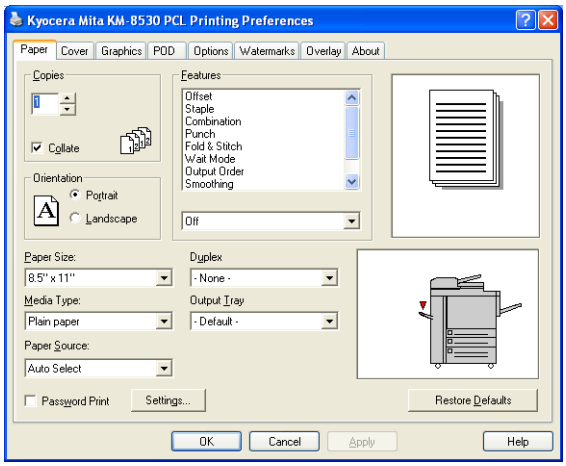
[Layout] and [Paper / Quality]

[Properties] window of Windows XP

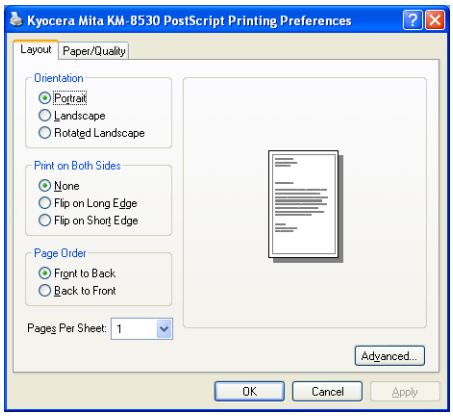
●The [Properties] window displayed from an application

When you click the [Detailed setting] button after displaying the [Print] dialog box from an application of Windows XP, the [Properties] window appears as shown below.

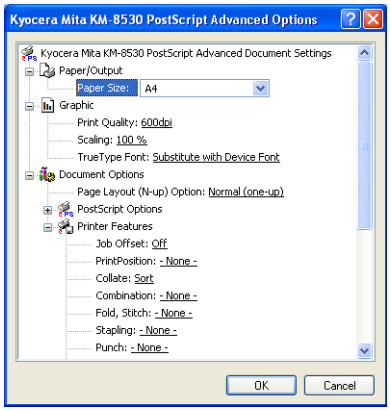
For Windows XP (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows XP (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



For Windows XP (Adobe PS3 printer driver): The window displayed by clicking [Layout] - [Advanced...].



[Properties] window of Windows XP (Continued)

The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermarks], [Overlay], and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[Layout] and [Paper/Quality]

[Properties] window of Windows XP (Continued)

●The [Properties] window displayed from the [Printers and Faxes] window

When the [Properties] window of Windows XP is displayed from the [Printers and Faxes] window, the two [Properties] windows appear as shown below. The following procedures are used.

When using the [Properties] menu

1. Turn on the computer to start up Windows XP.

2. Select [Start] - [Printers and Faxes] from the task bar.

The [Printers and Faxes] window will appear.

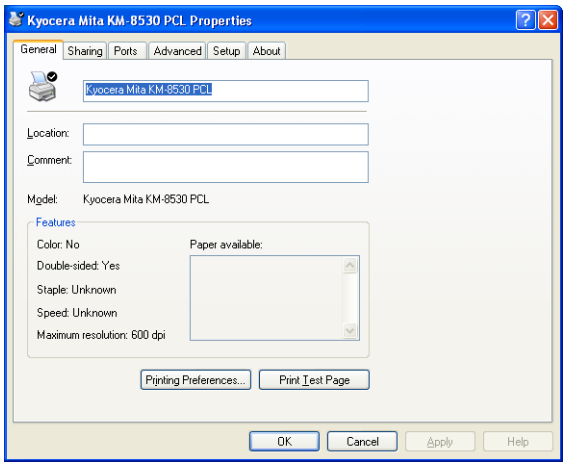
3. Right click the printer icon of this printing system and then click [Properties].

The [Properties] window of this printing system will appear.

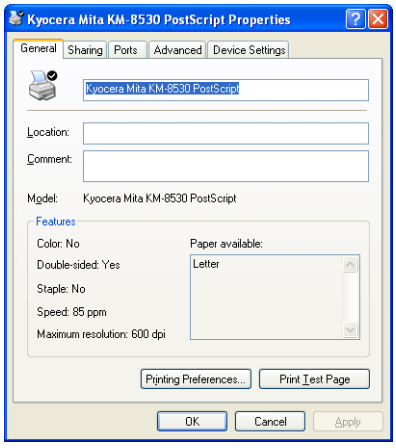
MEMO

The name of the printer icon may be changed by conditions and settings used.

For Windows XP (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows XP (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



[Properties] window of Windows XP (Continued)

The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[General], [Sharing], [Ports], [Advanced], [Setup] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[General], [Sharing], [Ports], [Color Management], [Advanced] and [Device Settings]

[Properties] window of Windows XP (Continued)

When using the [Printing Preference] menu

1. Turn on the computer to start up Windows XP.

2. Select [Start] - [Printers and Faxes] from the task bar.

The [Printers and Faxes] window will appear.

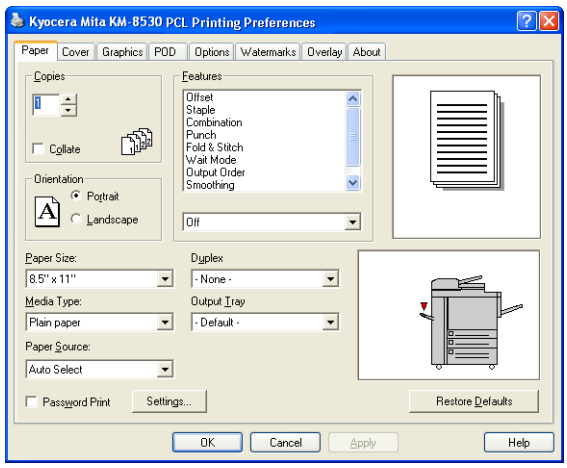
3. Right click the printer icon of this printing system and then click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Properties] window of this printing system will appear.

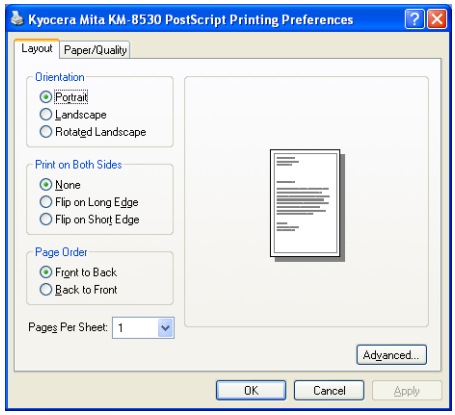
MEMO

The name of the printer icon may be changed by conditions and settings used.

For Windows XP (Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver)



For Windows XP (Adobe PS3 printer driver)



[Properties] window of Windows XP (Continued)

The following tabs are displayed.

For Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver

[Paper], [Cover], [Graphics], [POD], [Options], [Watermarks], [Overlay] and [About]

For Adobe PS3 printer driver

[Layout] and [Paper/Quality]

To set the paper-related items

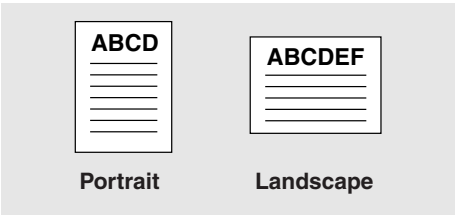
The size and direction of the paper can be set as shown below.

To set the orientation:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set the orientation to output paper in "Portrait" or "Landscape".

Reference ▶▶ (p.153) To set the orientation

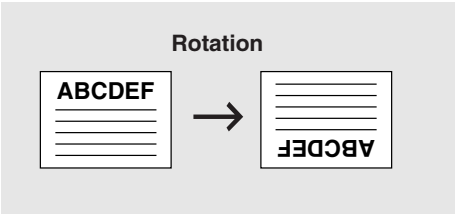


To print in rotation:

Adobe PS3

Print in rotation, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.155) To print in rotation



To set the size of output paper:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set various sizes for the output paper.

Reference ▶▶ (p.157) To set the size of the output paper

To set the type of manual-feed paper:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set various types of paper as output paper.

Reference ▶▶ (p.160) To set the type of manual-feed paper

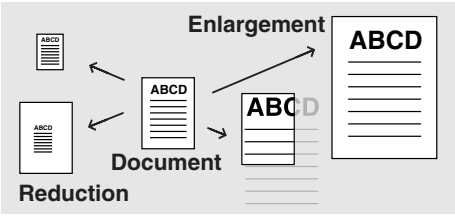
To set the paper-related items (Continued)

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print by specifying a value of enlargement or reduction.

Reference ▸▸ (p.164) To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio

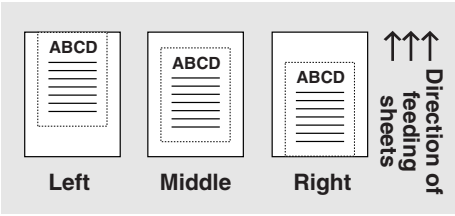


To set the printing position of the wide paper:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set a printing position for the wide paper.

Reference ▸▸ (p.167) To set the printing position of the wide paper.

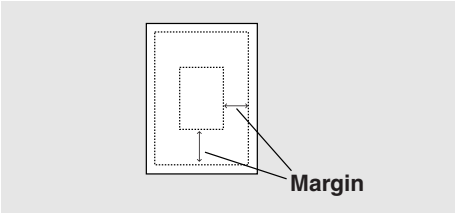


To set the margins:

Adobe PS3

Set the margins of output paper, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▸▸ (p.169) To set the margins



To set the orientation

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 Compliant

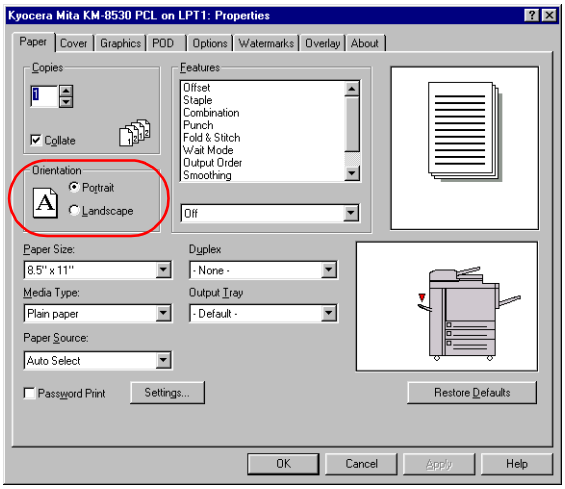
Set the orientation to output paper in "Portrait" or "Landscape".

When the paper direction set for the document created by an application is different than the paper direction or orientation of the [Properties] window displayed from an application, the setting in the [Properties] window takes precedence over the other for printing. Set the paper direction or orientation set in the [Properties] window to the paper direction of the document if necessary.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click on the button for [Portrait] or [Landscape] of [Orientation].

MEMO

The default is [Portrait].

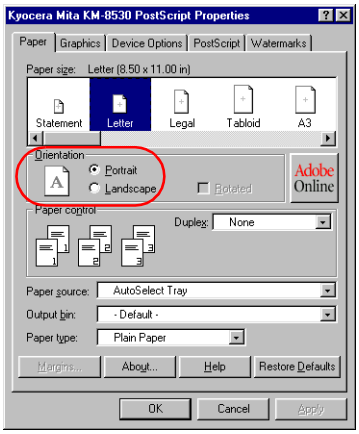
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the orientation (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Page Setup] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, the [Layout] tab is displayed.

2. Click on the button for [Portrait] or [Landscape] of [Orientation].

MEMO

- The default is [Portrait].
- Turning on [Landscape] allows you to set [Rotated].

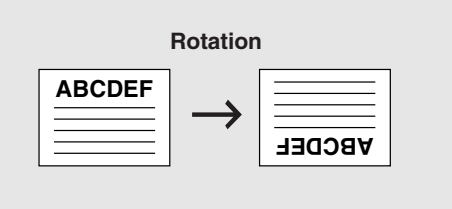
Reference (p.155)

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print in rotation

Adobe PS3 Compliant

Print the in rotation, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.



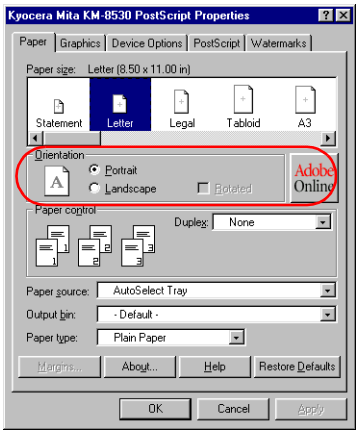
Depending on an application used, it sometimes occurs that an image cannot be rotated correctly with the rotation set.

To print in rotation (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Page Setup] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, the [Layout] tab is displayed.

2. Click on the button for [Portrait] or [Landscape] of [Orientation].

[Rotated] becomes available.

MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, Step 2 is not required.
- For Windows 2000/XP, Step 2 is not required. In Step 3, click on the button for [Rotate in landscape].

3. Turn on the check box of [Rotated].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the size of the output paper

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Print various sizes of documents as shown below.

Document size that can be selected	
5.5" x 8.5" (Statement)	
8.5" x 11" (Letter)	
8.5" x 14" (Legal)	
11" x 17" (Tabloid)	
A3	297 x 420 mm
A4	210 x 297 mm
A5	148 x 210 mm
A6	105 x 148 mm
B4	250 x 354 mm
B5	182 x 257 mm
B6	128 x 182 mm
F4	8.0" x 13"
8K	267 x 390 mm
16K	195 x 267 mm
5.5" x 8.5" W (Statement[wide])	
8.5" x 11" W (Letter[wide])	
11" x 17" W (Tabloid[wide])	
A3W	297 x 420 mm
A4W	210 x 297 mm
A5W	148 x 210 mm
B4W	250 x 354 mm
B5W	182 x 257 mm
A4 Tabstock	
8.5" x 11" Tabstock (Letter Tabstock)	

MEMO

- The paper with "W" at the end of the document size represents "Wide paper".

Reference (p.167)

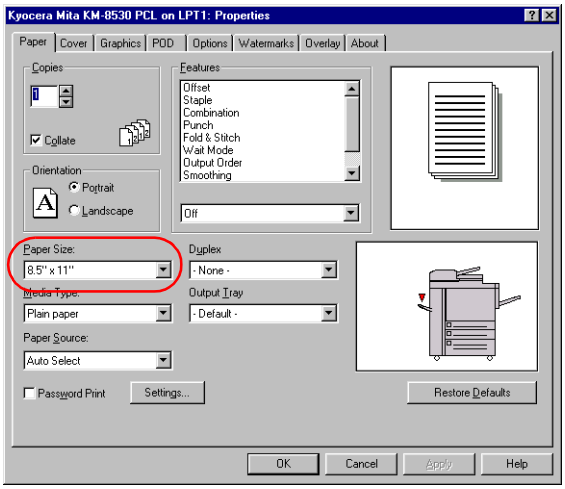
- If there is no space for displaying "Wide" in the driver, it is replaced --> with "+". For example, Tabloid (wide) --> Tabloid +.
- The paper size that can be used vary depending on print controller.

To set the size of the output paper (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

1. Display the [Paper] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Paper Size] box to display a list. Then select a paper size from the list.

MEMO

- The default is [8.5” x 11”] in the U.S.A.
- The Default is [A4] in the other countries.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the size of the output paper (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

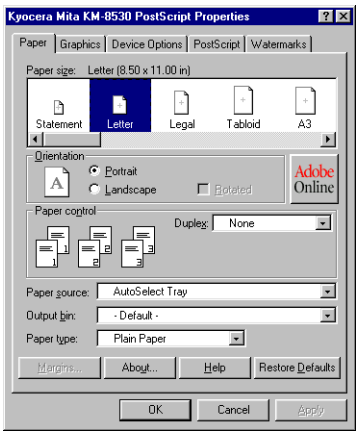
Often, a specific paper size cannot be selected due to other functions set. For details, refer to the explanation of each of the functions.

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Page Setup] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Select the document size from the [Paper size] column.

MEMO

The default is [Letter] in the U.S.A.
The Default value may be different depending on the specifications of each country.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the type of manual-feed paper

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Set various types of paper sizes as the output paper as shown below.

	Types of paper that can be selected.
Plain paper	
Thin paper	This is set when printing thin paper such as airmail letter paper.
Thick paper	This is set when printing thick paper such as a post card.
Tab sheet	This is set when printing on index paper.
Trace	This is set when printing the Trace paper.
OHP [Transparency]	
OHP-Interleave [Blank]	An interleave sheet is output each time an OHP sheet is printed.
OHP-Interleave [Print]	An interleave sheet is output each time an OHP sheet is printed.
User defined type	This is set when printing the user specified paper set on the copier.

To set the type of manual-feed paper (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[OHP] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Duplex], [Staple] or [Punch] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] field
- When [Fold & Stitch] or [Booklet] is available in [Paper] tab - [Features] field

[OHP(interleave)] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Duplex], [Staple] or [Punch] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] field
- When [Fold & Stitch] or [Combination] - [Booklet] is available in [Paper] tab - [Features] field
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab
- When any item in [Cover] tab is available
- When [Duplex], [Staple] or [Punch] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] field
- When [Fold & Stitch] or [Combination] - [Booklet] is available in [Paper] tab - [Features] field

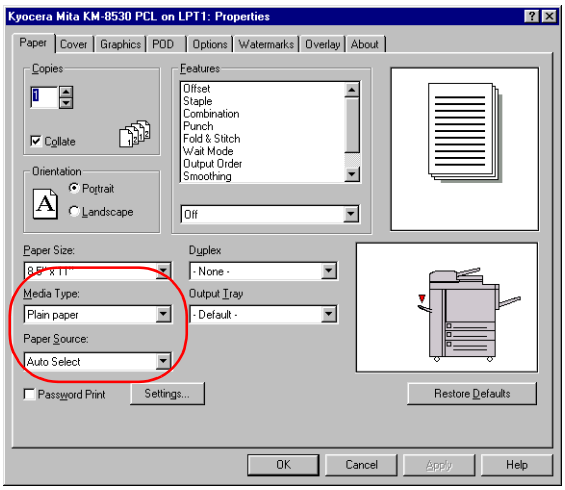
[Tab sheet] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When settings other than [8.5 x 11, 11 x 17, A3, A4, B5] in [Paper] tab - [Paper size]
- When [Fold & Stitch] is available in [Paper] tab - [Features] field

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Paper Source] box to display the list. Then select [Bypass tray] from the list.

MEMO

The default is [Auto Select].

To set the type of manual-feed paper (Continued)

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Media Type] box to display the list. Then select a paper type you want to use from the list.

MEMO

The default is [Plain paper].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the type of manual-feed paper (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[OHP] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Duplex] is available in [Paper] tab
- When [Fold, Stitch] is available in [Device Options] tab - [Printer features]
- When [Combination] is available in [Device Options] tab - [Printer features]

[OHP(interleave)] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Duplex] is available in [Paper] tab
- When [Fold, Stitch] is available in [Device Options] tab - [Printer features]
- When [Combination] is available in [Device Options] tab - [Printer features]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Printer features]-[Collate]

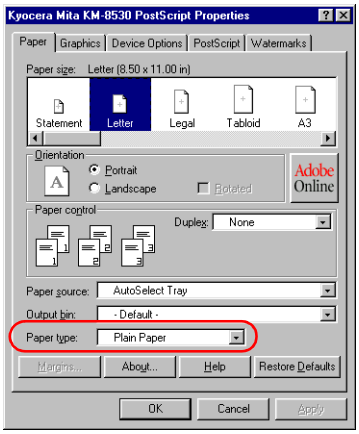
[Tabbed sheet] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When settings other than [Letter, Tabloid, A3, A4, B4, B5] in [Paper] tab - [Paper size]
- When [Fold, Stitch] is available in [Device Options] tab - [Printer features]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



MEMO
- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed
- For Windows 2000/XP, the [Paper/Quality] tab is displayed.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Paper type] box to display the list. Then select a paper type you want to use from the list.

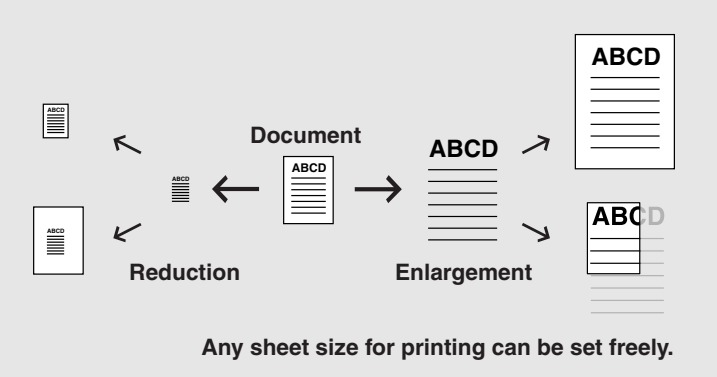
MEMO
- The default is [Plain Paper].
- The name of the setup item for Windows NT4.0 / 2000/XP is [Paper type] --> [Media].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Print by specifying the enlargement or reduction ratio in the range from 25% to 400%.



MEMO

If printing runs out of the output room on paper as a result of enlargement, printing is made starting at the upper left corner of the paper.

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

When the document size is [A3], [B4], [11"x17"] (Tabloid) or [8.5"x14"] (Legal) and the OS is Windows 95/98/Me, the maximum enlargement ratio is 300%.

Limitation

[Scaling] cannot be set in the following case:

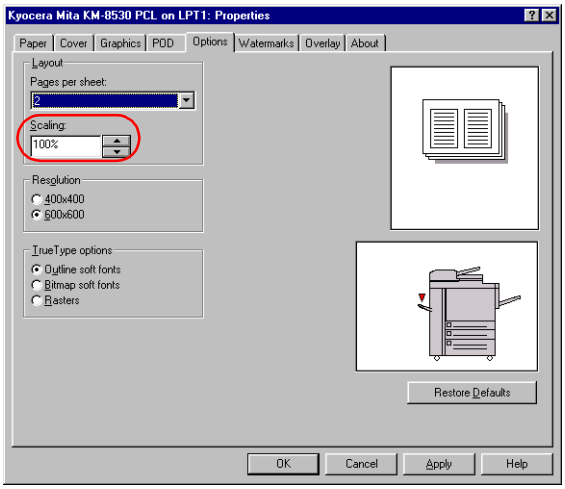
- When setting other than [1] in [Options] tab - [Pages per sheet]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows98



2. Click the [▲] / [▼] buttons beside the [Scaling] box to specify a value between [10] and [400].

MEMO

- The default is [100%].
- The setting can be made in increments of 1%.
- It is possible to select a numeral in the range given in the [Scaling] box and enter directly the number.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Scaling] cannot be set in the following case:

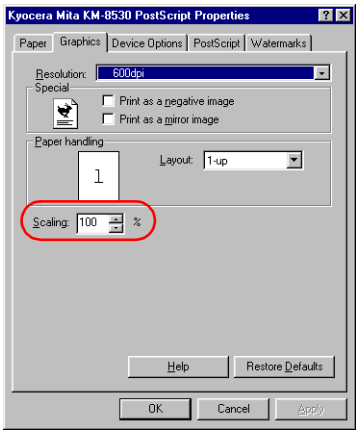
- When setting other than [1-up] in [Graphics] tab - [Layout]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Click the [▲] / [▼] buttons beside the [Scaling] box to specify a value in the range between [25] and [400].

MEMO

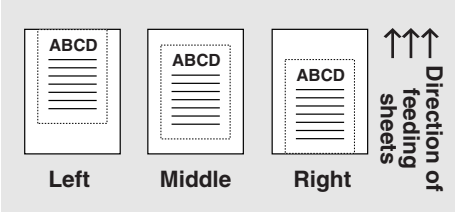
- The default is [100%].
- The setting can be made in increments of 1%.
- It is possible to select a numeral in the range given in the [Scaling] box and enter directly the number of copies to be printed.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the printing position of the wide paper

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 Compliant

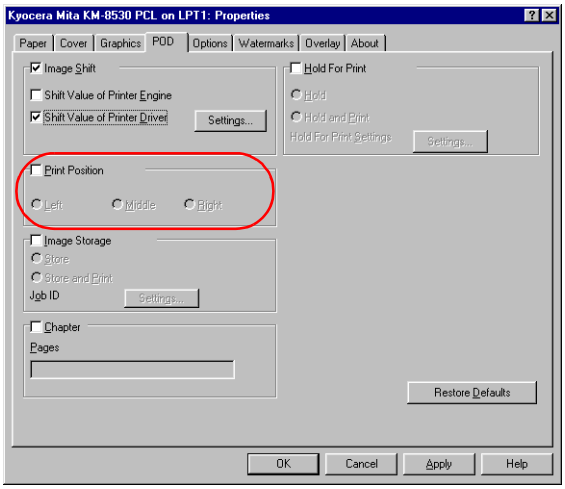
Set the printing position of wide paper.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [POD] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Print Position] check box.

3. Click [Left], [Middle] or [Right].

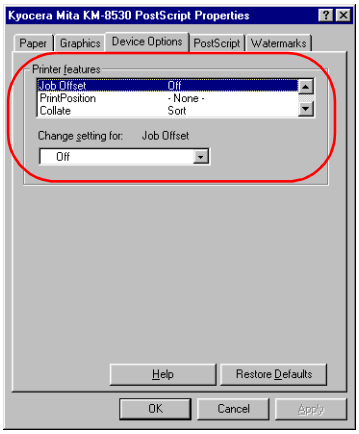
4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the printing position of the wide paper (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, [Document Defaults...] - [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Select [PrintPosition] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change settings for] box to display the list. Then select the printing position from the list.

[Left], [Middle] or [Right] are available.

MEMO

The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

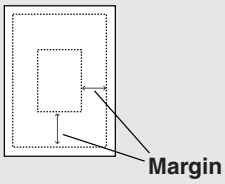
To set the margins

Adobe PS3 Compliant

Set the margins of the output paper, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Important

This setting can only be set in the Properties shown by right-clicking the [Printers] folder. The Important marks are used.



MEMO

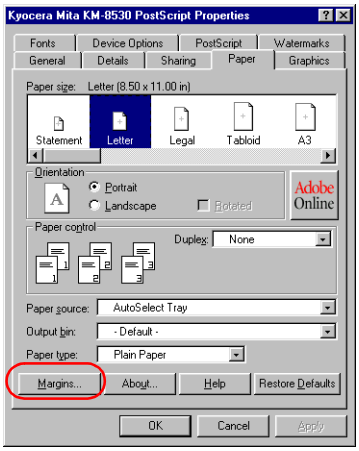
For Windows NT4.0 / 2000/XP, this function is not provided.

To set the margins (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

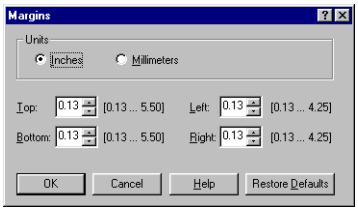
1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



2. Click the [Margins] button.

The [Margins] dialog box will appear.



3. Click [Inches] or [Millimeters] in the [Units] field.

MEMO

The default value may be different depending on the environment of your computer and the specifications of each country.

4. Click the [▲] / [▼] buttons beside the [Top], [Bottom], [Left] and [Right] boxes to set a value for each margin.

The range of values that can be set as each margin is displayed on the right side of the box. However, this range varies depending on the paper size selected.

MEMO

- The default is [0.13].
- The setting can be made in increment of 0.1.
- It is possible to select a numeral in the range given in the box and enter type the number.

5. Click the [OK] button.

The [Margins] dialog box is closed and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

6. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the paper tray

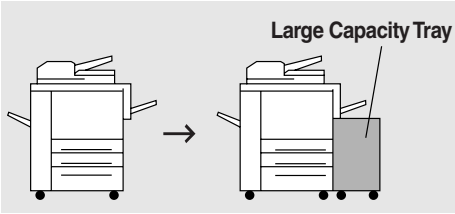
For the paper trays such as the feed tray and the output tray, the following settings are available.

To set the Large Capacity Tray:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize an optional Large Capacity Tray.

Reference (p.173) To set the Large Capacity Tray

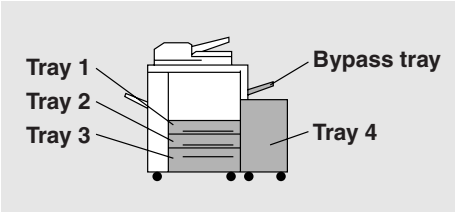


To set the Bypass tray (Manual feed):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

You can select and set a Bypass tray (Manual feed) to be used from the list.

Reference (p.176) To set the Bypass tray (Manual feed)

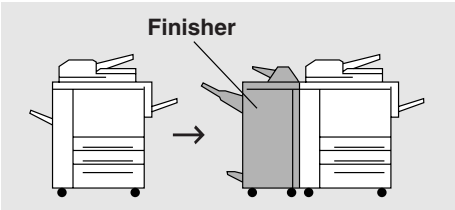


To set the Finisher:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

You can set the printer driver to recognize an optional Finisher.

Reference (p.179) To set the Finisher



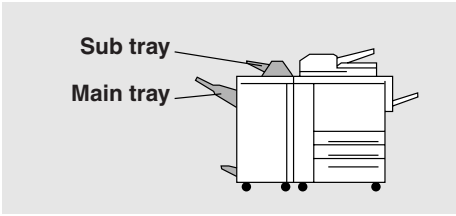
To set the paper tray (Continued)

To set the Output tray:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Select and set an output tray to be used from the list.

Reference ▶ (p.182) To set the Output tray

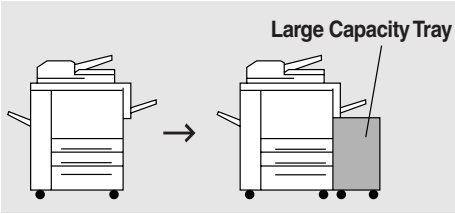


To set the Large Capacity Tray

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Set the printer driver recognize an optional Large Capacity Tray, if it is installed in the copier.

When printer driver recognizes the Large Capacity Tray, it possible to select [Tray 4].



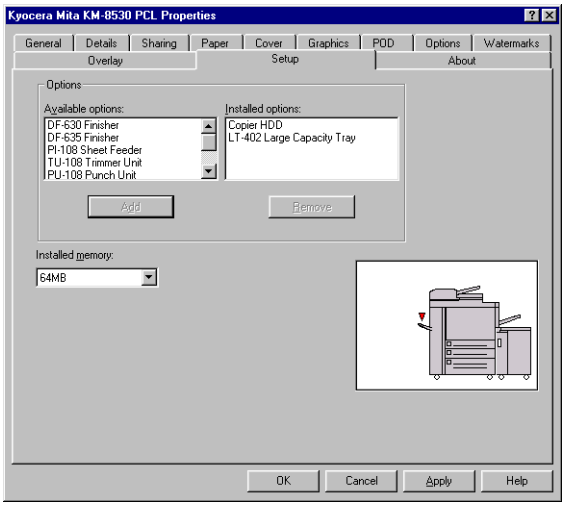
Even if the copier is provided with a Large Capacity Tray, the printer driver will not recognize it, if the Large Capacity Tray is not set on the computer.

To set the Large Capacity Tray (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

1. Open [Setup] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO

When nothing is selected, it is not possible to use [Tray 4].

2. Select a Large Capacity Tray you want to use from the [Available options] list.

When the copier is provided with an optional Large Capacity Tray, select either [LT-402 Large Capacity Tray] or [LT-412 Large Capacity Tray].

MEMO

When you do not know if the optional Large Capacity Tray installed is a [LT-402 Large Capacity Tray] or [LT-412 Large Capacity Tray], consult your system administrator.

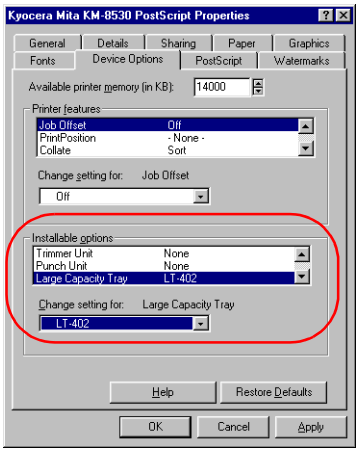
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Large Capacity Tray (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window from [Printers] window.

When displayed from [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO

For Windows NT4.0 / 2000/XP, the [Device Settings] tab of the [Properties] window is displayed from the [Printers] window.

2. Select [Large Capacity Tray] from the [Installable options] field.

MEMO

The default is [None]. When [None] is selected, it is not possible to use [Tray 4].

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Installable options] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select a Large Capacity Tray you want to use from the list.

When the copier is provided with an optional Large Capacity Tray, select either [LT-402] or [LT-412].

When the copier is not provided with an optional Large Capacity Tray, select [None]

MEMO

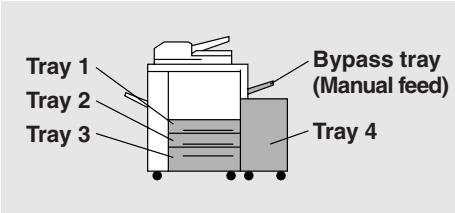
When do not know if the optional Large Capacity Tray installed is a [LT-402 Large Capacity Tray] or [LT-412 Large Capacity Tray], consult your system administrator.

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Bypass tray (Manual feed)

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Select and set a Bypass tray (Manual feed) to be used from the list.



Important

The paper sizes that can be used vary depending on each tray. Care should be taken when selecting a tray.

Feed Tray	paper size that can be used.
Tray 1 to Tray 3	8.5"x11" (Letter), 5.5"x8.5" (Statement), 8.5"x14" (Legal), 11"x17" (Tabloid), A3, A4, A5, B4, B5, B6, F4, 16K, 8K, 8.5"x11"W (Letter [wide]), 5.5"x8.5"W (Statement [wide]), 11"x17"W (Tabloid [wide]), A3W, A4W, A5W, B4W, B5W, A4 Tabstock, 8.5"x11" Tabstock (Letter Tabstock)
Tray 4 (LT-402)	8.5"x11" (Letter), A4, B5, F4, 8.5"x11"W (Letter [wide]), A4W, B5W, A4 Tabstock, 8.5"x11" Tabstock (Letter Tabstock)
Tray 4 (LT-412)	8.5"x11" (Letter), 5.5"x8.5" (Statement), 8.5"x14" (Legal), 11"x17" (Tabloid), A3, A4, B4, F4, 8.5"x11"W (Letter [wide]), 11"x17"W (Tabloid [wide]), A4W, A4 Tabstock, 8.5"x11" Tabstock (Letter Tabstock)
Bypass Tray Manual feed	8.5"x11" (Letter), 5.5"x8.5" (Statement), 8.5"x14" (Legal), 11"x17" (Tabloid), A3, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, B6, F4, 16K, 8K, 8.5" x 11"W (Letter [wide]), 11"x17"W (Tabloid [wide]), A3W, A4W, A5W, B4W, B5W, A4 Tabstock, 8.5"x11" Tabstock (Letter Tabstock)

To set the Bypass tray (Manual feed) (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Tray 4] cannot be set in the following case:

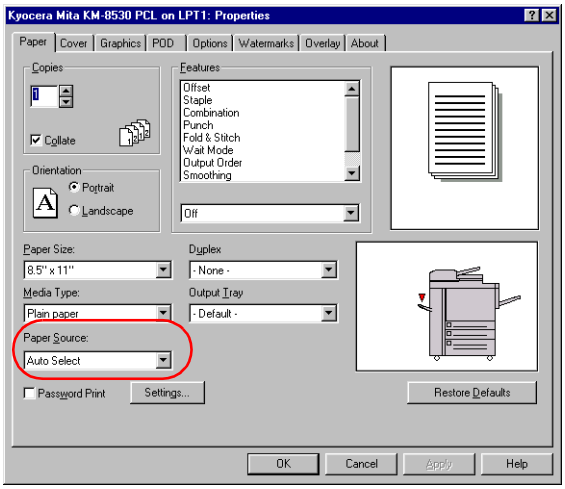
- When [LT-402 Large Capacity Tray] or [LT-412 Large Capacity Tray] is not available in [Setup] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

The default is [Auto Select]. When [Auto Select] is set, a tray set with paper specified in [Properties] of this printing system is automatically selected from an application.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Paper Source] box to display the list. Then select a tray you want to use from the list.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Bypass tray (Manual feed) (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Tray 4] cannot be set in the following case:

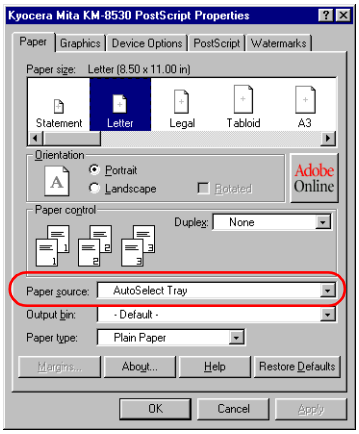
- When [Large Capacity Tray] is not available in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

- The [Device options] tab - [Installable options] is displayed in [Properties] displayed from the [Printers] window.
- If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Page Setup] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, the [Paper/Quality] tab is displayed.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Paper source] box to display the list. Then select a tray you want to use from the list.

MEMO

The default is [AutoSelect Tray]. When [AutoSelect Tray] is set, a tray set with paper specified in [Properties] of this printing system is automatically selected from an application.

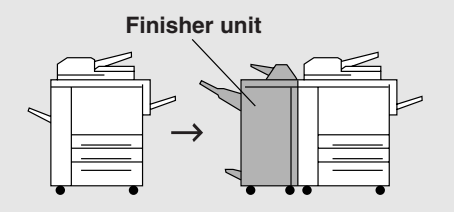
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Finisher

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Set the printer driver to recognize an optional Finisher, if it is installed in the copier.

When the printer driver recognizes the Finisher, it is possible to select [Main tray] or [Sub tray] as [Output Tray].



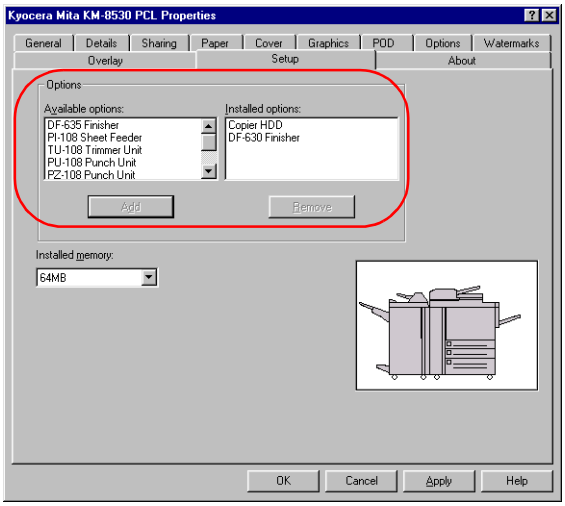
Even if the copier is provided with a Finisher, the printer driver will not recognize it, if the Finisher unit is not set on the computer.

To set the Finisher (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

1. Open [Setup] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



2. Select a Finisher you want to use from the [Available options] list.

When the copier is provided with an optional Finisher, select either [DF-630 Finisher] or [DF-635 Finisher].

MEMO

When Nothing is selected, it is not possible to set a Finisher.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

MEMO

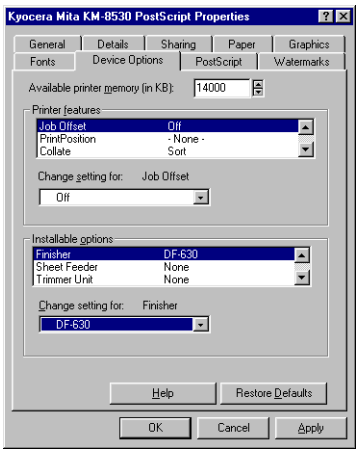
When you do not know if the optional Finisher installed is a [DF-630 Finisher] or [DF-635 Finisher], consult your system administrator.

To set the Finisher (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of the [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

When displayed from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO

For Windows NT4.0 / 2000/XP, the [Device Settings] tab of the [Properties] window is displayed from the [Printers] window.

2. Select [Finisher] from the [Installable options] field.

MEMO

The default is [No Finisher]. When [No Finisher] is selected, it is not possible to set an Finisher tray.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Installable options] - [Change setting for] boxes to display the list. Then select a finisher you want to use from the list.

When the copier is provided with an optional Finisher, select either [DF-630] or [DF-635].

MEMO

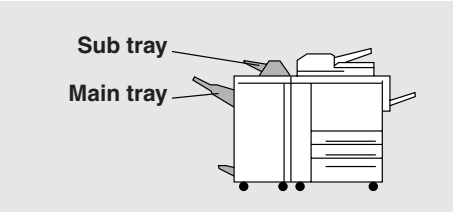
- When you do not know if the optional Finisher installed is a [DF-630] or [DF-635], consult your system administrator.

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Output tray

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Set [Main tray] or [Sub tray] as [Output Tray], if the output tray is recognized by the printer driver.



To set the Output tray (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Sub Tray] cannot be set in the following cases:

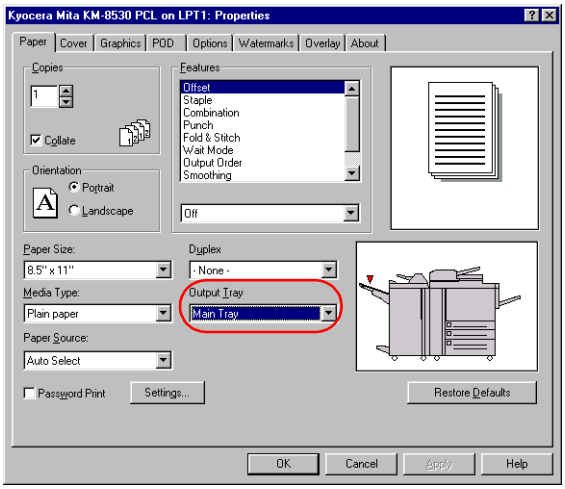
- When [DF-630 Finisher] or [DF-635 Finisher] is not available in [Setup] tab
- When [Staple], [Punch] or [Fold & Stitch] is available in [Paper] tab - [Features] field

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

When [Output Tray] is not recognized as a the Finisher, it cannot be used.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Output Tray] box to display the list. Then select a tray you want to use from the list.

[Main tray] and [Sub tray] are available.

MEMO

The default is [Default].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

MEMO

Clicking the [▼] button displays a feed tray and Finisher tray selected in the preview image at the lower right side of the [Setup] tab.

To set the Output tray (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Sub Tray] cannot be set in the following cases:

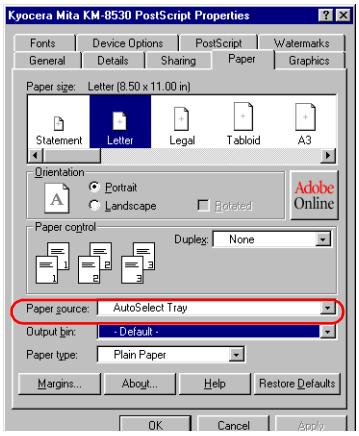
- When [Finisher] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [Stapling], [Punch] or [Fold, Stitch] is available in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

- The [Device option] tab - [Additional option] is displayed in [Properties] displayed from the [Printers] window.
- If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.
- For Windows NT4.0 / 2000/XP, the name of the item set is [Output Bin].

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Output bin] box to display the list. Then select an output tray you want to use from the list.

[Main tray] and [Sub tray] are available.

MEMO

- The default is [Default].
- When the Finisher is not recognized, [Output bin] cannot be set.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print multiple copies

To print multiple sets of the same output result pages, set as below.

To set the number of copies to be printed:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set the number of copies to be printed from the [Properties] window.

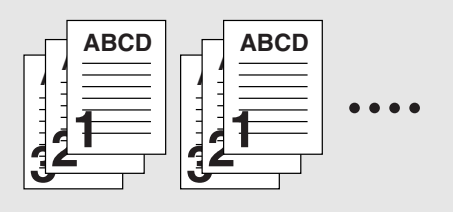
Reference (p.187) To set the number of copies to be printed

To print by sets (Collate):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print the first one set of pages in one lot, and then the second set of pages, the third set of pages, ..., when printing multiple sets of pages.

Reference (p.189) To print by sets

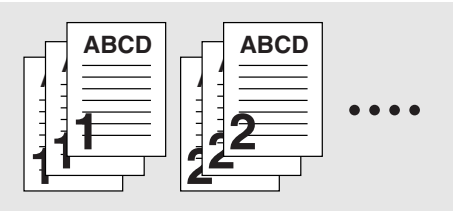


To print page by page collectively (Group):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print the required number of the first page, and then the required umber of the second pages, the third page, ... collectively when printing multiple sets of pages.

Reference (p.191) To print page by page collectively



To print multiple copies (Continued)

To output offset copies:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Output groups of copies shifted to opposite sides.

Reference ▶▶ (p.194) To output offset copies

Offset Copies

To set the number of copies to be printed

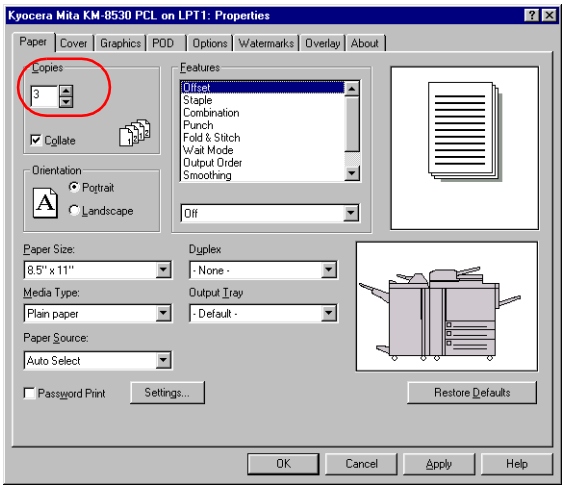
PCL5e | Adobe PS3 Compliant

Set the number of copies to be printed from the [Properties] window.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [Copies] box to set the number of copies to be printed.

MEMO

- The default is [1].
- The maximum number of copies to be set is [9999].
- It is also possible to select a numeric value in the range given in the [Copies] box and enter directly the number of copies to be printed.

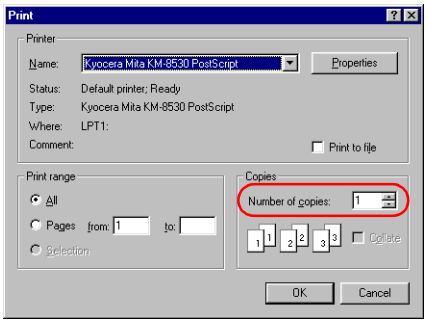
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the number of copies to be printed (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

When the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used, printing is made in the number of copies set in the [Print] dialog box of an application.

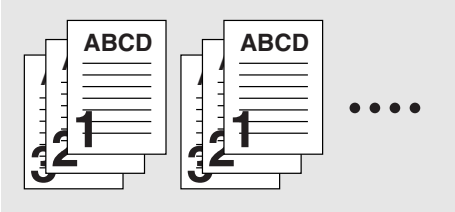
Using Windows 98



To print by sets

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Collate)**

Print the first one set of copies in one lot, and then the second set of copies, the third set of copies, ..., when printing multiple sets of pages.



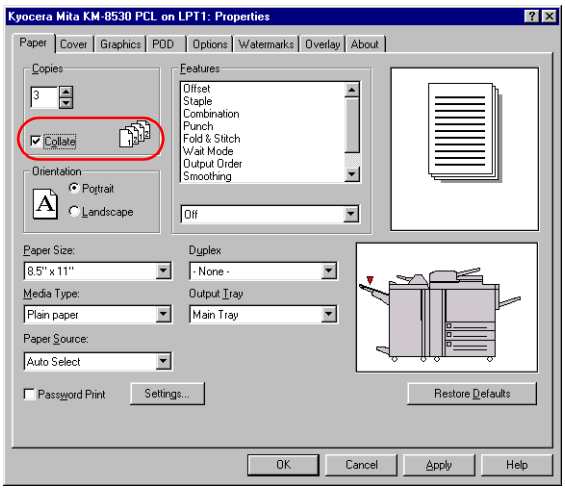
MEMO

For the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver, this function is referred to as [Collate]. However, for the Adobe PS3 printer driver, it is referred to as [Collate] - [Sort].

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Collate] check box.

MEMO

The default is [ON].

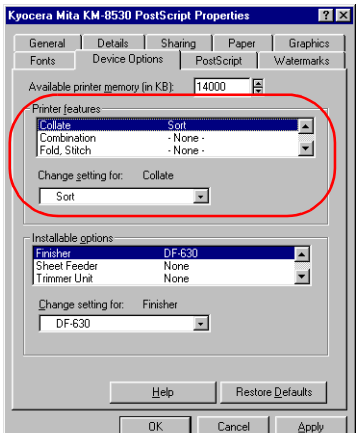
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print by sets (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Select [Collate] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] boxes to display the list. Then select [Sort] from the list.

MEMO

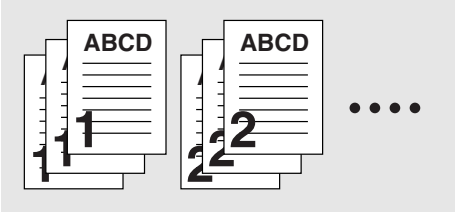
The default is [Sort].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print page by page collectively

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Group)**

Print the required number of the first page, and then the required number of the second pages, the third page, ... collectively when printing multiple sets of pages.



To print page by page collectively (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Group] cannot be set in the following cases:

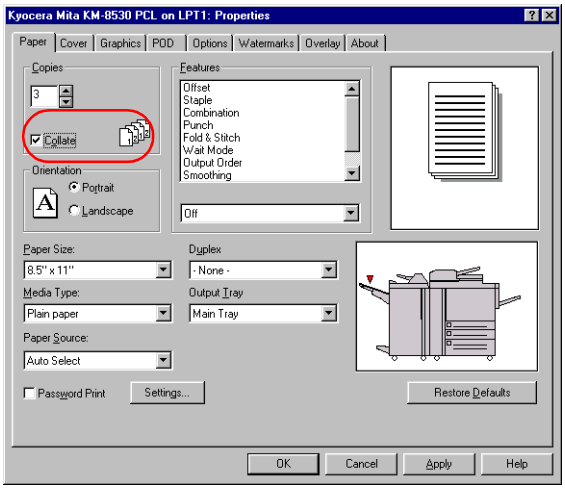
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Fold & Stitch] is available in [Paper] tab - [Features] field
- When [Front Cover], [Back Cover] or [Sheet Insertion] is available in [Cover] tab
- When [Duplex] is available in [Paper] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn off the [Collate] check box.

MEMO

The default is [ON].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print page by page collectively (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Group] cannot be set in the following cases:

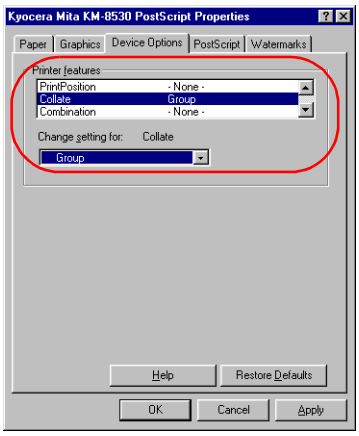
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]
- When [Fold only], [Fold, Trim], [Fold, Stitch] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected in [Device Options] tab
- When [Front Cover] or [Back Cover] is available in [Device Options] tab
- When [Duplex] is available in [Paper] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Select [Collate] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] boxes to display the list. Then select [Group] from the list.

MEMO

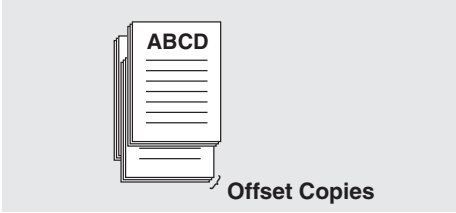
The default is [Sort].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To output offset copies

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Offset / Job Offset)**

Output with copies shifted in a unit of the number of copies or page group to this side and the opposite side at the eject position when printing multiple sets of copies.



MEMO

For the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver, this function is referred to as [Offset]. However, for the Adobe PS3 printer driver, it is referred to as [Job Offset].

To output offset copies (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Offset] cannot be set in the following cases:

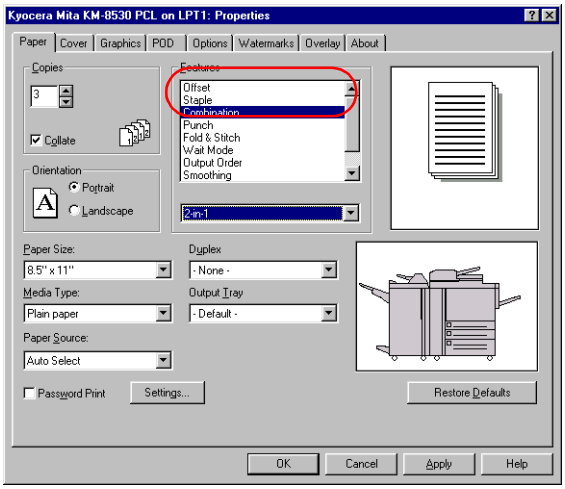
- When [DF-630 Finisher] or [DF-635 Finisher] is not available in [Setup] tab
- When [Sub tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]
- When [Fold only], [Fold, Trim], [Fold, Stitch] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] field

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Select the [Offset] in the [Features] field.

3. Select the [On] in the pull-down menu under it.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To output offset copies (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Offset] cannot be set in the following cases:

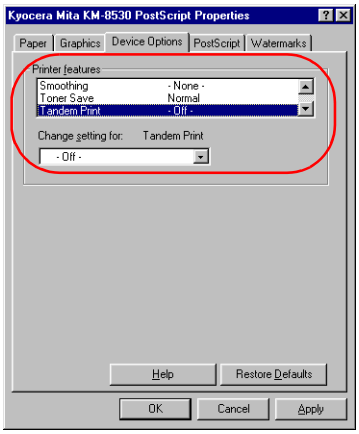
- When [Finisher] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [Sub tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]
- When [Fold only], [Fold, Trim], [Fold, Stitch] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, [Document Defaults...] - [Advanced] tab is displayed
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed

2. Select [Job Offset] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] boxes to display the list. Then select [On] from the list.

MEMO

The default is [Off].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print multiple pages

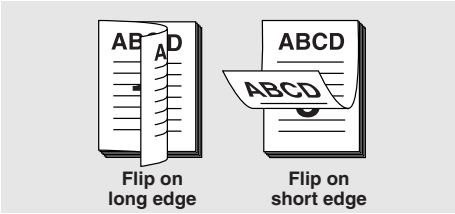
You can set as shown below when printing multiple pages document.

To set to print on both sides:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print continuous multiple pages on both front and back sides.

Reference ▶▶ (p.199) To set to print on both sides

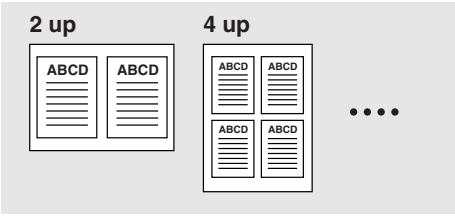


To print the document of multiple pages on a single page: (Page allocation / Layout):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Allocate the document of 2 pages, 4 pages, 6 pages, 9 pages or 16 pages onto a single page for printing.

Reference ▶▶ (p.202) To print the document of multiple pages on a single page

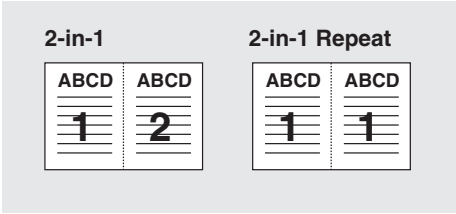


To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big: (2-in-1 / 2-in-1 Repeat):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print a document of 2 pages onto a single paper twice as big as a paper set in the output paper.

Reference ▶▶ (p.205) To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big



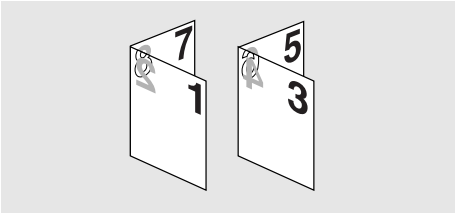
To print multiple pages (Continued)

To print a twofold booklet (Booklet):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print output paper so that they become a book when they are folded in two.

Reference ▶▶ (p.209) To print a twofold booklet

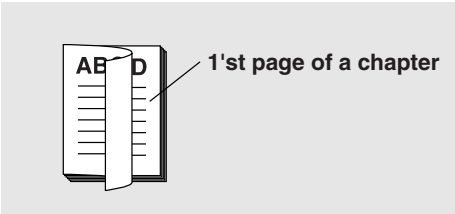


To print a specific page on the front face (Chapter):

PCL5e

When the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used, print a specific page so that it comes on the front, especially when printing on both sides of the paper.

Reference ▶▶ (p.212) To print a specific page on the front face

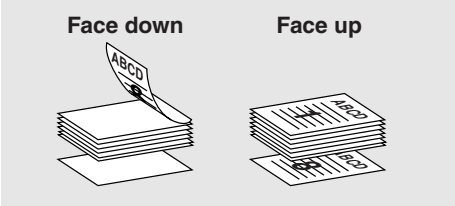


To print pages in reverse order (Face up):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Output paper in reverse order when printing multiple pages.

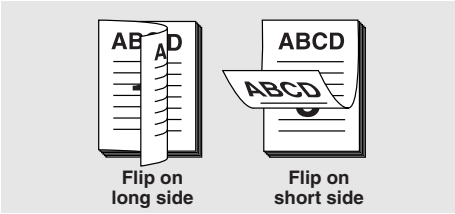
Reference ▶▶ (p.214) To print pages in reverse order



To set to print on both sides

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Print continuous multiple pages on both front and back sides. [Flip on long edge] and [Flip on short edge] are available.



To set to print on both sides (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Duplex] cannot be set in the following cases:

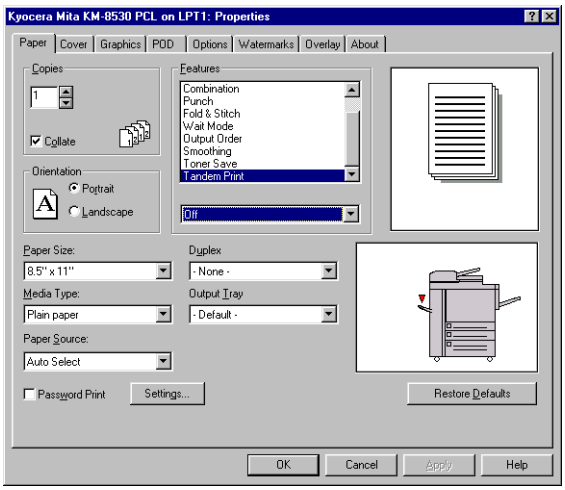
- When [OHP] or [Tab sheet] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Duplex] box to display the list. Then select [Flip on long edge] or [Flip on short edge].

MEMO

The default is [None].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set to print on both sides (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Duplex] cannot be set in the following cases:

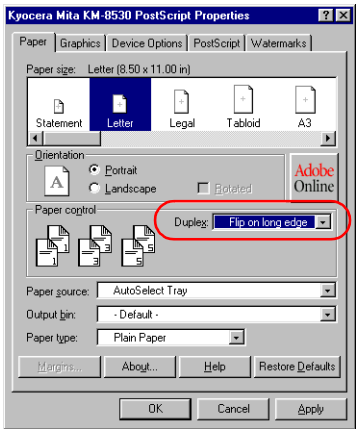
- When [OHP] or [Tabbed sheet] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper Type]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Page Setup] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, the [Layout] tab is displayed.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Duplex] box to display the list. Then select [Flip on long edge] or [Flip on short edge].

MEMO

The default is [None].

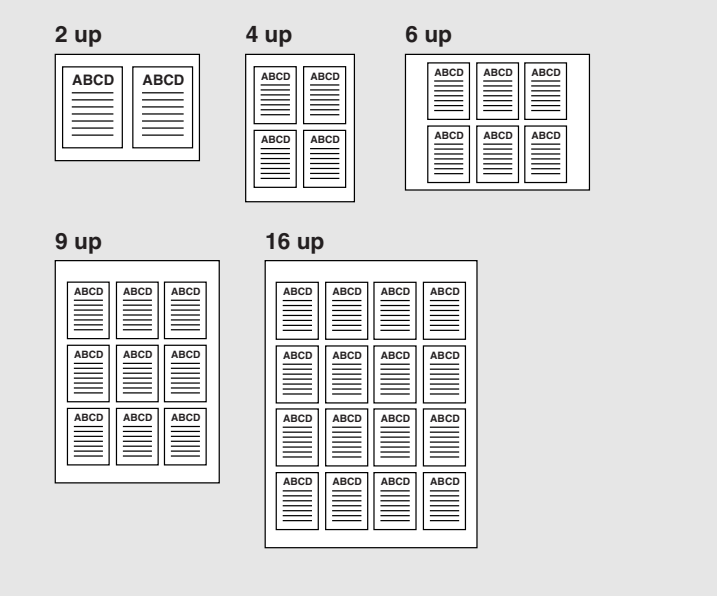
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print the document of multiple pages on a single page

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

(Pages per sheet / Paper handling)

Allocate a document of 2 pages, 4 pages, 6 pages, 9 pages or 16 pages onto a single page for printing. The allocated pages are automatically reduced for printing based on the printable region of the output paper.



To print the document of multiple pages on a single page (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Pages per sheet] cannot be set in the following case:

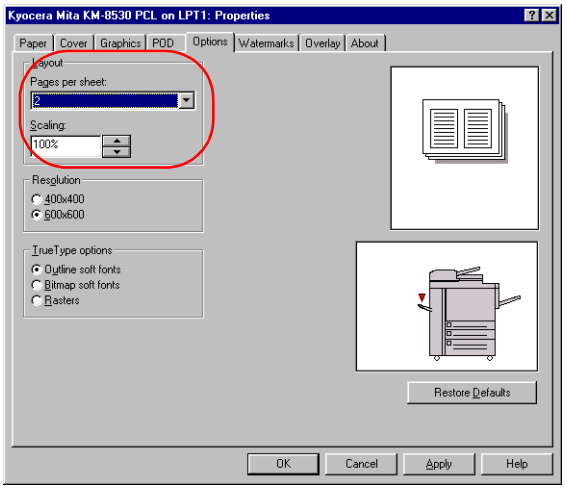
- When [scaling] is 101% more in [Options] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Pages per sheet] box to display a list. And then select the number of pages from the list.

The selection of [1], [2], [4], [6], [9] or [16] is available.

MEMO

- The default is [1].
- When the [Duplex] is available, you can use [Pages per sheet] and [Duplex] at the same time.

Reference ▸ (p.199)

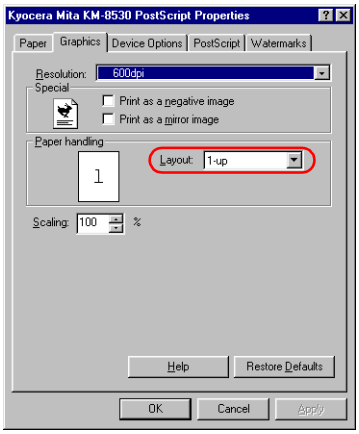
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print the document of multiple pages on a single page (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Graphics] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- Windows NT4.0, [Document Defaults...] - [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- Windows 2000/ XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [Printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Layout] box to display the list. Then select the number of pages to be allocated from the list.

[1-up], [2-up], [4-up], [6-up], [9-up] or [16-up] is available.

When any item other than [1-up] is selected, it becomes possible to use the [Print page border] check box.

MEMO

- The default is [1-up].
- When the [Duplex] is available, you can use [Paper handling] and [Duplex] at the same time.

  Reference (p.199)
- In the [Graphics] tab of the [Properties] window shown from the [Printers] window, the [Print page border] check box under the [Layout] box is.
- To print boundaries between pages allocated, view [Properties] window from [Printers] window.
- When any item other than [1-up] is selected, it becomes possible to use the [Print page frame] check box. The default is [ON].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

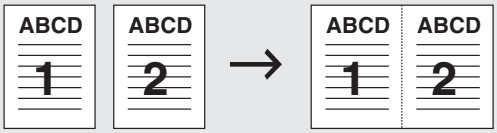
To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (2-in-1 / 2-in-1 Repeat)**

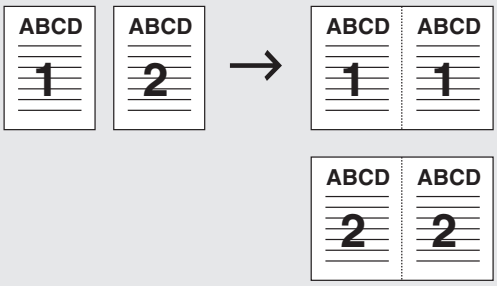
Print a document of 2 pages onto a single paper twice as big as a paper set in the output paper.

Example: 2 A4 size papers are aggregated on 1 A3 size paper.

2-in-1



2-in-1 Repeat



To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

Limitation

[2-in-1] cannot be set in the following cases:

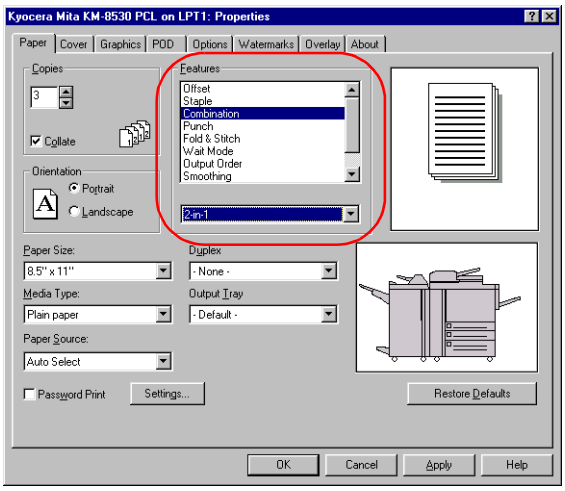
- When [8.5"x14",11"x17",11"x17W",A3,A3W,B4,B4W,8K,16K] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper size]
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media type]
- When [Front Cover], [Back Cover] or [Sheet Insertion] is selected in [Cover] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Check the [Collate] box on.

3. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Combination].

4. In the pull-down menu under it, select [2-in-1] or [2-in-1 Repeat].

For [2-in-1], 2 different pages are aggregated on a single paper for printing.

For [2-in-1 Repeat], the same 2 pages are aggregated on a single paper for printing.

MEMO

The default is [None].

5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[2-in-1] cannot be set in the following cases:

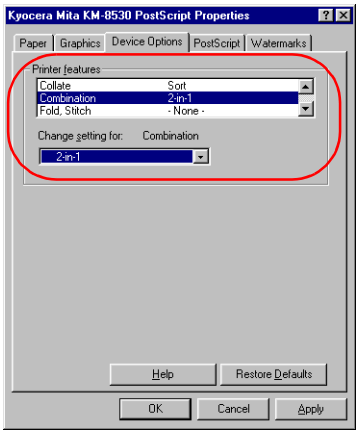
- When [Legal, Tabloid, A3, A6, B4, B6, F4, 8k, 16k, All widesize] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper size]
- When [OHP], [OHP-Interleave(Blank)], [OHP-Interleave(Print)] or [Tabbed sheet] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]
- When [Front Cover] or [Back Cover] is selected in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, [Document Defaults...] - [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [Printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Select [Combination] from the [Printer features] field.

To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big (Continued)

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display then list. Then select [2-in-1] or [2-in-1 Repeat] from the list.

For [2-in-1], 2 different pages are aggregated on a single paper for printing.

For [2-in-1 Repeat], the same 2 pages are aggregated on a single paper for printing.

MEMO

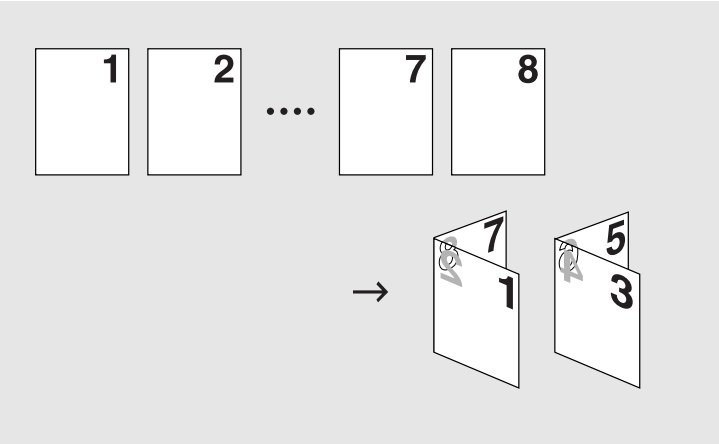
The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print a twofold booklet

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Booklet)**

Print output paper so that they become a book when they are folded in two.



To print a twofold booklet (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Booklet] cannot be set in the following cases:

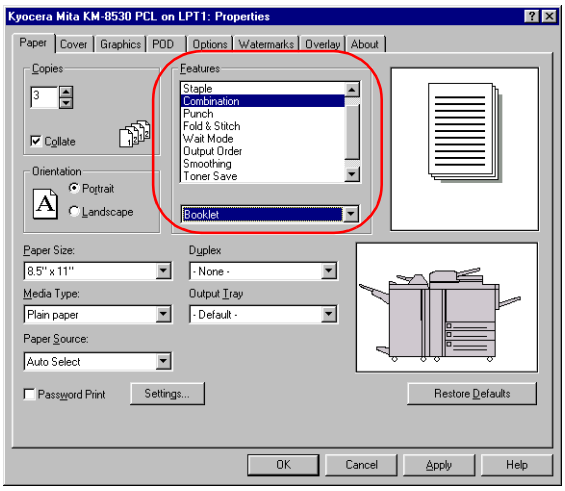
- When [8.5"x14",11"x17",11x17W",A3,A3W,A6,B4,B4W,B6,F4,8K,16K] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper size]
- When [Tab sheet] or [OHP] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab
- When [Back Cover] or [Sheet Insertion] is selected in [Cover] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Check the [Collate] box on.

3. Select the [Combination] in the [Features] field.

4. Select [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] in the pull-down menu under it.

5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print a twofold booklet (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Booklet] cannot be set in the following cases:

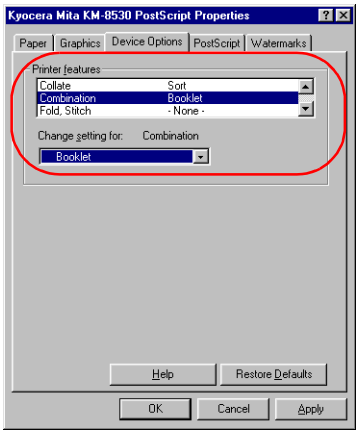
- When [Legal, Tabloid, A3, A6, B4, B6, F4, 8K, 16K, All widesize] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper size]
- When [Tabbed Sheet] or [OHP] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]
- When [Back Cover] is selected in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, [Document Defaults...] - [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [Printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Select [Combination] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display a list. And then select [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] from the list.

MEMO

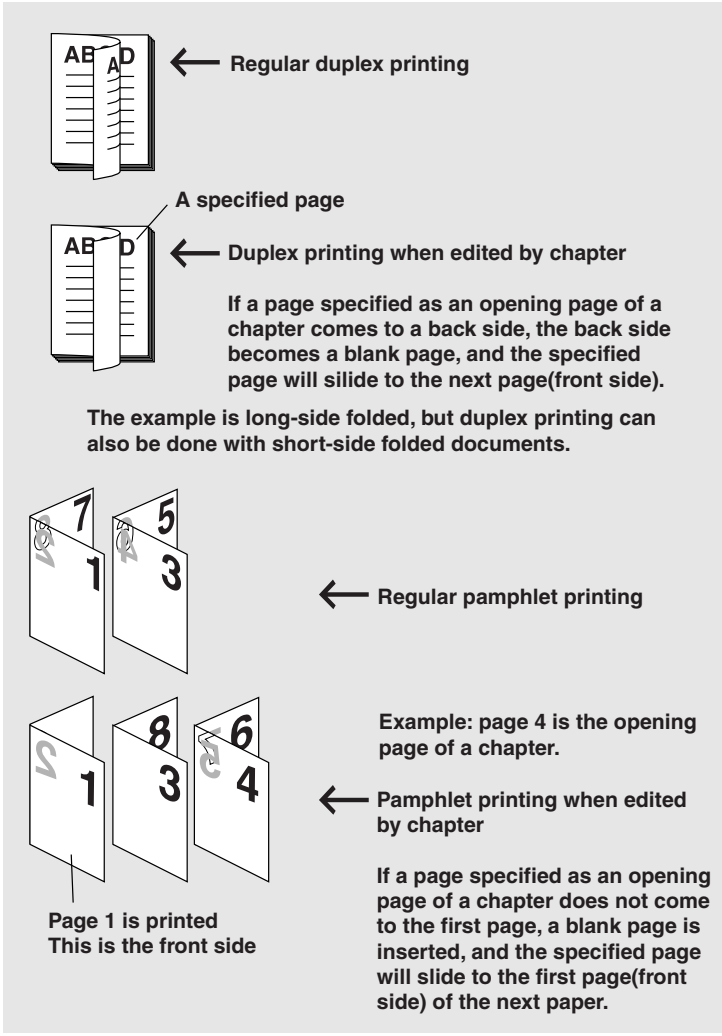
The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print a specific page on the front face

PCL5e **Compliant (Chapter)**

For the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver, print a specific page so that it comes on the front, when printing on both sides of the paper or booklet.


Regular duplex printing
A specified page
Duplex printing when edited by chapter
If a page specified as an opening page of a chapter comes to a back side, the back side becomes a blank page, and the specified page will silide to the next page(front side).
The example is long-side folded, but duplex printing can also be done with short-side folded documents.
Regular pamphlet printing
Example: page 4 is the opening page of a chapter.
Pamphlet printing when edited by chapter
If a page specified as an opening page of a chapter does not come to the first page, a blank page is inserted, and the specified page will slide to the first page(front side) of the next paper.
Page 1 is printed
This is the front side

To print a specific page on the front face (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

Limitation

[Chapter] cannot be set in the following cases:

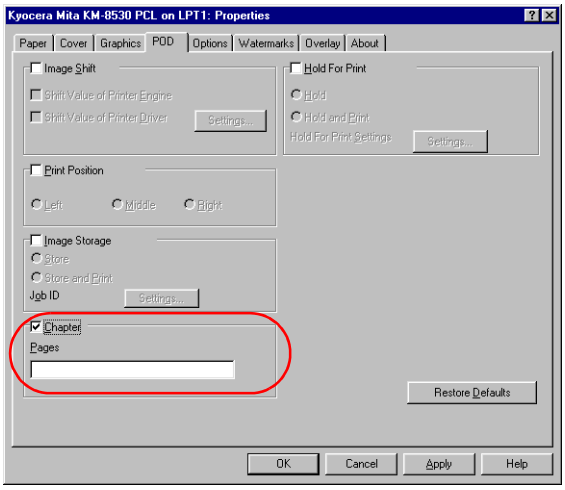
- When [Duplex] is not available in [Paper] tab
- When [OHP] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [POD] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Chapter] check box.

3. Enter a page number you want to print on the front in the [Pages] box.

You can specify the maximum page numbers of 30 pages in the [Pages] box.

When specifying multiple page numbers, divide the page numbers by a comma.

- Ex.: When making the fourth page into a table: 4
- Ex.: When making the fourth, sixth and 12th pages into a table: 4,6,12

Numerals that can be specified as a specified page must be within the range of 1 to 999.

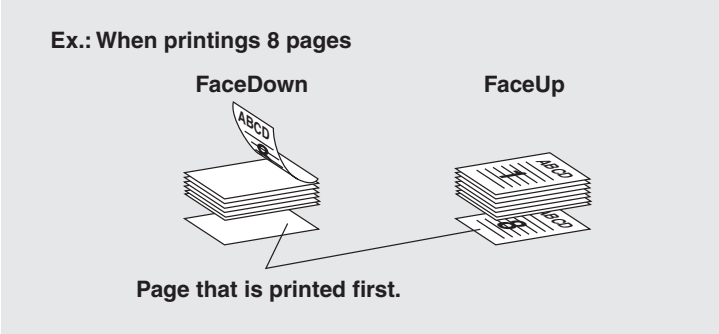
When specifying page numbers, no duplication is allowed.

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print pages in reverse order

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Face Up)**

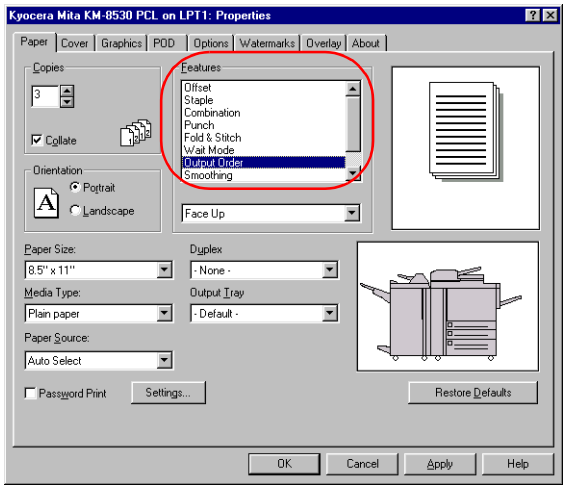
Output paper in reverse order when printing multiple pages.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Select the [Output Order] in the [Features] field.

3. Select the [Face Up] in the pull-down menu under it.

For the [Output Order] box, [Face Up] or [Face Down] is available.

When [Face Up] is selected, paper is output with its front up.

When [Face Down] is selected, paper is output with its front down.

MEMO

The default is [Face Down].

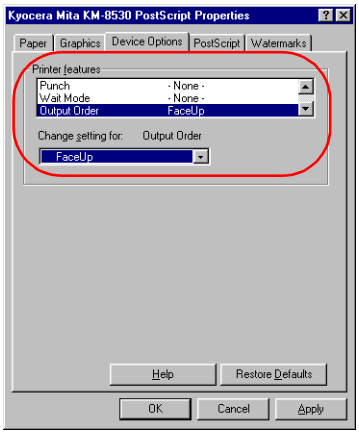
4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print pages in reverse order (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, [Document Defaults...] - [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [Printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed.

2. Select the [Output Order] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select [Face up] from the list.

For the [Output Order] box, [Face up] or [Face down] is available.

When [Face up] is selected, paper is output with its front up.

When [Face down] is selected, paper is output with its front down.

MEMO

The default is [Face down].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Front & Back & Thick Cover / Insertion Sheet

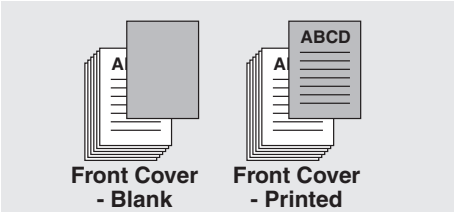
Make settings to print not only pages but also a front cover, back cover, insertion sheet and thick cover.

To set a Front Cover:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set a front cover for which paper is different than the text papers.

Reference (p.218) To set a Front Cover

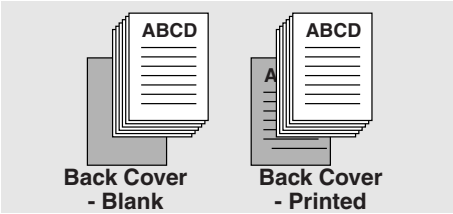


To set a Back Cover:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set a back cover for which paper is different than the text papers.

Reference (p.222) To set a Back Cover

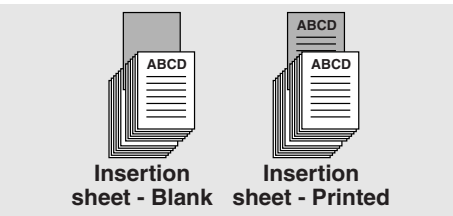


To set an Insertion Sheet:

PCL5e

When the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used, insert a blank or printed paper which is different than the output papers set.

Reference (p.226) To set an Insertion Sheet



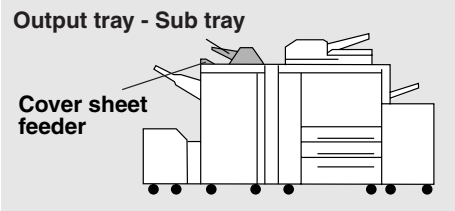
To set the Front & Back & Thick Cover / Insertion Sheet (Continued)

To set a Thick Cover:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Output a thick paper as a cover, which is different than the output papers set.

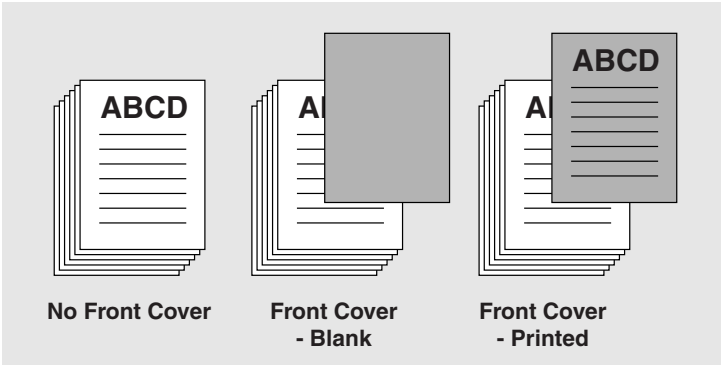
Reference ▶▶ (p.229) To set a Thick Cover



To set a Front Cover

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Set a front cover for which paper is different than the text paper.



To set a Front Cover (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

Limitation

[Front Cover] cannot be set in the following cases:

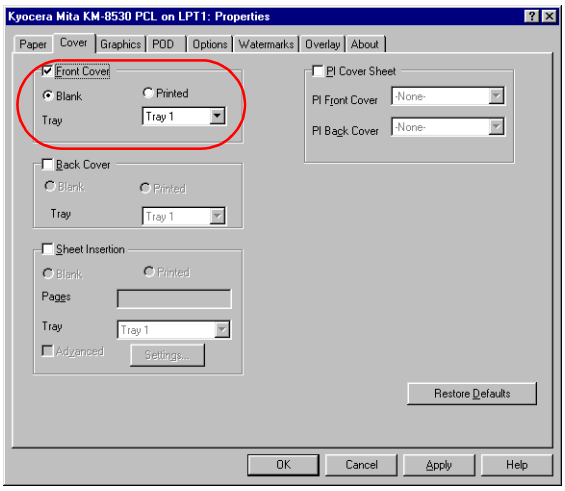
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab
- When [2-in-1] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] - [Combination]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Cover] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Front Cover] check box.

3. Click on the button for [Blank] or [Printed].

When [Blank] is turned on, nothing is printed on the front cover.

When [Printed] is turned on, the front cover is also printed.

MEMO

The default is [Blank].

4. Click the [▼] button beside the [Tray] box to select a tray that feeds a paper for the front cover.

MEMO

The default is [Tray 1].

5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a Front Cover (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Front Cover] cannot be set in the following cases:

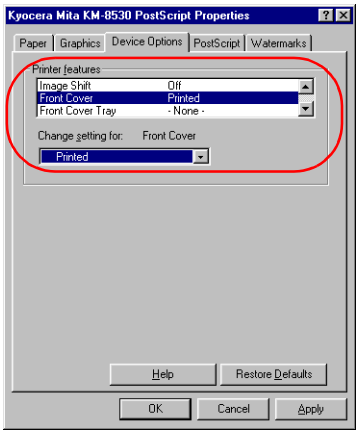
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]
- When [2-in-1] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Combination]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, the [Properties] window (detailed setting) is displayed.

2. Select [Front Cover] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select [Blank] or [Printed] from the list.

When [Blank] is selected, nothing is printed on the front cover.

When [Printed] is selected, the front cover is also printed.

MEMO

The default is [None].

4. Select [Front Cover Tray] from the [Printer features] field.

To set a Front Cover (Continued)

5. **Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select a tray that feeds a paper for the front cover from the list.**

MEMO

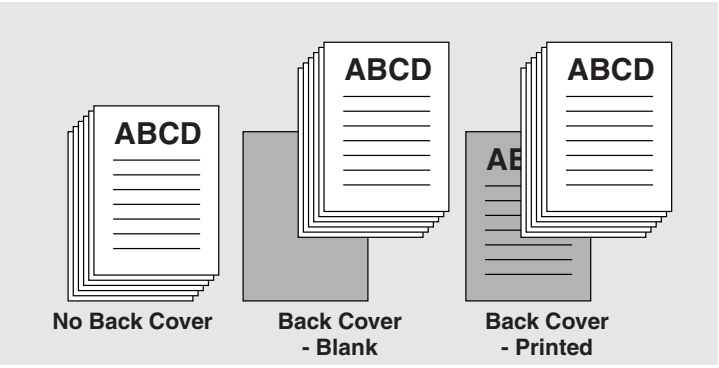
The default is [None].

6. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

To set a Back Cover

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Set a back cover for which paper is different than the text paper.



To set a Back Cover (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Back Cover] cannot be set in the following cases:

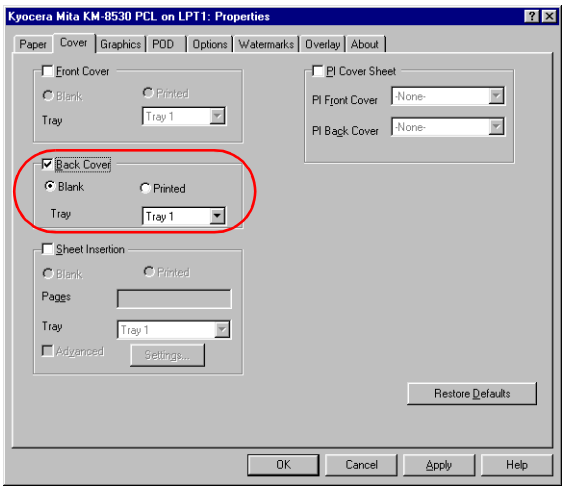
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab
- When [2-in-1] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] - [Combination]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Cover] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Back Cover] check box.

3. Click on the button for [Blank] or [Printed].

When [Blank] is turned on, nothing is printed on the front cover.

When [Printed] is turned on, the front cover is also printed.

MEMO

The default is [Blank].

4. Click the [▼] button beside the [Tray] box to select a tray that feeds a paper for the back cover.

MEMO

The default is [Tray 1].

5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a Back Cover (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Back Cover] cannot be set in the following cases:

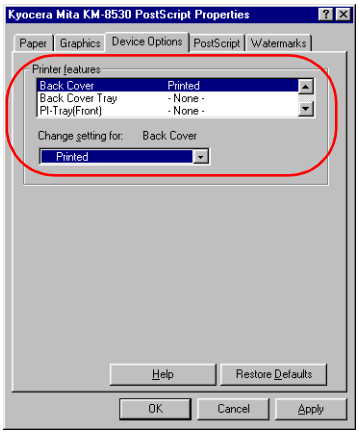
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]
- When [Combination] is available in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, the [Properties] window (detailed setting) is displayed.

2. Select [Back Cover] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select [Blank] or [Printed] from the list.

When [Blank] is selected, nothing is printed on the front cover.

When [Printed] is selected, the front cover is also printed.

MEMO

The default is [None].

4. Select [Back Cover Tray] from the [Printer features] field.

To set a Back Cover (Continued)

5. **Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select a tray that feeds a paper for the back cover from the list.**

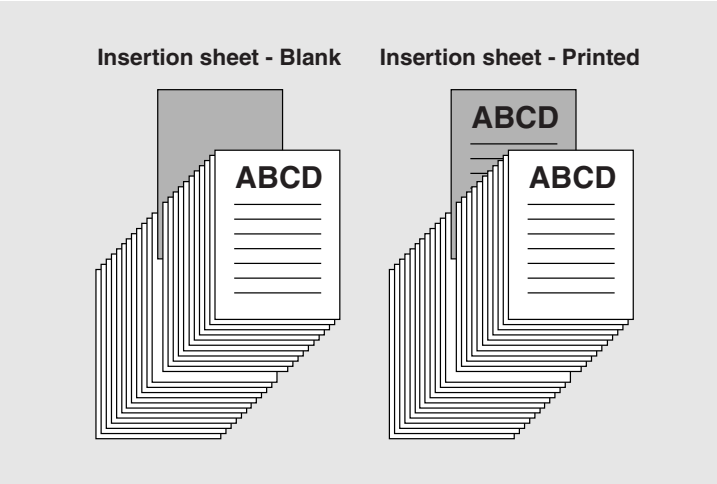
MEMO
The default is [None].

6. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

To set an Insertion Sheet

PCL5e **Compliant**

When the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used, insert a blank or printed sheet different than the output paper set. It is also possible to register the page number of an insertion sheet, feed tray, and the setting of "blank or printed" as a list.



To set an Insertion Sheet (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Sheet Insertion] cannot be set in the following cases:

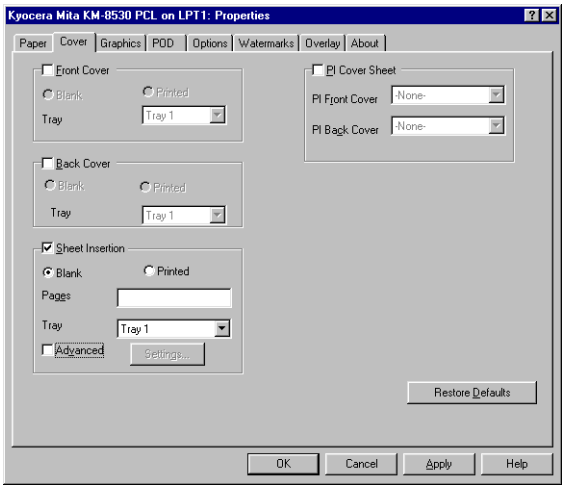
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab
- When [Booklet] or [2-in-1] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] field - [Combination]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Cover] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Sheet Insertion] check box.

3. Click on the button for [Blank] or [Printed].

When [Blank] is turned on, nothing is printed on the front cover.

When [Printed] is turned on, the front cover is also printed.

MEMO

The default is [Blank].

To set an Insertion Sheet (Continued)

4. In the [Pages] box, enter the number of a page into which an insertion sheet is inserted.

The maximum allowable number of characters to specify the page number in the [Pages] box is 128 including numerals and symbols ("," / "-").

When specifying multiple page numbers, divide each page number by a comma. When page numbers are continuous, combine them with a hyphen.

- Ex.: When inserting a sheet into the fourth page: 4
- Ex.: When inserting sheets into the fourth, sixth and 12th pages: 4,6,12
- Ex.: When inserting sheets into the fourth to 12th pages: 4-12

Numerals that can be specified as a specified page are between 1 to 999 when [Blank] is turned on, and between 1 to 9999 when [Printed] is turned on.

If you turn on the [Advanced...] Check box, you can set page numbers directly to each tray by clicking the [Setting] button.

MEMO

The default is [Tray 1].

5. Click the [▼] button beside the [Tray] box to display the list. Then select a tray that feeds a paper for the insertion sheet.

MEMO

The default is [Tray 1].

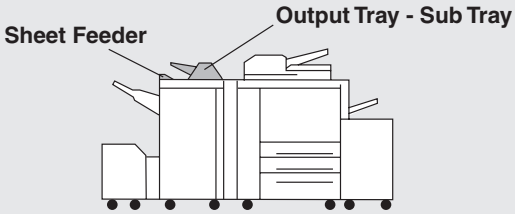
6. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a Thick Cover

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Output a thick paper as a cover, which is different from the output paper set.

To set a cover, options have to be selected as shown in the illustration below.



The copier shown in the illustration has been provided with all options.

Important

The settings made in the [Properties] window that is opened from the [Printers] window are applied to all applications.
Set a cover sheet feeder on the [Properties] window displayed from [Printers] window;
For Kyoceramita PCL5e, select [Setup] tab - [Options], and for Adobe PS, select [Device Options] tab - [Installable Options].

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[PI Cover Sheet] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [PI-108 Sheet feeder] is not available in [Setup] tab.
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Sub Tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]

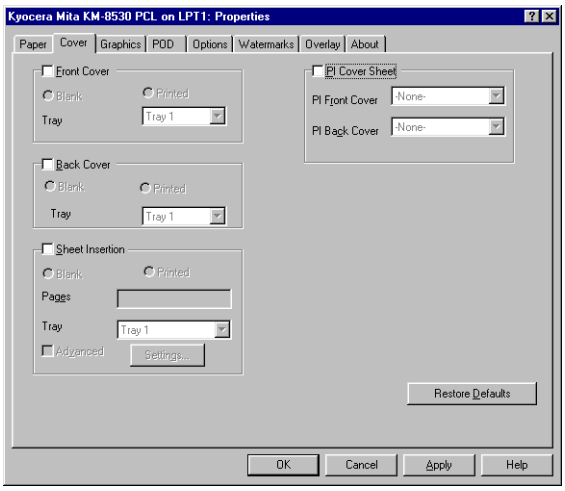
MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

To set a Thick Cover (Continued)

1. Open [Cover] tab of [Properties] window.

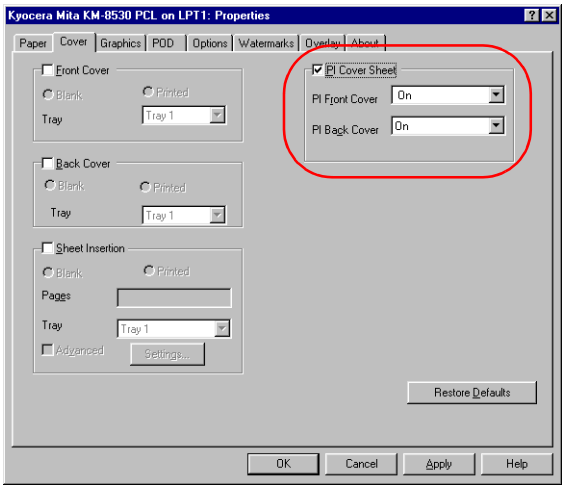
When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [PI Cover Sheet] check box.

MEMO

The default of [PI Front Cover] is [ON] and the default of [PI Back Cover] is [None].



3. Click the [▼] button beside the [PI Front Cover] and [PI Back Cover] box, and select [ON] if necessary.

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a Thick Cover (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[PI Tray (Front/Back)] cannot be set in the following cases:

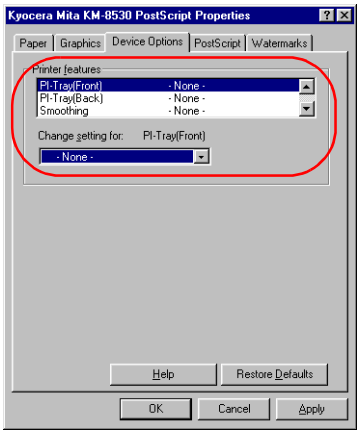
- When [PI-108] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]
- When [Sub Tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, the [Device Settings] tab is displayed.

2. From the [Printer features] field, select [PI-Tray (Front)] when setting a front cover, and [PI-Tray (Back)] when setting a back cover.

It is possible to set both the front cover and the back cover.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select [ON] from the list.

Follow the same procedure whether setting a front cover or a back cover.

MEMO

- The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set for finishing

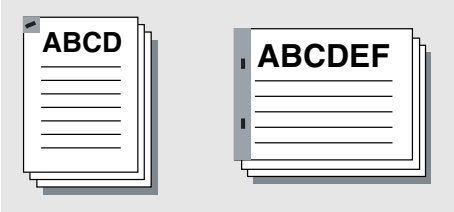
It is possible to use various functions such as stapling, punching, binding and folding for bookbinding and finishing.

To set stapling:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Staple output paper.

Reference (p.234) To set stapling

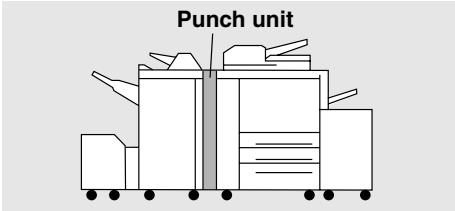


To set the Punch Unit:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Make the printer driver recognize an optional Punch unit.

Reference (p.238) To set the Punch Unit

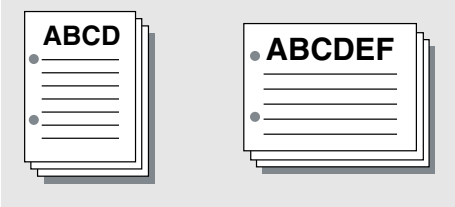


To set punching:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Process output paper with double punching.

Reference (p.241) To set punching



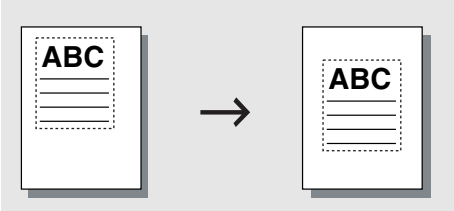
To set for finishing (Continued)

To adjust printing position inside the paper (Image Shift):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Adjust the position of printing to the output paper.

Reference ▸ (p.245) To adjust printing position inside the paper



To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

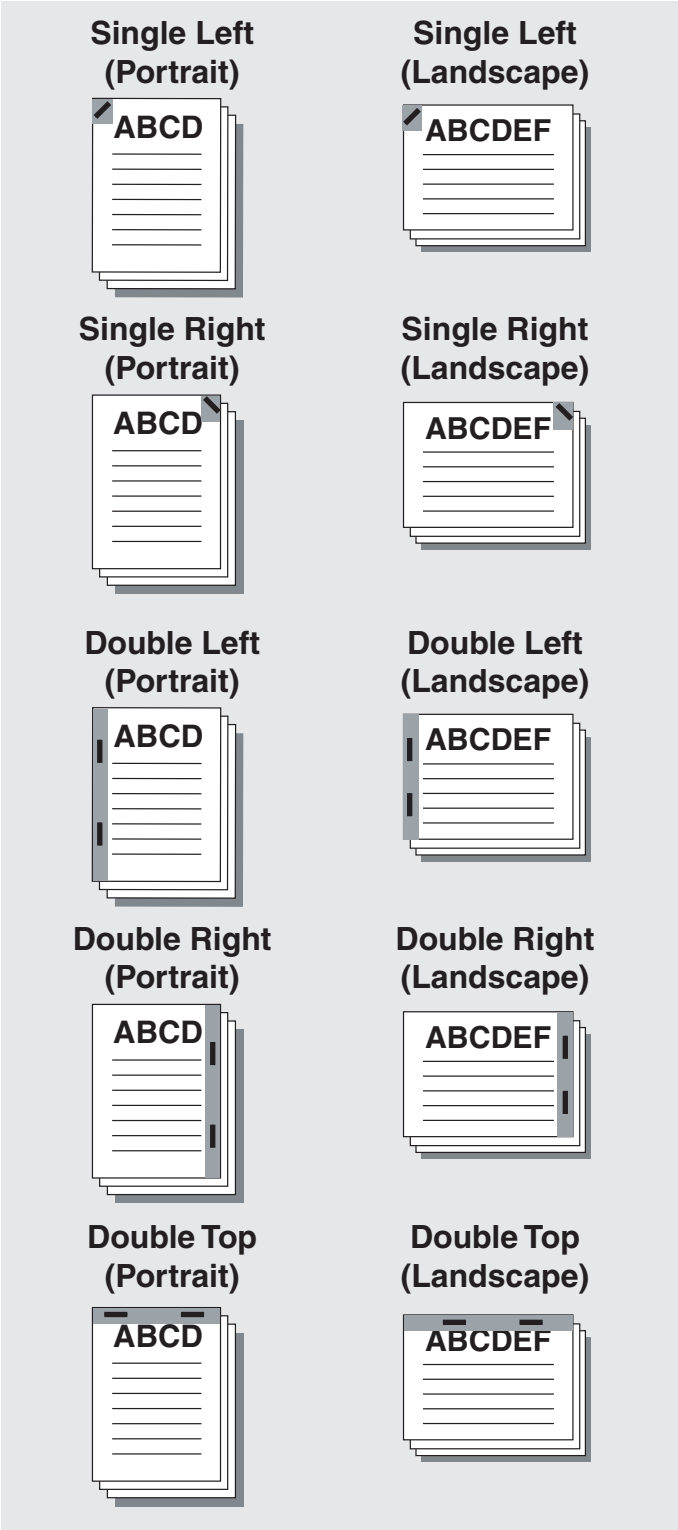
Fold an output paper at the center, bind it at the center, fold it in a Z-shape, cut it or fold it into three equal for output.

Reference ▸ (p.248) To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit)

To set stapling

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Staple output paper. The number of staplings and their positions can be set as shown below.



To set stapling (Continued)

Limitation

When used in the combination of [Stapling] and [Punch], the combinations listed below are not allowed:

Position of stapling	Position of punching		
	Left	Top	Right
Single Left	O	O	X
Single Right	X	O	O
Double Left	O	X	X
Double Right	X	X	O
Double Top	X	O	X

MEMO

For details of stapling and punching, refer to the User's Guide of the copier.

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

To set stapling (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Staple] cannot be set in the following cases:

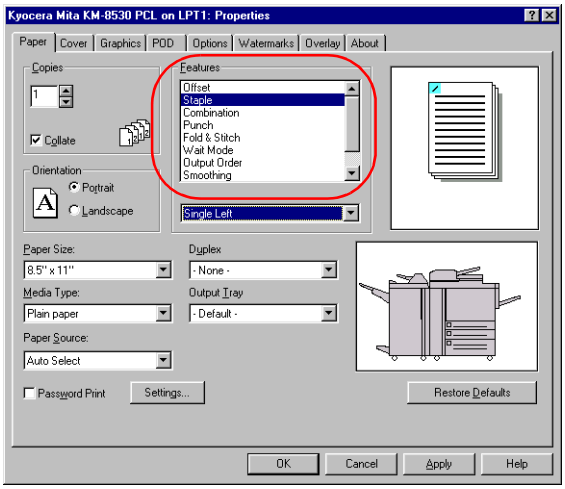
- When [Finisher] is not available in [Setup] tab
- When [A6] or [B6] is selected in [Paper Size]
- When [OHP] is selected in [Media Type]
- When [Sub Tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]
- When [Fold only], [Fold & Trim], [Fold & Stitch] or [Fold, Stitch & Trim]
- is selected in [Features] field -[Fold & Stitch]
- When [Booklet] is selected in [Features] field-[Combination]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Staple].

3. Select the number of staples used and their position from the list shown when you click the [▼] button beside the box below the [Features] field.

[None] [Single Left] [Single Right] [Double Left] [Double Right] [Double Top] can be selected.

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set stapling (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Stapling] cannot be set in the following cases:

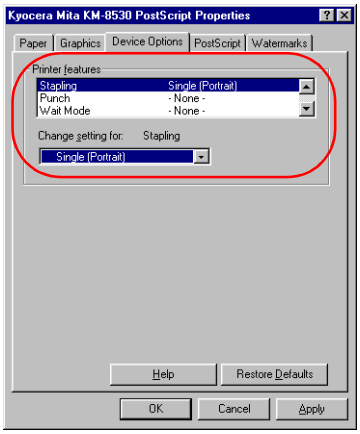
- When [Finisher] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [A6] or [B6] is selected in [Paper size]
- When [OHP] is selected in [Paper type]
- When [Sub Tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]
- When [Fold only], [Fold, Trim], [Fold, Stitch] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is
- selected in [Device Options] tab
- When [Booklet] is selected in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device options] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, the [Device Settings] tab is displayed.

2. Select [Stapling] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select the number of staple to be used and their position from the list.

[None] [Single(Portrait)] [Single(Landscape)] [SingleRight(Portrait)] [SingleRight(Landscape] [Double Side(Portrait)] [Double Side(Landscape)] [Double SideRight(Portrait)] [Double SideRight(Landscape)] [Double Top(Portrait)] [Double Top(Landscape)] can be selected.

MEMO

The default is [None].

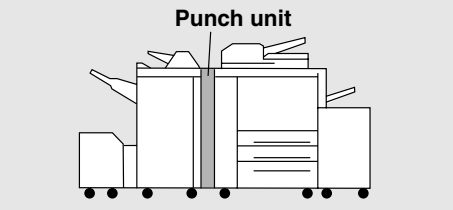
4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Punch Unit

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

When the copier is loaded with an optional punch unit, it is possible to make the printer driver recognize the unit.

When the punch unit [PU-108] is recognized by the printer driver, the output paper can be processed with a double punching. When the punch unit [PZ-108] is recognized by the printer driver, the output paper can be folded in a Z-form.



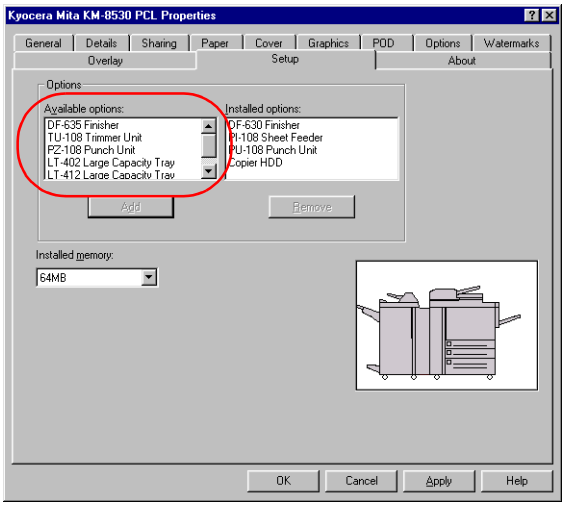
The printer driver will not recognize the unit if a finisher is not set on the printer driver.

To set the Punch Unit (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

1. Open [Setup] tab of [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

When displayed from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



2. Select a [Punch Unit] you want to use from the list in the [Available options] box.

When the copier is provided with an optional punch unit, select either [PU-108 Punch Unit] or [PZ-108 Punch Unit].

MEMO

- When nothing is selected, it is not possible to set the [Punch] and [Z-folding] functions.
- When you do not know whether the optional punch unit installed is a [PU-108 Punch Unit] or [PZ-108 Punch Unit], consult your system administrator.

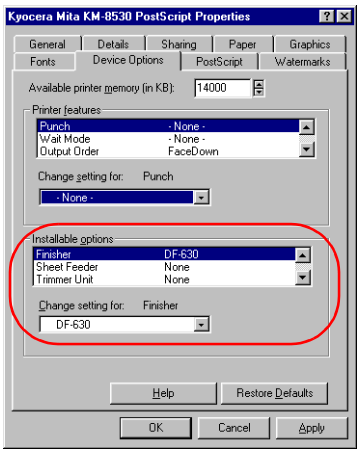
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set the Punch Unit (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

When displayed from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO

For Windows NT4.0/2000/XP, open [Device settings] tab of the [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

2. Select [Punch Unit] from the [Installable options] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Installable options] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select a [Punch Unit] you want to use from the list.

When the copier is provided with an optional punch unit, select either [PU-108] or [PZ-108].

When the copier is not provided with an optional punch unit, select [None].

MEMO

- The default is [None].
- When it is not known whether a punch unit optionally loaded to the copier is [PU-108] or [PZ-108], contact the administrator.

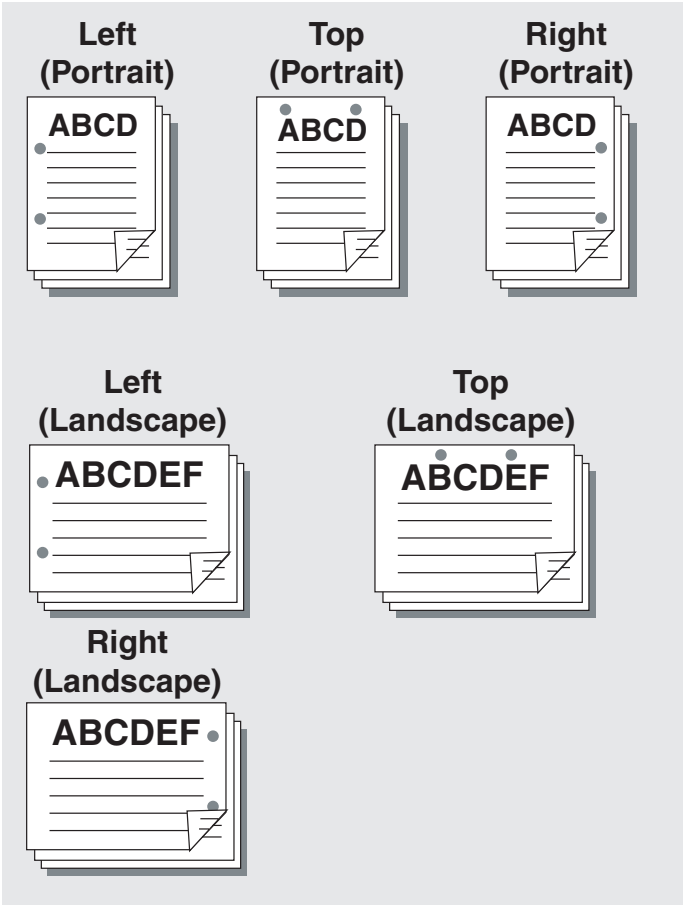
4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set punching

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

The output paper can be set to be punched in advance.

Punch holes can be set as shown below.



To set punching (Continued)

Limitation

When used in the combination of [Stapling] and [Punch], the combinations listed below are not allowed:

Position of stapling	Position of punching		
	Left	Top	Right
Single left	O	O	X
Single right	X	O	O
Double left	O	X	X
Double right	X	X	O
Double top	X	O	X

MEMO

- For details of staple and punch, refer to the User's Guide of the copier.
- If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

To set punching (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Punch] cannot be set in the following cases:

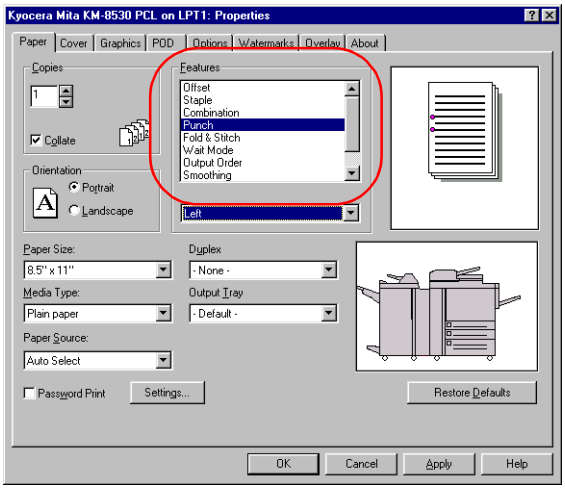
- When [PU-108 Punch Unit] is not available in [Setup] tab
- When [A6] or [B6] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper Size]
- When [OHP] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]
- When [Sub Tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]
- When [Fold only], [Fold & Trim], [Fold & Stitch] or [Fold, Stitch & Trim] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] field - [Fold & Stitch]
- When [Booklet] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Features] field - [Combination]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Punch].

3. Select the position of a punch to be used from the list shown when you click the [▼] button beside the box below the [Features] field.

[None] [Left] [Top] [Right] can be selected.

MEMO

The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set punching (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Punch] cannot be set in the following cases:

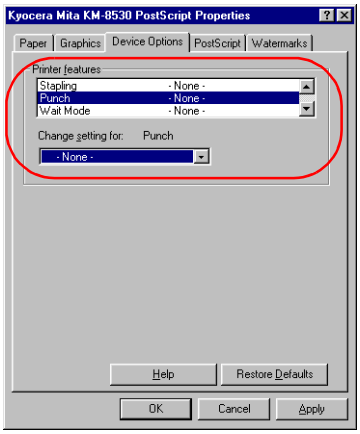
- When [PU-108] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [Tabbed Sheet] or [OHP] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]
- When [Sub Tray] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]
- When [Fold, Stitch] is available in [Device Options] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, the [Device Settings] tab is displayed.

2. Select [Punch] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select the position of a punch to be used from the list.

[None] [Left(Portrait)][Left(Landscape)] [Top(Portrait)] [Top(Landscape)] [Right(Portrait)] [Right(Landscape)] can be selected.

MEMO

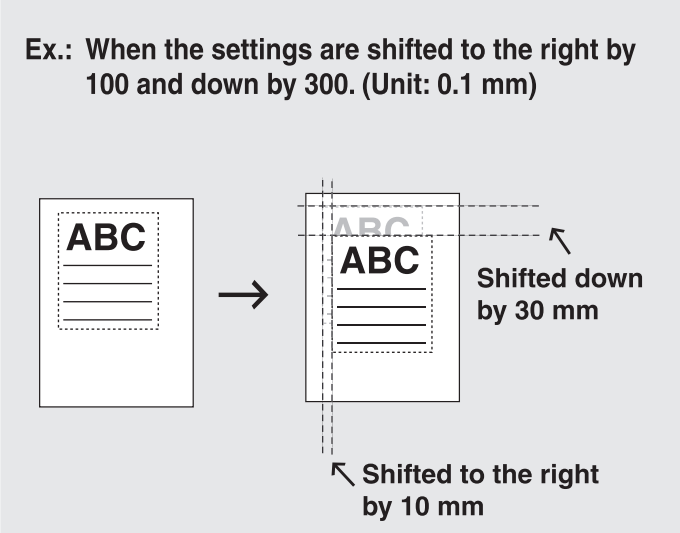
The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To adjust printing position inside the paper

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Image Shift)**

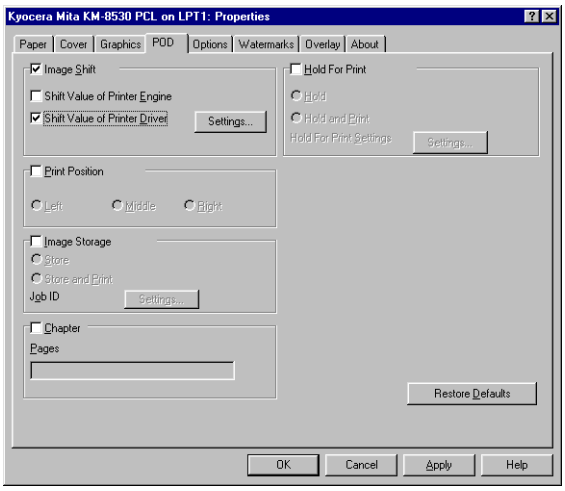
Adjust the details of the printing position to the output paper.


Ex.: When the settings are shifted to the right by 100 and down by 300. (Unit: 0.1 mm)
ABC
ABC
Shifted down by 30 mm
Shifted to the right by 10 mm

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [POD] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



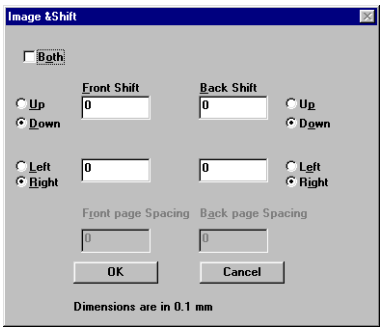
2. Turn on the [Image Shift] check box.

If you turn on the [Shift Value of Printer Driver] Check box, the [Settings] button can be used.
[Shift Value of Printer Engine] check box will be turned on when setting a binding margin on the control panel of the copier.

To adjust printing position inside the paper (Continued)

3. Click the [Settings] button.

The [Image Shift] dialog box will appear.



4. Turn on the [Up] or [Down] or [Left] or [Right] button in the [Front Shift] field.

When [Left] is turned on, data prints to the left of the normal position by the value set in Step 5.
When [Right] is turned on, data prints to the right of the normal position by the value set in Step 5.

5. Enter a value to specify the shift distance in a value from [0] to [2500].

The unit is [0.1 mm].

6. Set each item for the [Front Shift] and the [Back Shift] in the same manner as in Steps 4 and 5.

7. Click the [OK] button.

The [Image Shift] dialog box disappears and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

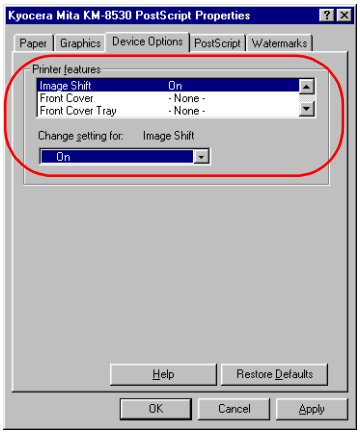
8. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To adjust printing position inside the paper (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, the [Device Settings] tab is displayed.

2. Select [Image Shift] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select [ON] from the list.

When [ON] is selected, the printing is made at the printing position set on the control panel of the copier.

MEMO

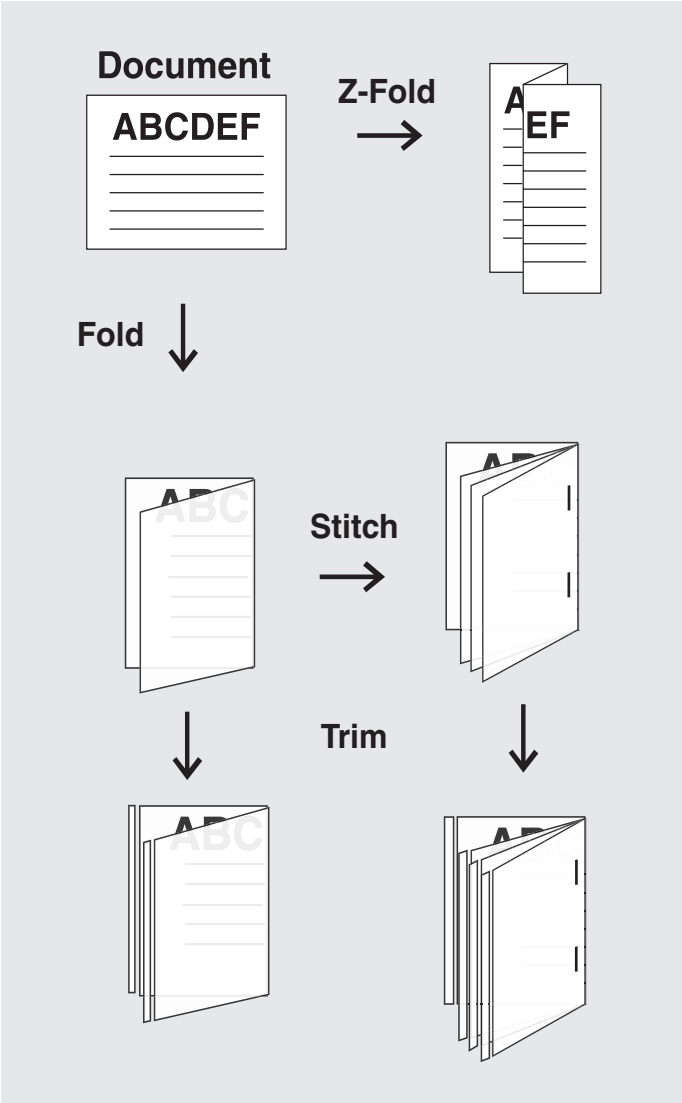
The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit)

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Fold a output paper at the center, bind it at the center, fold it in a Z-shape, cut it or fold it into three equal for output.



To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit) (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Fold & Stitch] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [DF-635 Finisher] is not available in [Setup] tab
- When [Tab sheet] or [OHP] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Media Type]

[Fold only] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

[Fold & Trim] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [TU-108 Trimmer Unit] is not available in [Setup] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

[Fold & Stitch] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

[Fold, Stitch & Trim] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [TU-108 Trimmer Unit] is not available in [Setup] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

[Z-Fold(A3, B4, 11 x 17, 8K)] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [PZ-108 Punch Unit] selected in [Setup] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]

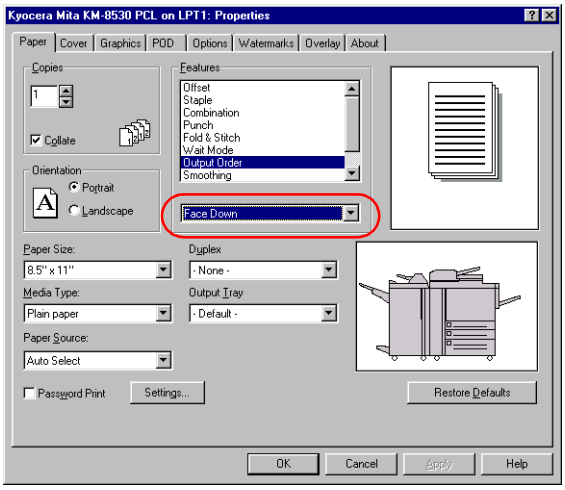
[Z-Fold(8.5 x 14)] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [PZ-108 Punch Unit] selected in [Setup] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output Tray]

MEMO
- If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit) (Continued)

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Fold & Stitch].

3. Select items you want to use from the list shown when you click the [▼] button beside the box below the [Features] field.

MEMO

- The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit) (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Fold, Stitch] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [DF-635] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [Tabbed Sheet] or [OHP] is selected in [Paper] tab - [Paper type]

[Fold only] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]

[Fold, Trim] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [TU-108] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]

[Fold, Stitch] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]

[Fold, Stitch & Trim] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [TU-108] is not available in [Device Options] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]

[Z-Fold(A3, B4, 11 x 17, 8k)] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [PZ-108] selected in [Device Options] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]

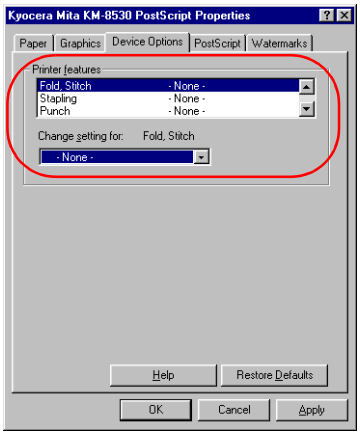
[Z-Fold(8.5 x 14)] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [PZ-108] selected in [Device Options] tab
- When [Sub Tray] selected in [Paper] tab - [Output bin]

MEMO
- The [Device Options] tab - [Installable Options] is displayed in [Properties] shown from the [Printers] window.
- If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit) (Continued)

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/ XP, the [Device Settings] tab is displayed.

2. Select [Fold, Stitch] from [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select the function you want to use from the list.

MEMO

- The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print a confidential document

In order to print a highly confidential document, it is possible to print it face down or by using a print job password for protection.

To specify a user

PCL5e

Set a User ID and password to specify a print job user, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.254) To specify a user

To print with protection by a password

PCL5e

Protect a print job with a password, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.256) To print with protection by a password

To specify a user

PCL5e Compliant

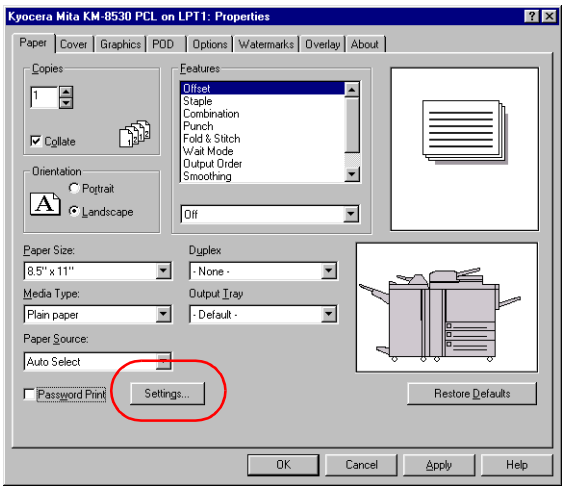
Set a User ID and a password to specify a user, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used. User ID and password are used to print confidential documents and to save image.

Depending on the application software, there are also passwords that save the settings of the printer driver. When printing was made with [Password Print Settings] done on the shared file on the network or on a file other people may use for printing, delete [UserID] and [Password] before saving the file.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

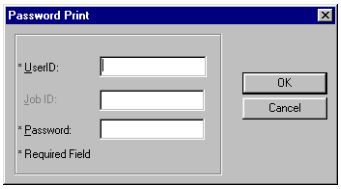
1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [Settings] button.

The [Password Print] dialog box will appear.



When a user has already been set, or when a password has been set in the [POD] tab - [Image Storage], the existing settings are displayed.

MEMO

A password set in the [Paper] tab - [Settings] button - [Password Print] dialog box, and a password set in the [POD] tab - [Image Storage] check box - [Job Combination Print Storage] dialog box are saved as one password. A password that is set later takes precedence over those saved previously.

Reference ▸▸ (p.256) To print with protection by a password

To specify a user (Continued)

3. Enter a User ID (up to 8 digits) in the [UserID] box.

A User ID that has already been set is cancelled when a new ID is entered, and the new one becomes valid.

4. Enter a Password (up to 8 digits) in the [Password] box.

A password that has been already set is cancelled when a password is entered, and the new one becomes valid.

Tips

Passwords are case-sensitive.

5. Click the [OK] button.

The [User setup] dialog box disappears and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

6. Click [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print with protection by a password

PCL5e Compliant

When the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used, it is possible to prevent the print job from starting until [User ID] and [Password] are entered on the control panel of the copier.

Some application softwares save the settings of the printer driver. When printing with [Password Print Settings] set on shared file on the network or on a file other people may print, delete [UserID] and [Password] before saving the file.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Password Print] cannot be set in the following case:

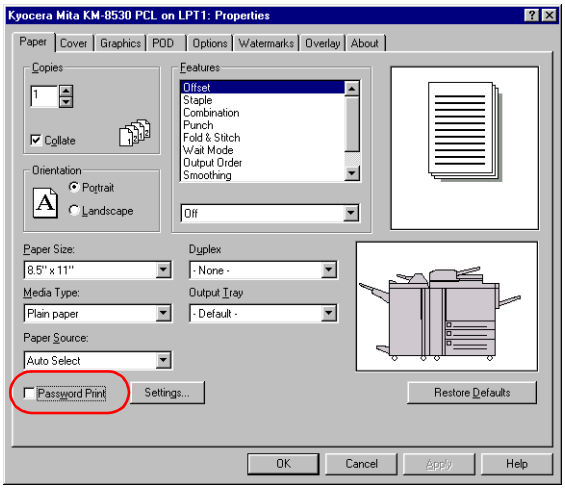
- When [Image Storage] is available in [POD] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

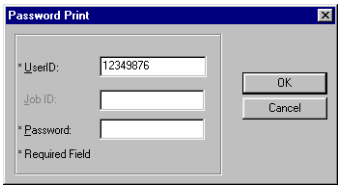
When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



To print with protection by a password (Continued)

2. Turn on the [Password Print] check box.

The [Password Print] dialog box will appear.



MEMO

When the user setup is not yet made, a message "User ID must be entered." is displayed.

3. Confirm the User ID and password.

MEMO

A password set in the [Paper] tab - [Settings] button - [Password Print] dialog box, and a password set in the [POD] tab - [Image Storage] check box - [Job Combination Print Storage] dialog box are saved as one password. A password that is set later takes precedence over those saved previously.

4. When changing the password, enter a new password (up to 8 digits) in the [Password] box.

A password that has already been set is cancelled when a password is entered, and the new one becomes valid.

5. Click the [OK] button.

The [Password Print] dialog box disappears and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

6. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

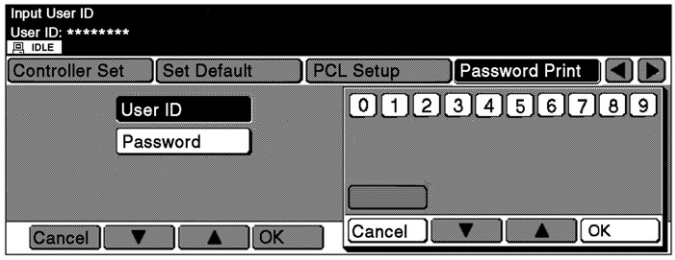
7. Print from the application.

The procedures on and after Step 8 show the operation on the control panel of the copier.

8. Press the [MODE] button to display the print mode basic screen and display [Password Print] touch key.

9. Touch the [Password Print].

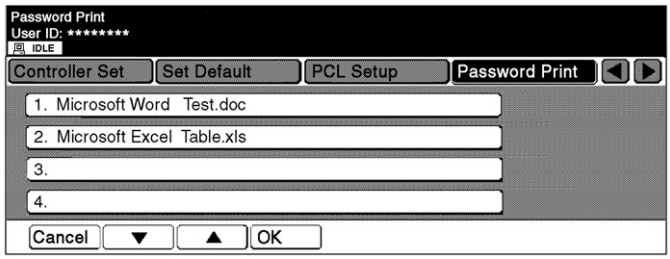
[User ID] key, [Password] key and numeric key etc. are displayed.



To print with protection by a password (Continued)

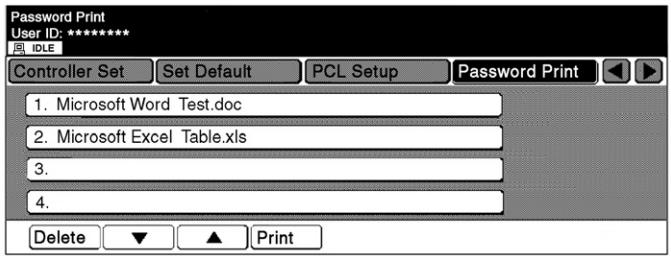
10. Enter your password using the numeric, uppercase or lowercase keys, and touch the [OK] key.

If no uppercase letters are displayed, touch the [Uppercase] key to get them displayed.
If no lowercase letters are displayed, touch the [Lowercase] key to get them displayed.
If no numbers are displayed, touch the [Number] key to get them displayed.
When you touch the [OK] key, a list of the corresponding print jobs is displayed.



The list will be blank if there are no corresponding print jobs.
If this is the case, touch the [Cancel] key to terminate the Confidential Output feature.

11. Select the print job you need, and touch the [Print] key.



The print process starts.
You can specify multiple print jobs for them to be printed out at one time.

To use an internal hard disk

A print job can be saved into the hard disk of in this printing system, and it can be printed as needed.

To save and print a print job (Image Storage)

PCL5e

Save a print job into the hard disk of this printing system as a job file, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

Reference ▶ (p.260) To save and print a print job

To re-set a Job ID

PCL5e

Re-set a Job ID and a password that specify a print job saved into a hard disk, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

Reference ▶ (p.263) To re-set a Job ID

To save and print a print job

PCL5e Compliant (Image Storage)

When the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used, it is possible to save a print job into the hard disk of this printing system as a password-protected job file. The saved job file can be printed through the control panel of the copier as needed. When the conditions listed in the table below are met, the saved job file can be overlaid in combination with other job files (such as copy data).

Copier	Printer	note
[P-JOB] is not selected	-	[P-JOB] can not be performed on printer
[Sheet/Cover Insertion] is not selected	[Sheet Insertion] is not selected	-
[Chapter] is not selected	[Chapter] is not selected	-
[Combination] is not selected	[Combination] is not selected	-
[Repeat] is not selected	[Repeat] is not selected	-
[Booklet] is not selected	[Booklet] is not selected	-
[OHP-Interleave] is not selected	[OHP-Interleave] is not selected	
[Image Insert] is not selected	-	[Image Insert] can not be performed on printer
[Dual Page] is not selected	-	[Dual Page] can not be performed on printer
[Mixed Original] is not selected	the same size of original papers	-
the same size of original papers	the same size of original papers	-
the same resolution	the same resolution	-
the same graphic mode	the same graphic mode	Leave a print job resolution as [600 dpi]
-	Single tray	-

When printing of shared file on the network or on a file other people may use with [UserID] and [Password], delete [UserID] and [Password] before saving the file.

MEMO

For some models of machine, Hard Disk must be selected beforehand at [Setup] tab-[Options].

To save and print a print job (Continued)

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Image Storage] cannot be set in the following case:

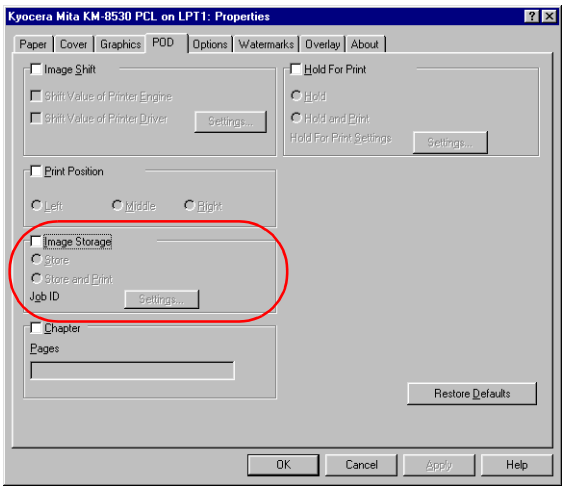
- When [Password Print] is available in [Paper] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of the message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

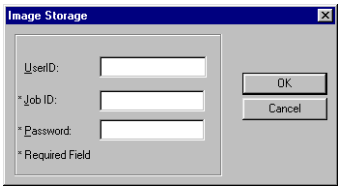
1. Open [POD] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Image Storage] check box.

The [Image Storage] dialog box will appear.



MEMO

When a password has been already set in the [Paper] tab - [Password Print] check box or [Settings] button, and when a password has been set in the [Job ID] - [Settings] button, the existing settings are displayed.

MEMO

A password set in the [Paper] tab - [Settings] button - [Password Print] dialog box, and a password set in [Paper] tab - [Settings] button - [Image Storage] check box - [Job Combination Print Storage] dialog box are saved as one password. A password that is set later takes precedence over those saved previously.

Reference ▸▸ (p.256)

3. Confirm the [Job ID] and [Password].

To save and print a print job (Continued)

4. When changing the Job ID, or when creating a new Job ID, enter a new Job ID (up to 8 digits) in the [Job ID] box.

A Job ID that has already been set is cancelled when a new Job ID is entered, and the new one becomes valid.

MEMO

When a [Job ID] overlaps with a saved [Job ID], the copier automatically adds a number to the last digit of the [Job ID], and identifies it as a different [Job ID].

5. When changing the password, enter a new password (up to 8 alphanumeric characters) into the [Password] box.

A password that has already been set is cancelled when a new password is entered, and the new one becomes valid.

6. Click the [OK] button.

The [Image Storage] dialog box disappears and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

7. Click [Store] or [Store and Print].

When [Store] is turned on, a print job can be saved into the hard disk of the copier. The printing of the saved print job is made through the control panel of the copier as needed.

When [Store and Print] is turned on, it is possible to save a print job into a hard disk contained in the copier and print it.

8. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

MEMO

Before printing with the application, you can change [Job ID] and [Password].

Reference (p.263) To re-set a Job ID

9. Print with the application.

The operations on and after this section are made through the control panel of the copier.

To re-set a Job ID

PCL5e **Compliant**

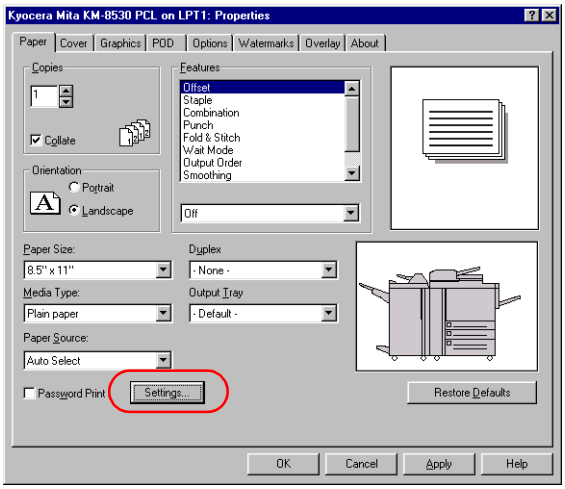
Re-set a [Job ID] and a [Password] that confirm and specify a print job saved into a hard disk, when the Kyocera mita PCL5e printer driver is used. When [Job ID] and a [Password] are re-set, they are used to save images. The [Password] is the same as that of the confidential output.

Some application softwares save the settings of the printer driver. When printing with [Password Print Settings] set on shared file on the network or on a file other people may use, delete [Job ID] and [Password] before saving the file.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

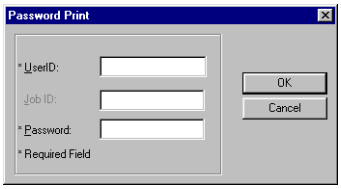
1. Open [Paper] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [Settings] button.

The [Password Print] dialog box will appear.



The details of existing settings will appear.

MEMO

A password set in the [Paper] tab - [Settings] button - [Password Print] dialog box, and a password set in the [POD] tab - [Image Storage] check box - [Job Combination Print Storage] dialog box are saved as one password. A password that is set later takes precedence over those saved previously.

Reference ▸▸ (p.256) To print with protection by a password

3. Confirm the [Job ID] and [Password].

To re-set a Job ID (Continued)

4. When changing a Job ID, enter a new Job ID (up to 8 digits) in the [Job ID] box.

A Job ID that has already been set is cancelled when a new Job ID is entered, and the new one becomes valid.

MEMO

When a [Job ID] overlaps with a saved [Job ID], the copier automatically adds a number to the last digit of the [Job ID], and identifies it as a different [Job ID].

5. When changing the password, enter a new password (up to 8 alphanumeric characters) into the [Password] box.

A password that has already been set is cancelled when a new password is entered, and the new one becomes valid.

6. Click the [OK] button.

The [Password Print] dialog box disappears and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

7. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a Watermark

A Watermark or an Overlay can be set and printed on the output paper.

To create a Overlay:

PCL5e

Create a overlay design that is printed on the output paper, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

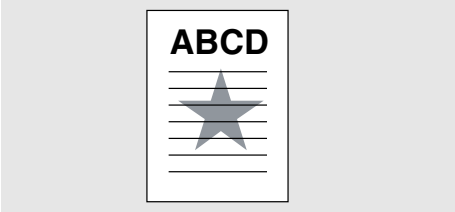
Reference ▶▶ (p.268) To create a Overlay

To print a Overlay:

PCL5e

Set a overlay and print it on the output paper, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.270) To print a Overlay



To delete a Overlay:

PCL5e

Delete an unnecessary transparent design the [Properties] window, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.272) To delete a Overlay

To set a Watermark (Continued)

To create a new Watermark:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Create a new Watermark printed on the output paper, when this printing system is used.

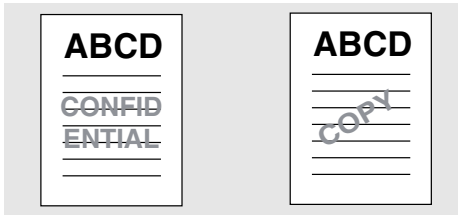
Reference (p.273) To create a new Watermark

To print a Watermark:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Set a transparent character and print it on the output paper, when this printing system is used.

Reference (p.277) To print a Watermark

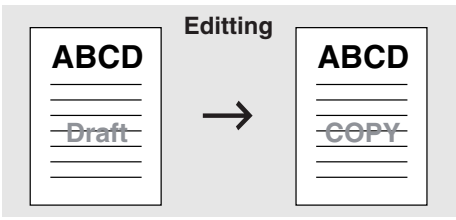


To change a Watermark:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Edit and change a registered transparent character printed on the output paper, when this printing system is used.

Reference (p.282) To change a Watermark



To set a Watermark (Continued)

To delete a Watermark:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Delete an unnecessary transparent character, when this printing system is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.285) To delete a Watermark

To create a Overlay

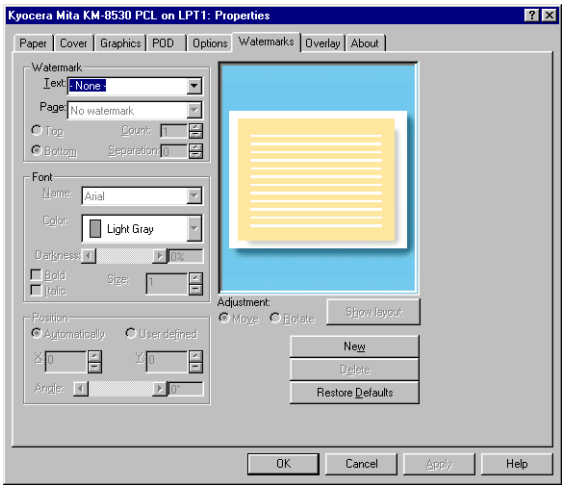
PCL5e Compliant (Overlay)

Create a watermark to be printed on the output paper in the [Properties] window of an application, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

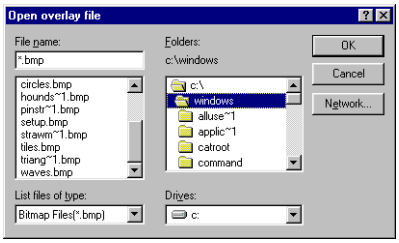
1. Open [Overlay] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [Select Bitmap] button in the [Symbol] field.

The [Open overlay file] dialog box will appear.



Important

In advance, create a file which will be an overlay and save it as a bitmap.

3. Select a bitmap file to save overlay data from the folder field, and click the [OK] button.

File name selected in the [File] box of the [Symbol] field is shown.

4. If you do not use the transparent design immediately for printing, select [None] from the list shown when you click the [▼] button beside the [File] box in the [Symbol] field.

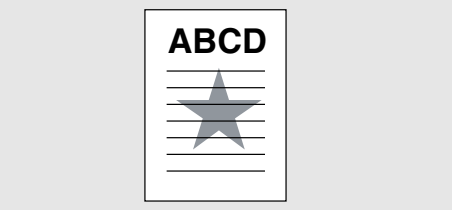
To create a Overlay (Continued)

5. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

To print a Overlay

PCL5e Compliant (Overlay)

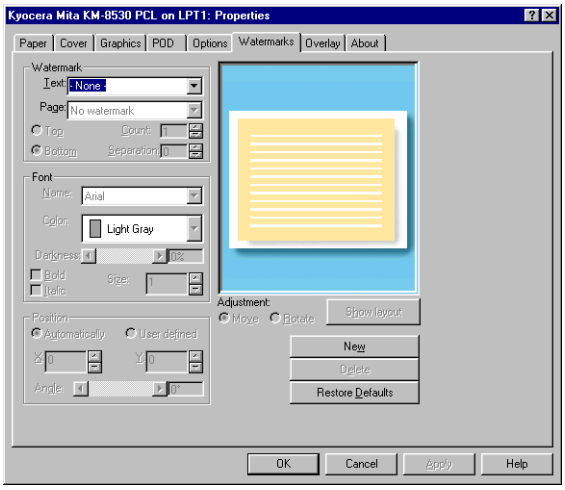
Set a watermark and print it on the output paper, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Overlay] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. If you do not use the transparent design immediately for printing, select [None] from the [File] box in the [Symbol] field by clicking the [▼] button.

MEMO

File name selected in the [File] box of the [Symbol] field is shown.

3. In the [Page] box of the [Symbol] field, choose a page on which to place the overlay design.

Select [All but first page], [All pages], [First page only] or [No overlay] from the list shown by clicking the [▼] button.

4. For black and white (monochrome) bitmaps, use the function in the [Color] box of the [Shade] field.

5. In the [Darkness] box of the [Shade] field, define with the slider or numerical entry box how "dark" or "solid" your overlay will be.

A setting of 100% is a completely solid overlay, a setting of 50% provides equal overlay to background coverage, and lesser setting make the overlay more transparent.

To print a Overlay (Continued)

6. **When [User defined] is selected, you can set the overlay size on the page.**
7. **When [Automatically] is selected in the [Position] field, the driver positions the overlay for you.**
8. **When [User defined] is selected, in the [Position] field, you can define the X axis position (left and right) and Y axis position (up and down) of the overlay on the page by clicking the [▲] or [▼] button or by directly entering the values from the keyboard (0-100).**
9. **Click the [OK] button.**
   The [Properties] window is closed.
10. **Print from the application.**
    A document printed with the overlay data is printed and placed on the overlay data.
11. **When the application of an overlay is discontinued after printing, go to step 14.**
    When an overlay is applied to all printing, the operations after Step 13 is not required.
12. **Open [Properties] window - [Overlay] tab.**
13. **Select [None] from the list shown when you click the [▼] button beside the [File] box in the [Symbol] field.**
14. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

To delete a Overlay

PCL5e Compliant (Overlay)

Delete an unnecessary watermark from the [Properties] window, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

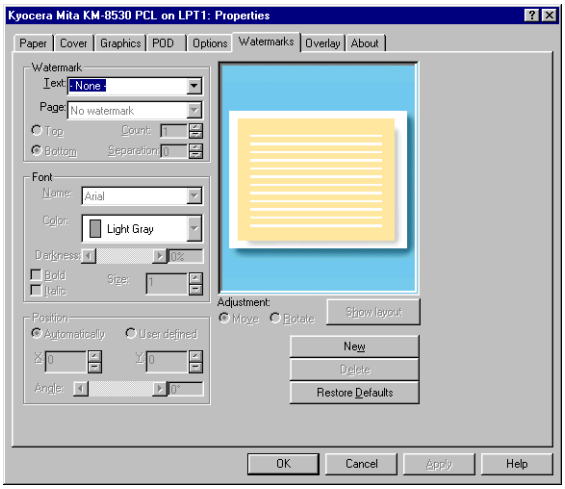
1. Delete or move the original bitmap file from the current location; Move the bitmap file of the transparent design you want to delete to the Recycle Bin on Desktop.

- You cannot remove registration from the [File] box in the [Symbol] field. Delete the original bitmap file.
- If you do not want to delete it, move it to an other folder.

2. Open [Overlay] tab of [Properties] window.

- The name remains in the [File] box, but it will not be printed as a transparent design.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



3. In the [Symbol] field, click the [▼] button next to the [File] box. From the list shown, select [- None -].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To create a new Watermark

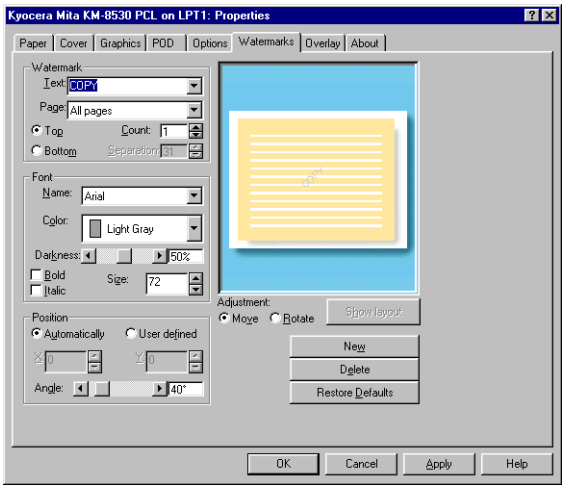
PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Watermark)**

Create a new watermark to be printed on the output paper, when this printing system is used.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Watermark] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [New] button below the Preview window.

[Custom watermark 1] will be highlighted in the [Text] box under the [Watermark] field.

3. Overwrite the text to be highlighted in the [Text] box with the text used for the watermark.

4. After the text is entered, the [Text Change & New Image Request] dialog box will appear when some action is made such as clicking other buttons.

- The window asks you if you replace [Custom watermark 1] with the text just entered.
- Click the [Yes] button to replace, and the dialog box is closed.
- Click the [No] button not to replace, and the new watermark will be created and the dialog box is closed.
- Click the [Cancel] button for no changes and dialog box is closed.

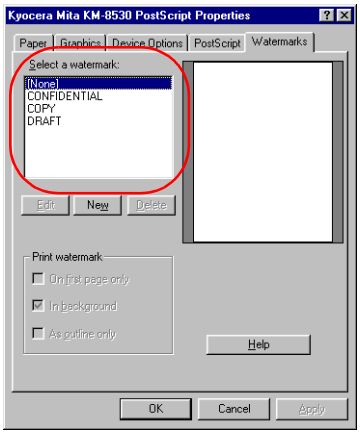
5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To create a new Watermark (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Watermarks] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.

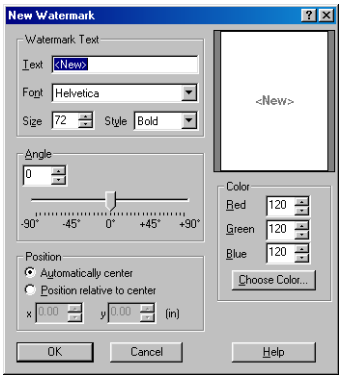


MEMO

Windows NT4.0/2000/XP is not equipped with this function.

2. Click the [New] button.

The [New Watermark] dialog box appears.



3. Enter the text to be used as a watermark in the [Text] box.

MEMO

The default is [Helvetica].

4. Click the [▼] button beside the [Font] box to display the list. Then select a font to be used by watermark from the list.

5. Click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [Size] box to specify the point size of a watermark in a value from [7] to [600].

MEMO

- The default is [72].
- By selecting a number in the [Size] box, a size can be directly entered.

To create a new Watermark (Continued)

6. Click the [▼] button beside the [Style] box to display the list. Then select a style to be used by watermark from the list.

[Regular] [Bold] [Italic] [Bold Italic] can be selected.

MEMO

The default is [Bold].

7. Click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the box in the [Angle] field to specify the angle of a watermark in a value from [-90] to [90].

The angle can be also specified by shifting the slider beside the box in the [Angle] field to the left and right.

MEMO

- The default is [0].
- By selecting a number in the box in the [Angle] field, a angle can be directly entered.

8. To automatically position a watermark at the center, turn on the [Automatically center] button.

MEMO

The default is [ON].

9. To specify the position of a watermark, turn on the [Position relative to center] button.

MEMO

The default is [Off].

10. When the [Position relative to center] button is clicked, click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [x] and [y] boxes to specify the relative position from the center in a numeric value.

The unit of specified value is [cm].

MEMO

- The defaults are [0.00], [0.00].
- By selecting a number in the [x] and [y] boxes, a value can be directly entered.

11. Click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [Red], [Green] and [Blue] boxes to specify the color of a watermark.

Color can also be specified in the [Color] dialog box, displayed by clicking the [Choose Color] button.

MEMO

- The defaults are [120], [120], [120].
- By selecting a number in the [Red], [Green] and [Blue] boxes, a value can be directly entered.

12. Confirm a newly created watermark on the preview display.

13. Click the [OK] button.

The [New Watermark] dialog box is closed and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

In the [Select a watermark] box, a newly created watermark is displayed.

MEMO

Newly created watermarks can be selected from the list displayed.

14. Select [None] from the [Select a watermark] box.

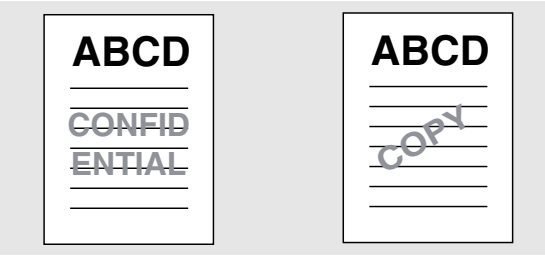
To create a new Watermark (Continued)

15. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

To print a Watermark

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Watermark)**

Set a watermark and print it on the output paper, when this printing system is used.

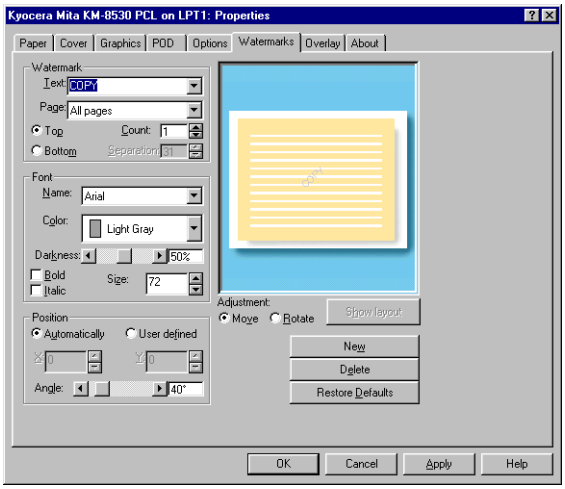


To print a Watermark (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** PCL5e

1. Open [Watermarks] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- A number of watermarks have been registered in advance.
- It is possible to create a new character string and register it.

  Reference (p.273)
- The defaults is [None]. When [None] is selected, no transparent character is set.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Text] box to display the list. Then select a watermark you want to use from the list.

A selection can be made from among [CONFIDENTIAL], [COPY], [DRAFT], [FILE COPY], [FINAL], [PROOF], [TOP SECRET], and others newly created and registered.

3. To print watermarks on the first page only, in the [Watermark] field, click the [▼] button next to the [Page] box. From the list shown, select [First page only].

If you select [All but first page], watermarks are printed on all pages except for the first page.

If you select [All pages], watermarks are printed on all pages.

If you select [No watermark], watermarks are not printed.

4. Click [Top], or [Bottom].

When [Top] is turned on, a watermark can be printed on top of the printing.

When [Bottom] is turned on, a watermark can be printed behind the text.

5. In the [Watermark] field, set [Count] and [Separation] to specify the number and spacing of watermarks.

Spacing will be automatically adjusted according to the number of watermarks.

6. In the [Font] field, click the [▼] button next to the [Name] box. Select fonts to use for watermarks from the list shown.

To print a Watermark (Continued)

7. In the [Font] field, click the [▼] button next to the [Color] box. Select font colors to use for watermarks from the list shown.

Select [Black], [Dark Gray], [Light Gray], or [White].

8. In the [Font] field, you can specify the density of the font color by dragging the slider bar of the [Darkness] box.

9. In the [Font] field, select a font size by directly entering the font size in the [Size] box or by clicking the [▲] or [▼] button next to the [Size] box.

10. Check the [Bold] or [Italic] Check box in the [Font] field to specify bold or italic formatting.

11. You can specify the watermark position in the [Position] field. Click the [User Defined] button on to define X axis position (left and right) in the [X] box, and Y axis position (up and down) in the [Y] box.

Click the [Automatically] button on to position the watermark automatically at the center of the page.

12. Specify the lean angle of the watermark by dragging the slider bar of the [Angle] box in the [Position] field or by directly entering the angle.

13. To adjust the watermark manually in the preview window, click the [Move] button on in the [Adjustment] field and drag to move the mark around or click the [Rotate] button on and drag to rotate the mark around.

14. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

15. Print from the application.

MEMO

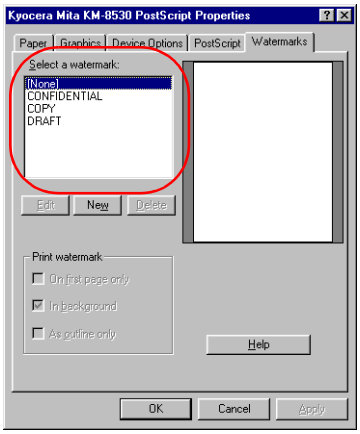
When [Duplex] is executed with the odd number of pages, a blank paper is added. The blank paper is also printed with a watermark.

To print a Watermark (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Watermarks] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

Windows NT4.0 / 2000/XP is not equipped with this function.

2. Select a watermark to be used from the [Select a watermark] box.

A selection can be made from among [CONFIDENTIAL], [Copy], [Draft] and others newly created and registered.

MEMO

- A Number of watermarks have been registered in advance.
- It is possible to create a new character string and register it.

Reference (p.273)

- The default is [None]. When [None] is selected, no transparent character is set.

3. When printing a watermark on the first page only, turn on the [On first page only] check box of the [Print watermark] field.

When the [First page only] check box is turned on, a watermark is printed on the first page only.

When the [First page only] check box is turned off, a watermark is printed on all pages.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

To print a Watermark (Continued)

4. To print a watermark in the background, turn on the [In background] check box of the [Print watermark] field.

When the [Background] check box is turned on, a background printing is available.

When the [Background] check box is turned off, a background printing is not available.

MEMO

The default is [ON]. If the watermark is difficult to see due to the printing from the application, set it to [OFF].

5. To print an outline, turn on the [As outline only] check box of the [Print watermark] field.

When the [As outline only] check box is turned on, the outline of a watermark can be printed.

When the [As outline only] check box is turned off, a complete watermark can be printed.

MEMO

The default is [OFF]. A watermark is difficult to see due to the printing from the application, set it to [OFF].

6. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

7. Print from application.

8. When the application of a watermark is discontinued after printing, Open [watermarks] tab of the [Properties] window.

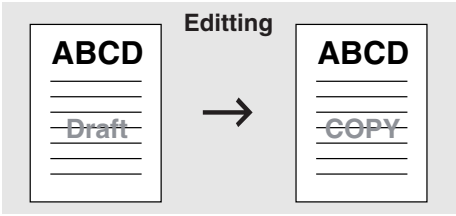
9. Select [None] from the [Select a watermark] box.

10. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To change a Watermark

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Watermark)**

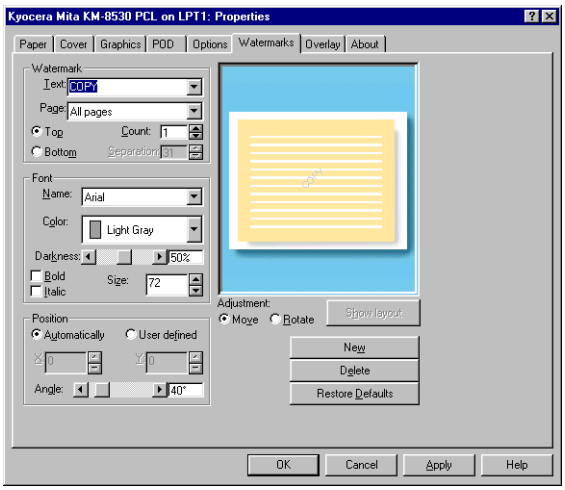
Edit and change a registered watermark to be printed on the output paper, when this printing system is used.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Watermarks] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [text] box in the [Watermark] tab to display the list. Then select a watermark to be changed from the list.

The selected character is highlighted.

3. To change text for watermark, enter text in the [Text] box.

4. After the text is entered, the [Text Change & New Image Request] dialog box will appear when some action is made such as clicking other buttons.

- The window asks you if you replace the existing text with the text just entered.
- Click the [Yes] button to replace, and the dialog box is closed.
- Click the [No] button not to replace, and the new watermark will be created and the dialog box is closed.
- Click the [Cancel] button for no changes and dialog box is closed.

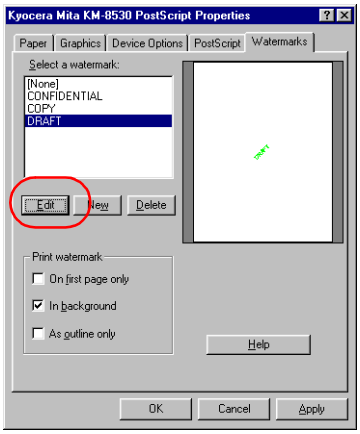
5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To change a Watermark (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Watermarks] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.

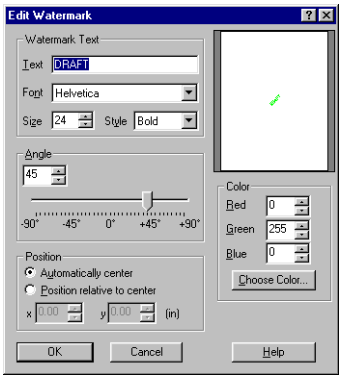


MEMO

Windows NT4.0/2000/XP is not equipped with this function.

2. Click the [Edit] button.

The [Edit Watermark] dialog box will appear.



3. To change text for watermark, enter text in the [Text] box.

4. To change the font, click the [▼] button beside the [Font] box to display the list. Then select a font to be changed from the list.

MEMO

The default is [Helvetica].

5. To change a size, click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [Size] box and specify the size of a watermark in a value from [7] to [600].

MEMO

- The default is [72].
- By selecting a number in the [Size] box, a size can be directly entered.

To change a Watermark (Continued)

6. To change a style, click the [▼] button beside the [Style] box to display a list. And then select a style to be used by a watermark from the list.

[Regular] [Bold] [Italic] [Bold Italic] can be selected.

MEMO

The default is [Bold].

7. To change the angle, click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the box in the [Angle] field and specify the angle of a watermark in a value from [-90] to [90].

The angle can also be specified by shifting the slider beside the box in the [Angle] field to the left and right.

MEMO

- The default is [0].
- By selecting a number in the box in the [Angle] field, an angle can be directly entered.

8. To automatically position a watermark at the center, click [Automatically center].

MEMO

The default is [ON].

9. To change a value to specify the position of a watermark, click [Position relative to center] button.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

10. When the [Position relative to center] button is turned on, click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [x] and [y] boxes to specify the relative position from the center in a numeric value.

The unit of a value set is [cm].

MEMO

- The defaults are [0.00], [0.00].
- By selecting numbers in the [x] and [y] boxes, values can be directly entered.

11. To change the color, click the [▲] / [▼] buttons beside the [Red], [Green] and [Blue] boxes to specify a color to be changed.

In the [Color] dialog box displayed by clicking the [Choose Color] button, a color can also be specified.

MEMO

- The defaults are [120], [120], [120].
- By selecting a number in the [Red], [Green] and [Blue] boxes, a value can be directly entered.

12. Confirm a changed watermark on the preview display.

13. Click the [OK] button.

The [Edit watermark] dialog box is closed and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

In the [Select a watermark] box, the changed watermark is displayed.

14. Select [None] from the [Select a watermark] box.

15. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To delete a Watermark

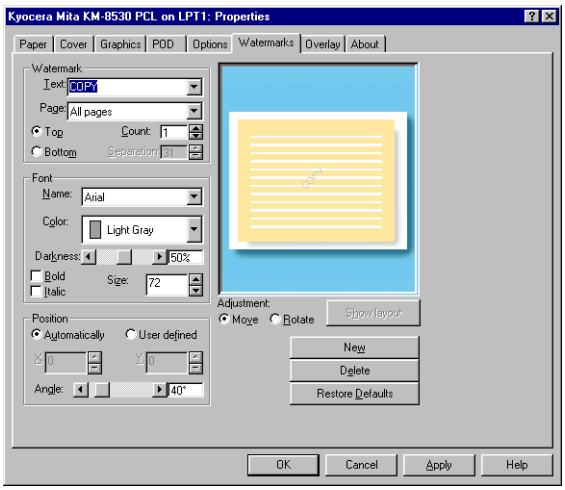
PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Watermark)**

Delete an unnecessary watermark, when this printing system is used.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Watermarks] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [text] box in the [Watermarks] tab to display the list. Then select a transparent character to be deleted from the list.

3. Click the [Delete] button.

[Delete Specified Watermark Request] dialog box will appear.

4. Click the [Yes] button.

The selected watermark is deleted.

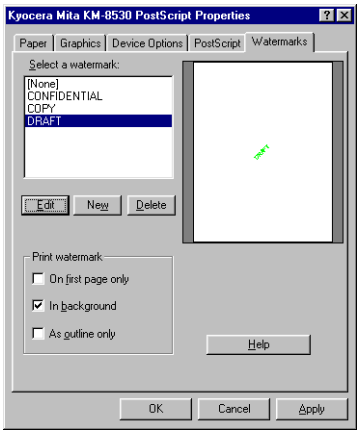
5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To delete a Watermark (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Watermarks] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

Windows NT4.0/2000/XP are not equipped with this function.

2. Select a watermark to be deleted from the [Select a watermark] box.

3. Click the [Delete] button.

[Delete watermark?] dialog box will appear.

4. Click the [OK] button.

The selected watermark is deleted.

5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set an image and shade

Set a shade of color when outputting an image and a method for processing graphic data.

To set Halftoning (Halftoning):

PCL5e

Set printing mode of a graphic image for printing, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

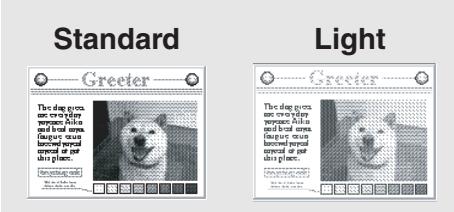
Reference ▶▶ (p.290) To set Halftoning

To set a printing density (Brightness/Contrast):

PCL5e

Set a printing density in 3 levels, when the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.291) To set a printing density

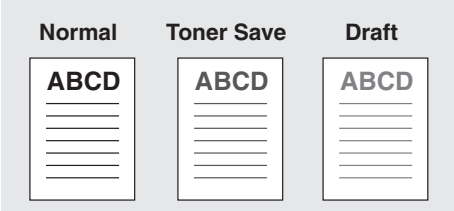


To save toner consumption by controlling print density:

PCL5e Adobe PS3

Save the consumption of toner by controlling print density, when this printing system is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.292) To save toner consumption by controlling print density



To set a resolution:

PCL5e Adobe PS3

Set a resolution to 400 dpi or 600 dpi, when this printing system is used.

Reference ▶▶ (p.294) To set a resolution

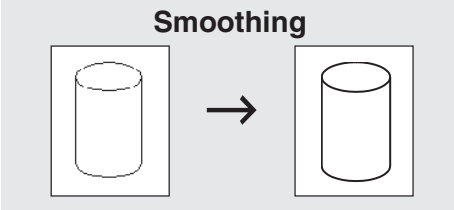
To set an image and shade (Continued)

To print a curved section smoothly (Smoothing):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print the curved section of characters and images smoothly, when this printing system is used.

Reference (p.296) To print a curved section smoothly

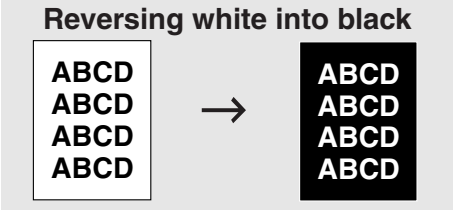


To print an image by reversing white and black:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Print a negative image by reversing white into black, when this printing system is used.

Reference (p.298) To print an image by reversing white and black



To print an image by reversing image:

Adobe PS3

Print an image by reversing it in a horizontal direction, like a reflection in the mirror, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference (p.300) To print an image by reversing image

To set an image and shade (Continued)

To print a text in gray or black more clearly:

Adobe PS3

Print a text in grey or black more clearly, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▸▸ (p.301) To print a text in gray or black more clearly

To print an image in gray or black more clearly:

Adobe PS3

Print an image in grey or black more clearly, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▸▸ (p.302) To print an image in gray or black more clearly

To set Halftoning

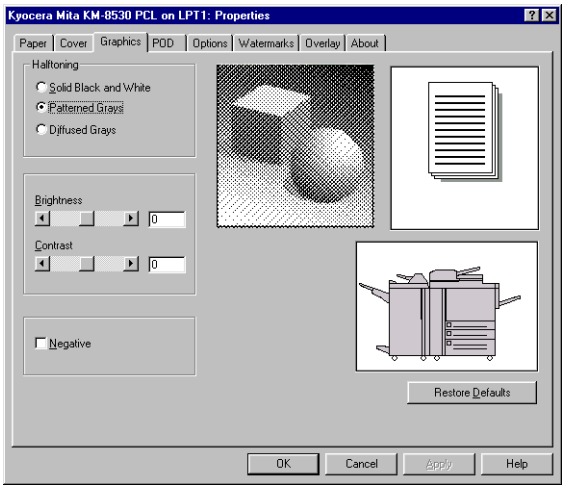
PCL5e Compliant (Halftoning)

When the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used, it is possible to it is possible to set Halftoning for printing.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Select optional radio button from the [Halftoning] field.

[Solid Black and White], [Patterned Grays] or [Diffused Grays] are available.

MEMO

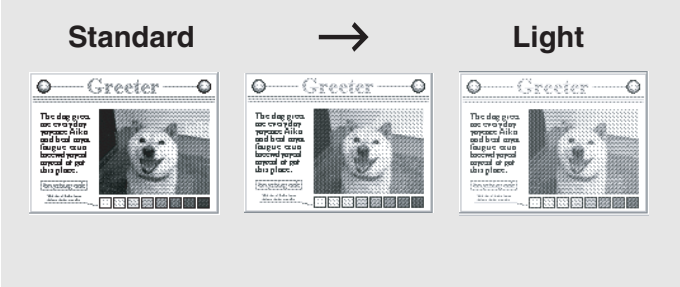
The default is [Patterned Grays].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a printing density

PCL5e Compliant (Brightness / Contrast)

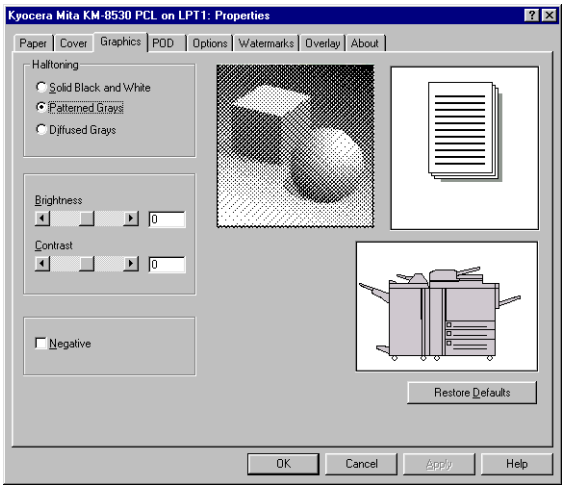
When the Kyoceramita PCL5e printer driver is used, it is possible to set a printing density.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. By shifting the slider of the [Brightness] field to the left or right, set a printing density from [100] to [-100].

MEMO

The default is [0].

3. By shifting the slider of the [Contrast] field to left and right, set a printing density from [100] to [-100].

MEMO

The default is [0].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To save toner consumption by controlling print density

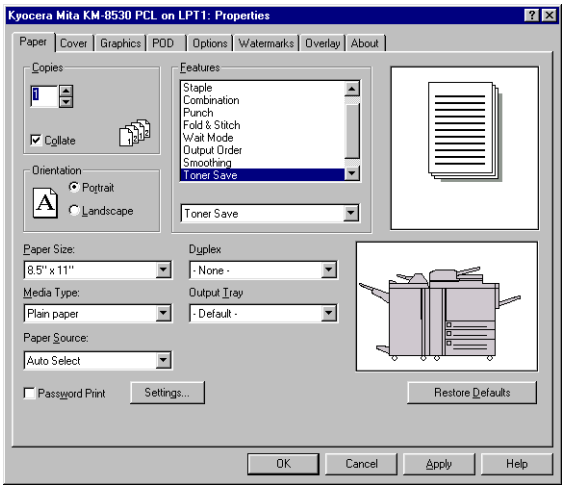
PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Save the consumption of toner by controlling printing density, when this printing system is used.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Toner Saver].

From the pull-down menu under it, select [Normal], [Toner Save] or [Draft].

MEMO

You can select print density from [Normal](100%), [Toner Save](80%) or [Draft](60%).

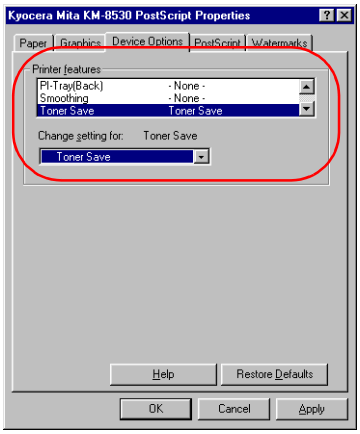
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To save toner consumption by controlling print density (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab in [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, open [Advanced Options] window by clicking the [Advanced ...] button on the [Printing Preferences] window.

2. From the list shown in the [Printer features] box, select [Toner Save].

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select [Toner Save] or [Draft] from the list.

MEMO

- The default is [Normal].
- You can select a printing density from [Normal](100%), [Toner Save](80%) or [Draft](60%).

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a resolution

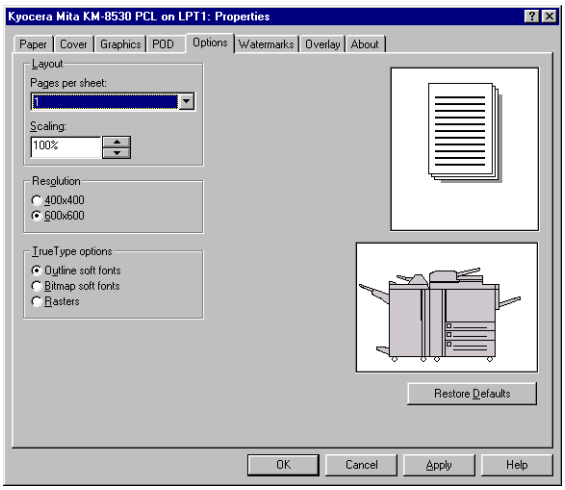
PCL5e | Adobe PS3 Compliant

Set a resolution to 400 dpi or 600 dpi, when this printing system is used.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. In the [Resolution] field, click [400 x 400] or [600 x 600].

MEMO

- The unit is [dpi].
- The default is [600 x 600].

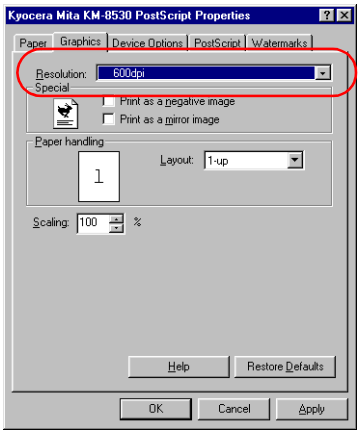
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a resolution (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Graphics] tab of the [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, open [Advanced Options] window by clicking the [Advanced ...] button on the [Printing Preferences] window.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Resolution] box to display the list. Then select [600 dpi] or [400 dpi] from the list.

MEMO

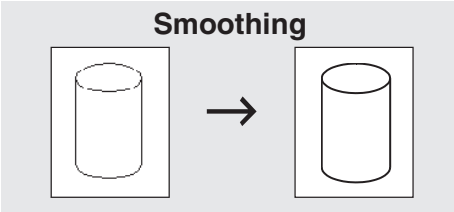
The default is [600 dpi].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print a curved section smoothly

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Smoothing)**

Print the curved section of characters and images smoothly, when this printing system is used.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. **Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.**
2. **Select [Smoothing] from the [Features] field.**
3. **Click the [▼] button beside the box below the [Features] field to display the list. Then select [Type 1], [Type 2] or [Type 3] from the list.**

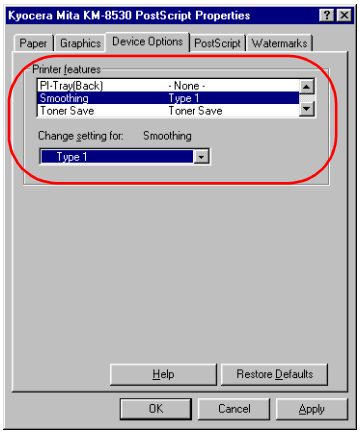
   MEMO
   The default is [None].
4. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

To print a curved section smoothly (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, open [Advanced Options] window by clicking the [Advanced ...] button on the [Printing Preferences] window.

2. Select [Smoothing] from the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] box to display the list. Then select [Type 1], [Type 2] or [Type 3] from the list.

[Type 1] normally provides processing suitable to a slanting line of a character and graphic.

[Type 2] normally provides processing suitable to a curved section of a character.

[Type 3] normally provides processing suitable to a curved section of fine character.

When [None] is selected, no smoothing function is provided.

MEMO

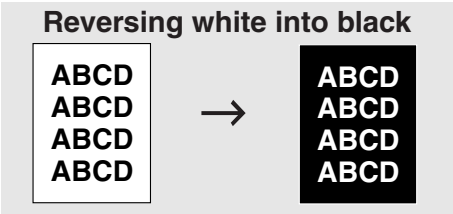
The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print an image by reversing white and black

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 Compliant

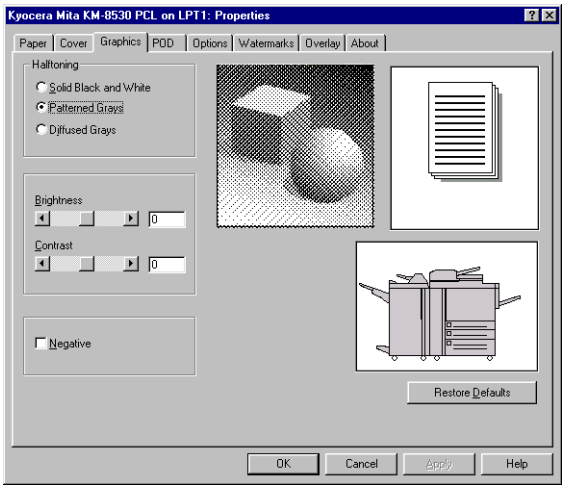
Print a negative image by reversing white into black, when the this printing system is used. This function is suitable for printing a monochromatic or coarse RGB image.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



2. Turn on the [Negative] check box.

MEMO

The default is [None].

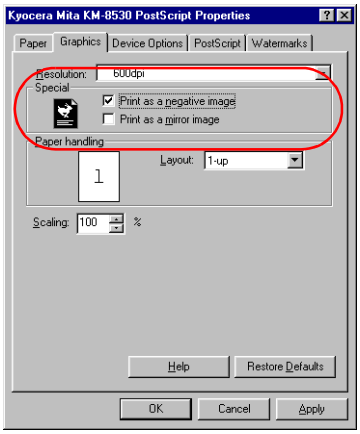
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print an image by reversing white and black (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, open [Advanced Options] window by clicking the [Advanced ...] button on the [Printing Preferences] window.

2. Turn on the [Print as a negative image] check box.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print an image by reversing image

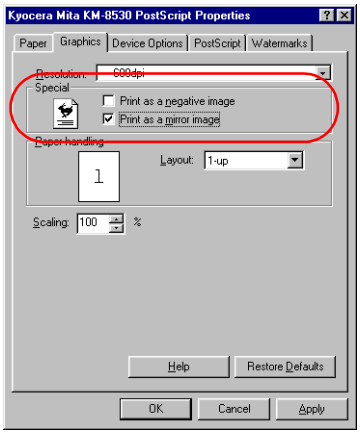
Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Print an image by reversing it in a horizontal direction, like a reflection in the mirror, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, open [Advanced Options] window by clicking the [Advanced ...] button on the [Printing Preferences] window.

2. Turn on the [Print as a mirror image] check box.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print a text in gray or black more clearly

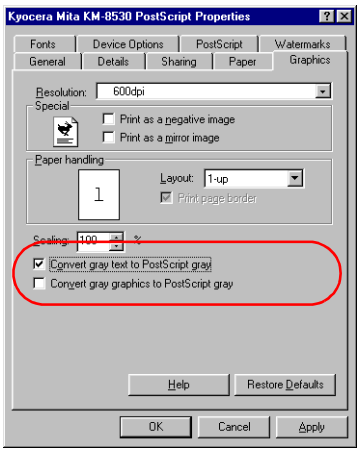
Adobe PS3 Compliant

Print a text in gray or black more clearly, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

When displayed from [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO

Windows NT4.0/2000/XP are not provided with this function.

2. Turn on the [Convert gray text to PostScript gray] check box.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print an image in gray or black more clearly

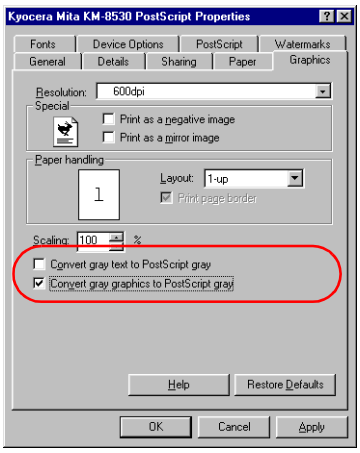
Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Print an image in gray or black more clearly, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Graphics] tab of [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

When displayed from [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO

Windows NT4.0/2000/XP are not equipped with this function.

2. Turn on the [Convert gray graphics to PostScript gray] check box.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set font-related items

It is possible to set the printer font-, TrueType font-, and PostScript font-related items.

To print without using printer fonts:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Make settings so that printing is done without using the printer font, when this printing system is used.

Reference ▶ (p.304) To print without using printer fonts

To replace TrueType with the printer font:

Adobe PS3

Replace TrueType with the printer font while in printing, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used. To replace a font, detailed settings can also be made.

Reference ▶ (p.306) To replace TrueType with the printer font

To set a method for sending PostScript:

Adobe PS3

Set a method for sending the PostScript font of the computer to the printer, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▶ (p.308) To set a method for sending PostScript

To add the Euro currency mark to the font:

Adobe PS3

Add the Euro mark to the PostScript font, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▶ (p.310) To add the Euro currency mark to the font

To download the font information:

Adobe PS3

Make the printer driver recognize the PostScript information of the printer as needed, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▶ (p.311) To download the font information

To print without using printer fonts

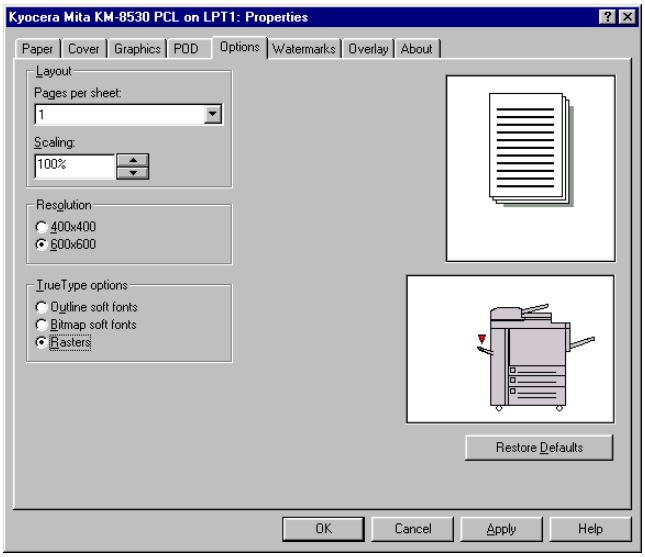
PCL5e | Adobe PS3 Compliant

Make settings so that printing is done without using the printer font, when this printing system is used. When the printer font is not used, the printing data is increased but the same printing result is obtained.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98



2. Click on the [Rasters] button of the [TrueType options] field.

- [Outline soft fonts] prints documents using a TrueType font which downloaded from your computer using Outline data format.
- [Bitmap soft fonts] prints documents using a TrueType font which downloaded from your computer using bitmap data format.
- [Rasters] is selected, all text and font data is converted in the computer into Raster graphics and downloaded to the printer.

MEMO

The default is [Outline soft fonts].

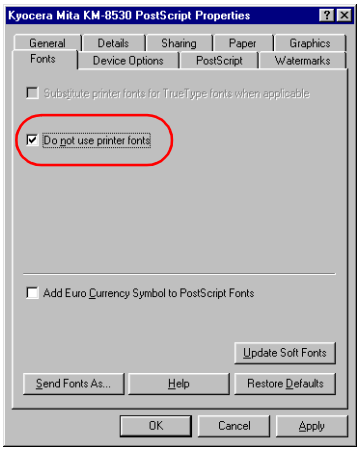
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To print without using printer fonts (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Fonts] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

When displayed from the [Printers] window with Windows 98



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, on the [Properties] window, click the [Advanced ...] button.
- For Window NT4.0/2000/XP, [Graphics] - [TrueType Font] - [Download as Softfont] is selected.

2. Turn on the [Do not use printer fonts] check box.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

Important

Also, when sending PostScript output to another printer, any trouble due to the difference of the print fonts can be avoided by turning on the [Do not use printer fonts] check box.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To replace TrueType with the printer font

Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

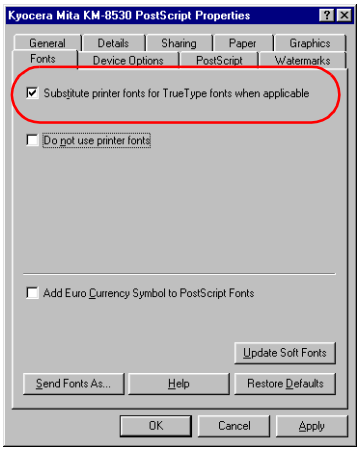
Replace the TrueType font with the printer font while printing, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used. And to replace a font, detailed settings can also be made.

When the printer font is used, printing data gets reduced. However, since the font is replaced, there sometimes occurs difference between the display on the monitor and the results of printing.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Fonts] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

When displayed from the [Printers] window with Windows 98



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, open [Advanced Options] window by clicking the [Advanced ...] button on the [Printing Preferences] window.
- For Window NT4.0/2000/XP, [Graphics] - [TrueType font] - [Download as softfont] is selected.

2. Click the [Substitute printer fonts for TrueType fonts when applicable] check box.

When the [Do not use printer fonts] check box is turned on, it is displayed in gray and cannot be turned on. In such a case, turn off the [Do not use printer fonts] check box to cancel the grayish display.

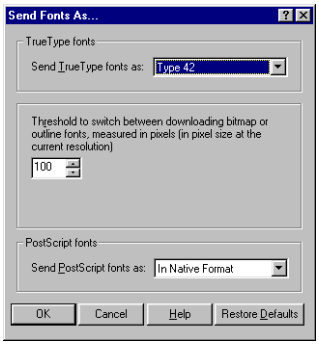
MEMO

The default is [ON].

To replace TrueType with the printer font (Continued)

3. Click the [Send Fonts As] button.

The [Send Fonts As] dialog box will appear.



MEMO

For Windows NT4.0/2000/XP, set [PostScript Options] - [TrueType Font Download Option].

4. Click the [▼] button beside [Send TrueType fonts as] box to display the list. Then select a method for sending to be used from the list.

- When [Outlines] is selected, the printer driver uses the outline of TrueType character to create and send a PostScript Type 1 font.
- When [Bitmaps] is selected, the printer driver uses the outline of TrueType character to create and send a bitmapped PostScript Type 3 font.
- When [Type 42] is selected, font that is a TrueType font [Type 42] that can be used by the PostScript printer is sent.
- When [Don't send] is selected, a font is not sent. This is set when a font can be provided by the network spooler.

5. When [Outline] is selected in Step 4, click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [Threshold to switch between downloading bitmap or outline fonts, measured in pixels (in pixel size at the current resolution)] box, and specify a font size to change when the Printer driver sends the TrueType font as bitmap font or sends outline font.

When [0] is specified, outline is always sent.

MEMO

- The default is [100].
- By selecting a number in the box, a value can be directly entered.

6. Click the [OK] button.

The [Send Fonts As] dialog box is closed, and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

7. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set a method for sending PostScript

Adobe PS3 Compliant

For Adobe PS3 printer driver, you can specify how to send PostScript fonts in the computer to the printer.

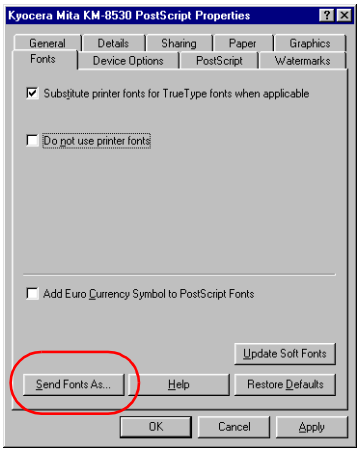
Important

The settings made in the [Printers] - [Properties] are applied to all applications. Make sure to set fonts in the [Printers] - [Properties].
The settings made in the [Properties] window that is opened from an application are valid only while the application is being used.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Fonts] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

Opened from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.

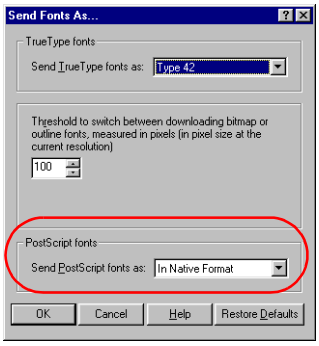


MEMO

Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

2. Click the [Send Fonts As].

The [Send Fonts As] dialog box will appear.



To set a method for sending PostScript (Continued)

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Send PostScript fonts as] box of the [PostScript fonts] field to specify how to send the PostScript fonts from the list.

- If you specify [In Native Format], the PostScript font is sent to the printer in native fonts (Type 1).
- If you select [Don't Send], the fonts will be not sent to the printer; however, it will not substitute printer fonts for PostScript. Select this setting if the network spooler can provide the fonts. If the PostScript fonts are not available, it is replaced with the default printer fonts (usually Courier).

4. Click the [OK] button.

The [Send Fonts As] dialog box disappears and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To add the Euro currency mark to the font

Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Add the Euro currency symbol to PostScript fonts, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

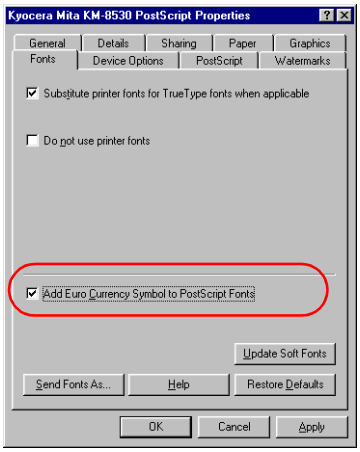
Important

The settings made in the [Printers] - [Properties] are applied to all applications. Make sure to set fonts in the [Printers] - [Properties].
The settings made in the [Properties] window that is opened from an application are valid only while the application is being used.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Fonts] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

Opened from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO
Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

2. Turn on the [Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts] check box.

MEMO
The default is [OFF].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To download the font information

Adobe PS3 Compliant

Set the printer driver to recognize the PostScript font information in the printer, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

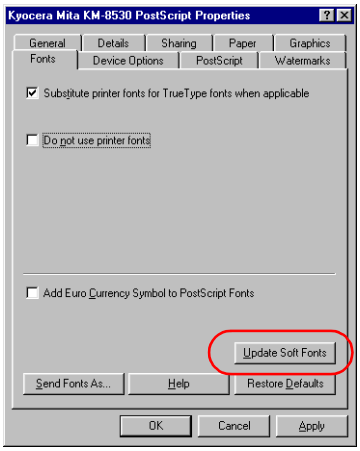
Important

The settings made in the [Printers] - [Properties] are applied to all applications. Make sure to set fonts in the [Printers] - [Properties].
The settings made in the [Properties] window that is opened from an application are valid only while the application is being used.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Fonts] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

Opened from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO
Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

2. Click the [Update Soft Fonts] button.

The list of the PostScript fonts downloaded in the printer is updated.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To adjust settings of PostScript output format

For Adobe PS3 printer driver, you can adjust the settings about PostScript.

To adjust basic settings of PostScript output format:

Adobe PS3

Adjust the basic settings of PostScript such as PostScript output format and PostScript header, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▶ (p.313) To adjust basic settings of PostScript output format

To adjust detailed settings of PostScript output format:

Adobe PS3

Adjust the detailed settings of PostScript such as PostScript language level and Data protocol format, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Reference ▶ (p.316) To adjust detailed settings of PostScript output format

To adjust basic settings of PostScript output format

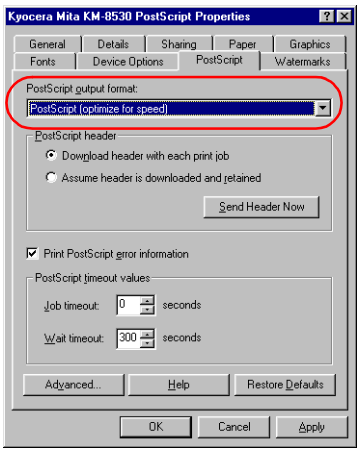
Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Adjust the basic settings of PostScript such as PostScript output format and PostScript header, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [PostScript] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

Opened from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.



MEMO

- Open the [Advanced] tab in Windows NT 4.0.
- Open [Advanced Options] window by clicking the [Advanced ...] button on the [Printing Preferences] window in Windows 2000/XP.
- Set [PostScript Options] - [PostScript Output Option] in Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP.

2. Click the [▼] button beside the [PostScript output format] box to specify the PostScript output format from the list.

- When printing a normal document, select [PostScript (optimize for speed)].
- When printing a file that is Adobe DSC (Document Structuring Convention) compliant, select [PostScript (optimize for portability-ADSC)]. Creating a file in EPS format, select [Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)].
- When creating and saving a file for using PostScript data at a later time, select [Archive format].

MEMO

- The default is [PostScript (optimize for speed)].
- If you select [Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)], select [Print to file] check box in the [Print] dialog box.
- Set [PostScript Options] - [PostScript Output Option] in Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP.

To adjust basic settings of PostScript output format (Continued)

3. Click [Download header with each print job] or [Assume header is downloaded and retained] in the [PostScript header] field.

- The setting in the [PostScript header] field is ignored if you have selected [Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)] or [Archive format] in the [PostScript output format] box at step 2.
- The [PostScript header] includes information and settings required for printout. It has to be sent at least once in every job.
- When printing to a network printer, it is suitable to send PostScript header in every prints.
- If the printing system and the computer is connected directly, you can increase the printing speed by setting the [PostScript header] to be sent only one time.
- If the printing system and the computer is connected directly, you can increase the printing speed by the following procedures:
  1. Make sure the printing system is turned on.
  2. Click the [Send Header Now] button.
  3. Select the [Assume header is downloaded and retained] button.

MEMO

- The default is [Download header with each print job].
- Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

4. Click the [Send Header Now] button if you want to send the PostScript header now.

- If you click the [OK] button on the [Download PostScript header] dialog box that appears when you click the [Send Header Now] button, the [Assume header is downloaded and retained] button is turned on automatically.

MEMO

Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

5. Turn on the [Print PostScript error information] check box if you want to set the error handler that is sent in every printing to print PostScript error information.

- This setting is ignored if you have selected [Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)] at step 2.

MEMO

- The default is [ON].
- Set [PostScript Options] - [Send PostScript Error Handler] in Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP.

To adjust basic settings of PostScript output format (Continued)

6. Click the [▲] and [▼] buttons beside the [Job timeout] box of the [PostScript timeout values] field to specify a value for the job timeout in the range between [0] and [999].

- The unit is second.
- The [Job timeout] is the time the printer can spend on a print job. If the job is not completed within the time, it is aborted.
- Printing by a network printer, set a value to avoid the computer to spend too much time of the printer.
- If the printing system and the computer is connected directly, you can set the [Job timeout] to [0] to perform the print job without regard to time.

MEMO

- The default is [0]. Set to [0] if you don't want the timeout to occur.
- By selecting a number in the [Job timeout] box, a value can be directly entered.
- Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

7. Click the [▲] and [▼] buttons beside the [Wait timeout] box of the [PostScript timeout values] field to specify a value in the range between [0] and [999].

- The unit is seconds.
- The default presents no problem in most cases.
- The [Wait timeout] is the maximum time for the printer to wait for data. The job is aborted if it cannot receive the data within the time.
- If the printing system and the computer are connected directly, you can specify high value.

MEMO

- The default is [300].
- By selecting a number in the [Wait timeout] box, a value can be directly entered.
- Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

8. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To adjust detailed settings of PostScript output format

Adobe PS3 Compliant

Adjust the detailed settings of PostScript such as PostScript language level and Data protocol format, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

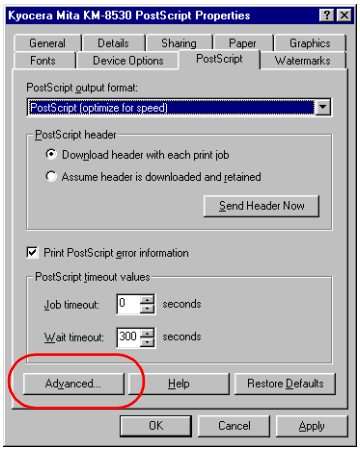
Important

Do not adjust the detailed settings of PostScript output format unless it is required.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [PostScript] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

Opened from the [Printers] window with Windows 98.

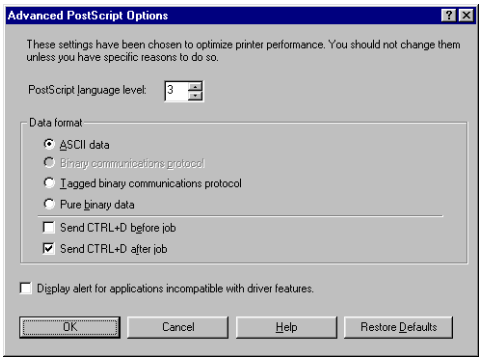


MEMO

Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

2. Click the [Advanced...] button.

The [Advanced PostScript Options] dialog box will appear.


Advanced PostScript Options
These settings have been chosen to optimize printer performance. You should not change them unless you have specific reasons to do so.
PostScript language level:
3
Data format
ASCII data
Binary communications protocol
Tagged binary communications protocol
Pure binary data
Send CTRL+D before job
Send CTRL+D after job
Display alert for applications incompatible with driver features.
OK
Cancel
Help
Restore Defaults

To adjust detailed settings of PostScript output format (Continued)

3. Click the [▲] and [▼] buttons beside the [PostScript language level] box to select either [2] or [3] for the language level used.

MEMO

- The default is [3].
- Set [PostScript Options] - [PostScript Language Level] in Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP.

4. Set each button and check box in the [Data format] field if you have to change the data format.

- When you turning on the [ASCII data] button, data is sent in ASCII format.
- When you turning on the [Tagged binary communications protocol] button, all data except data of special characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format via the parallel port.
- When you turning on the [Pure binary data] button, all data is sent in binary format.
- When you turning on the [Send CTRL+D before job] check box, the reset memory code (CTRL+D) is sent before the print job. Turning on the [Pure binary data] radio button, you cannot turn on this check box.
- When you turning on the [Send CTRL+D after job] check box, the reset memory code (CTRL+D) is sent after the print job. Turning on the [Pure binary data] radio button, you cannot turn on this check box.

MEMO

- The [ASCII data] button and the [Send CTRL+D after job] check box are turned on as default.
- Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

5. Turn on the [Display alert for applications incompatible with driver features] check box, if you want to alert for an application that is incompatible with driver features.

The setting in the [PostScript header] field is ignored if you have selected [Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)] or [Archive format] in the [PostScript output format] box at step 2.

MEMO

- The default is [OFF].
- Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP does not support this function.

6. Click the [OK] button.

The [Advanced PostScript Options] dialog box disappears and the display returns to the [Properties] window.

7. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

Checking the Printer Driver Setting

You can check the setting before printing and perform test printing to check current setting.

To test print to check the settings (Wait with Proof):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Check test printing output and check current settings from the control panel, when this printing system is used.

Reference ▶ (p.319) To test printing to check the settings

To check the current settings before printing (Wait):

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

Check the current setting from the control panel before printing, when this printing system is used.

Reference ▶ (p.323) To check the current settings before printing

To check the version of the printer driver:

PCL5e | Adobe PS3

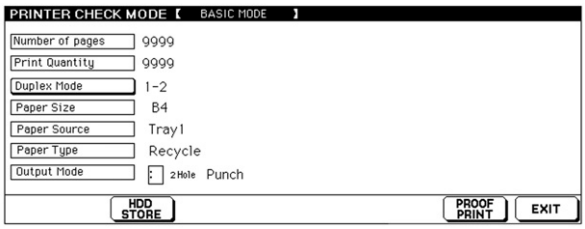
Check the printer driver version from the [Properties] window, when this printing system is used.

Reference ▶ (p.327) To check the version of the printer driver

To test printing to check the settings

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant (Wait with Proof)**

Check test printing output and check current setting from the control panel. Use this when printing a large volume, such as multiple sets of pages.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

Limitation

[Wait with Proof] cannot be set in the following case:

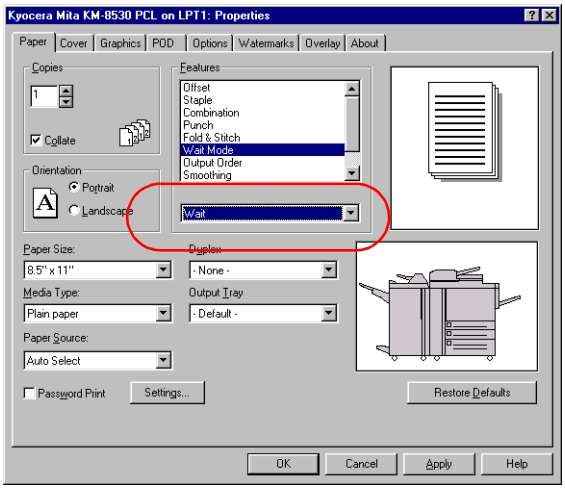
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



2. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Wait Mode].

To test printing to check the settings (Continued)

3. From the pull-down menu under it, select [Wait with Proof].

MEMO

The default is [None].

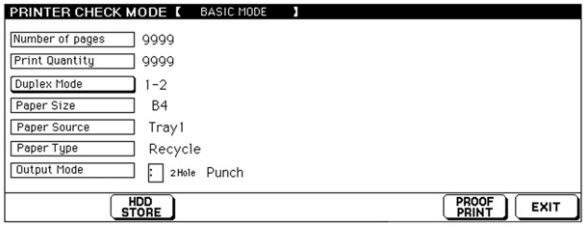
4. Click the [OK] button and close the [Properties] window.

5. Perform printing from the application.

Step 6 and after are operations on the control panel of the copier.

6. The [Printer Check Mode Screen] will appear on the LCD touch screen and no printing is performed.

[HDD STORE] appears only when the optional HDD is installed in the main body printer.



7. Confirm the current settings.

8. Change setting values of [Print Quantity], [Duplex Mode] or [Image Shift], if necessary.

- How to change [Print Quantity]
  Enter the value from the keypad on the control panel when the [Printer Check Mode Screen] appears.
- How to change [Duplex Mode]
  To show the [Basic Screen], touch the [Duplex Mode]. Set the [Duplex Mode] on the [Basic Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], press the [CHECK] button on the control panel.
- How to change [Image Shift]

⚠

Available only when [On] is selected in [Image Shift] of printer driver.

To show the [Image Shift Screen], touch the [Image Shift]. Set the [Image Shift] on the [Image Shift Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], touch [EXIT] on the [Image Shift Screen].

9. Touch the [PROOF PRINT] to print one copied set for proofreading.

10. Touch the [Exit] to return to the print mode basic screen.

11. Press [START] to resume the rest of the print job.

When you change the settings, press [STOP] to cancel the print job, and change the settings on the printer properties on your computer.

To test printing to check the settings (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Wait with Proof] cannot be set in the following case:

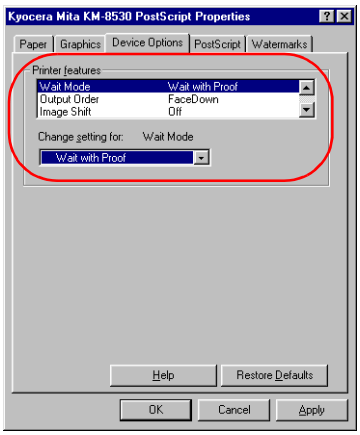
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, on the [Properties] window, click the [Advanced ...] button.

2. Select [Wait Mode] in the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button besides the [Printer features] - [Change settings for] box to display the list. Then select [Wait with Proof] from the list.

MEMO

The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button and close the [Properties] window.

5. Print form the application.

6. The [Printer Check Mode Screen] will appear on the LCD Touch Screen and one set of copy for proofreading will be printed.

To test printing to check the settings (Continued)

7. Change setting values of [Print Quantity], [Duplex Mode] or [Image Shift], if necessary.

- How to change [Print Quantity]
  Enter the value from the keypad on the control panel when the [Printer Check Mode Screen] appears.
- How to change [Duplex Mode]
  To show the [Basic Screen], touch the [Duplex Mode]. Set the [Duplex Mode] on the [Basic Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], press the [CHECK] button on the control panel.
- How to change [Image Shift]

Available only when [On] is selected in [Image Shift] of printer driver.

To show the [Image Shift Screen], touch the [Image Shift]. Set the [Image Shift] on the [Image Shift Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], touch [EXIT] on the [Image Shift Screen].

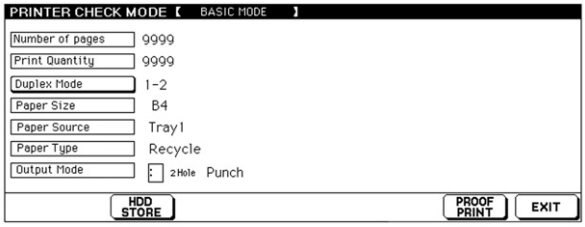
8. Touch the [PROOF PRINT] to print one copied set for proofreading, if necessary.

9. Touch [EXIT] and then press [Start] to resume the rest of the print job.

To check the current settings before printing

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 compliant (Wait)

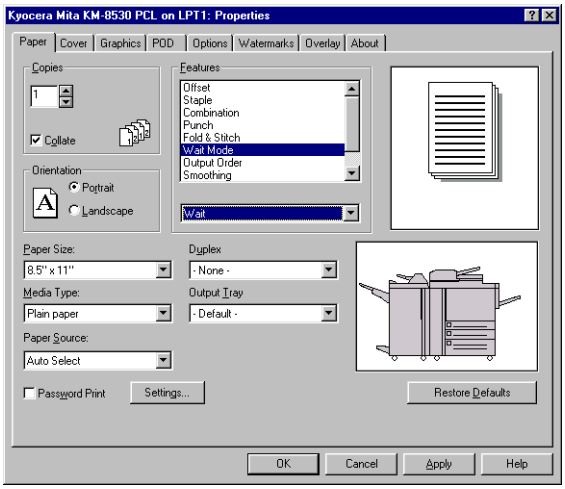
Check the current setting from the control panel before printing.



●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



2. From the list shown in the [Features] field, select [Wait Mode].

3. From the pull-down menu under it, select [Wait].

MEMO

The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button and close the [Properties] window.

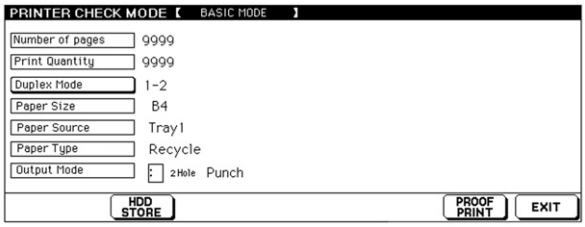
5. Print from the application.

Step 6 and after are operations on the control panel of the copier.

To check the current settings before printing (Continued)

6. The settings are displayed on the LCD.

The [Printer Check Mode Screen] will appear on the LCD touch screen and no printing is performed.



7. Confirm the current settings.

Change setting values of [Print Quantity], [Duplex Mode] or [Image Shift], if necessary.
(Refer to the above mentioned procedure: How to check the job [Wait Mode] Proof,6.)

- How to change [Print Quantity]
  Enter the value from the keypad on the control panel when the [Printer Check Mode Screen] appears.
- How to change [Duplex Mode]
  To show the [Basic Screen], touch the [Duplex Mode]. Set the [Duplex Mode] on the [Basic Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], press the [CHECK] button on the control panel.
- How to change [Image Shift]

⚠

Available only when [On] is selected in [Image Shift] of printer driver.

To show the [Image Shift Screen], touch the [Image Shift]. Set the [Image Shift] on the [Image Shift Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], touch [EXIT] on the [Image Shift Screen].

8. Press [START] button to resume the rest of the print job.

When you change the settings, press [STOP] to cancel the print job, and change the settings on the printer properties on your computer.

To check the current settings before printing (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Wait with Proof] cannot be set in the following case:

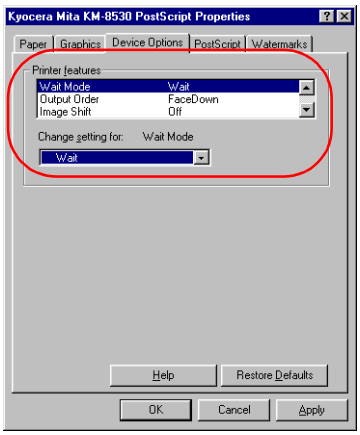
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab - [Collate]

MEMO

If you attempt to make a setting corresponding to the incongruous combinations described that cannot be set on the printer driver, a message will be displayed. Check the details of message and adjust the relationship with other settings.

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



MEMO

- For Windows NT4.0, the [Advanced] tab is displayed.
- For Windows 2000/XP, on the [Properties] window, click the [Advanced ...] button.

2. Select [Wait Mode] in the [Printer features] field.

3. Click the [▼] button besides the [Printer features] - [Change settings for] box to display the list. Then select [Wait] from the list.

MEMO

The default is [None].

4. Click the [OK] button and close the [Properties] window.

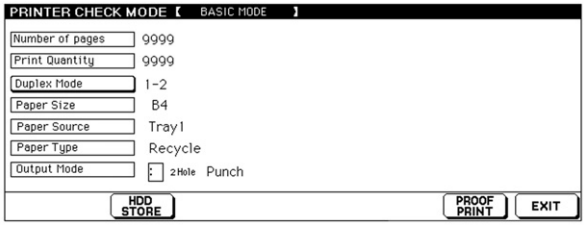
5. Print from the application.

Step 6 and after are operations on the control panel of the copier.

To check the current settings before printing (Continued)

6. The settings are displayed on the LCD.

The [Printer Check Mode Screen] will appear on the LCD Touch Screen and no printing is performed. [HDD STORE] appears only when the optional HDD is installed in the main body printer.



7. Confirm the current settings.

8. Change setting values of [Print Quantity], [Duplex Mode] or [Image Shift], if necessary.

- How to change [Print Quantity]
  Enter the value from the keypad on the Control Panel of the copier when the [Printer Check Mode Screen] appears.
- How to change [Duplex Mode]
  To show the [Basic Screen], touch the [Duplex Mode]. Set the [Duplex Mode] on the [Basic Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], press the [CHECK] button on the Control Panel of the copier.
- How to change [Image Shift]
  Available only when On is selected in [Image Shift] of printer driver.
  To show the [Image Shift Screen], touch the [Image Shift]. Set the [Image Shift] on the [Image Shift Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], touch [EXIT] on the [Image Shift Screen].

9. Touch the [PROOF PRINT] to print one copied set for proofreading, if necessary.

10. Touch the [Exit] and then press [Start] to resume the rest of the print job.

To check the version of the printer driver

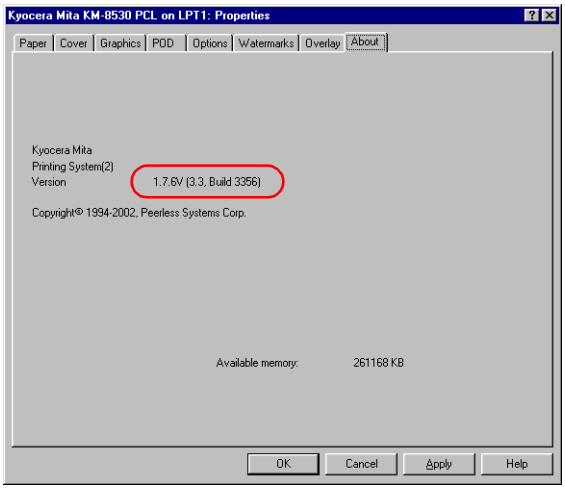
PCL5e | Adobe PS3 compliant

Check the printer driver version from the [Properties] window.

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [About] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



2. Check for the notation [Version *.* V (*.*, Build ****)].

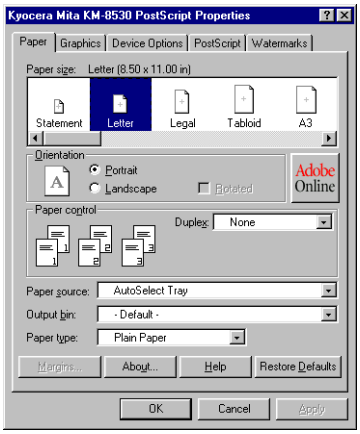
3. Click the [OK] button and close the [Properties] window.

To check the version of the printer driver (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application of Windows 98.



MEMO

For Windows NT4.0, open [Advanced] tab and click the [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PostScript document settings]. Windows 2000/XP does not have this feature.

2. Click the [About...] button.

[About] dialog box will appear.

3. Check for the notation [PostScript Printer Driver Version *.*.*(***)].

4. Click the [OK] button.

The [About] dialog box closes and returns to the [Properties] window.

5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set printer memory

Adobe PS3 compliant

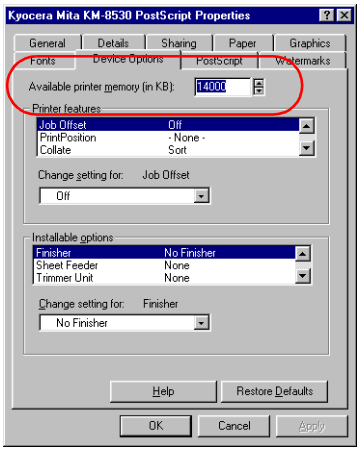
Make the printer driver to recognize the printer memory from the [Properties] window, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Contact the system administrator for information about proper setting value of available memory.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab in [Printers] - [Properties].

When displayed from [Printers] window of Windows 98.



MEMO

For Windows NT4.0/2000/XP, open [Device Settings] tab of the [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

2. Click the [▲] / [▼] button beside the [Available printer memory in KB] box to set available printer memory.

MEMO

The default is [14000].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

To set printer memory configuration

Adobe PS3 compliant

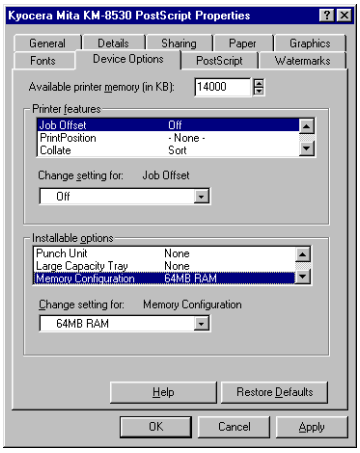
Make the printer driver to recognize the printer memory configuration from the [Properties] window, when the Adobe PS3 printer driver is used.

Contact the system administrator for information about proper setting value of memory configuration.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Device Options] tab of [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

When displayed from [Printers] window of Windows 98.



MEMO

For Windows NT4.0/2000/XP, open [Device Settings] tab of the [Properties] window from the [Printers] window.

2. Click the [Memory Configuration] from the [Installable options] field.

3. Click the [▼] button besides the [Installable options]-[Change setting for] box to set the number of memory configuration.

MEMO

The default is [64MB].

4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.

Basic printing method

This chapter explains how to use this printing system for printing from a Macintosh.

The following shows the basic methods of use of the printing system from the computer used.

1. Check the printing system to ensure it is turned on. Then turn on the computer.

2. Select this printing system from the [Chooser] dialog.

MEMO

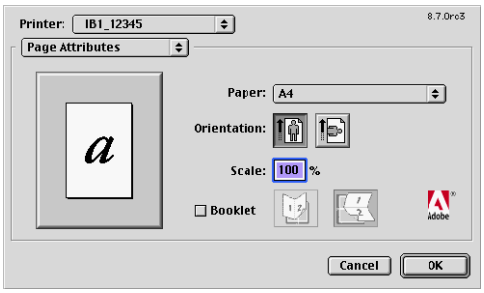
See "Chapter 4 How to Setup" for detailed information on selecting this printing system from the [Chooser] dialog.

Reference (p.113) Selecting the printer with the Chooser

3. Open the file to be printed.

4. Select [File] - [Page Setup...] of the application.

The [Page Setup] dialog box will appear.



MEMO

You can configure the functions of this printing system further in the [Page Setup].

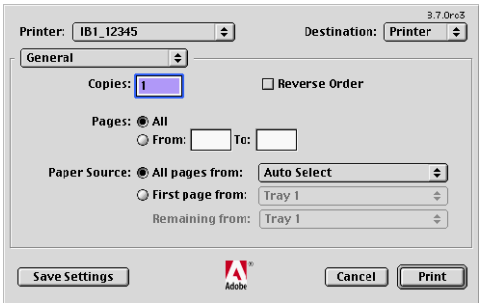
Reference (p.335) Displaying the [Page Setup] dialog box

5. Click the [OK] button.

The [Page Setup] dialog box will disappear.

6. Select [File] - [Print...] of the application.

The [Printing] dialog box will appear.



7. Make sure that the printer name is the name of this printing system.

MEMO

If the printer name is not the name of this printing system, click the [▼] button at the side of the [Printer] box to select the printing system.

Basic printing method (Continued)

8. Make settings in the [Print].

MEMO

You can set the function of the printing system further by opening the screen from the [Print].

9. Click the [Print] button.

The file is printed.

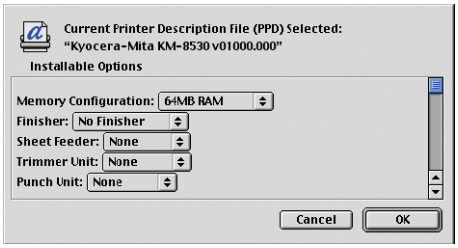
Dialog boxes used for configuring this printing system

●Three dialog boxes

You can set this printing system to use various functions when you print a file from a Macintosh with this printing system.

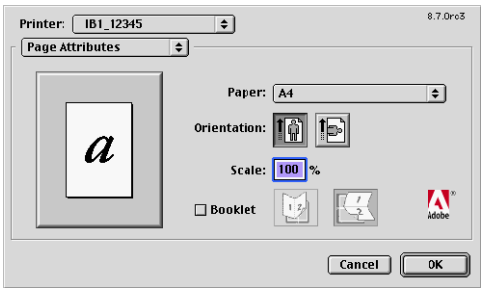
[Configure] dialog box

This dialog box is opened from the [Chooser] dialog. You can set the printer driver to recognize optional devices in this printing system.



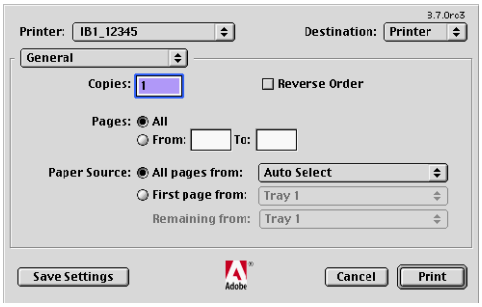
[Page Setup] dialog box

This dialog box is opened from an application. You can set paper size, orientation, scaling, watermarks, visual effect, alternate font, smoothing, and custom page setting.



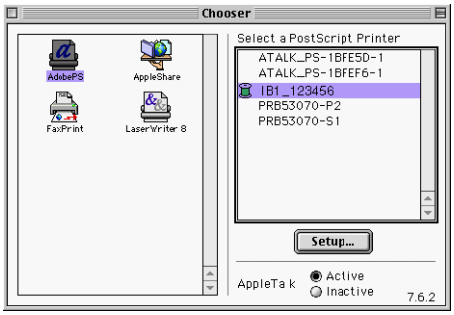
[Print] dialog box

This dialog box is opened from an application. You can set various functions.



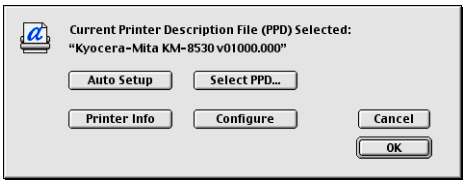
Displaying the [Configure] dialog box

1. **Select [Chooser] from [Apple Menu].**
2. **Make sure that [Active] is selected in the [AppleTalk] box**
3. **Click the [AdobePS] icon.**
4. **Click the printer name for your PS3 printing system from the [Select a PostScript Printer] list.**



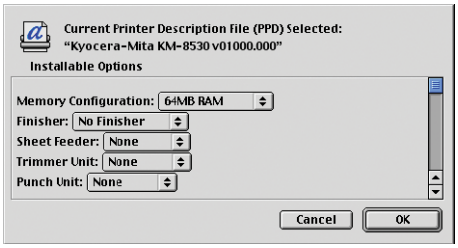
5. **Click the [Setup] button if you are using the printing system for the first time.**

A dialog box will appear.



6. **Click the [Configure] button.**

The [Configure] dialog box will appear.

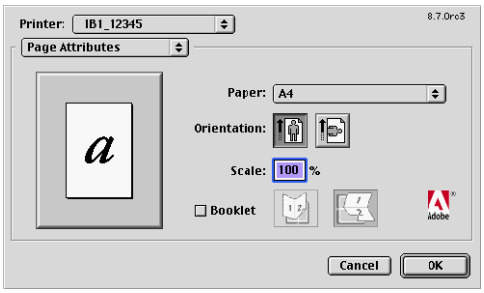


Displaying the [Page Setup] dialog box

1. Select [File] - [Page Setup...] of the application.

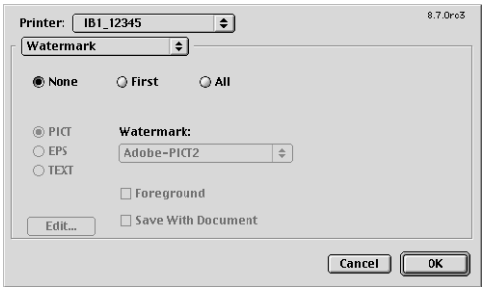
The [Page Attributes] dialog box in the [Page Setup] dialog box will appear.

[Page Setup] - [Page Attributes] dialog box

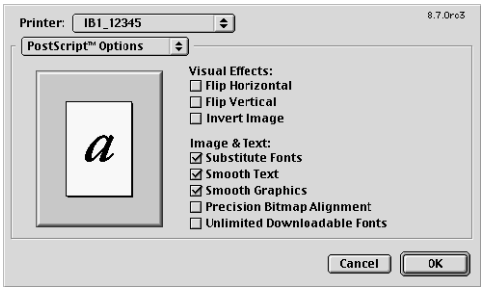


2. Click the [▼] button upper left corner the dialog box to select each menu as required.

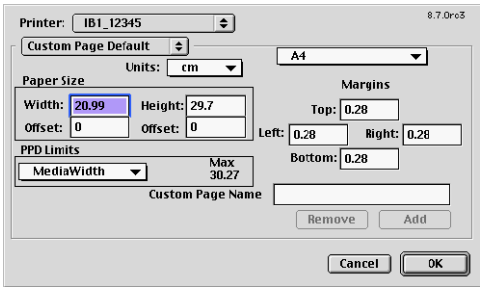
[Page Setup] - [Watermark] dialog box



[Page Setup] - [PostScript Options] dialog box



[Page Setup] - [Custom Page Default] dialog box

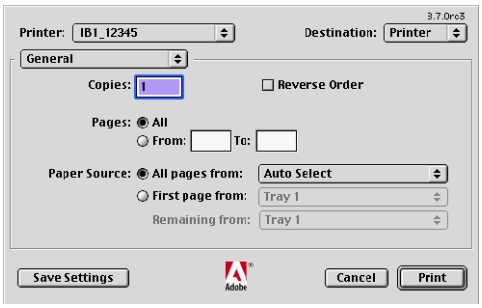


Displaying the [Print] dialog box

1. Select [File] - [Print...] of the application.

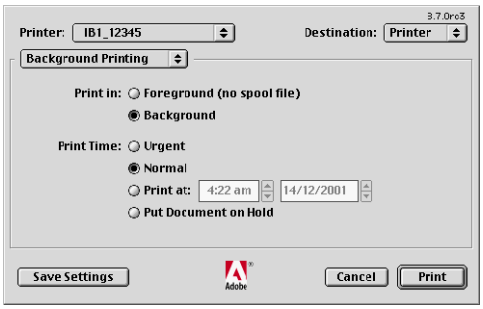
The [General] dialog box in the [Print] dialog box will appear.

[Print] - [General] dialog box

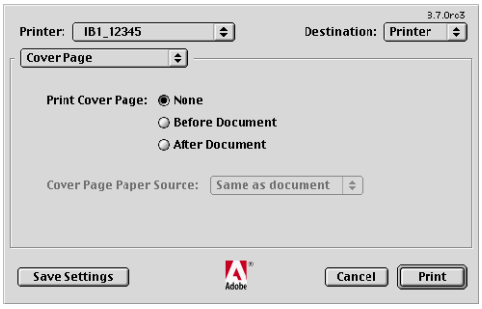


2. Click the [▼] button below the [Printer] box to select each menu as required.

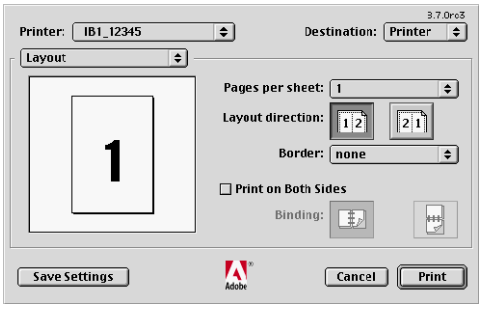
[Print] - [Background Printing] dialog box



[Print] - [Cover Page] dialog box

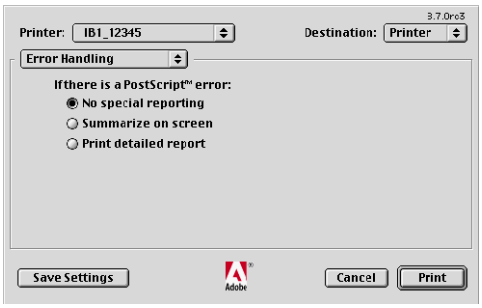


[Print] - [Layout] dialog box

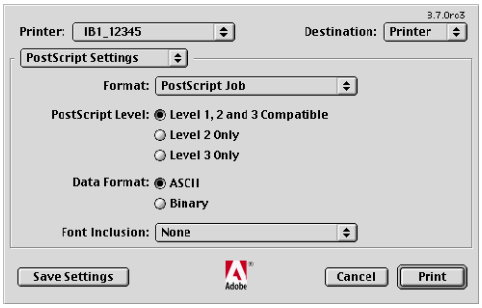


Displaying the [Print] dialog box (Continued)

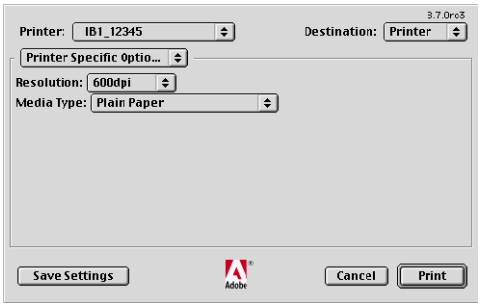
[Print] - [Error Handling] dialog box



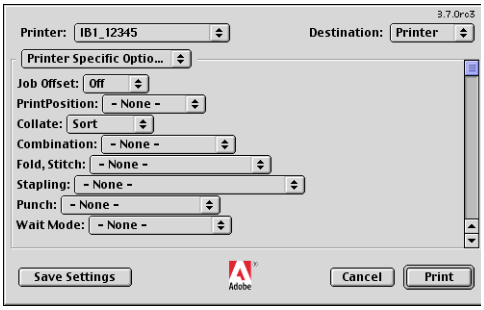
[Print] - [PostScript Setting] dialog box



[Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1)



[Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2)



About descriptions in this chapter

In the descriptions of the settings for each function from the dialog boxes, in the following pages of this chapter, the procedures for opening the dialog boxes is omitted.

Refer to the procedures described earlier as necessary.

For example:

Open [Configure].

Reference (p.334) Displaying the [Configure] dialog box

Open [Page Setup] - [Cover Page].

Reference (p.335) Displaying the [Page Setup] dialog box

Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1)

Reference (p.336) Displaying the [Print] dialog box

This chapter mainly describes information on the functions inherent in this printing system. Refer to the manual for the Adobe PS3 printer driver for detailed information on the functions common to the Adobe PS3 printer driver.

To set the paper-related items

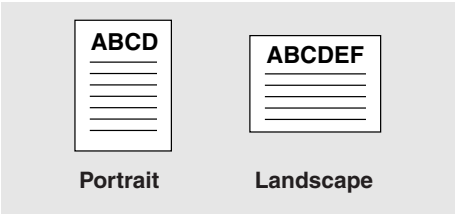
The size and direction of the paper can be set as shown below.

To set the orientation:

Adobe PS3

Set the orientation to output paper in "Portrait" or "Landscape."

Reference ▸▸ (p.341) To set the orientation



To set the size of output paper:

Adobe PS3

Set various sizes for the output paper.

Reference ▸▸ (p.342) To set the size of the output paper

To set the type of manual-feed paper:

Adobe PS3

Set various types of paper as output paper.

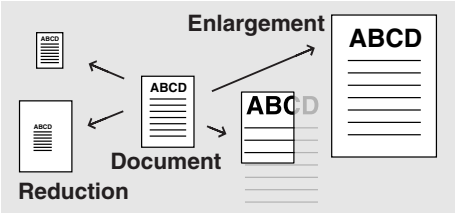
Reference ▸▸ (p.344) To set the type of manual-feed paper

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio:

Adobe PS3

Print by specifying a value of enlargement or reduction.

Reference ▸▸ (p.347) To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio



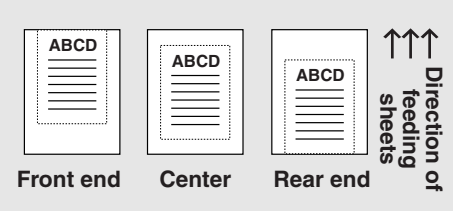
To set the paper-related items (Continued)

To set the printing position of the wide paper:

Adobe PS3

Set a printing position for the wide paper.

Reference ▸▸ (p.348) To set the printing position of the wide paper

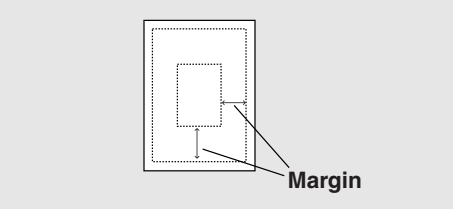


To set the margins:

Adobe PS3

Set the margins of output paper.

Reference ▸▸ (p.349) To set the margins



To set custom size paper:

Adobe PS3

Set custom size paper.

Reference ▸▸ (p.350) To set a custom size paper

To set the orientation

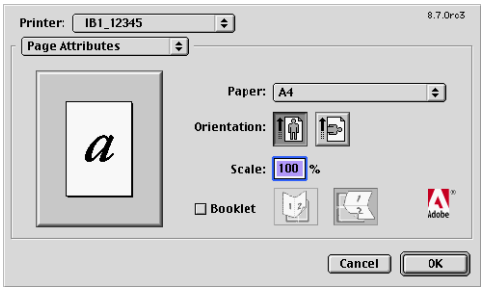
Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the orientation to output paper in "Portrait" or "Landscape."

When the paper direction set for the document created by the application is different from the paper direction or orientation of the [Print] dialog box displayed from the application, the setting in the [Print] dialog box takes precedence over the other for printing. Set the paper direction or orientation set in the [Print] dialog box to the paper direction of the document if necessary.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Page Attributes].



2. Click on the button for "Portrait" (left) or "Landscape" (right) of [Orientation].

MEMO

The default is "Portrait."

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To set the size of the output paper

Adobe PS3 compliant

Print various sizes of documents as shown below.

MEMO

May be different depending on the specification of each country.

Document size that can be selected
Statement
Letter
Legal
Tabloid
A3
A4
A5
A6
B4
B5
B6
F4
8K
16K
Statement (Wide)
Letter (Wide)
Tabloid (Wide)
A3 (Wide)
A4 (Wide)
A5 (Wide)
B4 (Wide)
B5 (Wide)
Letter Tabstock
A4 Tabstock
Custom

MEMO

When selecting [Custom], you can set and register a paper size.

Reference ▶▶ (p.350) To set a custom size paper

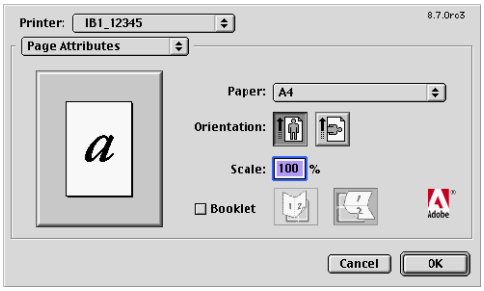
To set the size of the output paper (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

Limitation

Often a specific paper size cannot be selected due to other functions set. For details, refer to the explanation of each of the functions.

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Page Attributes].



2. Select the document size from the [Paper] column.

MEMO

The default is [Letter].(May be different depending on the specification of each country.)

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To set the type of manual-feed paper

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Set various types of paper sizes as the output paper as shown below.

Types of paper that can be selected.	
Plain Paper	
Thin Paper	This is set when printing a thin paper such as airmail letter paper.
Thick Paper	This is set when printing a thick paper such as a post card.
Tabbed Sheet	This is set when printing on index paper.
Trace	This is set when printing the Trace paper.
OHP (Transparency)	
OHP-Interleave (Blank)	An interleave paper is output each time an OHP paper is printed.
OHP-Interleave (Print)	An interleave paper is output each time an OHP paper is printed.
User defined type	This is set when printing the user specified paper set on the copier.

To set the type of manual-feed paper (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[OHP] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When any item other than [OFF] is selected for the [Print] - [Layout] - [Print on Both Sides].
- When any item other than [None] is selected for the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2) - [Fold, Stitch], [Stapling] or [Punch].
- When [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] is selected for the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2) - [Combination].

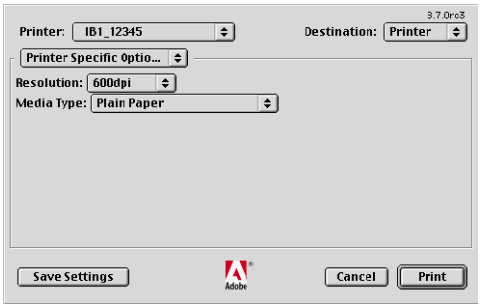
[OHP-Interleave (Blank)] and [OHP-Interleave (Print)] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [A5R(W)], [B5RW], [B6], [Statement R(W)] or [Custom] is selected for the [Page Setup] - [Paper].
- When any item other than [OFF] is selected for the [Print] - [Layout] - [Print on Both Sides].
- When any item other than [None] is selected for the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2) - [Collate], [Fold only], [Stapling], [Punch], [Front Cover], [Back Cover], [Pl-Tray (Front)] or [Pl-Tray (Back)].
- When [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] is selected for the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2) - [Combination].

[Trace] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When [A5R(W)], [B5RW], [B6], [Statement R(W)] or [Custom] is selected for the [Page Setup] - [Paper].
- When any item other than [OFF] is selected for the [Print] - [Layout] - [Print on Both Sides].
- When any item other than [None] is selected for the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2) - [Fold, Stitch], [Stapling] or [Punch].

[Tabbed Sheet] cannot be set in the following cases:
- When any item other than [A3], [A4(R)], [B4], [B5], [Letter (R)] or [Tabloid] is selected for the [Page Setup] - [Paper].
- When any item other than [OFF] is selected for the [Print] - [Layout] - [Print on Both Sides].
- When any item other than [None] is selected for the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2) - [Fold, Stitch], [Stapling] or [Punch].
- When [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] is selected for the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2) - [Combination].

To set the type of manual-feed paper (Continued)

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](1).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Media Type] box to select the paper type you want to use from the list.

MEMO

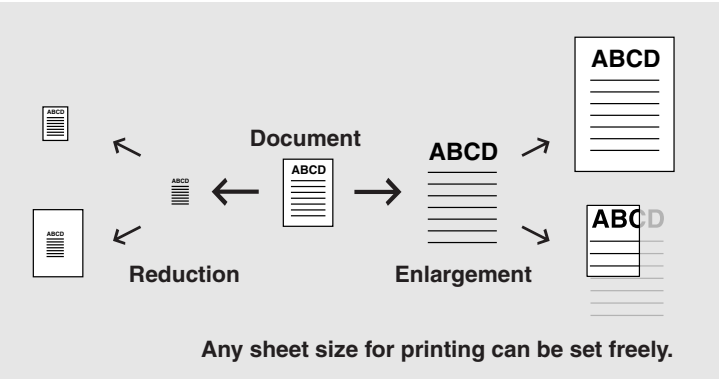
The default is "Plain Paper."

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Print by specifying the enlargement or reduction ratio in the range from 25% to 400%.



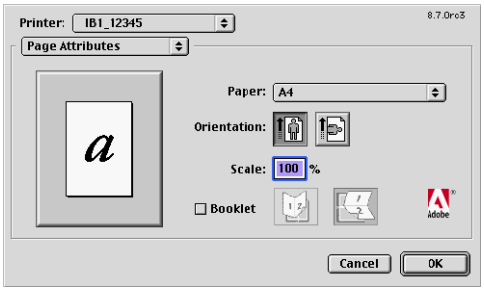
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

You cannot specify the enlargement or reduction ratio in a numerical value in the following cases:

- When the [Print] - [Layout] is set to any item other than [1].

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Page Attributes].



2. Specify a value in the range between [25] and [400] in the [Scale] box.

MEMO

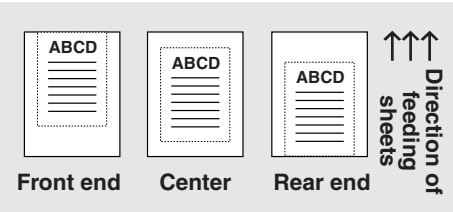
- The default is [100].
- The setting can be made in increment of 1%.
- It is possible to select a numeral in the range given in the [Number of copies] box and enter directly the number of copies to be printed in a lowercase numeral.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To set the printing position of the wide paper

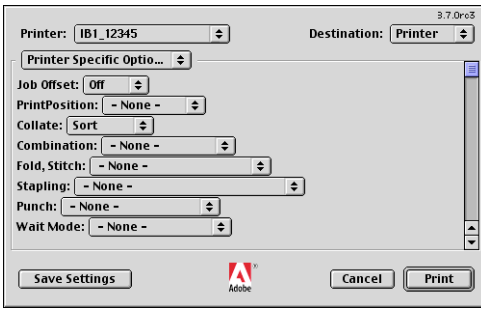
Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the printing position of the wide paper.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Print Position] box to select the printing position from the list.

Selections of [Left], [Middle] or [Right] are available.

MEMO

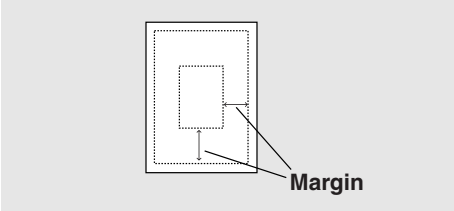
The default is [None].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set the margins

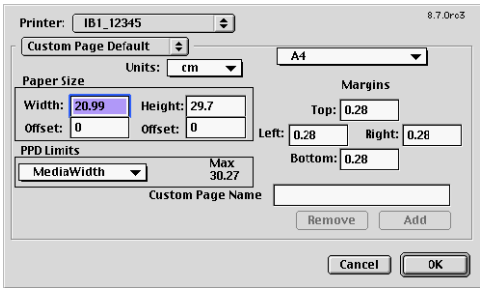
Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the margins of the output paper.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Custom Page Default].



2. Input a value for each margin in the [Top], [Bottom], [Left] and [Right] boxes in the [Margins] box at the right side of the dialog box.

MEMO

- The range of values that can be set as each margin is displayed by pressing the [▼] button under the [PPD Limits] at the left side of the dialog box
- The default is [0.28].
- The default unit is [cm]. You can change the unit at the [Units] box.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

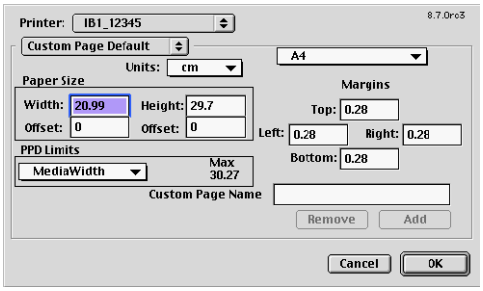
To set a custom size paper

Adobe PS3 compliant

Set a custom size paper.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Custom Page Default].



2. Enter a paper size in the [Width], [Height] boxes in the [Paper Size] box at the left side of the dialog box.

MEMO

- The range of values that can be set as each margin is displayed by pressing the [▼] button under the [PPD Limits] at the left side of the dialog box
- The default is [0.28].
- The default unit is [cm]. You can change the unit at the [Units] box.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

Once a paper is set in the [Custom Page Default] dialog box, you can select the paper as [Custom] from the [Paper] box in the [Page Attributes].

To set the paper tray

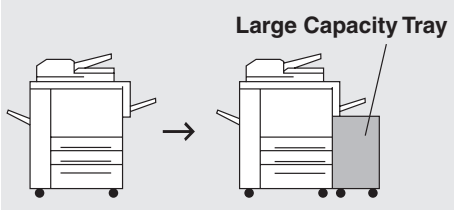
For the paper trays such as the Feed Tray and the eject tray, the following settings are available.

To set the Large Capacity Tray:

Adobe PS3

Set the printer driver to recognize an optional Large Capacity Tray for this printing system.

Reference (p.353) To set the Large Capacity Tray

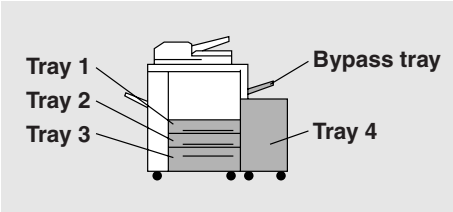


To set the Manual Feed Tray:

Adobe PS3

Select and set a Manual Feed Tray to be used from the list for this printing system.

Reference (p.354) To set the Manual Feed Tray

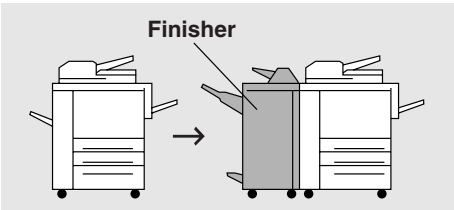


To set the Finisher:

Adobe PS3

Set the printer driver to recognize an optional Finisher for this printing system.

Reference (p.356) To set the Finisher



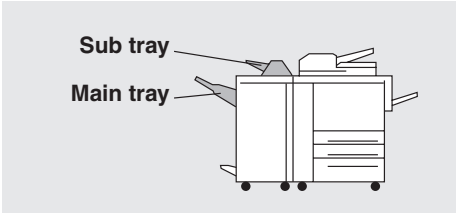
To set the paper tray (Continued)

To set the Output Tray:

Adobe PS3

Select and set an Finisher tray to be used from the list.

Reference ▶ (p.357) To set the Output tray

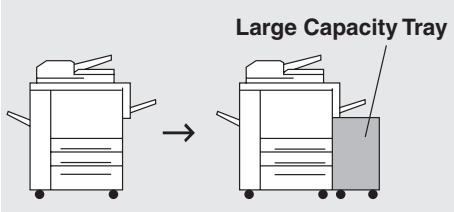


To set the Large Capacity Tray

Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the printer driver to recognize an optional Large Capacity Tray if it is installed in the copier.

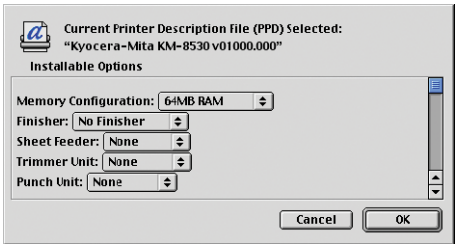
When the printer driver recognizes the Large Capacity Tray, it is possible to select [Tray 4].



Even if the copier is provided with a Large Capacity Tray, the printer driver will not recognize it if the Large Capacity Tray is not set on the computer.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Configure].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Installable Options] - [Large Capacity Tray] to select a Large Capacity Tray you want to use from the list.

When you do not know whether the optional Large Capacity Tray is LT-402 or LT-412, consult your system administrator.

MEMO

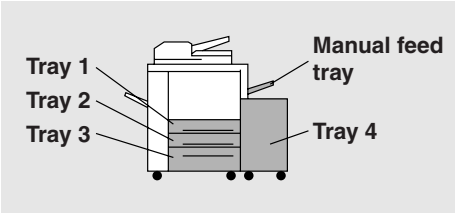
The default is [None]. When [None] is selected, it is not possible to use [Tray 4].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Configure].

To set the Manual Feed Tray

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Select and set a Manual Feed Tray to be used from the list.



Important

The paper sizes that can be used vary depending on each Feed Tray. Care should be taken when selecting a Feed Tray.

Feed Tray	paper size that can be used.
Tray 1 to Tray 3	8.5"x11", 5.5"x8.5", 8.5"x14", 11"x17", A3, A4, A5, B4, B5, B6, F4, 16K, 8K, 8.5"x11"W, 5.5"x8.5"W, 11"x17"W, A3W, A4W, A5W, B4W, B5W, Letter Tabstock, A4 Tabstock
Tray 4 (LT-402)	8.5"x11", A4, B5, F4, 8.5"x11"W, A4W, B5W, Letter Tabstock, A4 Tabstock
Tray 4 (LT-412)	8.5"x11", 5.5"x8.5", 8.5"x14", 11"x17", A3, A4, B4, F4, 8.5"x11"W, 11"x17"W, A4W, Letter Tabstock, A4 Tabstock
Manual Feed Bypass Tray	8.5"x11", 5.5"x8.5", 8.5"x14", 11"x17", A3, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, B6, F4, 16K, 8K, 8.5" x 11"W, 11"x17"W, A3W, A4W, A5W, B4W, B5W, Letter Tabstock, A4 Tabstock

MEMO

Available paper sizes may vary depending on models of machine.

To set the Manual Feed Tray (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

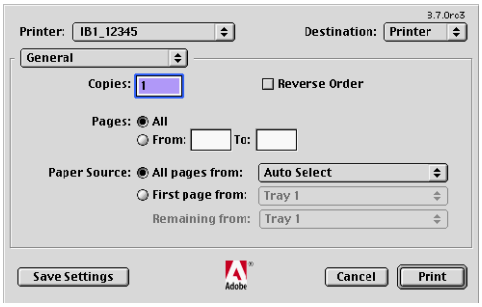
[Tray 4] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [Off] is selected for the [Configure] - [Large Capacity Tray].

Also, when setting a Feed Tray, take note of the following:

- When using [B6] or be sure to select [Manual Feed].
- When selecting [OHP -Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP -Interleave(Print)] for the [Media Type] in the [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (2), select a tray from among [Tray 1] / [Tray 2] / [Tray 3] / [Tray 4]. When selecting any other than the above, be sure to select [Manual Feed].

1. Open [Print] - [General].



2. Click the [All pages from] or [First page from] button in the [Paper Source] box.

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [All pages from] or [First page from] button to select a tray you want to use from the list.

MEMO

- The default is [Auto Select]. When [Auto Select] is set, a tray set with paper specified in [Property] of this printing system is automatically selected from the application.
- If [Tray 4] is not recognized as a Large Capacity Tray, it is not shown in the list.

Reference ▸▸ (p.353) To set the Large Capacity Tray

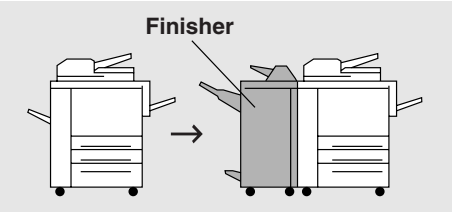
4. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set the Finisher

Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the printer driver to recognize an optional Finisher if it is installed in the copier.

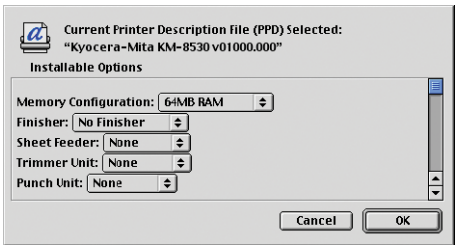
When the printer driver recognizes the Finisher, it is possible to select [Main tray] or [Sub tray] as [eject tray].



Even if an ejector unit (finisher) is installed in the copier, the printer driver will not recognize it if the unit is not set on the computer.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Configure].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Installable Options] - [Finisher] box to select a finisher you want to use from the list.

When you do not know whether the optional Finisher is [DF-630] or [DF-635], consult your system administrator.

MEMO

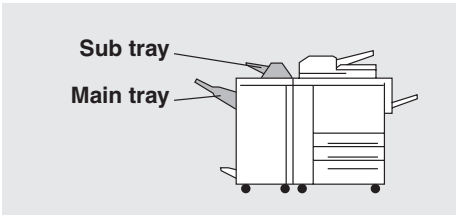
- The default is [None]. When [None] is selected, it is not possible to set the eject tray.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Configure].

To set the Output tray

Adobe PS3 compliant

Set [Main Tray] or [Sub Tray] as [Finisher tray] if the Finisher is recognized by the printer driver.



To set the Output tray (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

The output tray cannot be set in the following case:

- When [No Finisher] is selected for [Finisher] in the [Installable Options] field of the [Configure].

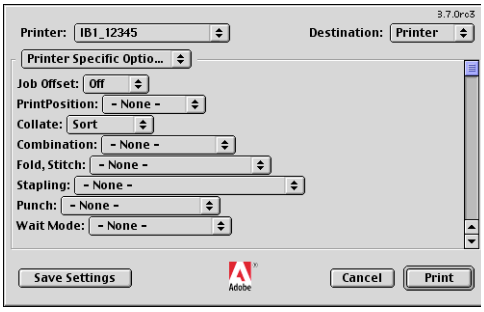
[Main tray] cannot be set in the following case:

- When [Fold only], [Fold, Stitch], [Fold, Trim] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected for [Fold, Stitch] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

[Sub Tray] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When any item other than [Off] is selected for the [Sorting], [Staple], [Punch], [Cover seat (front) or [PI-Tray (Back)] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Off] is selected for the [Fold, Stitch] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Output Bin] box to select the output tray from the list.

MEMO

You cannot select the [Output Bin] if an Finisher is not recognized.

Reference ▶ (p.356) To set the Finisher

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print multiple copies

If you want to print multiple copies, you can select the following settings.

To set the number of copies to be printed:

Adobe PS3

Set the number of copies to be printed from the [Print].

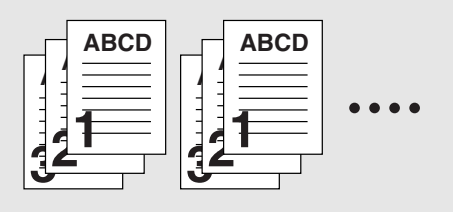
Reference (p.361) To set the number of copies to be printed

To print by sets (Sort):

Adobe PS3

Print the first one set of pages in one lot, and then the second set of pages, the third set of pages, ..., when printing multiple sets of pages.

Reference (p.362) To print by sets

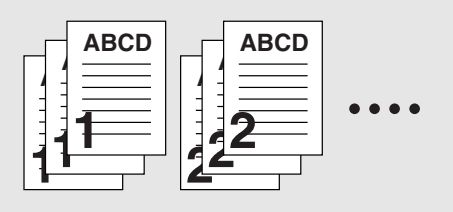


To print page by page collectively (Group):

Adobe PS3

Print the required number of the first page, and then the required umber of the second pages, the third page, ... collectively when printing multiple sets of pages.

Reference (p.363) To print page by page collectively



To print multiple copies (Continued)

To output offset copies (Job Offset):

Adobe PS3

Output groups of copies shifted to opposite sides.

Reference ▸▸ (p.364) To output offset copies

Offset Copies

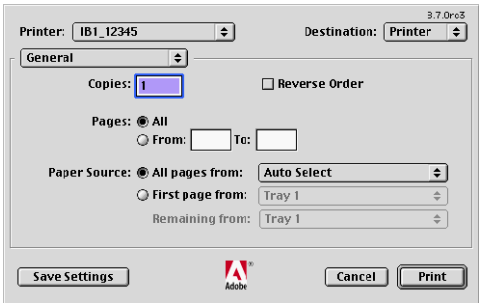
To set the number of copies to be printed

Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the number of copies to be printed from the [Print].

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [General].



2. Input the number of copies to be printed in the [Copies] box.

MEMO

The default is [1].

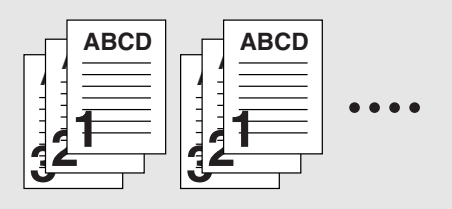
3. Click the [Print] button to print now.

Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print by sets

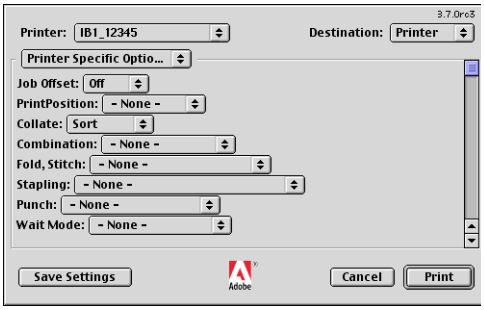
Adobe PS3 compliant (Sort)

Print the first one set of copies in one lot, and then the second set of copies, the third set of copies, ..., when printing multiple sets of pages.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Collate] box to select the [Sort] from the list.

MEMO

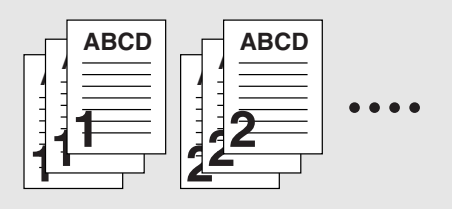
The default is [Sort].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print page by page collectively

Adobe PS3 compliant (Group)

It is possible to print the required number of the first page, and then the required number of the second pages, the third page, ... collectively when printing multiple sets of pages.



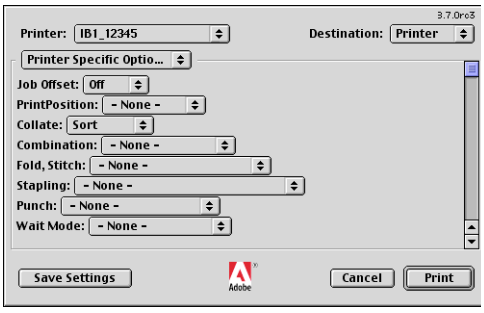
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Group] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected for the [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When any item other than [Off] is selected for [Print on Both Sides] in the [Print] - [Layout].
- [Fold only], [Fold, Stitch], [Fold, Trim] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected for [Fold, Stitch] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When any item other than [Off] is selected for [Combination], [Stapling], [Wait Mode], [Front Cover], [Back Cover] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Collate] box to select the [Group] from the list.

MEMO

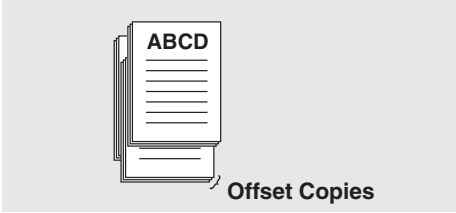
The default is [Sort].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To output offset copies

Adobe PS3 compliant (Job Offset)

Output with copies shifted in a unit of the number of copies or page group to this side and the opposite side at the eject position when printing multiple sets of copies.



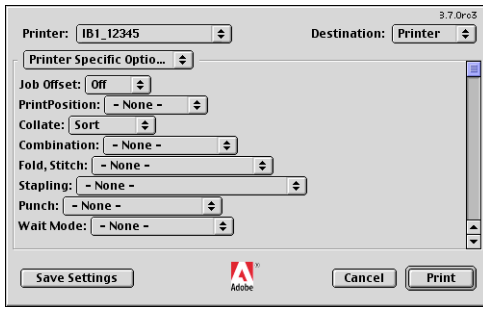
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Offset] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [No Finisher] is selected for [Finisher] in the [Installable Options] field of the [Configure].
- When [B6], or [Custom] is selected for [Paper] in the [Page Setup].
- When [Sub Tray] is selected for [Output Bin] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Fold only], [Fold, Stitch], [Fold, Trim] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected for [Fold, Stitch] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Job Offset] box to select the [On] from the list.

MEMO

The default is [None].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print multiple pages

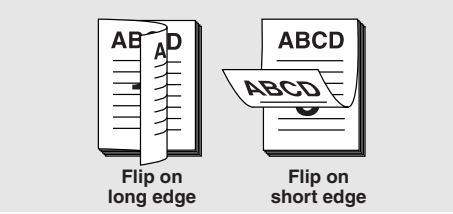
You can set as shown below when printing multiple pages document.

To set to print on both sides:

Adobe PS3

Print continuous multiple pages on both front and back sides.

Reference (p.367) To set to print on both sides

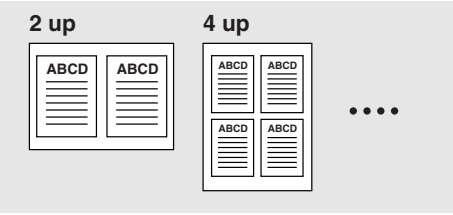


To print the document of multiple pages on a single page (Pages per sheet):

Adobe PS3

Allocate a document of 2 pages, 4 pages, 6 pages, 9 pages or 16 pages onto a single page for printing.

Reference (p.368) To print the document of multiple pages on a single page



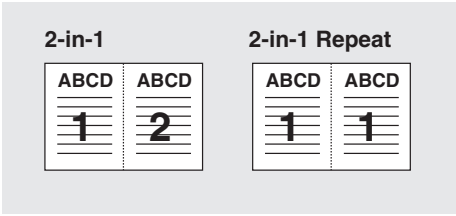
To print multiple pages (Continued)

To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big (2-in-1 / 2-in-1 Repeat):

Adobe PS3

Print a 2 pages document on a single piece of paper twice as big as the original documents.

Reference ▶▶ (p.370) To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big

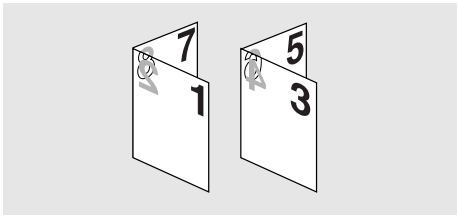


To print a twofold booklet (Booklet):

Adobe PS3

Print output paper so that they become a book when they are folded in two.

Reference ▶▶ (p.372) To print a twofold booklet

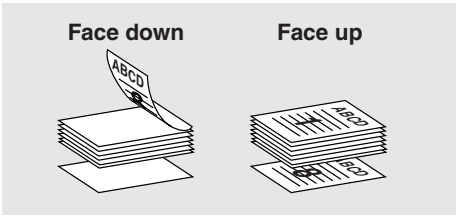


To print pages in reverse order (FaceUp):

Adobe PS3

Output paper in reverse order when printing multiple pages.

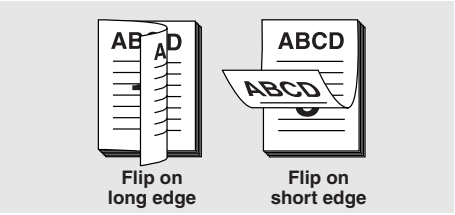
Reference ▶▶ (p.374) To print pages in reverse order



To set to print on both sides

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Print continuous multiple pages on both front and back sides. [Flip on long edge] and [Flip on short edge] are available.



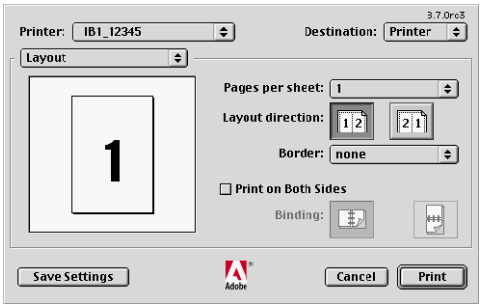
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Print on Both Sides] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [B6], [Post card] or [Custom] is selected for [Paper] in the [Page Setup...].
- When [OHP], [OHP-Interleave(Blank)], [OHP-Interleave(Print)], [Trace] or [
- Sheet] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] is selected for [Combination] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Layout].



2. Turn on the [Print on Both Sides] check box.

3. Select [Flip on long edge] (the left button) or [Flip on short edge] (the right button) from the [Binding] box.

MEMO

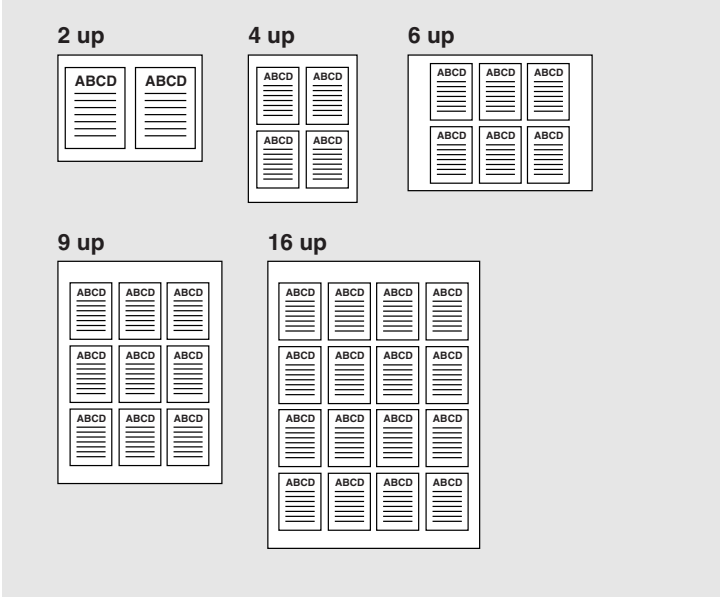
The default is [Flip on long side] (the left button).

4. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print the document of multiple pages on a single page

Adobe PS3 compliant (Pages per sheet)

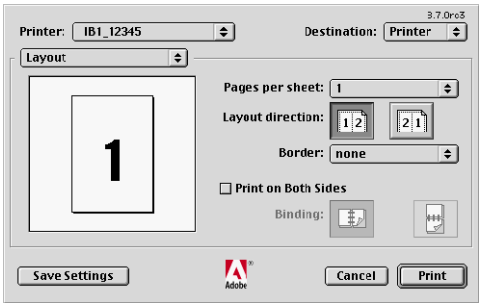
Allocate documents of 2 pages, 4 pages, 6 pages, 9 pages or 16 pages onto a single page for printing. The allocated pages are automatically reduced for printing based on the printable region of the output paper.



To print the document of multiple pages on a single page (Continued)

● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Layout].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Pages per sheet] to select the number of pages to be allocated from the list.

The selection of [1], [2], [4], [6], [9] or [16] is available.
When any item other than [1] is selected, it becomes possible to use the [Layout direction] box.

MEMO

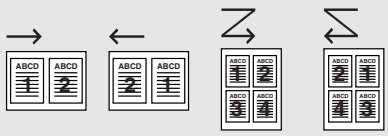
- The default is [1].
- When the [Print on Both Sides] check box is turned on, the [Print on Both Sides] is available.

Reference (p.367)

3. Select the left or right button from the [Layout direction].

The sequence of pages is laid out from left to right when the left button is selected, and is laid out from right to left when the right button is selected.

The sequence of pages is laid out as shown below.



MEMO

The default is the left button.

4. Click the [▼] button beside the [Border] to specify a page border from the list if you want to print the boundary between pages allocated.

MEMO

The default is [None].

5. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

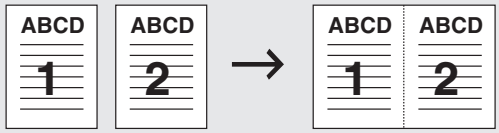
To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big

Adobe PS3 **compliant (2-in-1 / 2-in-1 Repeat)**

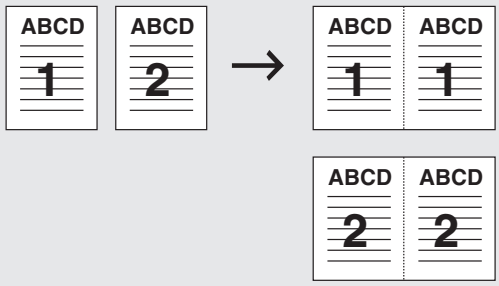
Print a document of 2 pages onto a single paper twice as big as the original documents.

Example: 2 A4 size papers are aggregated on 1 A3 size paper.

2-in-1



2-in-1 Repeat



To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big (Continued)

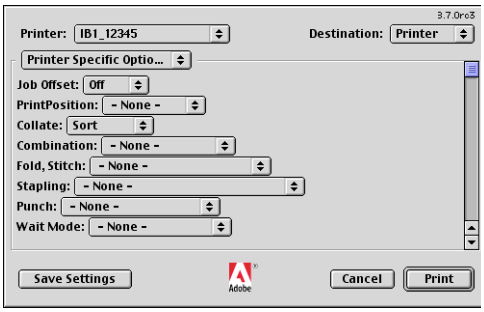
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[2-in-1] and [2-in-1 Repeat] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [A3 (W)], [B4 (W), [B6], [Tabloid (W)], [Legal] or [Custom] is selected for [Paper] in the [Page Setup].
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] is selected for [Combination] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When any item other than [Off] is selected for [Front Cover], [Back Cover], [PI-Tray (Front)] or [PI-Tray (Back)] in the [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Combination] box to select [2-in-1] or [2-in-1 Repeat] from the list.

For [2-in-1], continuous pages are aggregated on a single paper for printing.
For [2-in-1 Repeat], two same pages are aggregated on a single paper for printing.

MEMO

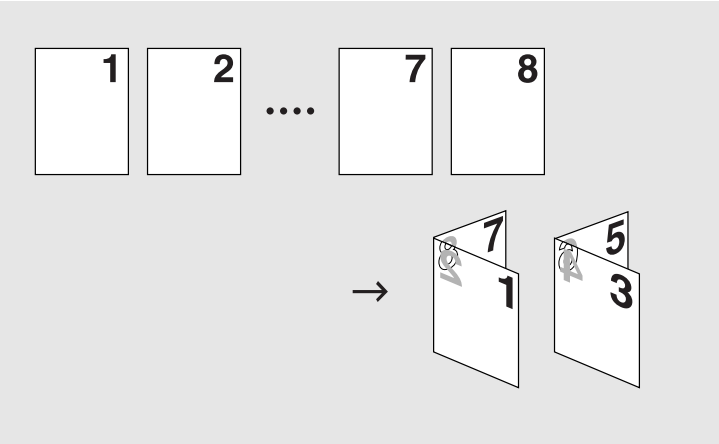
The default is [None].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print a twofold booklet

Adobe PS3 **compliant (Booklet)**

Print output paper so that they become a book by folding them in two.



To print a twofold booklet (Continued)

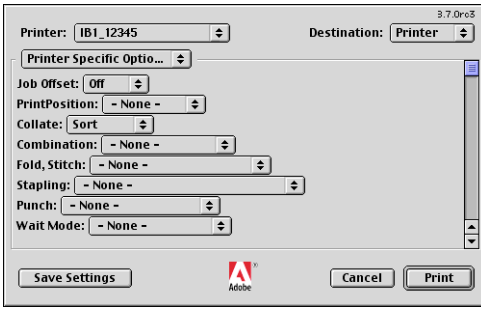
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Booklet] / [Booklet-Right] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [A3 (W)], [B4 (W)], [B6], [Tabloid (W)], [Legal] or [Custom] is selected for [Paper] in the [Page Setup].
- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When any other item than [OFF] is selected for [Print on Both Sides] in the [Print Setup] - [Layout].
- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [2-in-1] or [2-in-1 Repeat] is selected for [Combination] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When any other item than [Off] is selected for [Combination], [Back Cover] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Combination] box to select [Booklet] or [Booklet-Right] from the list.

MEMO

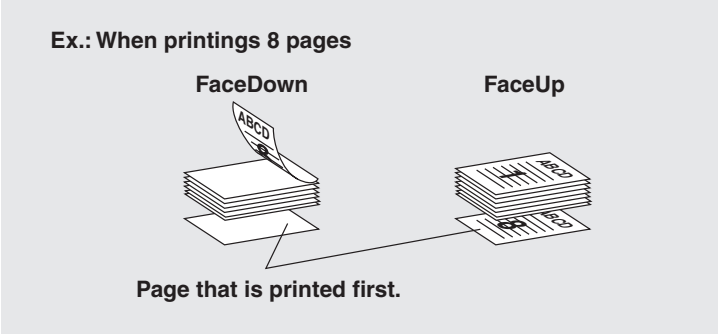
The default is [None].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print pages in reverse order

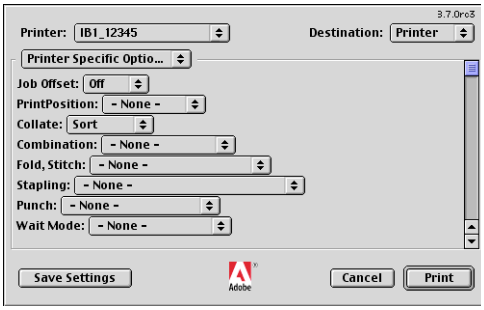
Adobe PS3 compliant (FaceUp)

Eject output papers in reverse order when printing multiple pages.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Output Order] to select [FaceUp] from the list.

For the [Output Order] box, the selection of [FaceUp] or [FaceDown] is available.

When [FaceUp] is selected, an output paper is ejected with its front facing up.

When [FaceDown] is selected, an output paper is ejected with its front facing down.

MEMO

The default is [FaceDown].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set the Front Cover / Back Cover / Thick Cover

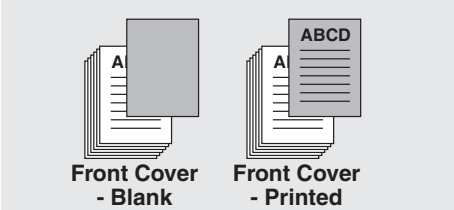
Set to print not only pages but also a Front Cover, Back Cover, or thick cover to attach to printed pages.

To set a Front Cover:

Adobe PS3

Set a Front Cover for which the paper (e.g. a color paper) is different than the text papers.

Reference (p.376) To set a Front Cover

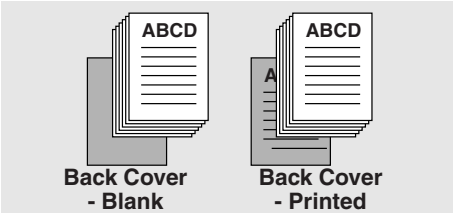


To set a Back Cover:

Adobe PS3

Set a Back Cover for which the paper (e.g. a color paper) is different than the text papers.

Reference (p.378) To set a Back Cover

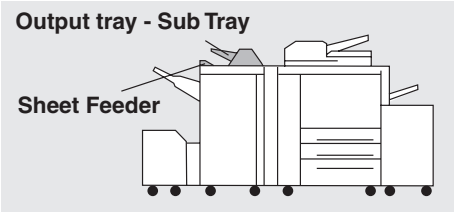


To set a Thick Cover:

Adobe PS3

Output a thick paper as a cover, which is different than the output papers set.

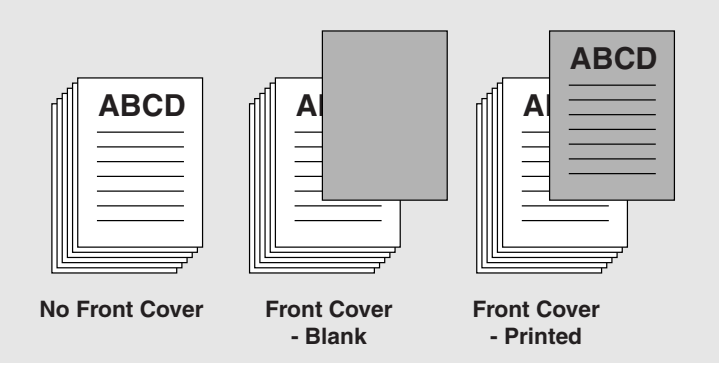
Reference (p.380) To set a Thick Cover



To set a Front Cover

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Set a Front Cover for which paper (a color paper) is different than the text papers.



To set a Front Cover (Continued)

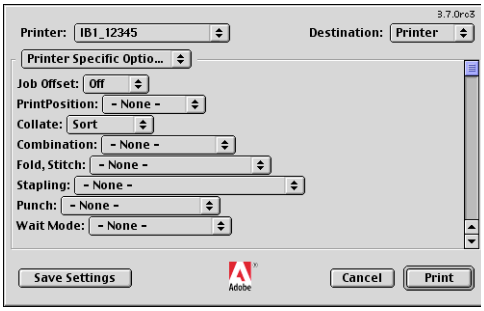
● **Operating procedures of** Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Front Cover] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [2-in-1] or [2-in-1 Repeat] is selected for [Combination] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Front Cover] to select [Blank] or [Printed] from the list.

When [Blank] is selected, nothing is printed on the Front Cover.

When [Printed] is selected, the Front Cover is printed.

MEMO

The default is [None].

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Front Cover Tray] box to select a tray to feed a paper for the Front Cover from the list.

MEMO

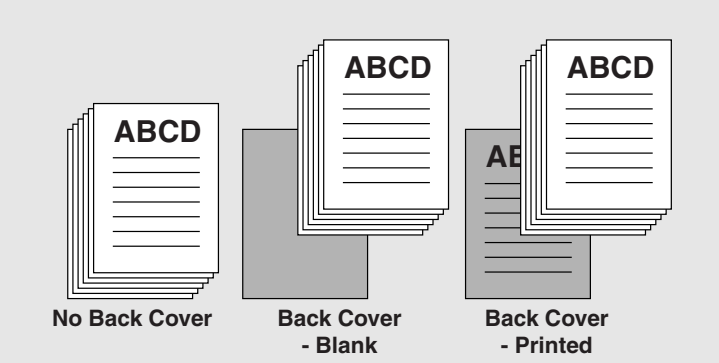
The default is [None].

4. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set a Back Cover

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Set a Back Cover for which the paper (e.g. a color paper) is different than the text papers.



To set a Back Cover (Continued)

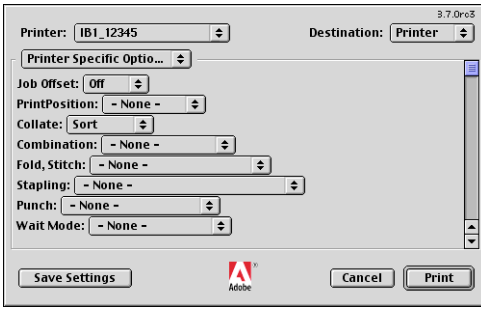
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Back Cover] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [2-in-1] or [2-in-1 Repeat] is selected for [Combination] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Back Cover] to select [Blank] or [Printed] from the list.

When [Blank] is selected, nothing is printed on the Back Cover.

When [Printed] is selected, the Back Cover is printed.

MEMO

The default is [None].

3. Click the [▼] button beside the [Back Cover Tray] box to select a tray to feed a paper for the Back Cover from the list.

MEMO

The default is [None].

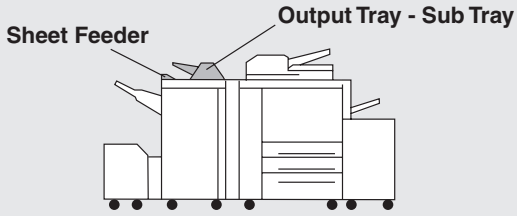
4. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set a Thick Cover

Adobe PS3 compliant

Output thick paper as a cover, which is different from the output paper set.

To set a cover, options have to be selected as shown in the illustration below.



The copier shown in the illustration has been provided with all options.

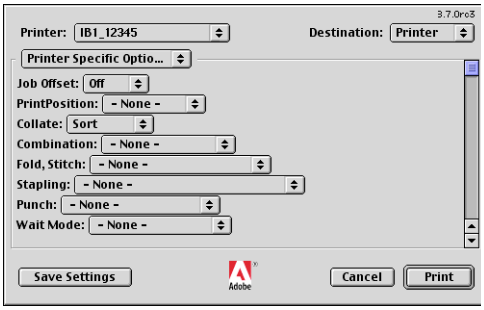
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[PI-Tray (Front)] and [PI-Tray (Back)] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When [Sub Tray] is not selected for [Output Bin] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [PI-Tray (Front)] box when setting a Front Cover, and the [PI-Tray (Back)] box when setting a Back Cover to select [On] from the list.

Same procedure is applicable on the Front Cover and the Back Cover.

MEMO

- The default is [None].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set for finishing

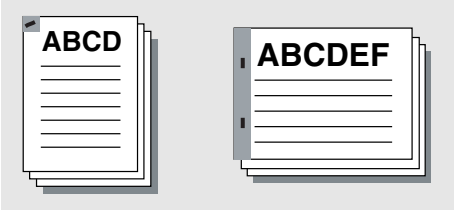
You can use various functions such as stapling, punching, binding and folding for bookbinding and finishing.

To set stapling:

Adobe PS3

Staple output paper.

Reference (p.383) To set stapling

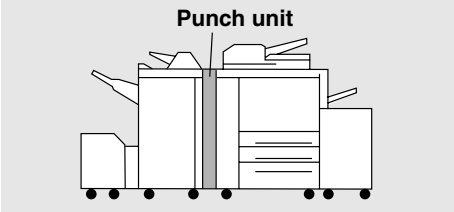


To set the Punch Unit:

Adobe PS3

Set the printer driver to recognize an optional punch unit.

Reference (p.386) To set the Punch Unit

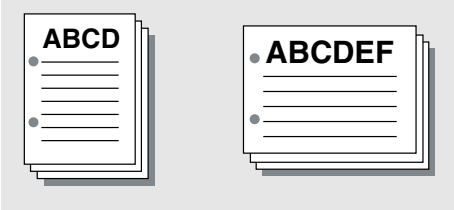


To set punching:

Adobe PS3

Process output paper with double punching.

Reference (p.387) To set punching



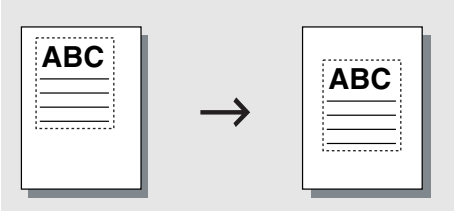
To set for finishing (Continued)

To adjust a printing position inside the paper (Image Shift):

Adobe PS3

Adjust the position of printing to the output paper.

Reference ▸ (p.389) To adjust a printing position inside the paper



To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit):

Adobe PS3

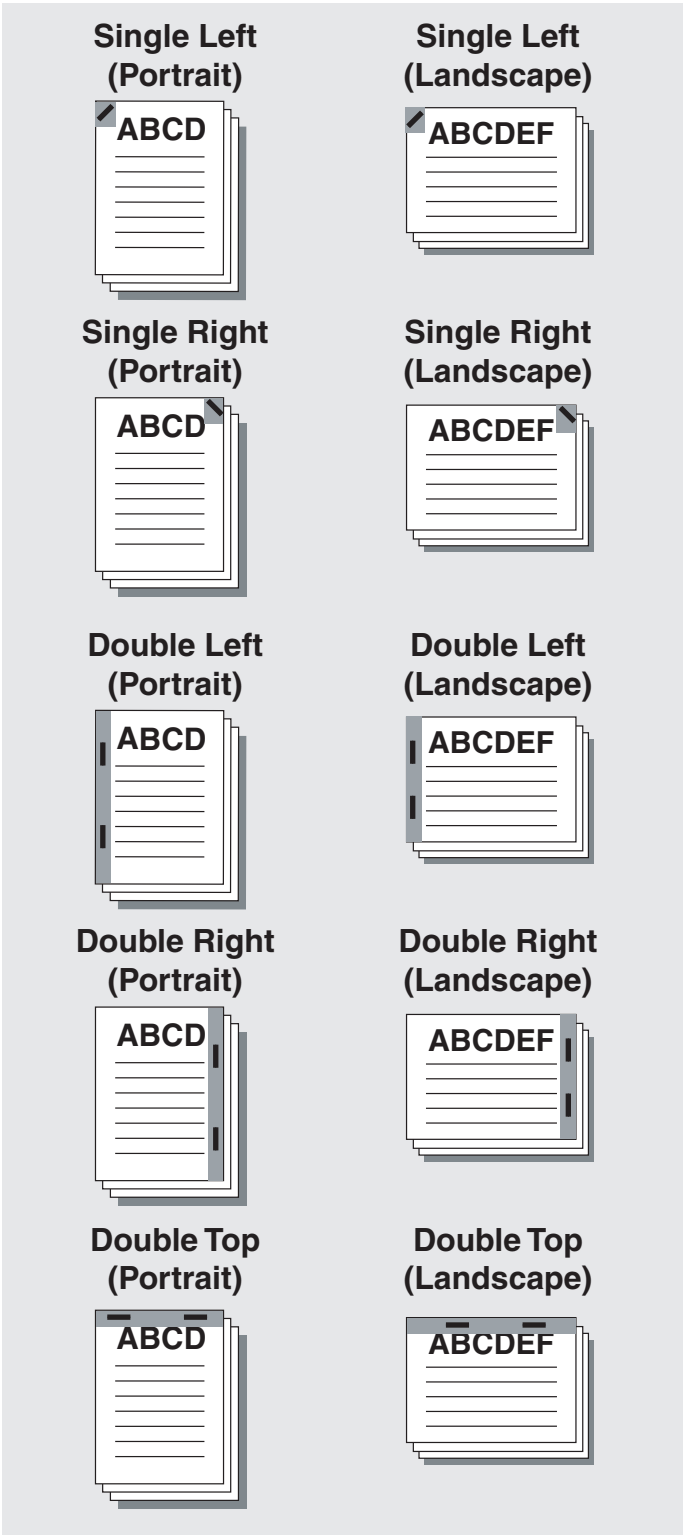
Fold an output paper at the center, bind it at the center, fold it in a Z-shape, cut it or fold it into three equal for output.

Reference ▸ (p.390) To set center binding, folding and cutting (Trimmer Unit)

To set stapling

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Staple output paper. The number of staples and their positions can be set as shown below.



To set stapling (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

When used in the combination of [Staple] and [Punch], the combinations listed below are not allowed:

Position of stapling	Position of punching		
	Left	Top	Right
Single	O	O	X
SingleRight	X	O	O
Double Side	O	X	X
Double SideRight	X	X	O
Double Top	X	O	X

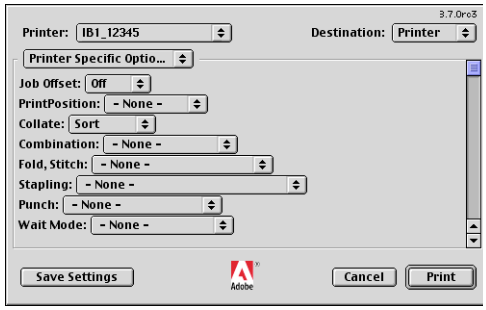
[Stapling] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [No Finisher] is selected for [Finisher] in the [Installable Options] field of the [Configure].
- When the [A5R (W)], [B5R], [B6], [Statement R(W)] or [Custom] is selected for [Paper] in the [Page Setup].
- When [OHP], [OHP-Interleave(Blank)], [OHP-Interleave(Print)], [Trance] or [Tabbed Sheet] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When [Sub tray] is selected for [Output Bin] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Fold only], [Fold, Stitch], [Fold, Trim] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected for [Fold, Stitch] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Booklet], or [Booklet-Right] is selected for [Combination] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

MEMO

For detailed information on stapling and punching, refer to the instruction manual of the copier.

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



To set stapling (Continued)

2. **Click the [▼] button beside the [Stapling] to select the number of stapling and their positions from the list.**

MEMO

The default is [None].

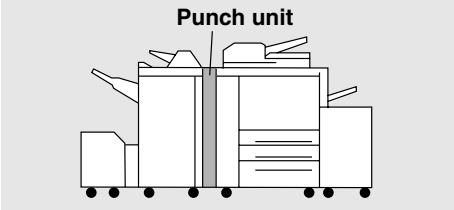
3. **Click the [Print] button to print now.**
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set the Punch Unit

Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the copier to recognize an optional punch unit if it is installed on the copier.

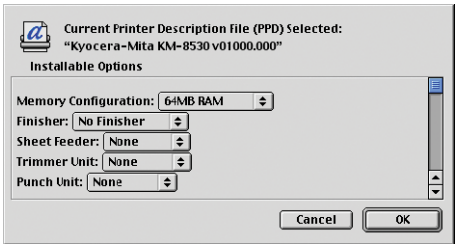
When the printer driver recognizes a punch unit [PU-108], the output paper can be processed with double punching. Also, when the printer driver recognizes a punch unit [PZ-108], the output paper becomes possible to be folded in a Z-form.



Even if a punch unit is installed on the copier, the printer driver will not recognize the unit if an Finisher is not set on the printer driver.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Configure].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Punch Unit] in the [Installable Options] dialog box to select the punch unit you want to use from the list.

When the copier is provided with an optional punch unit, select either [PU-108] or [PZ-108].

When the copier is not provided with an optional Finisher, select [None].

MEMO

- The default is "None". If "None" is selected, you cannot set the punch unit
- When you do not know whether the optional punch unit is PU-108 or PZ-108, consult your system administrator.

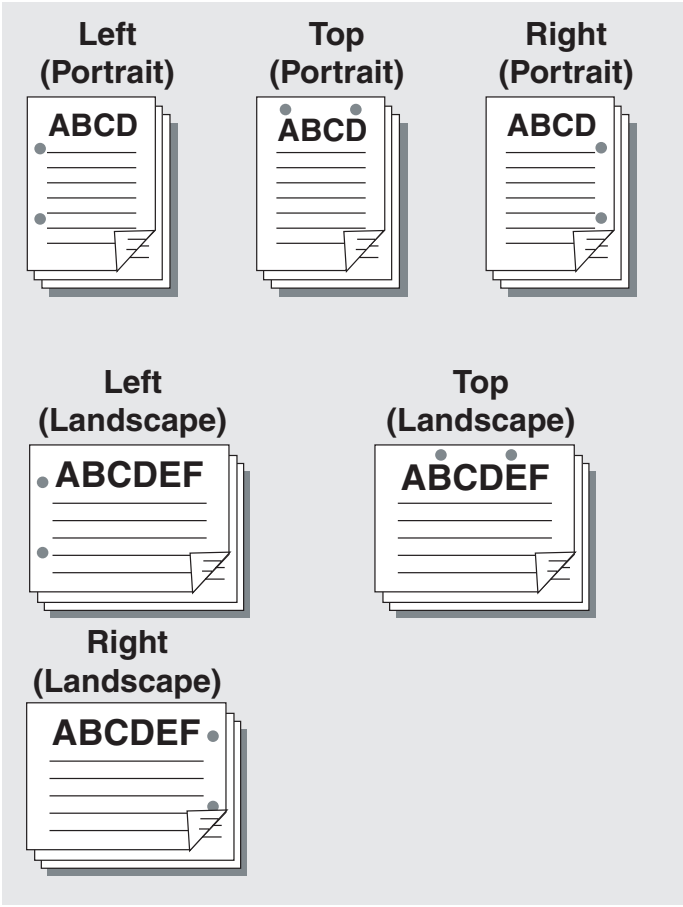
3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Configure].

To set punching

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Set punch holes on the output paper in advance.

Punch holes can be set as shown below.



To set punching (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

When used in the combination of [Stapling] and [Punch], the combinations listed below are not allowed:

Position of stapling	Position of punching		
	Left	Top	Right
Single	O	O	X
SingleRight	X	O	O
Double Side	O	X	X
Double SideRight	X	X	O
Double Top	X	O	X

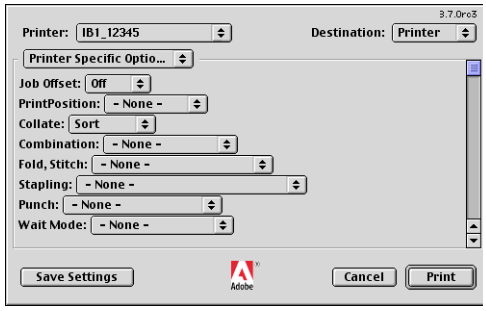
[Punch] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [None] is selected for [Punch Unit] in the [Installable Options] field of the [Configure].
- When the [B6], [Wide paper (W)] or [Custom] is selected for [Paper] in the [Page Setup].
- When [OHP], [OHP-Interleave(Blank)], [OHP-Interleave(Print)], [Trace] or [Tabbed Sheet] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).
- When [Sub Tray] is selected for [Output Bin] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Fold only], [Fold, Stitch], [Fold, Trim] or [Fold, Stitch, Trim] is selected for [Fold, Stitch] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Booklet], or [Booklet-Right] is selected for [Combination] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

MEMO

For detailed information on stapling and punching, refer to the instruction manual of the copier.

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Punch] box to select the punching positions from the list.

MEMO

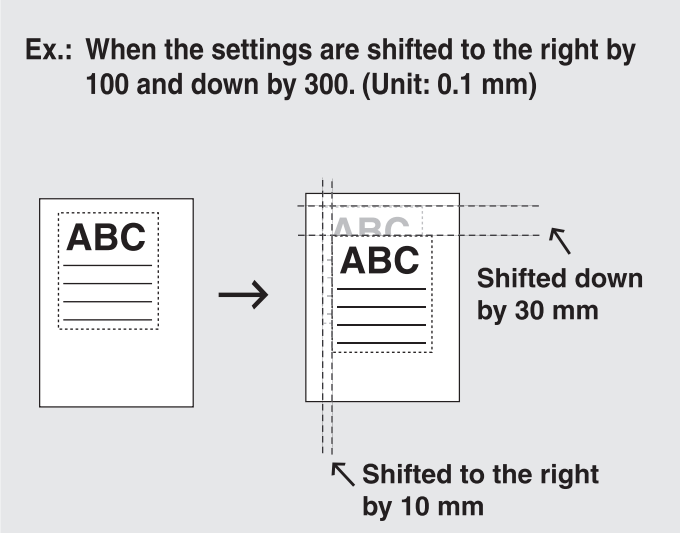
The default is [Off].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To adjust a printing position inside the paper

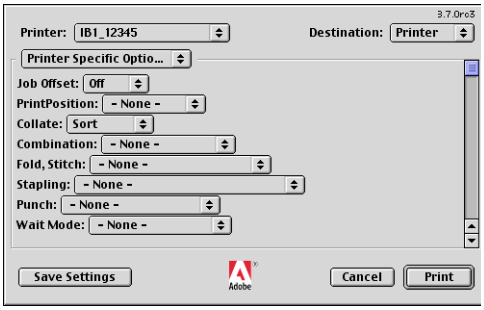
Adobe PS3 compliant (Image Shift)

Adjust the details of the printing position to the output paper.


Ex.: When the settings are shifted to the right by 100 and down by 300. (Unit: 0.1 mm)
ABC
ABC
Shifted down by 30 mm
Shifted to the right by 10 mm

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Image Shift] to select [ON] from the list.

When [ON] is selected, the prints are made at the position set on the control panel of the copier.

MEMO

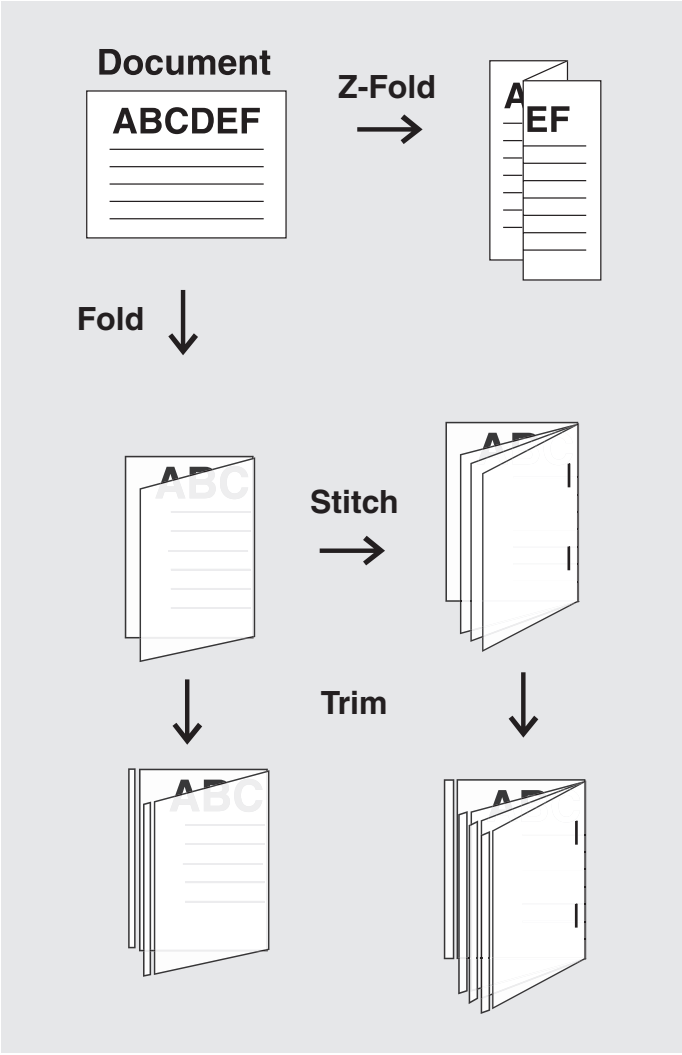
The default is [Off].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set center binding, folding and cutting (Trimmer Unit)

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Fold an output paper at the center, bind it at the center, fold it in a Z-shape, cut it or fold it into three equal for output.



To set center binding, folding and cutting (Trimmer Unit) (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Fold, Stitch] and [Fold, Stitch, Trim] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [No Finisher] is selected for [Finisher] in the [Installable Options] field of the [Configure].
- When [OHP], [OHP-Interleave(Blank)], [OHP-Interleave(Print)], [Trace] or [Tabbed Sheet] is selected for [Media Type] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).

[Fold, Stitch], [Fold only], [Fold, Trim] and [Fold, Stitch, Trim] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When the [B6], [Wide paper (W)] or [Custom] is selected for [Paper] in the [Page Setup].
- When [-Default-] or [Sub Tray] is selected for [Output Bin] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].
- When any item other than [Off] is selected for the [Offset], [Stapling], [Punch] or [PI-Tray (Back)] in the [Back Cover].

[Fold, Trim] and [Fold, Stitch, Trim] cannot be set in the following case:

- When [Off] is selected for [Trimmer Unit] in the [Installable Options] field of the [Configure].

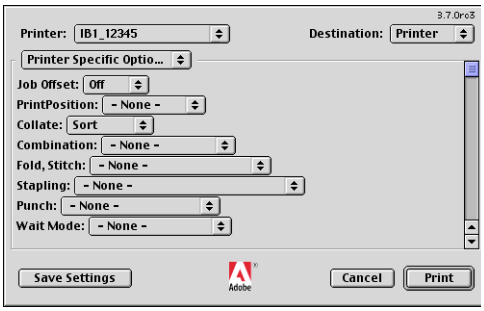
[Z-fold (A3, B4, 11 x 17.8k)] and [Z-fold (8.5 x 14)] cannot be set in the following case:

- When [Sub Tray] is selected for [Output Bin] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

MEMO

- You can select "On" for [Trimmer Unit] only if the trimmer unit is installed on the copier.

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Fold, Stitch] to select binding / cutting you want to use from the list.

MEMO

The default is [Off].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set a Watermark

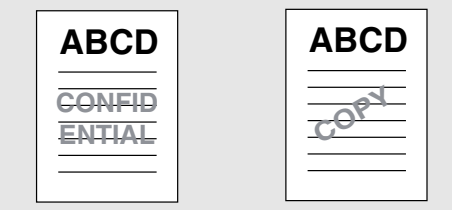
A watermark or a transparent character can be set and printed on the output paper.

To print a Watermark:

Adobe PS3

Set a transparent character and print it on the output paper.

Reference (p.393) To print a Watermark

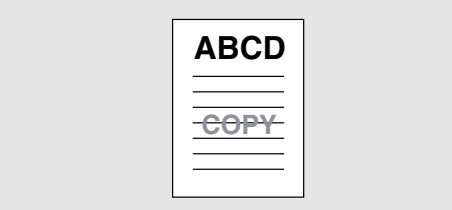


To create a new Watermark:

Adobe PS3

Create a new transparent character printed on the output paper.

Reference (p.395) To create a new Watermark

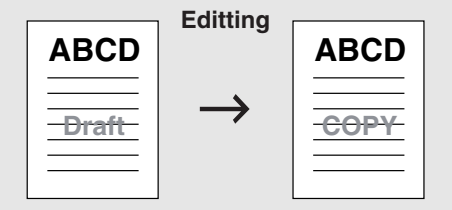


To change a Watermark:

Adobe PS3

Edit and change a registered transparent character printed on the output paper.

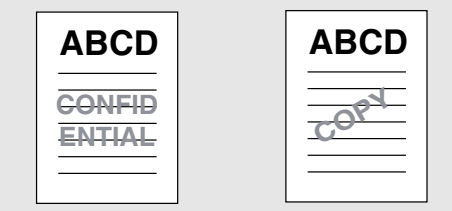
Reference (p.397) To change a Watermark



To print a Watermark

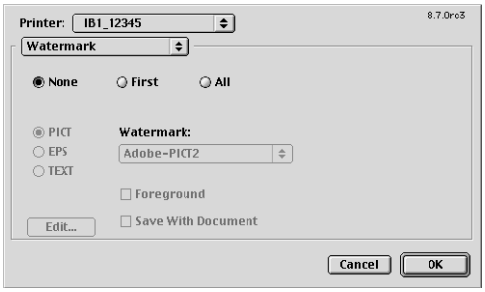
Adobe PS3 compliant (Watermark)

Set a transparent character and print it on the output paper.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Watermark].



2. When printing a watermark on the first page only, click on the [First] button.

When printing a watermark on every page, click on the [All] button.

MEMO

The default is [None].

3. Select [PICT], [EPS], or [TEXT] as the file format for a watermark.

MEMO

The default is [PICT].

4. Select a watermark to be used from the [Watermark] field, five Watermark have been registered in advance.

Selecting [PICT] at step 3, you can select a watermark, the name of [Adobe-PICT2] or [Confidential.pict].

Selecting [EPS] at step 3, you can select a watermark, the name of [Adobe.B&W.eps] or [Adobe.color.eps].

Selecting [TEXT] at step 3, you can select a watermark, the name of [Draft] or created watermarks.

MEMO

You can create and register a new item in [TEXT].

Reference ▶▶ (p.395) To create a new Watermark

5. Turn on the [Foreground] check box if you want to print the watermark on the foreground of the printing.

Turning on the [Foreground] check box, prints the watermark on the foreground of the printing.

Turning off the [Foreground] check box, prints the watermark on the background of the printing.

To print a Watermark (Continued)

6. Turn on the [Save With Document] check box if you want to save the watermark with the printing document.

Turning on the [Save With Document] check box, you can print the watermark under the same settings at the next time you print the document.

7. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

8. Execute printing from an application.

9. When the use of the watermark is discontinued after printing, conduct operations on and after Step 10.

If you want to apply the watermark at the next printing, the operations after Step 10 are not required.

10. Open [Page Setup] - [Watermark].

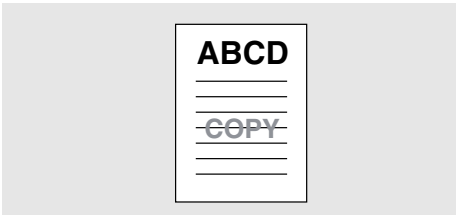
11. Click on the [None] button.

12. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To create a new Watermark

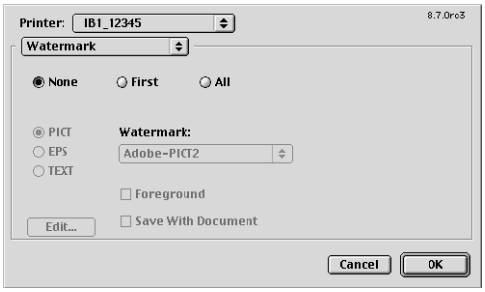
Adobe PS3 compliant (Watermark)

Create a new Watermark to be printed on the output paper.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Watermark].



2. Click on the [First] or [All] button.

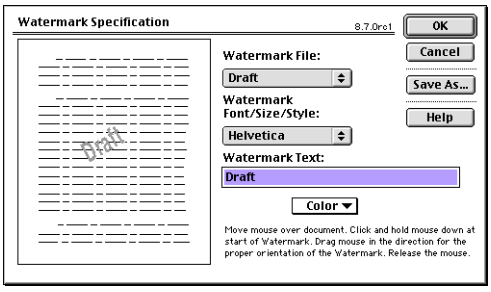
3. Turn on the [TEXT] radio button as the file format for the new transparent character (watermark).

MEMO

The default is [PICT].

4. Click the [Edit] button.

The [Watermark Specification] dialog box will appear.



5. Enter a character string to be used as the new watermark in the [Watermark Text] box.

6. Click the [▼] box to select the color for the watermark from the color palette.

To create a new Watermark (Continued)

7. Click the [▲] and [▼] button beside the [Watermark Font/Size/Style] box to select the font, size, and style for the watermark from the list.

MEMO

The default is [Helvetica].

8. Drag the character string on the preview screen at the left side of the dialog box to set the location and angle of the watermark.

9. Confirm a newly created watermark on the preview display.

10. Click the [Save As] button.

A dialog box in which you can set the name of the new watermark will appear.

11. Input the name of the new watermark in the box.

12. Click the [OK] button.

The dialog box for setting the name of the new watermark disappear and the display returns to the [Watermark Specification] window.

13. Click the [OK] button.

The [Watermark Specification] dialog box is closed and the display returns to the [Page Setup].

MEMO

The newly created watermark appears on the [Watermark].

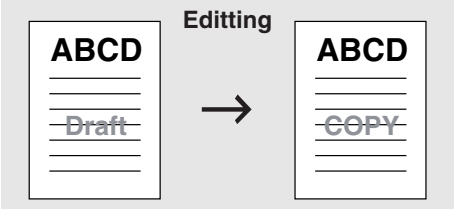
14. Click on the [None] button.

15. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To change a Watermark

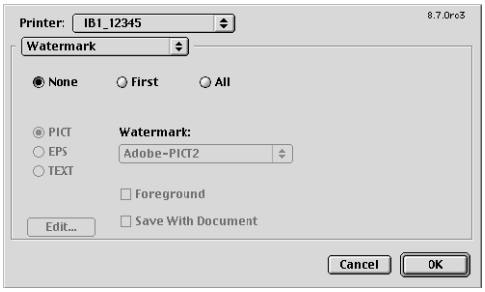
Adobe PS3 compliant (Watermark)

Edit and change a registered transparent character to be printed on the output paper.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [Watermark].



2. Click on the [First] or [All] button.

3. Click on the [TEXT] button as the file format for a watermark.

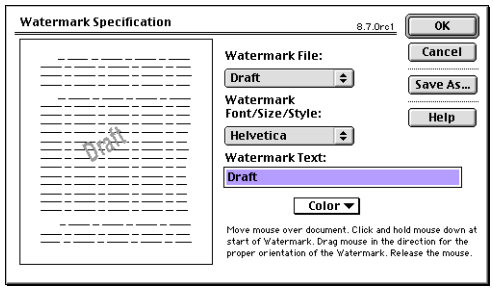
MEMO

The default is [PICT].

4. Select the watermark you want to edit from the [Watermark].

5. Click the [Edit] button.

The [Watermark Specification] dialog box will appear.



6. Enter a character string to be changed in the [Watermark Text] box to change the character string of a watermark.

7. Click the [▼] box to select the color for the watermark from the color palette if you want to change it.

To change a Watermark (Continued)

8. **Click the [▲] and [▼] button beside the [Watermark Font/Size/Style] box to select the font, size, and style for the watermark from the list if you want to change them.**

9. **Drag the character string on the preview screen at the left side of the dialog box to set the location and angle of the watermark if you want to change them.**

MEMO

The default is [Helvetica].

10. **Confirm the edited watermark on the preview display.**

11. **Click the [OK] button.**

The [Watermark Specification] dialog box is closed and the display returns to the [Page Setup].

12. **Turn on the radio button of [None].**

13. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].**

To set an image and shade

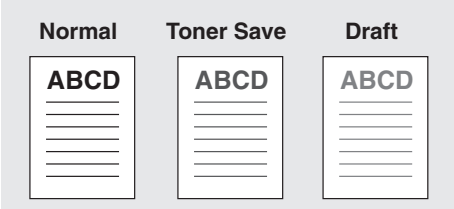
You can set the shade of an output image and a processing method of graphic data.

To save toner consumption by controlling a print density (Toner Save):

Adobe PS3

Save toner by controlling a printing density.

Reference (p.401) To save toner consumption by controlling a print density



To set a resolution:

Adobe PS3

Set resolution to 400 dpi or 600 dpi.

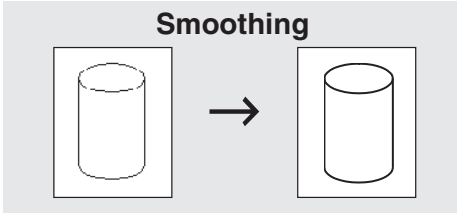
Reference (p.402) To set a Resolution

To print a curved section smoothly (Smoothing):

Adobe PS3

Print a curved section of a character or image smoothly.

Reference (p.403) To print a curved section smoothly



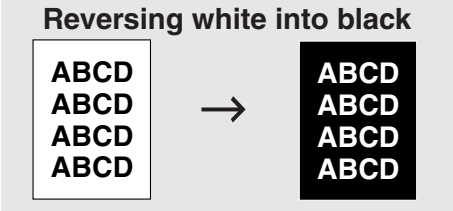
To set an image and shade (Continued)

To print an image by reversing white and black:

Adobe PS3

Print in a negative image by reversing white into black and vice versa.

Reference ▶▶ (p.404) To print an image by reversing white and black

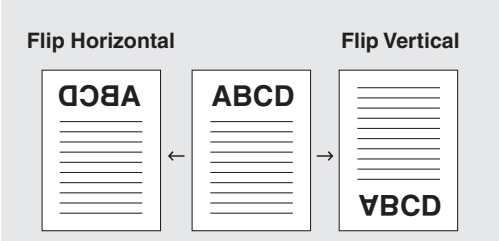


To print an image by reversing image:

Adobe PS3

Print an image by reversing it in a horizontal direction, just like a reflection in the mirror.

Reference ▶▶ (p.405) To print an image by reversing image



To print a bitmapped image more clearly:

Adobe PS3

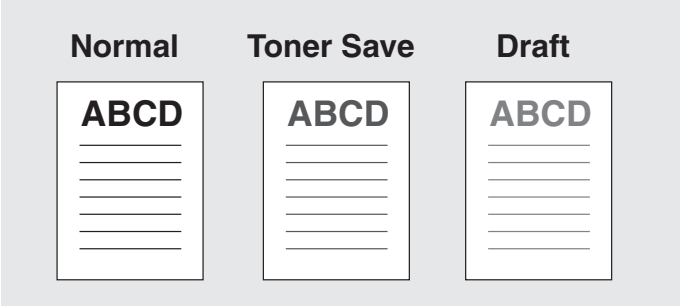
Print a image more clearly by adjusting the displacements of bits.

Reference ▶▶ (p.406) To print a bitmapped image more clearly

To save toner consumption by controlling a print density

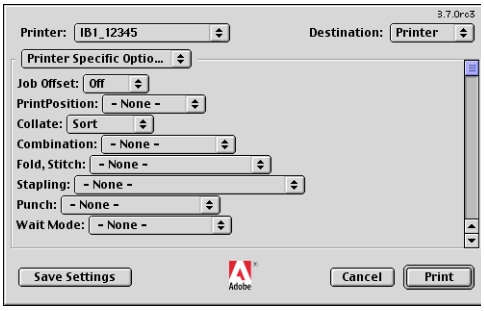
Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Save toner by controlling a printing density.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Toner Save] to select [Toner Save] or [Draft] from the list.

MEMO

- The default is [Normal].
- You can select a printing density from [Normal](100%), [Toner Save](80%) or [Draft](60%).

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To set a Resolution

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

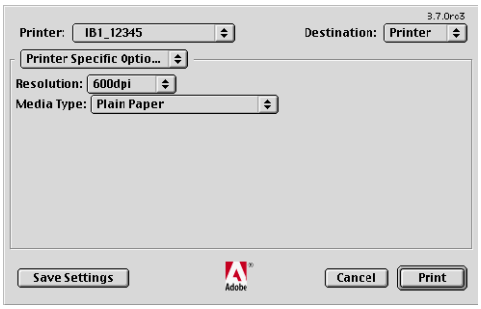
Set resolution to 400 dpi or 600 dpi.

Important

Resolution means the number of dots that can be printed in the length of one inch. It can be said that the higher a value in dpi (dot per inch), the more the information that makes up an image.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options] dialog box (1).



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Resolution] box to select [600 dpi] or [400 dpi] from the list.

MEMO

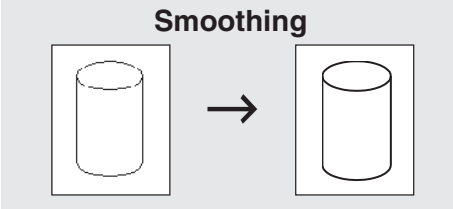
The default is [600 dpi].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print a curved section smoothly

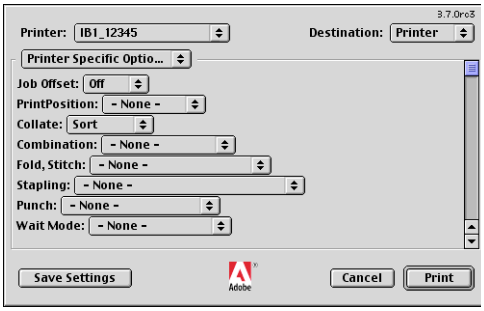
Adobe PS3 compliant (Smoothing)

Print a curved section of a character and image smoothly.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Smoothing] box to select [Type 1], [Type 2] or [Type 3] from the list.

[Type 1] normally provides processing suitable to a slanting line of a character and graphic.

[Type 2] normally provides processing suitable to a curved section of a character.

[Type 3] normally provides processing suitable to a curved section of fine character.

When [None] is selected, no smoothing function is provided.

MEMO

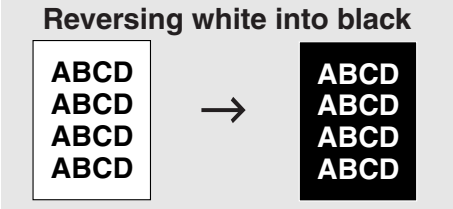
The default is [None].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

To print an image by reversing white and black

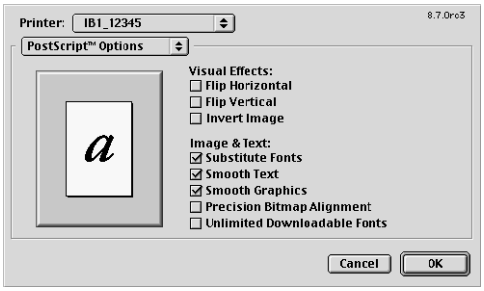
Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Print a negative image by reversing white into black and vice versa. This function is suitable for printing a monochromatic or coarse RGB image.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [PostScript Options].



2. Turn on the [Invert Image] check box.

MEMO

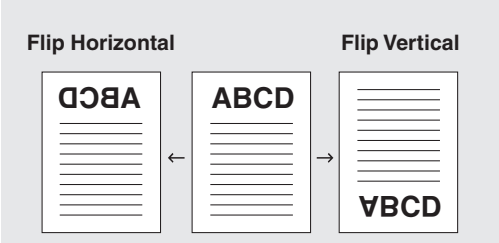
- The default is [OFF].
- You can turn on all of [Flip Horizontal], [Flip Vertical], and [Invert Image] if you want.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To print an image by reversing image

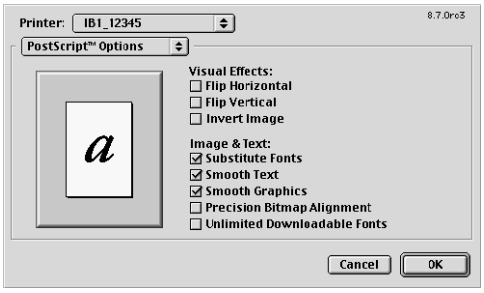
Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Print an image by reversing it in a horizontal direction, just like a reflection in the mirror.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [PostScript Options].



2. Turn on the [Flip Horizontal] or [Flip Vertical] check box.

MEMO

- The default is [OFF].
- You can turn on [Flip Horizontal], [Flip Vertical], and [Invert Image] if you want.

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

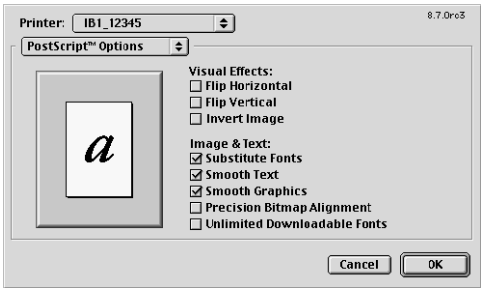
To print a bitmapped image more clearly

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Print an image more clearly by adjusting the displacements of bits.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [PostScript Options].



2. Turn on the [Precision Bitmap Alignment] check box.

MEMO

The default is [OFF].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To set font-related items

You can set the items for the printer font, TrueType font, and PostScript font.

To print without using printer fonts:

Adobe PS3

Set the printer to print data without using the printer font.

Reference ▶▶ (p.408) To print without using printer fonts

To restrict fonts that can be downloaded:

Adobe PS3

Set the restriction on downloadable fonts.

Reference ▶▶ (p.409) To restrict fonts that can be downloaded

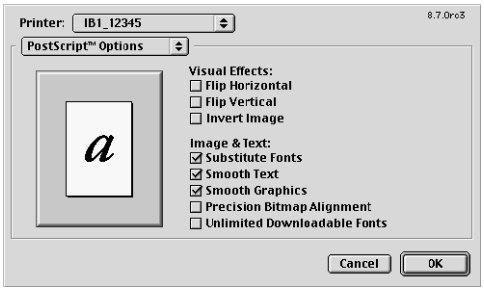
To print without using printer fonts

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Set the printer to print data without using the printer font. When the printer font is not used, the print data is increased, but the same print result can be obtained.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [PostScript Options].



2. Turn off the [Substitute Fonts] check box.

MEMO

The default is [ON].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

Important

Also, when sending PostScript output to the other printer, any trouble due to the difference of the print fonts can be avoided by turning off the [Substitute Fonts] check box.

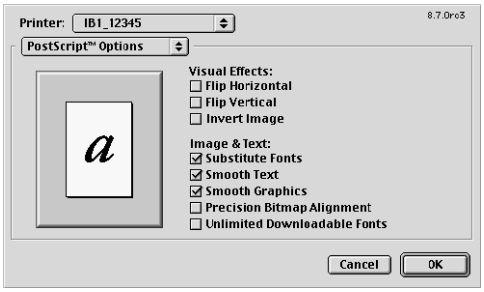
To restrict fonts that can be downloaded

Adobe PS3 **compliant**

Restrict downloadable fonts. Set this item if the printer does not print fonts properly.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] - [PostScript Options].



2. Turn on or off the [Unlimited Downloadable Fonts] check box.

MEMO

The default is [ON].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Page Setup].

To check the printer driver setting

You can check the settings before print or perform the test printing to check the current settings.

To test print to check the settings (Wait with Proof):

Adobe PS3

Check the test printing output and the current settings from the control panel.

Reference (p.411) To test print to check the settings

To check the current settings before printing (Wait):

Adobe PS3

Check the current settings from the control panel before printing.

Reference (p.413) To check the current settings before printing

To check the version of the printer driver:

Adobe PS3

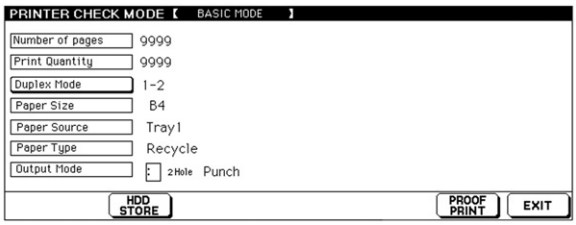
Check the version of the printer driver from the [Print].

Reference (p.415) To check the version of the printer driver

To test print to check the settings

Adobe PS3 compliant (Wait with Proof)

Check the test printing output and the current settings from the control panel. Use this function before printing multiple sets of copies.



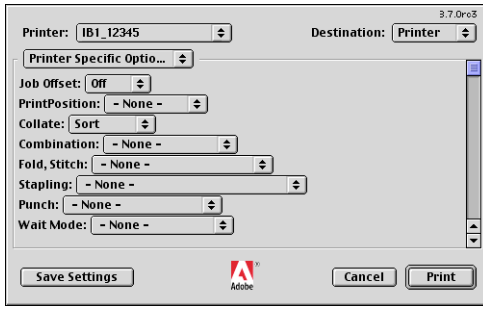
●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

[Wait Mode] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Wait Mode] box to select [Wait with Proof] from the list.

MEMO

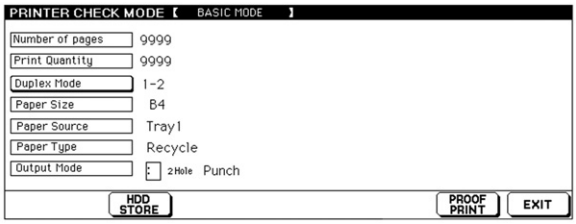
The default is [None].

3. Click the [OK] button to print.

Perform the operation from the control panel on the main body copier after the step 3.

To test print to check the settings (Continued)

4. The [Printer Check Mode] will appear on the LCD touch screen and no printing is performed.



5. Confirm the current settings.

6. Change setting values of [Print Quantity], [Duplex Mode] or [Image Shift], if necessary.

- How to change [Print Quantity]
  Enter the value from the keypad on the control panel when the [Printer Check Mode Screen] appears.
- How to change [Printer Mode
  To show the [Basic Screen], touch the [Printer Mode]. Set the [Printer Mode] on the [Basic Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], press the [CHECK] button on the control panel.
- How to change [Image Shift]

⚠

Available only when [On] is selected in [Image Shift] of printer driver.

To show the [Image Shift Screen], touch the [Image Shift]. Set the [Image Shift] on the [Image Shift Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], touch [EXIT] on the [Image Shift Screen].

7. Touch the [PROOF PRINT] to print one copied set for proofreading.

8. Touch the [EXIT] to return to the print mode basic screen.

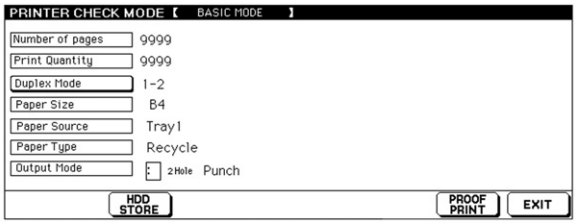
9. Press [START] to resume the rest of the print job.

When you change the settings, press [STOP] to cancel the print job, and change the settings on the printer properties on your computer.

To check the current settings before printing

Adobe PS3 compliant (Wait)

Check the current settings from the control panel before printing.



●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

Limitation

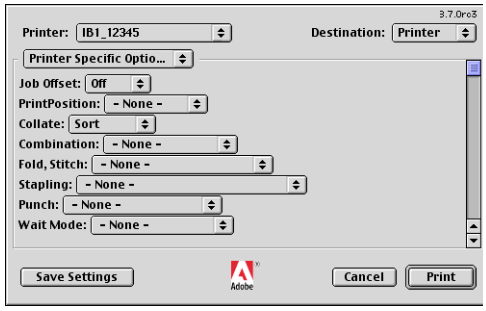
[Wait Mode] cannot be set in the following cases:

- When [Group] is selected for [Collate] in the [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].

MEMO

If you try to apply an invalid combination of settings as described left, a message appears. Check the message and adjust the settings.

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options].



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Wait Mode] box to select [Wait] from the list.

MEMO

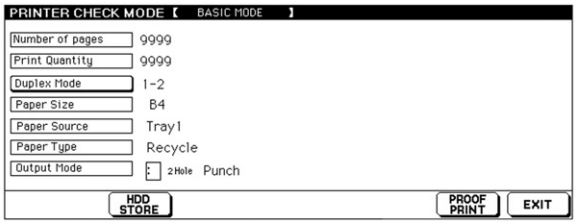
The default is [None].

3. Click the [OK] button to print.

Perform the operation from the control panel on the copier after the step 4.

To check the current settings before printing (Continued)

4. The [Printer Check Mode screen] will appear on the LCD touch screen and no printing is performed.



5. Confirm the current settings.

6. Change setting values of [Print Quantity], [Duplex Mode] or [Image Shift], if necessary.

- How to change [Print Quantity]
  Enter the value from the keypad on the control panel when the [Printer Check Mode Screen] appears.
- How to change [Duplex Mode]
  To show the [Basic Screen], touch the [Duplex Mode]. Set the [Duplex Mode] on the [Basic Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], press the [CHECK] button on the control panel.
- How to change [Image Shift]

⚠

Available only when [On] is selected in [Image Shift] of printer driver.

To show the [Image Shift Screen], touch the [Image Shift]. Set the [Image Shift] on the [Image Shift Screen]. To return to the [Printer Check Mode Screen], touch [EXIT] on the [Image Shift Screen].

7. Touch the [PROOF PRINT] to print one copied set for proofreading.

8. Touch the [Exit] to return to the print mode basic screen.

9. Press [START] to resume the rest of the print job.

When you change the settings, press [STOP] to cancel the print job, and change the settings on the printer properties on your computer.

To check the version of the printer driver

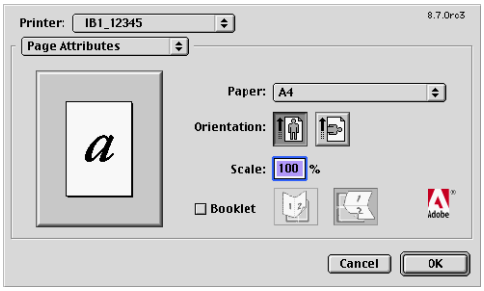
Adobe PS3 compliant

Check the version of the printer driver from the [Print].

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Page Setup] dialog box or the [Print].

The [Page Setup] dialog box will appear.



2. Check an expression [*.*.*] at the upper right of the screen.

3. Press the [Cancel] button to close the [Page Setup].

To set the memory installed in the printer

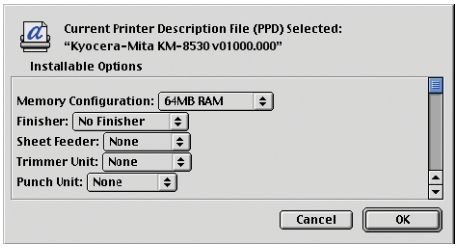
Adobe PS3 compliant

Set the printer driver to recognize the memory installed in the printer from the [Print].

Ask your system administrator to set the value for the installed memory properly.

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3

1. Open [Configure].



2. Click the [▼] button beside [Memory Configuration] - the [Memory Configuration] box to select the value for the installed memory from the list.

MEMO

The default is [64MB].

3. Click the [OK] button to close the [Configure].

To print with two copiers

PCL5e | Adobe PS3 **Compliant**

Using two copiers (master copier and sub copier), prints can be made at the same time under the same printing conditions. When printing a large number of copies, time required to complete the job can be shortened.

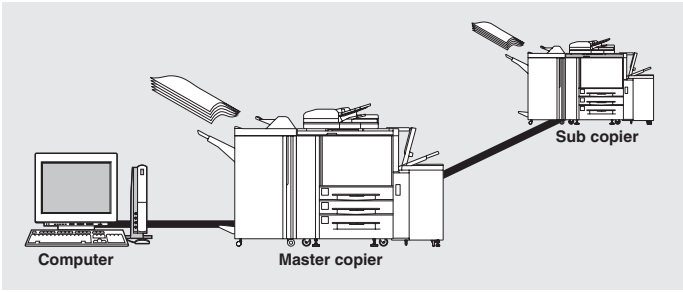
When either one of the two copiers is equipped with a print controller, tandem printing can be performed. When both of the copiers are equipped with a print controller, the copier which receives the printing job instruction functions as the master copier and the other one is the sub copier.

For the tandem printing, the two copiers should be connected by either method as follows.

- Connect the two copiers directly with a cross cable.
  In this case, the network functions cannot be used.
- Connect them with a straight cable via HUB.

MEMO

Use a cross cable or straight cable higher than the category type 5.
Tandem printing should only be set up by your authorized service representative.



Limitation

[Tandem Print] cannot be set in the following cases:

In case of Kyoceramita PCL5e:

- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab-[Media Type]
- When [Collate] is not available in [Paper] tab-[Copies]

In case of Adobe PS3:
Windows:

- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Paper] tab-[Paper type]
- When [Group] is selected in [Device Options] tab-[Printer features]-[Collate]

Macintosh:

- When [OHP-Interleave(Blank)] or [OHP-Interleave(Print)] is selected in [Printer Specific Options] dialog box(1)-[Media Type]
- When [Group] is selected in [Printer Specific Options] dialog box(2)-[Collate]

Reference ▶▶ (p.336) Displaying the [Print] dialog box

To print with two copiers (Continued)

Important

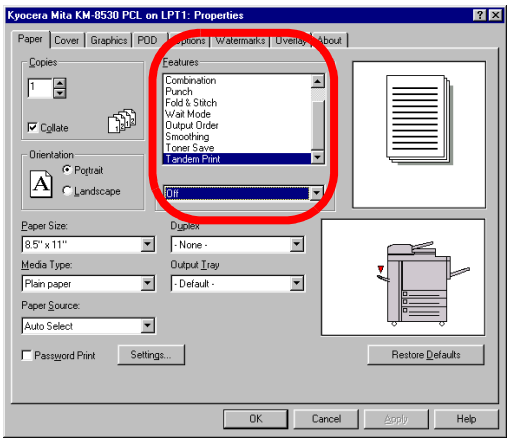
When the sub copier is under the following conditions, a corresponding message is displayed on the control panel of the master copier and the tandem printing is discontinued. In this case, printing with the master copier is normally performed.

- When before starting operation under the tandem master condition:
  USA: "Tandem mode unavailable"
  "Tandem mode is released"
  Other: "Tandem mode is not available"
  "Tandem mode is released"
- When in INTERRUPT mode or interrupt copy under the tandem master condition:
  "Tandem mode is released"
- When reserved jobs have reached 5:
  USA: "Please wait. Reserve is not available in Sub machine"
  "Tandem mode is released"
  Other: "Please wait. Reserve is not available in Slave unit"
  "Tandem mode is released"
- When SC call is issued:
  USA: "Sub machine error"
  "Tandem mode is released"
  Other: "Slave unit error"
  "Tandem mode is released"
- When the front door is open, key counter is removed, or the sub copier is in other condition that the printing is impossible.
  USA: "Please check sub machine"
  "Tandem mode is released"
  Other: "Please check slave unit"
  "Tandem mode is released"

●Operating procedures of PCL5e

1. Open [Paper] tab of [Properties] window.

When displayed from an application with Windows 98



To print with two copiers (Continued)

2. **Select the [Tandem Print] in the [Features] field.**

3. **Select the [On] in the pull-down menu under it.**

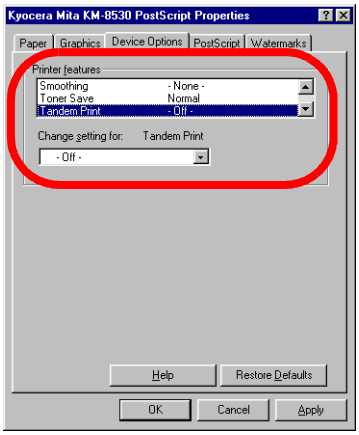
MEMO
The default is [Off].

4. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3 (Windows)

1. **Open [Device Options] tab of the [Properties] window.**

When displayed from an application with Windows 98.



MEMO
- For Windows NT4.0, [Document Defaults...] - [Advanced] tab is displayed
- For Windows 2000/XP, [Properties] - [Advanced] - [printing Defaults] - [Layout] - [Advanced...] is displayed

2. **Select [Tandem Print] from the [Printer features] field.**

3. **Click the [▼] button beside the [Printer features] - [Change setting for] boxes to display the list. Then select [On] from the list.**

MEMO
The default is [Off].

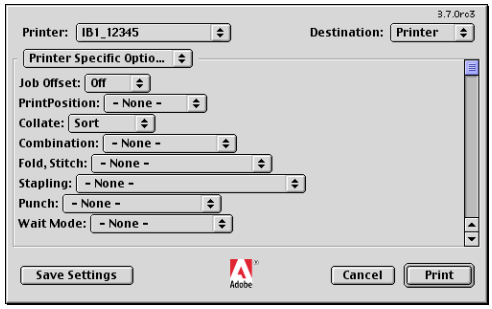
4. **Click the [OK] button to close the [Properties] window.**

To print with two copiers (Continued)

●Operating procedures of Adobe PS3 (Macintosh)

1. Open [Print] - [Printer Specific Options](2).

Reference (p.336) Displaying the [Print] dialog box



2. Click the [▼] button beside the [Tandem Print] box to select the [On] from the list.

MEMO

The default is [Off].

3. Click the [Print] button to print now.
Click the [Save Settings] button to save the setting as the default.

●Discontinuation of tandem connection / output and problems encountered during printing process

Refer to the "Copier's User's Manual" for details of discontinuation of the tandem connection / output and problems encountered during the printing process.

Overview of the Printer ECM/EKC

Printer ECM/EKC is a feature used to manage the number of prints made on the copier.

Setting the Printer ECM/EKC feature means that, provided you enter a password previously established on the printer to request a print job, the copier counts the printouts on the ECM/EKC counter to know when a preset limit is hit, and rejects print requests from clients without a password.

MEMO

The name of this feature varies according to the specifications of each country.

USA market: Printer ECM

Others: Printer EKC

The term Printer ECM/EKC is used here.

Setting of Printer ECM/EKC

A password for the Printer ECM/EKC and its counter are set in the copier's Key Operator setting. For information about setting the Printer ECM/EKC, refer to the User's Guide of the copier.

MEMO

The password for the Printer ECM/EKC must be the same as User ID entered when printing.

Reference (p.424) ECM/EKC Limit

Printing with Printer ECM/EKC

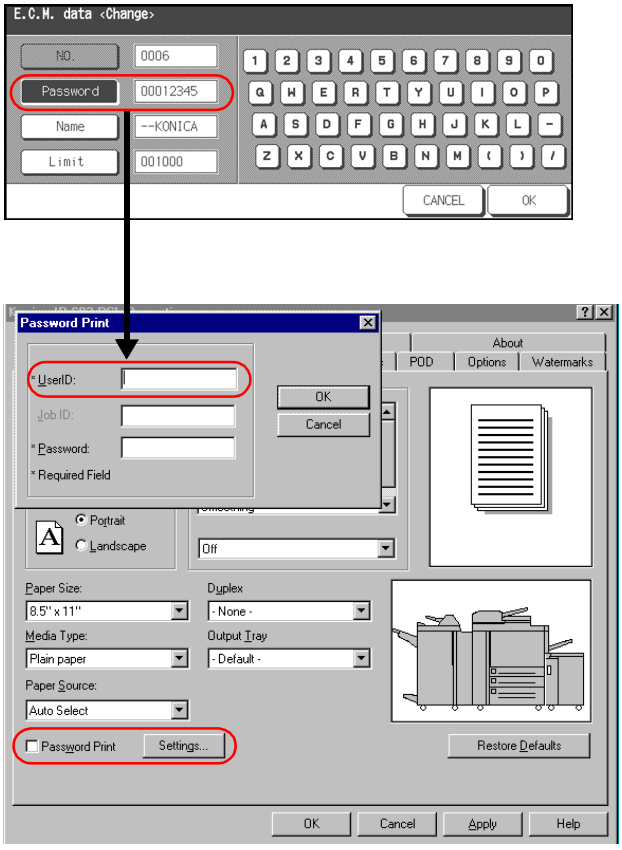
If the Printer ECM/EKC has been set, perform the following steps to print or copy.

1. Select the [Paper] tab in the printer driver properties window, and click the [Settings] button.

The [Password Print] dialog will appear.

2. Type the User ID set in the Printer ECM/EKC into the [User ID] text box.

- With some application software, the setting for the printer driver also is saved. When you use [Settings] to print a shared file on a network or a file likely to be printed by other's, delete the [UserID] and [Password] before saving the files.
- You must enter the same password (8 digits or less) in the [User ID] text box that is set on the copier for Printer ECM/EKC.
- When in doubt about the password for Printer ECM/EKC, ask your system administrator.
- If you do not enter the correct password or if you leave the [User ID] text box blank, the print job could be performed or not performed.
- If not performed, it is registered as a non complete job.
- In the service mode, you can set whether or not to print these jobs.
- For more information, contact your Kyoceramita service representative.



3. Click [OK] button to close the [Properties] and start the printing process.

ECM/EKC Limit

If you exceed the limit previously set in the Printer ECM/EKC, the following will occur, depending on the settings of the Printer ECM/EKC.

When in doubt about the Printer ECM/EKC settings, ask your system administrator.

●When a print job is sent after limit has been reached:

- A message will appear indicating that the ECM/EKC counter reached a preset limit, but the printing process is completed normally and the ECM/EKC counter increments as if nothing happened.
- No output is produced and the job is registered on the non complete job list.

●If the ECM/EKC counter hits a preset limit in the process of getting an output:

- A message will appear indicating that the ECM/EKC counter reached a preset limit, but the printing process is completed normally and the ECM/EKC counter increments as if nothing happened.
- After the current print job is completed, no additional jobs are accepted. If you try to send the next print job, it is deleted and registered on the non complete job list.
- The print job instantly stops, causing the already fed paper to be output. The job is registered on the non complete job list.

MEMO

- A print job deleted by the Printer ECM/EKC feature is registered on the [non complete job list]. For information on checking the non complete job list screen, refer to "Troubleshooting".

Reference (p.430) Checking on non complete jobs

- If the Printer ECM/EKC feature is set in the copier, the [User ID] set in [Password Print] in the [Settings] dialog box will be recognized as the ECM/EKC password.
- If the Printer ECM/EKC feature is set in the copier, enter the same number as the Printer ECM/EKC password in the [User ID] column of [Password Print].

Reference (p.254) To specify a user

Basic Troubleshooting

This section describes how to troubleshoot. If problems are not resolved by using the following procedure, contact your Kyoceramita service representative.

First check the following ordinary causes of abnormalities:

1. Check the power of the main body printer (copier), computers and cable connections.

2. Check the LCD touch screen of the main body printer to find information concerning the current trouble.

3. If possible, perform Test Print from the LCD of the main body printer to check that the settings are correct.

Reference (p.484) Printing the Test Print

4. Check the current status of the print controller.

- Check the current status shown on the LCD of the control panel.
- Touch the [STATUS] key on the Basic Screen to check the job status.

Reference (p.479) Confirming the Status of a Print Job

- When your job is being processed or waiting to be printed:

Windows:

The current status is displayed on the dialog shown by double-clicking [Start] - [Settings] - [Printers] - printing system currently used.

Macintosh:

The current status is displayed on the dialog shown by double-clicking the currently-used printer icon on the desktop.

Important

Mac OS X is not supported at September 2002.

General Problems of Printing

●The Print Controller does not respond to the Print command.

1. Check that the printing system is selected as the current printer.

The printing system must be selected as the current printer on Windows before printing.

2. Check that the power switch of the copier is turned on.

3. Print the Test Page from Windows.

When you cannot print a job from an application even though you can print a test print, contact a system administrator or a service representative.

4. If the message "Error" is displayed, check that the control panel is in copy mode, not scanner mode.

●Cannot select any media other than [Plain paper] from [Media Type].

1. For the PCL5e Driver, select [Restore Defaults] from [Paper] tab or [Cover] tab to restore the default setting.

2. Set [Paper Source] to a setting other than [Auto Select].

●A message requesting a paper size you did not specify is displayed.

1. Cancel the job to change the paper size in the "Page (Paper) Setup" dialog on your application.

Touch and select the desired size displayed in the paper sizes area of the control panel, then press the [START] button. The forced output will start.

Reference ▶▶ (p.505) Using the Forced Output Function

●You cannot print the test print.

1. Check the LCD of the main body printer control panel.

When "Ready to copy" is displayed on the LCD, go to Step 3.

When a diagnostic message or an error message is displayed on the LCD, refer to the operating manual of the main body printer (copier).

When the LCD is blank, go to Step 2.

2. Press the POWER SAVER ON/OFF on the control panel.

When the main body printer is used in the Power Save mode, press this switch to show the LCD in the Display mode.

3. Try to make a copy.

When copying is available, go to Step 4.

4. Turn off the copier and wait for 10 seconds, then restart it. Print the test print again after the print controller is ready.

Contact your Kyoceramita service representative if you cannot print the test page after performing the above procedures.

General Problems of Printing (Continued)

●The print setting of a job does not correspond to the result of printing.

1. Check that the printer setting was not changed.

Refer to "Appendix B Function List" for the printer setting.

Reference ▶ (p.595) Function List (Print Controller)

●Memory Overflow

1. Depending on the functions selected in the printer driver, occasional memory overflow may occur if the volume of the print job is large. In this case the print job is cancelled.

e.g., Booklet, Fold & Stitch, 2 in 1, etc.

In case of frequent Memory Overflow we recommend that you extend the memory capacity in the main body printer (copier).

When "Print Controller Memory Overflow" is displayed on the LCD Touch Screen when you are using Duplex printing or another Application function, you may cancel the print job and try to reprint with another function.

General Problems of Printing (Continued)

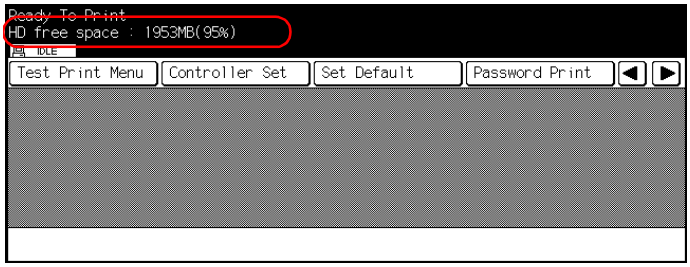
●Enough disk space is not available

An error message will appear at the top-left icon on the touch screen when available disk space of this printing system becomes less than 3% of total disk capacity.

Solution:

1. Press the [MODE] button to open the printer mode basic screen.

Reference (p.475) Switching Between Modes



2. Make sure the [HD free space] displayed at the red circle on the upper screen.

MEMO

If [HD free space] is not full, the disk space of the hard disk in the copier may be full.
Refer to the copier's manual for more detailed information.

3. Delete scan jobs saved on the hard disk in this printing system from the computer on the network.

Refer to "Setting the ScanDataAutoDel." for specific procedures on deleting scanned data.

Reference (p.492) Setting the ScanDataAutoDel.

4. Print confidential output print jobs (password print) stored on the hard disk in the printing system from the control panel.

5. The automatic timer capability in this printing system deletes print jobs stored on the hard disk in the system automatically after 24 hours of storing.

General Problems of PostScript

●A PostScript Error message displays.

For the content of the error, visit Adobe's home page at http://www.adobe.com(URL subject to change without notice).

●PostScript Error messages such as "VMerror" and "limitcheck" display.

The printer (copier) may be short on memory capacity. Consider upgrading the memory.

●A PostScript Error message displays when attempting to get a printout from any computers are in use.

There may be loose connections in the printing system. Recheck all of connections.

●A PostScript Error message displays when attempting to get a printout from a specific application.

Error conditions may exist in the application. Try to print out a simple test file. If this also does not succeed, reinstall the application in question.

●A PostScript Error message displays when attempting to get a printout from a specific file.

It is possible that the print setting for the file is wrong, that graphics contained in the file are damaged, or that bad elements are contained in the file.

Find a print setting that does not cause any PostScript Error message to appear, and try to get a printout. If this fails, save the file as a new file.

●A PostScript Error message displays when attempting to get a printout of a specific page.

It is possible that elements or fonts used in the page are damaged, or that larger memory capacity than currently available capacity is needed for the printout.

Try to print with specifying one element or font of the various ones in the page. If this trial causes no problems, consider upgrading the memory.

●Fonts cannot be downloaded.

It is possible that [Spool] is set to [On] in Printer Setting Menu on the copier's control panel.

Set [Spool] to [Off], switch off the copier's main power, wait 10 seconds or more, switch it back on, and then try downloading fonts again.

For details on how to download fonts, refer to the User's Guide that comes with the fonts.

●Non fixed size paper can not be printed correctly (Macintosh).

The direction in which non fixed size paper is loaded in the copier may be incorrect.

Rotate the paper direction 90 degrees and then try printing after changing the settings of the driver and copier accordingly.

Checking on non complete jobs

If print jobs are not output, you can check them on the Non complete Job List screen.

To get the Non complete Job List screen to appear:

1. Press the [STATUS] key on the printer mode basic screen to get the Job Status Screen to appear, and then press the [NON COMPLETE JOB LIST] key.

The Non complete Job List screen will appear.

You can scroll the up/down with the [▲] [▼] keys.

●Content of Non complete Job List

On the Non complete Job List, you can check on the mode, file and application names, as well as the causes of non complete jobs.

Here is a list of Non complete Job List content.

Mode	Factor	Description of causes
PRINTER	Cancel	Stopped with STOP/CLEAR. Deleted from Joblist. W/O key count/set. Interruption request from print controller. Job aborted. Prohibited by Web count. Copy prohibited before examination. Error in memory.
	ID Differ	Job not output because User ID did not match.
	Limit over	Job not output because Printer ECM/EKC reached a preset limit.
	Mem Full	Job not output because copier ran out of memory.
SCANNER	Error	Job not completed in uploading data to hard disk.
	Cancel	Stopped with STOP/CLEAR. Deleted from Job List. W/O key count/set. Interruption request from print controller. Job aborted.

MEMO

- When switching the copier's main power is switched OFF, the Non complete jobs in the Non complete Job List screen are deleted.
- Provided the Printer ECM/EKC feature has been set on the copier, [User ID] set up in the [Settings] dialog is recognized as a password for Printer ECM/EKC.
- Provided a Printer ECM/EKC feature has been set on the copier, you can enter the same number in the [User ID] text box as that representing your password for Printer ECM/EKC.

Section

3

How to Scan

Chapter 10 Overview of the Scanning Features 432

Chapter 11 Configuring Destination/Storage Location Settings 436

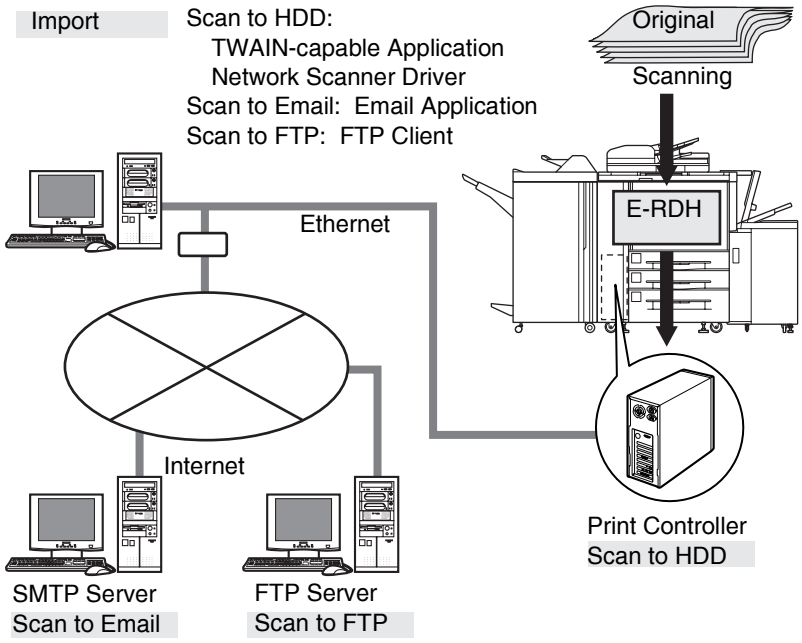
Chapter 12 Scanner Operation 444

Chapter 13 Loading in the Scanned Image Data 460

Chapter 14 Troubles Concerning the Scanner 470

Available Scanning Features

The scanning features fall into three groups: "Scan to HDD," "Scan to Email," and "Scan to FTP."



Important

To make use of the scanning features, you need to set the network of the print controller. Refer to "Section 5 Network Settings (for Administrator)"

Reference (p.512)

When the objective of output is specified as "Scan to Email" or "Scan to FTP", the scan data may be damaged due to the network condition or for some otherreason.
Be sure to check the scan data for damage.

Available Scanning Features (Continued)

●Scan to HDD

This feature lets you save scanned data to the hard disk of the print controller.

To scan originals, you need to specify a 4-digit box number from the control panel. This box number is a holder in the print controller's hard disk.

Scanned data files stored on the hard disk are available to be loaded, edited and stored over network using TWAIN-compliant Windows applications. When loading in scanned data, you need to enter a box number.

If you program scanned data to be automatically deleted at [Controller Set]-[ScanDataAutoDel.] on the [Printer Mode], scanned data on the hard disk of the print controller is automatically deleted after the specified time (set to 24 hours by default) passes. If you do not program this option, scanned data on the hard disk of the print controller can be deleted only from personal computers on a network.

When the remaining disk space reaches less than 20 MB, attempts to store scanned data are automatically rejected.

●Scan to Email

This feature transmits scanned data to recipients at specified Email addresses as attachments to Email.

●Scan to FTP

This feature uploads scanned data to specified FTP servers.

Process of the Settings and Operations

To make use of the network scanning features of the print controller for the first time, the following settings and operations must be done.

●Necessary Settings

By registering destinations/storage locations of scanned data before using the network scanning features, you can specify a destination/storage location by selecting it on the control panel. You can enter destinations/storage locations in the following ways.

Scan to HDD

- Reference (p.436) Scan to HDD

Scan to Email

- Reference (p.438) Scan to Email

Scan to FTP

- Reference (p.441) Setting of Destinations (FTP)

●Scanning Process

The process of scanning originals, storing/transmitting and loading scanned data, may be summed up as follows:

1. Select a destination on the control panel, and set originals on the copier.

Reference (p.444) Scanning

2. Run a scan job.

Scanned data is stored/transmitted depending on your settings.

●Reading scanned data already stored/transmitted

Data stored in HDD to be imported from the Windows supported computers. You need to install the dedicated network scanner driver on the computers from which data are imported. Since this driver supports TWAIN, you can import scanned data stored in HDD in the format of applications that conform to TWAIN, such as Adobe Acrobat.

Important

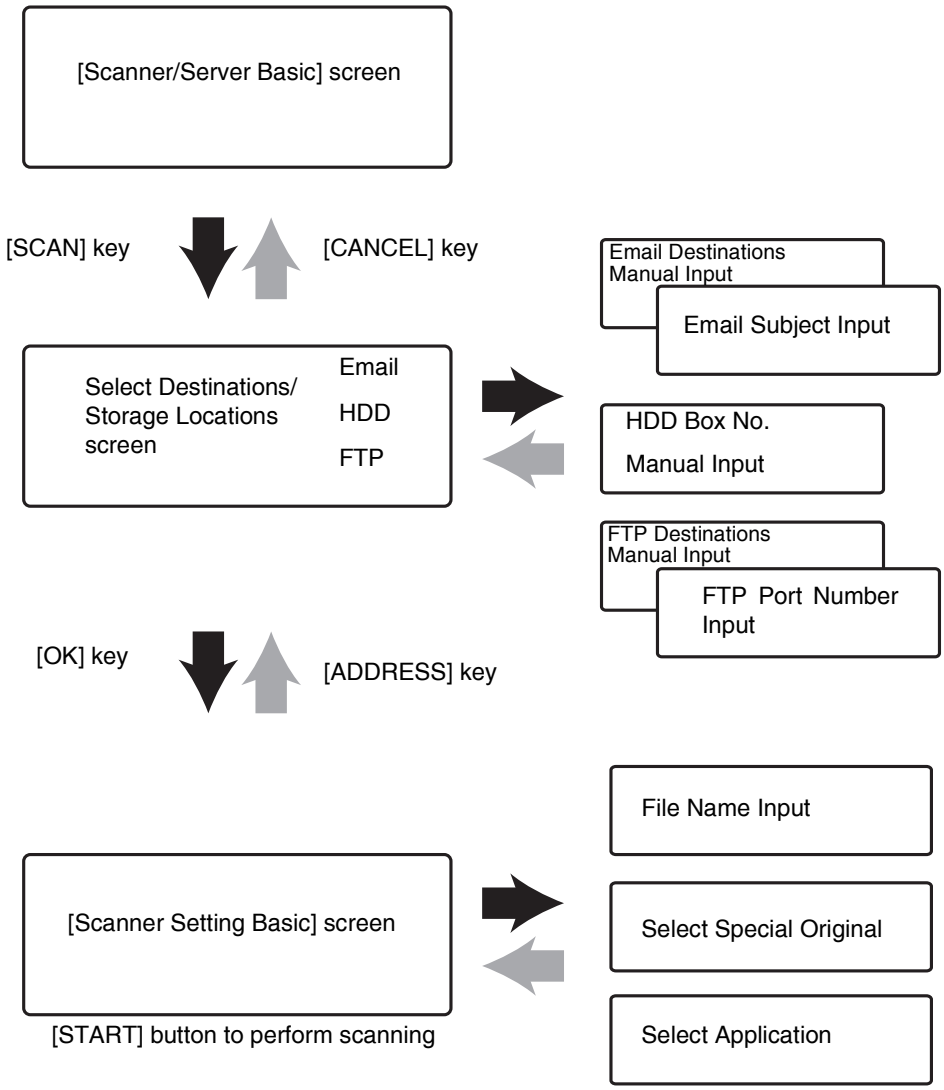
The network scanner driver does not support Macintosh computers.

MEMO

For information regarding use of scanned data sent as an attachment to Emails or uploaded to FTP servers, refer to the corresponding applications' manuals.

Scanning Screen of the Control Panel

The scanning functions are performed through the control panel of the copier. Here, screens used in the scanning features are explained in relation to each other.



To set and register destinations/storage locations, select [Email], [HDD] or [FTP] on the Select Destinations/ Storage Locations screeen, and touch the [MANUAL I/P ADDRESS] key.

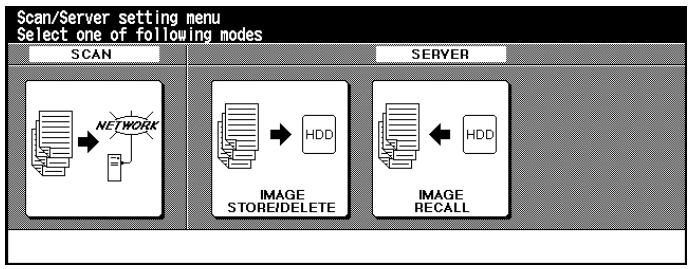
After entering a destination, select the destination on the Select Destinations/Storage Locations screeen.

Specify the destination, and set an original on the copier. Then, set it in the [Scanner Settings Basic] screen. On this screen, you can set the various settings of scanning. After making the setting, press the [START] button on the copier. The original is scanned, and scanned data are stored/transmitted to the specified destination.

Scan to HDD

When storing scanned data on the hard disk of the print controller, follow the next steps to register the destination hard disk.

1. Press the [MODE] button on the control panel to display the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

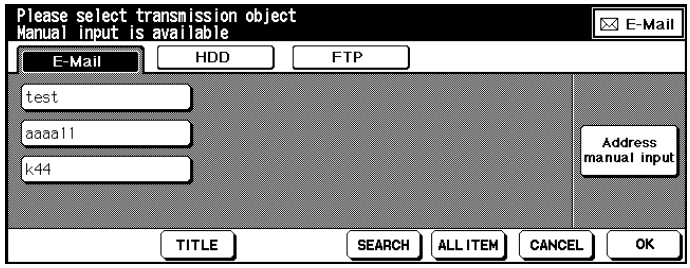


MEMO

Up to 48 can be registered.

2. Touch the [SCAN] key on the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

The [Please select transmission object] screen will appear.

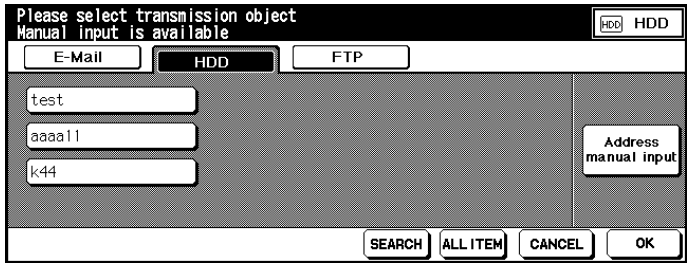


MEMO

When the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen appears, the [E-mail] screen will appear first.

3. Choose the [HDD] key on the [Please select transmission object] screen.

If the storage location (HDD) is already registered, the entry name will appear.



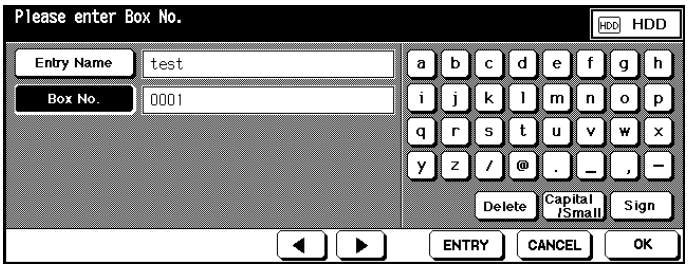
MEMO

- To deselect a destination/storage location you have selected, touch the selected destination/storage location key again.
- To change or delete registered Destinations/Storage Locations, use the Key Operator mode or the WWW Server Function of the copier. For more detailed information, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

Scan to HDD (Continued)

4. Touch the [Address manual input] key.

The [HDD Box No. Input] screen will appear, and you can enter storage locations.



5. Set the necessary settings on the [HDD Box No. Input] screen.

[Entry Name] key

You need to enter alphanumeric names that will be displayed on the [Select Transmission Object] screen (HDD). Any name can be entered up to 18 characters long. Use the touch panel to enter alphabetical letters, and the hard keypad to enter numbers.

⚠

You cannot enter signs.

[Box No.] key

Into this field, you enter a 4-digit Box No. using the hard keypad. The Box Nos. are numbers to attach to folders when storing scanned data on the hard disk. Be sure to write down these numbers. You will need them when reading scanned data from your PC.

[Delete] key

Touch this key to delete the character to the left of the cursor.

[Capital/Small] key

Touch this key to replace an upper case letter with a lower case and vice versa.

[Sign] key

Touch this key and the lowercase alphabetical letter keys produce signs. Then the [Sign] key is changed into the [Alphabet] key. Touch this key again and you can enter alphabetical letters as before.

[◀ ▶] keys

Touching these keys moves the cursor. Letters enter at the left of the cursor.

[ENTRY] key

Touch this key to register information you have entered and return to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (HDD).

[CANCEL] key

Touch this key to go back to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (HDD) without registering what you have entered.

[OK] key

Touch this key to open the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

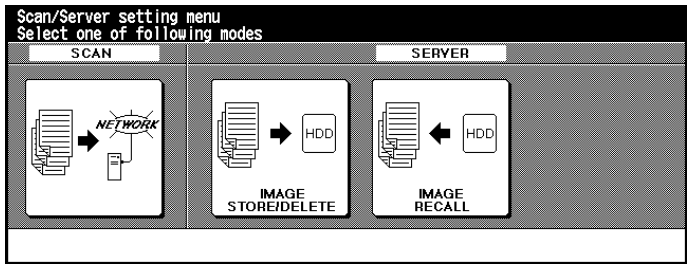
MEMO

- If you intend to use your printing system as a scanner, it is recommend that you assign Box Nos. (from 0001 to 9998) to users and inform them about their allotted numbers in advance.
- The Box Nos. protect each user's data.
- To change or delete registered Destinations/Storage Locations, use the Key Operator mode or the WWW Server Function of the copier. For more detailed information, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

Scan to Email

In case you send scanned data as an attachment to Emails, follow the next steps to register destination Email addresses.

1. Press the [MODE] button on the control panel to display the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

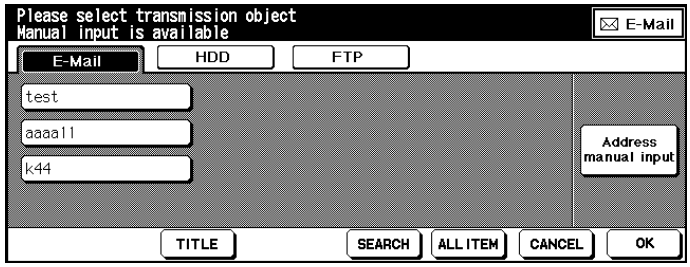


MEMO

Up to 96 can be registered.

2. Touch the [SCAN] key on the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

The [Select Transmission Object] screen will appear.



MEMO

To deselect a destination/storage location you have selected, touch the selected destination/storage location key again.

3. Make sure that [E-Mail] tab is selected.

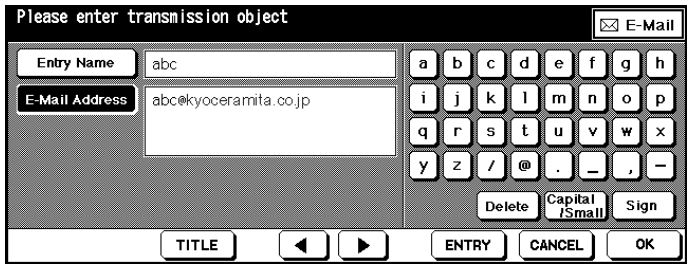
If the destination (Email) is already registered, the destination name will appear. If [HDD] tab or [FTP] tab is selected, change it to [E-Mail] tab.

MEMO

To change or delete registered Destinations/Storage Locations, use the Key Operator mode or the WWW Server Function of the copier. For more detailed information, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

4. Touch the [Address manual input] key.

The [Transmission Address Input] screen (Email) will appear, and you can enter Email addresses.



Scan to Email (Continued)

5. Set the necessary settings on the [Transmission Address Input] screen(Email).

Input the subject on the [Title in Email Input] screen that is displayed when you touch the [TITLE] key.

Reference (p.440)

[Entry Name] key

Enter the name of a recipient, up to 18 alphanumeric characters long, that will be displayed in the destination (Email) on the [Select Transmission Object] screen (Email). To enter alphabetical letters, use the touch panel, and to enter numbers, use the hard keypad.

⚠

You cannot enter signs.

[E-Mail Address] key

Enter an Email address, up to 60 alphanumeric characters long. To enter alphabetical letters, use the touch panel, and to enter numbers, use the hard keypad.

[Delete] key

Touch this key to delete the letter to the left of the cursor.

[Capital/Small] key

Touch this key to replace an upper case letter with a lower case and vice versa.

[Sign] key

Touch this key and the lowercase alphabetical letter keys produce signs. (The [Sign] key is changed to the [Alphabet] key.) Touch this key again and you can enter alphabetical letters as before.

[TITLE] key

Touching this key opens the [Title in E-Mail input] screen.

Reference (p.440)

[◄ ►] keys

Touching these keys moves the cursor. Letters enter to the left of the cursor.

[ENTRY] key

Touch this key to register information you have entered and return to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (Email).

MEMO

To change or delete registered Destinations/Storage Locations, use the Key Operator mode or the WWW Server Function of the copier. For more detailed information, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

[CANCEL] key

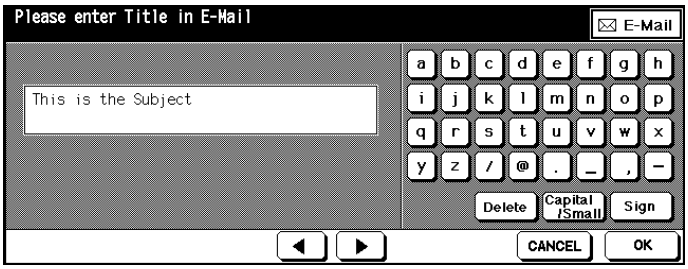
Touching this key brings you back to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (Email) without registering what you have entered.

[OK] key

Touching this key opens the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

Scan to Email (Continued)

[Title in E-Mail Input] screen


Please enter Title in E-Mail
E-Mail
This is the Subject
a b c d e f g h
i j k l m n o p
q r s t u v w x
y z / @ . _ , -
Delete
Capital /Small
Sign
CANCEL
OK

Subject

Here you can enter a brief Subject of Email messages, up to 45 alphanumeric characters long. Use the touch panel to enter alphabetical letters, and the hard keypad to enter numbers.

[Delete] key

Touching this key deletes the letter to the left of the cursor.

[Capital/Small] key

Touching this key replaces an upper case letter with a lower case and vice versa.

[Sign] key

Touch this key and the lowercase alphabetical letter keys produce signs. (The [Sign] key is changed to the [Alphabet] key.) Touch this key again and you can enter alphabetical letters as before.

[◄ ►] keys

Touching these keys moves the cursor. Letters enter to the left of the cursor.

[CANCEL] key

Touching this key brings you back to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (Email) or the [Transmission Address Input] screen (Email) without registering what you have entered.

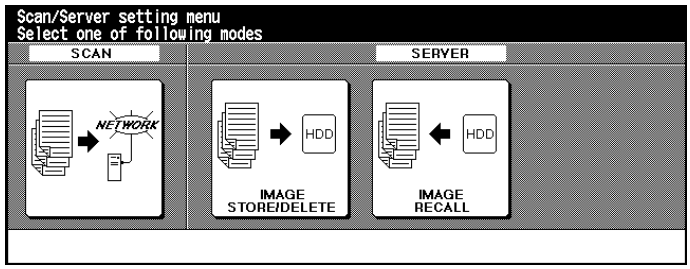
[OK] key

Touching this key stores the Subject you entered, bringing you back to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (Email) or the [Transmission Address Input] screen (Email).

Setting of Destinations (FTP)

If you upload scanned data to FTP servers, follow the next steps to register destination FTP servers.

1. Press the [MODE] button on the control panel to display the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

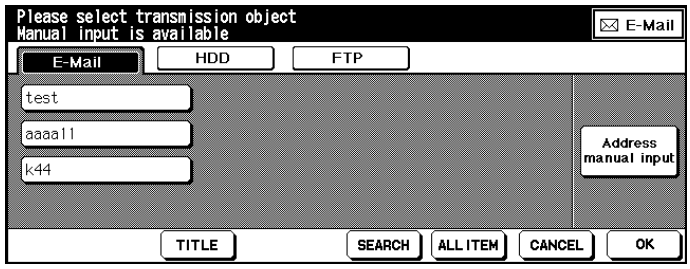


MEMO

Up to 12 can be registered.

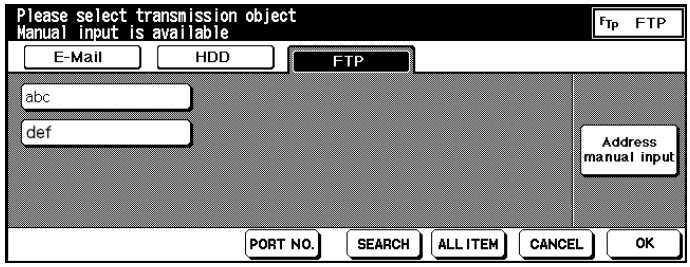
2. Touch the [SCAN] key on the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

The [Please select transmission object] screen will appear.



3. Choose [FTP] tab on the [Select Transmission Object] screen.

If the destination [FTP] is already registered, the profile name is displayed.



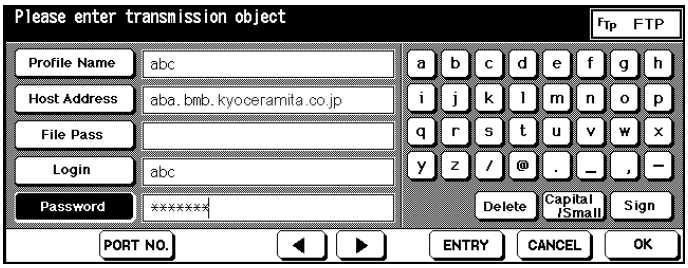
MEMO

To change or delete registered Destinations/Storage Locations, use the Key Operator mode or the WWW Server Function of the copier. For more detailed information, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

Setting of Destinations (FTP) (Continued)

4. Tocuh the [Address manual input] key.

The [Transmission Address Input] screen (FTP) will appear, and you can enter the host address and other information about the FTP server.



5. Set the necessary settings on the [Transmission Address Input] screen [FTP].

When you touch an entry item key, the key is highlighted in reverse image; the corresponding field is available for entry.

The port number of the FTP server is to be input on the FTP Port Number Input screen that will be displayed by touching [PORT NO.] key.

Reference (p.443)

[Profile Name] key

Here you can enter a name that will be displayed in the destination (FTP) on the [Select Transmission Object] screen (FTP). Any alphanumeric name can be up to 18 characters long. Use the touch panel to enter alphabetical letters, and the hard keypad to enter numbers.

You cannot enter signs.

[Host Address] key

Here you can enter the address of an FTP server, up to 63 characters long. Use the touch panel to enter alphabetical letters, and the hard keypad to enter numbers.

[File Path] key

Here you can enter the file path of an FTP server, up to 96 characters long. Use the touch panel to enter alphabetical letters, and the hard keypad to enter numbers.

[Login] key

You can here enter the account of an FTP server, up to 47 characters long. Use the touch panel to enter alphabetical letters, and the hard keypad to enter numbers.

[Password] key

Here you can enter the password of an FTP server, up to 31 characters long. Use the touch panel to enter alphabetical letters, and the hard keypad to enter numbers.

Tips

At anonymous FTP servers, Email addresses are used as passwords.

[Anonymous] key

Touching this key enters "Anonymous" in the [Login] field. Use this feature when logging into an anonymous FTP server that does not require any account for login.

[Delete] key

Touching this key deletes the character to the left of the cursor.

Setting of Destinations (FTP) (Continued)

[Capital/Small] key
Touching this key replaces an upper case letter with a lower case and vice versa.

[Sign] key
Touch this key and the lowercase alphabetical letter keys produce signs. (The [Sign] key is changed to the [Alphabet] key.) Touch this key again and you can enter alphabetical letters as before.

[PORT NO.] key
Touching this key opens the [FTP Port No.Input] screen at which you can enter the port number for an FTP server.

[◄ ►] keys
Touching these keys moves the cursor. Letters enter to the left of the cursor.

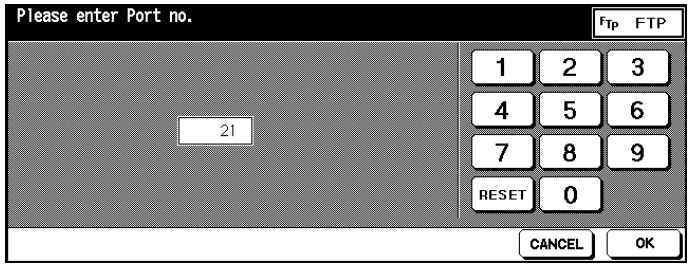
[ENTRY] key
Touch this key to register information you have entered and return to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (FTP).

MEMO
To change or delete registered Destinations/Storage Locations, use the Key Operator mode or the WWW Server Function of the copier. For more detailed information, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

[CANCEL] key
Touching this key brings you back to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (FTP) without registering what you have entered.

[OK] key
Touching this key opens the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

[FTP Port No.Input] screen



FTP Port No.
Here you can enter the port number for an FTP server using the touch panel. Any number can be up to 5 digits long.

[RESET] key
Touching this key clears the entered numbers, restoring the display to the default port number: 21.

[CANCEL] key
Touching this key brings you back to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (FTP) or the [Transmission Address Input] screen (FTP) without registering what you have entered.

[OK] key
Touching this key stores in memory the port number you entered, bringing you back to the [Select Transmission Object] screen (FTP) or the [Transmission Address Input] screen (FTP).

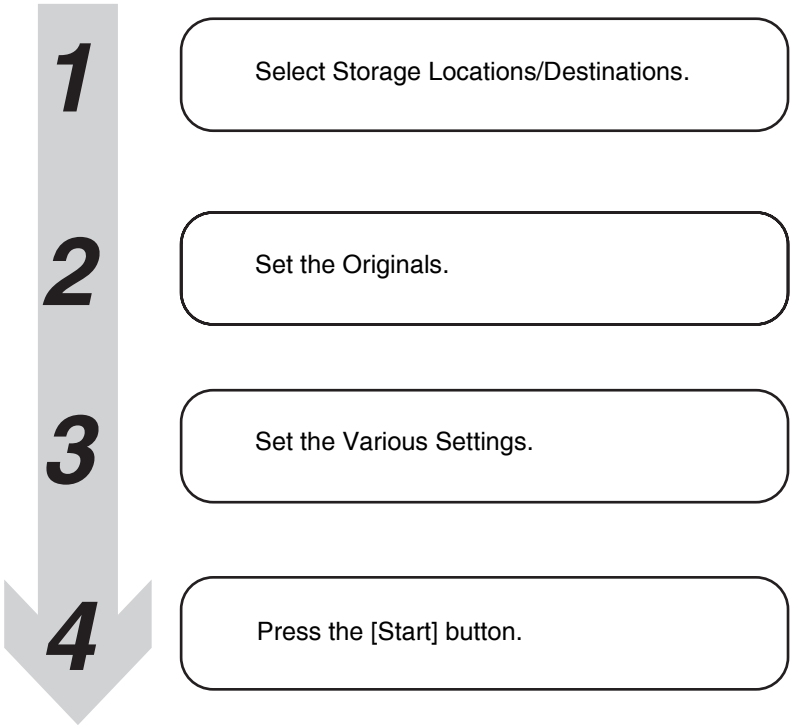
Scanning

To scan the originals, and to either store scanned data on the HDD of the print controller, attach the data to Emails or upload the data to FTP server, follow the steps shown below.

MEMO

Operation status is displayed on the control panel's tag.

Reference (p.459)



MEMO

You can check the current settings on the [Check Mode] screen that appears when you press the [CHECK] button.

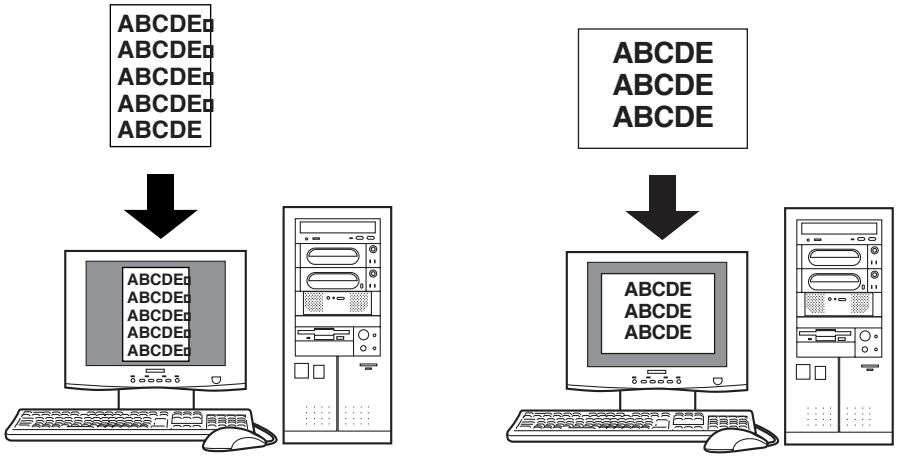
Reference (p.459)

Each step is explained on the following pages.

Scanning (Continued)

●Set the Originals

Set the originals to be scanned on the copier's platen glass or RADF. Depending on the direction you set the originals, the direction in which the applications read images will differ.



MEMO

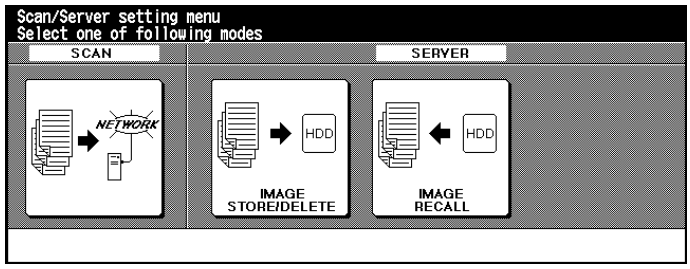
Paper sizes acceptable for scanning and the method of loading the original are the same as in the copy mode. For details, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

Scanning (Continued)

●Select the storage locations/destinations of scanned data

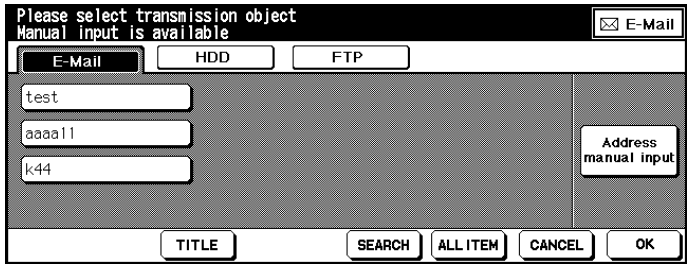
Before scanning the originals, select the storing/transmitting destinations.

1. Press the [MODE] button on the control panel to display the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.



2. Touch the [SCAN] key on the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

The [Please select transmission object] screen will appear.



3. Select storing/transmitting destinations of scanned data from [E-Mail], [HDD] or [FTP].

Storing/Transmitting Destinations screens for each will appear.

4. Select a registered storage location/destination.

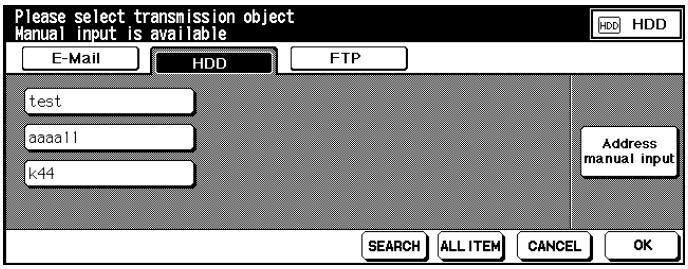
From the entry names listed on the screen, select a storage location/destination.

Tips

You can select [E-Mail], [HDD] and [FTP] at the same time as a storing/transmitting destination. The key selected as a destination will be highlighted in reverse image.

Scanning (Continued)

Scan to HDD



Choose a storage location from the displayed listing. You can select only one [HDD] storage location.

If necessary storage locations are not previously registered, you need to manually enter locations at this stage. Touching the [Address manual input] key opens the [HDD Box No. Input] screen (HDD) at which you can enter the storage location.

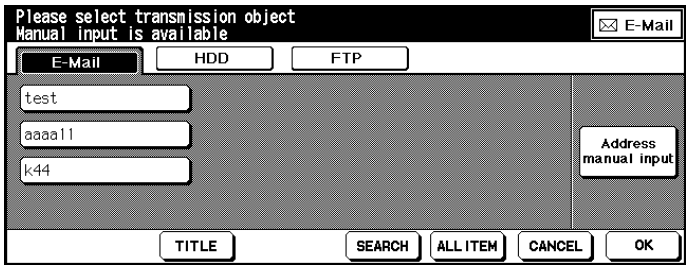
Reference ▶▶ (p.436) Scan to HDD

Touching the [SEARCH] key opens the [Search Letter Input] screen at which you can enter the first letter of registered names. When the search result is displayed, the [SEARCH] key is highlighted in reverse image. At this stage, you can touch the [ALL ITEM] key to have all registered options displayed as before.

Touching the [CANCEL] key brings you back to the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen without registering you settings.

Touching the [OK] key saves your settings and opens the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

Scan to E-Mail



Choose recipients from the displayed listing. You have the option to select multiple destinations at one time. The keys selected as destinations are highlighted in reverse image.

If necessary destinations are not previously registered, you need to manually enter recipient names at this stage. Touching the [Address manual input] key opens the [Transmission Address Input] screen (Email) and allows you to enter Email addresses.

Reference ▶▶ (p.438) Scan to Email

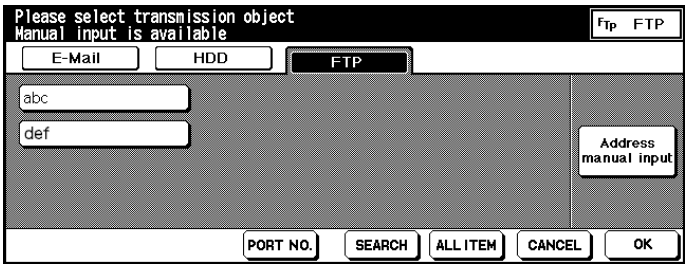
Touching the [SEARCH] key opens the [Search Letter Input] screen at which you can enter the first letter of registrant. When the search result is displayed, the [SEARCH] key is highlighted in reverse image. At this stage, you can touch the [ALL ITEM] key to have all registrants displayed as before.

Touching the [CANCEL] key brings you back to the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen.

Touching the [OK] key and opens the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

Scanning (Continued)

Scan to FTP



Choose a destination from the displayed listing. You can select only one [FTP] destination.

If there are no destinations registered, you need to manually enter necessary destinations at this stage. Touching the [Address manual input] key opens the [Transmission Address Input] screen (FTP) at which you can enter the host address and other information about the FTP server.

Reference (p.441) Setting of Destinations (FTP)

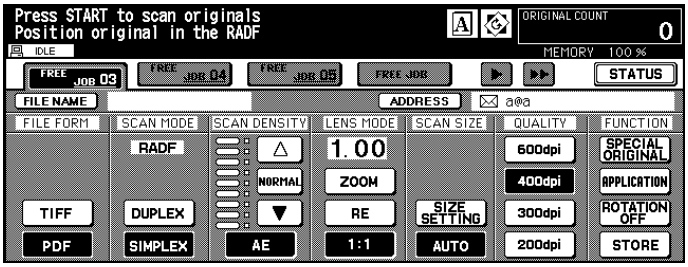
Touching the [SEARCH] key opens the [Search Letter Input] screen at which you can enter the first letter of a registered destination for search. When the search result is displayed, the [SEARCH] key is highlighted in reverse image. At this stage, you can touch the [ALL ITEM] key to display all registered names.

Touching the [CANCEL] key brings you back to the [Scanner/Server Basic] screen without registered your settings.

Touching the [OK] key saves your settings and opens the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

5. After specifying storage locations/destinations, touch the [OK] key.

The [Scanner Setting Basic] screen opens. If necessary, go to the [Special Original Selection] screen or the [Application Selection] screen to configure the setting details.



Reference (p.450) Scanner Basic screen

Reference (p.454) Special Original

Reference (p.456) Application

Scanning (Continued)

6. Press the [START] button on the copier.

The original loaded in the RADF or on the platen glass is scanned with the current settings, and stored/transmitted to the specified destination.

Before the scanned data is sent to the Print Controller, you can press the [START] button again to run an additional scanning process, so that two sets of scanned data are sent at one time to the Print Controller.

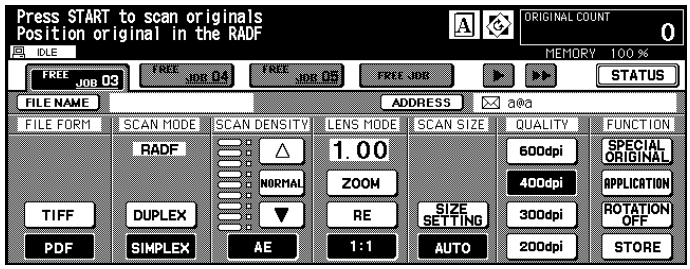
MEMO

You can scan multiple originals and send them to the print controller at the same time.
Touch the [STORE] key to highlight it in reverse image, and press the [START] button. The original loaded in the RADF or on the platen glass is scanned. At this stage, nothing is sent to the print controller. After scanning all the originals, again touch the [STORE] key, and then press the [START] button. Scanned data is sent to the print controller.

Scanner Basic screen

You can configure the following settings on the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

[Scanner Setting Basic] screen



●[FILE NAME]

Touch this key when you need to change or enter scanned data file names.

Touching this key opens the [File Name Input] screen.

Any file name can be up to 26 alphanumeric characters long.

Depending on the file format, the extension ".tif" or ".pdf" is automatically added to the end of a file name.

●[ADDRESS]

Touch this key to go back to the [Transmission Address Input] screen.

●[FILE FORM]

You can choose a scanned data file form from [TIFF] and [PDF].

- For Scan to HDD, the file format is fixed at [TIFF].
- You cannot change the file form in the process of sending multiple images together.

MEMO

To send multiple images at one time, touch the [STORE] key.

Reference (p.453)

●SCAN MODE

Use this feature to determine whether the original document is Duplex or Simplex. If the RADF is not mounted, [Duplex] cannot be selected.

●SCAN DENSITY

Touch this key to select a read density. The default is the same as that in the copy mode.

You can change the read density in the process of scanning in Store mode.

Scanner Basic screen (Continued)

●LENS MODE

Touch this key to change the magnification ratio at which the original document is read.

You can select [ZOOM], [RE] or [1:1]. Touching the [ZOOM] or [RE] key pops up a screen at which you can select the magnification ratio.

[RE] is the same as the default in the copy mode.

[ZOOM] range in each resolution are as follows:

- 200 dpi: 75% - 400%
- 300 dpi: 50% - 400%
- 400 dpi: 38% - 400%
- 600 dpi: 25% - 400%

MEMO
The setting of [ZOOM] may vary depending on models of machine.

●SCAN SIZE

Touch this key to select the scanning paper size.

You can select [AUTO] or [SIZE SETTING].
Touching the [SIZE SETTING] key pops up a screen at which you can select the scanning paper size.

[AUTO] : Same as the default in the copy mode

[SIZE SETTING] : For example, when an A3 original is loaded and you select B5, then the scanning takes on the B5 frame.

Available paper sizes:

A3 / A4R / A4 / A5R / A5 / A6R / B4 / B5R / B5 / B6R / 11x17 / 8.5x14R / 8.5x11R / 8.5x11 / 5.5x8.5R / 5.5x8.5 / Full AREA

- Default is [AUTO].

MEMO
The setting of available paper sizes may vary depending on models of machine.

Scanner Basic screen (Continued)

●QUALITY

Use this feature to select the resolution.

The default can be configured in the Key Operator mode.

MEMO

For information about the Key Operator mode, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

The scanned data is read into the copier's memory (E-RDH). If scanned data exceeds the E-RDH capacity, which translates into an error, you cannot continue with scanning.

The following table shows how many Letter/A4-size originals can be scanned with the copier's standard memory (128 MB).

Resolution	Original	Data Size	No. of Originals
200 dpi	Text only	About 70 KB	About 1780
	Text and Picture	About 130 KB	About 860
300 dpi	Text only	About 120 KB	About 1050
	Text and Picture	About 210 KB	About 600
400 dpi	Text only	About 200 KB	About 620
	Text and Picture	About 480 KB	About 260
600 dpi	Text only	About 430 KB	About 280
	Text and Picture	About 1.43 MB	About 80

MEMO

- Basic memory of copier vary depending on models of machine. For details, refer to the "Copier's User's Guide."
- Data Size and No. of Originals available to be read depend on data actually scanned. Understand that the numbers in the table are intended only to serve as a rough guide for you.

●[SPECIAL ORIGINAL] key

Touching the [SPECIAL ORIGINAL] key at the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen displays the [Special Original Selection] screen.

Reference (p.454)

●[APPLICATION] key

Touching the [APPLICATION] key in the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen displays the [Application Selection] screen.

Reference (p.456)

Scanner Basic screen (Continued)

●[ROTATION OFF] key

Touch this key to not rotate the original image automatically.

Loaded images are rotated 90 degrees clockwise when displayed on computer applications. This feature modifies the rotation, and automatically sends the images rotated 90 degrees counterclockwise.

The feature is [ON] by default.

Limitation

If [Paper Size x Lens Mode] is [A4/A4R] or [8.5Rx11/8.5x11R] or larger, you cannot use ZOOM (independent length / width) and Mixed Original in combination.

●[STORE] key

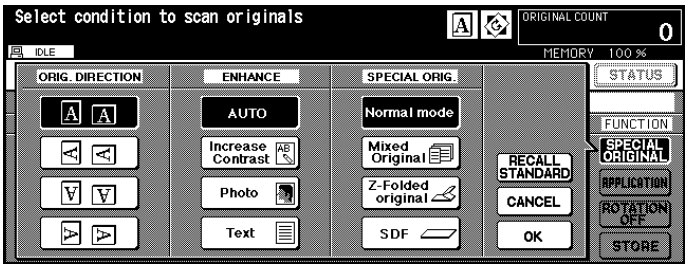
Touch this key to send multiple originals at a time.

Touch the [STORE] key to highlight it in reverse image, and press the [START] button. The original loaded in the RADF or on the platen glass is scanned. At this stage, nothing is sent to the print controller. After scanning all the originals, again touch the [STORE] key, and then press the [START] button. Scanned data is sent to the print controller.

Special Original

Touching the [Special Original] key in the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen displays the [Specical Original Selection] screen.

[Special Original Selection] screen



After selecting an application function, touching the [OK] key brings you back to the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen. Touch the [CANCEL] key to abandon your setting and return to the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

Touching the [RECALL STANDARD] key resets every configuration to default setting.

●ORIG. DIRECTION

Allows you to choose which direction to load the original.

●ENHANCE

Use to select image quality.

The default is the same as that in the copy mode (Auto mode).

MEMO

For the default setting of the copy mode (Key Operation mode), refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

[AUTO] key

Automatically distinguish between text and photo and select the appropriate image quality.

[Increase Contrast] key

Darken light images (e.g., pencil) without changing background exposure.

[Photo] key

Reproduce halftone photo images.

[Text] key

In this mode, text is improved in comparison to the Auto mode.

Special Original (Continued)

●SPECIAL ORIG.

Set this feature depending on originals.

[Normal mode] key

Choose this mode when originals are the same size, normal paper, neither folded nor pasted.

[Mixed Original] key

Choose this mode when loading originals of varying sizes in the RADF.

This feature cannot be used in combination with the Non-image Area Erase, Dual Page.

[Z-Folded Original] key

Choose this mode when loading Z-folded originals in the RADF. This mode ensures paper size is detected correctly.

This feature cannot be used in combination with the Non-image Area Erase.

[SDF] key

Choose this mode when scanning cardboard originals and pasted originals using the RADF. The RADF sends only 1 page of the originals.

Tips

When using [SDF] mode, load only 1 page of the originals.
All of the originals will not be scanned if multiple pages are loaded.

This feature cannot be used in combination with the Non-image Area Erase.

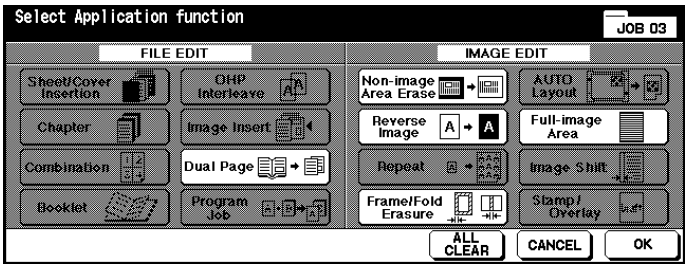
MEMO

Some models of machine may not correspond to [SDF].

Application

Touching the [APPLICATION] key in the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen displays the [Application Selection] screen.

[Application Selection] screen



After selecting an application function, touching the [OK] key brings you back to the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

Or, you can touch the [CANCEL] key to abandon your setting, going back to the [Scanner Setting Basic] screen.

Touching the [ALL CLEAR] key clears every scanner advanced setting.

MEMO

For details of each feature, refer to the "Copier's User's Manual."

●[FILE EDIT] - [Dual Page] key

Sets/Cancels the book copy settings and binding position.

The Dual Page mode scans facing pages of a book or brochure, page by page, separately, but in a single pass. You can use this feature whether the original is loaded in the RADF or on the platen glass.

MEMO

If you use the platen glass, the Non-Image Area Erase is automatically selected(can be deselected).

Limitation

This feature cannot be used in combination with the Mixed Original.

Application (Continued)

●[IMAGE EDIT] - [Non-image Area Erase] key

Allows you to enable/disable the Non-image Area Erase.

Original sizes loaded on the platen glass are automatically detected and the scan is limited to the printable area.This feature does not work with originals loaded in the RADF.

Limitation

You need to press the [START] button without closing the RADF.
This feature cannot be used in combination with Mixed Original, Z-Folded original, SDF, Reverse Image, Full-image Area or RADF.

⚠

If lights are present directly above the machine, the original size may not be correctly identified.

●[IMAGE EDIT] - [Reverse Image] key

Allows you to enable/disable Reverse Image mode.

Limitation

This feature cannot be used in combination with the Non-image Area Erase, or Full-image Area.

●[IMAGE EDIT] - [Frame/Fold Erasure] key

Allows you to enable/disable Frame/Fold Erasure setting.

Use this feature when a thick original such as a book is loaded on the platen glass. Then, the scanned data does not take on the black shadow which otherwise develops along the outer edge or at the center of a duplicated original.

This feature works with originals loaded in the RADF as well.

Limitation

The Fold Erasure mode cannot be used in combination with the Full-image Area.

Application (Continued)

●[IMAGE EDIT] - [Full-image Area] key

Normally, the scan is made with an image data erase margin of 2 mm width at the top, bottom, left and right edges.

In this mode, the document is scanned completely to the edges.

This feature cannot be used in combination with Non-image Area Erase, Reverse Image, or Frame/Fold Erasure.

Check Deciphering and Settings for Scanning

●Tag Display of Operation Status

The following tags are displayed to show the scanning process.

SCANNER READING JOB

A scan job is being read.

SCANNER OUTPUTTING JOB

A scan job is being output to the print controller.

SCANNER WAITING JOB

A scan job has been read in but is waiting to be output because a print job is being output.

SCANNER INTERRUPTING JOB

The reading of a scan job is stopped.

SCANNER JAM JOB

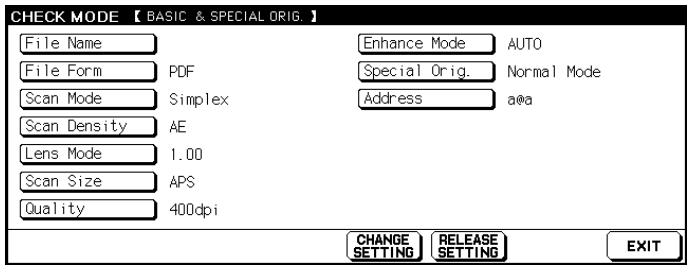
A paper jam has been produced in the process of the reading in of a scan job.

MEMO

When the copier's operation panel is in the scanner mode, no print jobs are sent and therefore no output is produced. You are advised to put the operation panel into the Printer mode or the Copy mode when you don't need any scanning features. When Auto Reset is activated, the operation panel automatically shifts to the Copy mode when a predetermined time is up.

●Check Settings for Scanning

Press the [CHECK] button on the control panel and the [Check Mode] screen will appear.



This screen shows the current settings for scanning.

[CHANGE SETTINGS] key

Tocuhing an item key opens the [Scanner Setting Basic] or the [Application Selection] screen at which you can change the settings concerned.

[CANCEL SETTINGS] key

If advanced features are configured, you can disable any of them by choosing the corresponding items on the screen.

Reading In From HDD

To read scanned data sitting on the hard disk of the print controller to a computer, you need either of the following. These are also used to delete scanned data from the hard disk.

- Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver and TWAIN-compliant software

The following provides an information of how to use the Network Scanner Driver.

●Network Scanner Driver

When the Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver is installed, you can upload scanned data from the hard disk of the print controller to a computer using TWAIN-compliant applications.

The scanner driver can be used on the following OS:

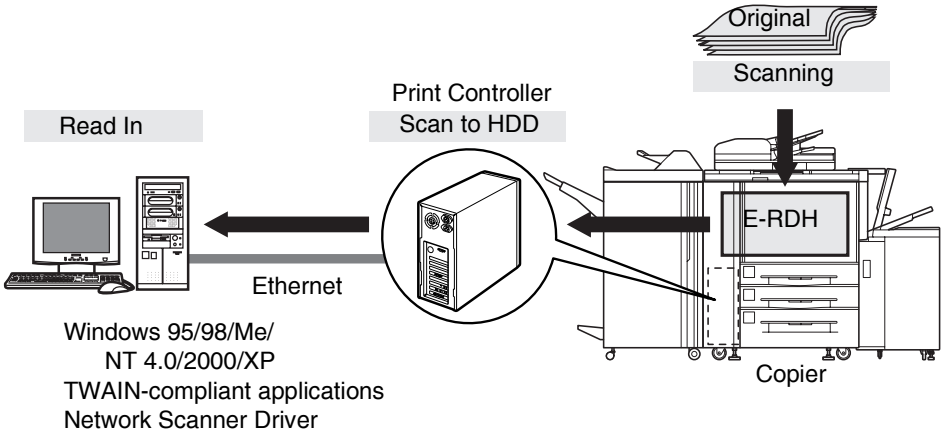
- Windows 95/98/Me
- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows 2000/XP

For the printing system to be used as a scanner, you need the network interface card. The parallel port on the print controller does not support scanning work.

It is necessary that the PC and the network interface card should be assigned appropriate IP addresses, and that the TCP/IP network are enabled.

MEMO

For more information on appropriate IP addresses, contact your network administrator.



Reading In From HDD (Continued)

●To install the Network Scanner Driver

To install the scanner driver, perform the following procedure.

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows.

MEMO

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

2. Set the "User Software CD" on the CD-ROM drive.

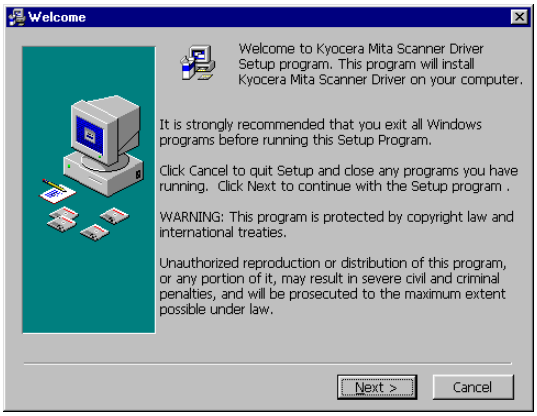
3. Double-click the [My Computer] icon on the desk top to open the [My Computer] window, and then double-click the icon corresponding to the connected CD (i.e. User Software CD).

4. Double-click [Setup.exe] in the [\English\Scanner] folder.

The setup program starts running.

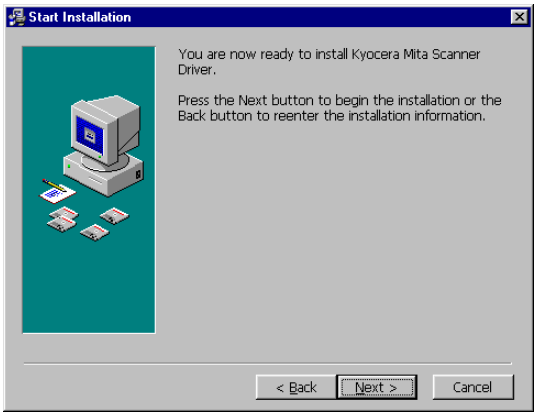
5. Select the language, and click the [OK] button.

The [Welcome] window will appear.


Welcome
Welcome to Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver Setup program. This program will install Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver on your computer.
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup Program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program .
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
Next >
Cancel

6. Click the [Next] button.

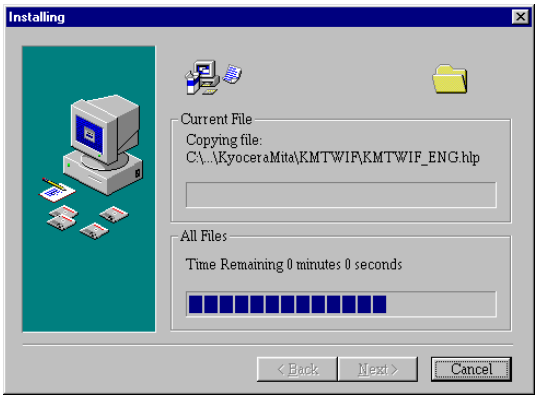
The [Start Installation] window will appear.


Start Installation
You are now ready to install Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver.
Press the Next button to begin the installation or the Back button to reenter the installation information.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

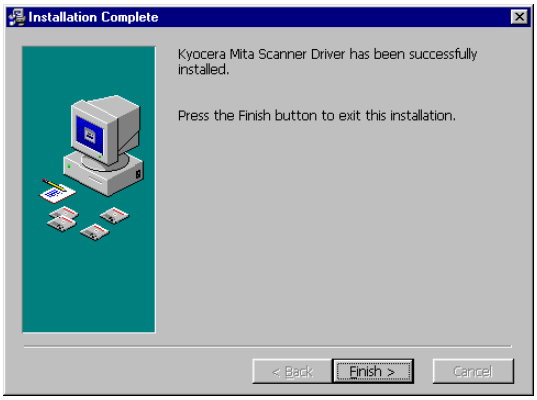
Reading In From HDD (Continued)

7. Click the [Next] button.

The [Installing] window will appear and the file copy process starts.



The [Installation Complete] window will appear.


Installation Complete
Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver has been successfully installed.
Press the Finish button to exit this installation.
< Back
Finish >
Cancel

8. Click the [Finish] button.

The setup program is completed.

Reading In From HDD (Continued)

●TWAIN-compliant applications can be used to read in scanned data.

Select a TWAIN driver (the Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver) from your application, select a scanner (copier having scanned original) using the TWAIN driver, then enter the box number corresponding to the scanned data so that the scanned data can be read in from the print controller's hard disk.

There are several TWAIN-capable applications on the market. In this manual, Adobe Acrobat 4.0 is used to illustrate how to read in scanned data.

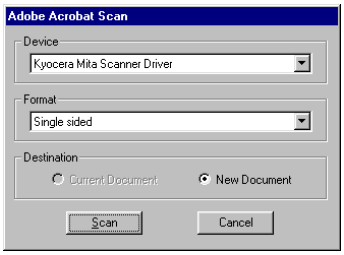
Reading in Scanned Data

To read in scanned data, you should follow these steps:

1. Run the TWAIN-compliant application (Adobe Acrobat 4.0).

2. Select [File] - [Import] - [Scan].

[Adobe Acrobat Scan] window will appear.

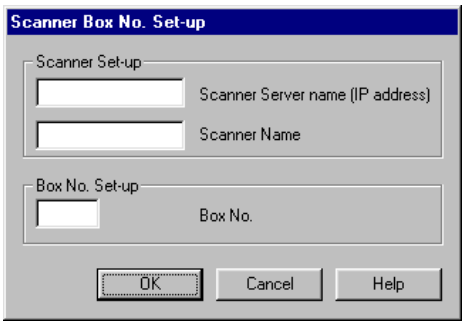


3. Choose [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] from the [Device] pull-down menu.

From the [Format] pull-down menu, choose [Single sided] or [Double sided], as required. Also, choose [Current Document] or [New Document] into which scanned data to be taken in.

4. Click the [Scan] button.

[Scanner Box No. Set-up] window will appear.



Reading In From HDD (Continued)

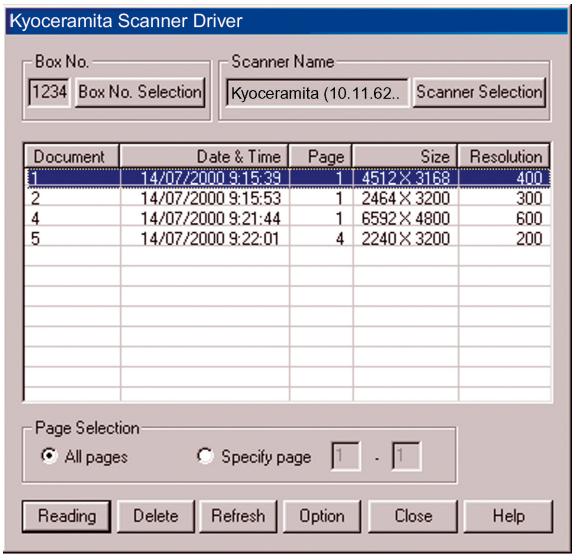
5. In the [Scanner Box No. Set-up] window, enter the server name (IP address) of the scanner you want to connect to, the scanner name for the driver to identify the scanner, and the box number you entered when scanning the document. Then click the [OK] button.

Once the Scanner setting has been set, this window is not displayed the next time you perform a scanning task. To display this window and select another scanner, click the [Scanner Selection] button on the [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window. Then click the [Add] button on the [Scanner Box No. Set-up] window.

Limitation

Neither the DNS nor the NetBIOS names can be used as a Scanner Server name.

The [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window will appear.



6. Select a file from the file list shown in the [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window, then click the [Reading] button to allow the selected file to be read in.

The selected file is read from the hard disk.

MEMO

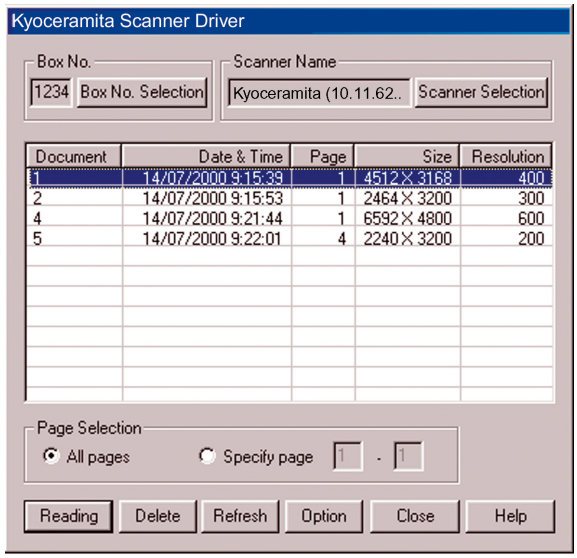
By default, the file is cleared from the controller's hard disk immediately after the file is fully read in. If you want, you can override this default setting so that the file is held in the hard disk.

7. You can open the read-in document within the application for editing/saving.

Reading In From HDD (Continued)

●Features and Settings of the Network Scanner Driver

[Kyoceramita Scanner Driver] window



Information displayed on the [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window are the following.

[Box No.]
Shows the currently selected box number.

[Scanner Name]
Shows the currently selected scanner's name. Any desired name can be entered.

[Document]
Shows scanned data file numbers. Numbers are automatically assigned in sequence.

[Date & Time]
Shows the date and time each scanned data file was generated.

[Page]
Shows the total number of pages of each scanned data file.

[Size]
Shows the horizontal and vertical pixel numbers of the first page of each scanned data file.

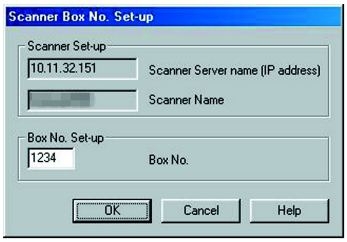
[Resolution]
Shows horizontal resolution (dpi) of the first page of each scanned data file.

Reading In From HDD (Continued)

The [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window contains the following features.

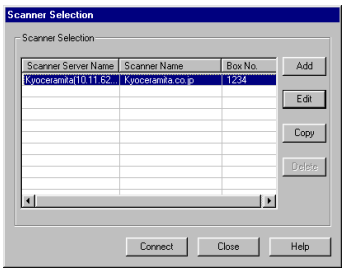
[Box No. Selection] button

Click this button to change only the box number of the currently connected scanner. Specify the box number on the [Scanner Box No. Set-up] window.



[Scanner Selection] button

Click this button when establishing a connection to another scanner, registering new scanner settings, or performing editing, copying and deleting. The [Scanner Selection] window is displayed. In the window, you can establish a connection to another scanner, register new scanner, perform editing, copying and deleting.



[Page Selection]

This button is used to select a page or pages when reading in a scanned data file.

Enter the number of start page and end page. Default is [All Pages]. With applications that cannot handle files containing multiple pages, [Specify page] is set to [1].

If you select [Specify page], you limit pages by changing the total page number of scanned files.

[Reading] button

This reads a selected scanned data file from the scanner.

[Delete] button

This deletes selected scanned data file.

[Refresh] button

This updates information in a scanned data file in the selected box number field, so it reflects all changes you made most recently.

[Option] button

This is used to change various settings of the scanner driver.

[Close] button

This button is used to close the scanner driver.

[Help] button

This button is used to access Help.

Sorting Feature

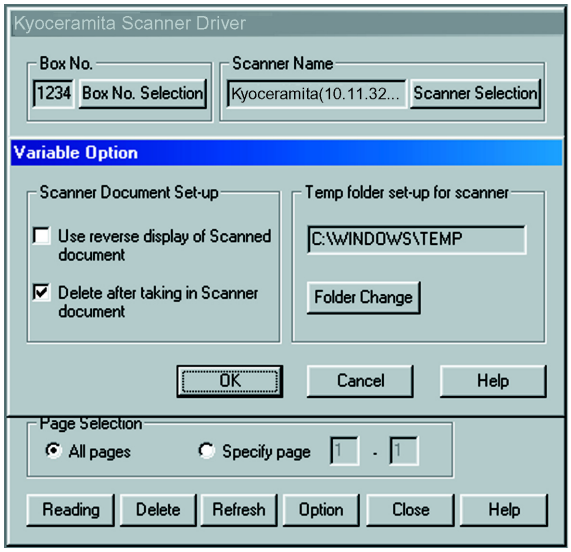
You can sort what is displayed by clicking [Document], [Date & Time], [Page], [Size] and [Resolution].

Reading In From HDD (Continued)

●Variable Option

In the [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window, click the [Option] button to display the [Variable Option] window.

You can set up the various elements of the scanner driver described below.



[Use reverse display of Scanned document]

Reverse the image of the scanned document.

[Delete after taking in Scanner document]

Delete a scanned document file held in the scanner after reading it in.

[Temp folder set-up for scanner]

This allows you to select a directory for temporarily stored data before saving it to the computer's hard disk.

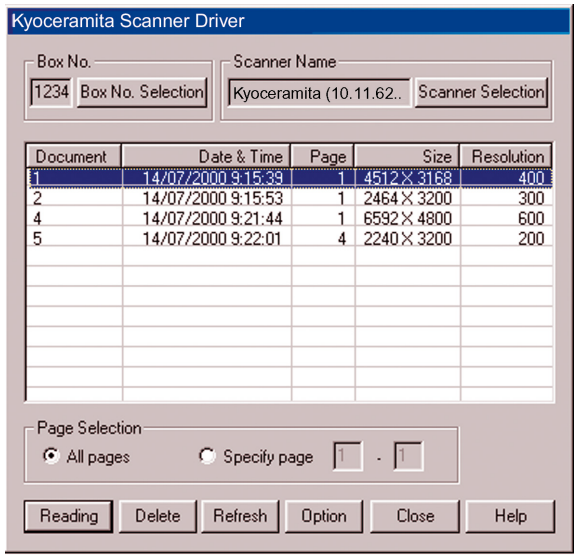
MEMO

Click the [Folder Change] button, then specify where you want to temporarily store the current scanned document.

Deleting images stored in the HDD

Perform the following steps to delete a scanned data file from the hard disk.

1. **Run the TWAIN-compliant application (Adobe Acrobat 4.0).**
2. **Select [File] - [Import] - [Scan].**
3. **Select [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] in the [Device] on the [Adobe Acrobat Scan] window.**
4. **Click the [Scan] button.**
   The [Scanner Box No. Set-up] window will appear.
5. **On the [Scanner Selection] window, enter the server name (IP address) to access the scanner, the scanner name to be identified by the driver and the box number you entered when scanning the original document, and then click the [OK] button.**
   The [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window will appear.



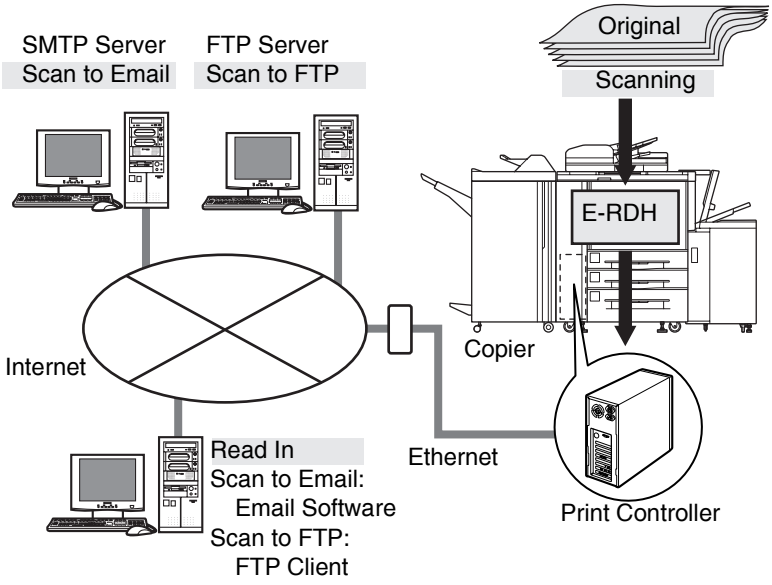
6. **From the file list shown in the [Kyocera Mita Scanner Driver] window, select a file you want to delete, and then click the [Delete] button.**
   The selected scanned data is deleted.

Images Scanned to FTP or E-mail

Scanned data sent as an attached file to an e-mail can be read by Email applications.

Scanned data uploaded to FTP servers can be downloaded on computers by FTP client software.

Refer to corresponding applications's manuals.



Cannot connect to the scanner

When an error message appears when attempting to access the scanner, perform the following checks:

MEMO
Consult your network administrator for problems with or questions about your network settings.

1. Check whether the correct IP address of the scanner has been entered.

If the IP address is not correct, enter the correct one.

If the entered IP address is correct, go on to step 2.

2. From the DOS prompt run a ping test through the destination host to the IP address of the scanner.

e.g. : C:/>ping 192.168.101.152

If the ping test fails, check whether the copier's main power is switched on, and also check the network cable for proper connection.

If the ping test is successful, go on to step 3.

3. Check whether the IP router is correctly set.

If it is not correctly set, set it correctly.

If there is no problem in IP router setup, go on to step 4.

4. Trace the routing to the scanner to check whether there are any error conditions within the network.

If any error conditions are found, eliminate them.

If no error is found and yet the connection to the scanner cannot be established, contact your service representative.

When an Error Message Appears

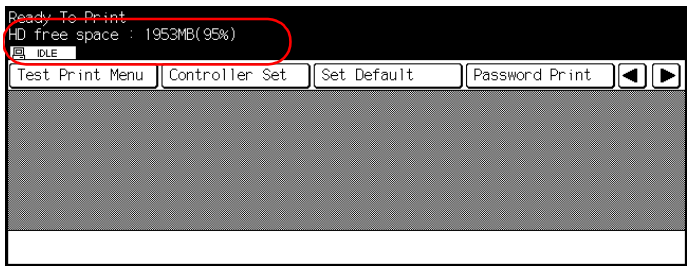
The following describes the cause and the solution for the error message that appears during scanning.

●Cause

The available disk space of this printing system may become less than 3% of total disk capacity. Make sure the available disk space of the hard disk by following the following procedures.

1. Press the [MODE] button to open the printer mode basic screen.

Reference (p.475) Switching Between Modes



2. Make sure the [HD free space] displayed at the red circle on the upper window.

●Solution

To increase the available disk space:

- Delete scan jobs saved on the hard disk in the print controller from the computer on the network.

Reference (p.468) Deleting images stored in the HDD

- Print confidential output print jobs (password print) stored on the hard disk in the print controller from the control panel.

Reference (p.510) Deleting a Password Print Job

- If you have configured the automatic timer capability at [Controller Set] - [ScanDataAutoDel.] in the printer mode basic screen (the default is 24 hours), scanned data stored on the hard disk in the print controller is automatically deleted after the specified period of time.

Reference (p.492) Setting the ScanDataAutoDel.

●Cautions

Print jobs will not be printed if the required disk space is not available.

If a scan job is transmitted when the required disk space is not available, an error message appears and the job is cancelled automatically.

Cancelled scan jobs are listed on [Non complete Job List] that appears when [NON COMPLETE JOB LIST] is pressed in the Non Complete Job List screen.

Reference (p.430) Checking on non complete jobs

Scan ErrorList

When scanned image files sitting on the hard disk of the print controller are deleted without being output from the print controller by course except user operations, relative information is displayed as a scan error list.

●Listing Objects

Listed are image files and the corresponding management data stored on the hard disk of the print controller as a result of the scan using the "Scan to FTP", the "Scan to Email" or the "Scan to HDD" feature.

●Causes of Error

- The automatic deletion feature (ScanDataAutoDel) was activated in the "Scan to HDD" process.
- The file was not successfully sent to an FTP server in the "Scan to FTP" process because, for example, of connection timeout or login error.
- The Email relay was not completed on the part of the SMTP server in the "Scan to Email" process. Remember, however, the print controller does not identify the cause of errors developed after the SMTP relay has been completed.

MEMO

When a job is interrupted in the process of uploading from the engine, the job is handled on the scan error list on the part of the engine and is not displayed on the print controller.

●Accessing the List

The scan error job list is shown on the [Scan Error List] in the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

●Content of the List

The list shows the following, one line for each error-developed destination. If "FTP" and "Email" were both enabled, one line is assigned to one error in each of them.

Destination

For the destination, an FTP server name, an Email address or a HDD Box No. is shown. There are occasions when only the first few characters are shown because of the display space limits.

If multiple Email addresses were specified, only the first few characters of a string of comma-separated addresses are shown.

File Name

This refers to a file name managed by the FTP server in the "Scan to FTP" mode, or to an attachment file name in the "Scan to Email" mode.

Factor

The cause of an error is displayed within the display space limits, sometimes in the form of error codes.

●Deleting List Data

A maximum of 16-line list of data is kept in memory. As an additional non-output scan job is detected, the oldest one is deleted from the list in sequence.

Section

4

Control Panel (for Administrator)

Chapter 15 Control Panel 474

Chapter 16 Configuration of Printer Setting Menu . 481

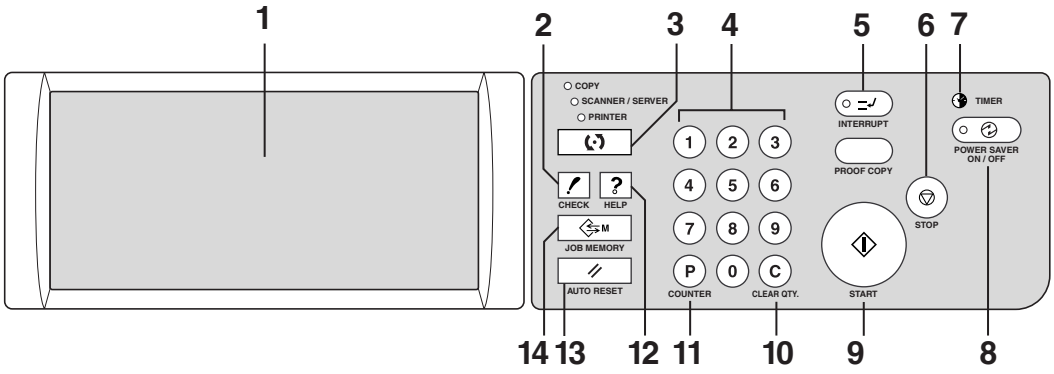
Chapter 17 Print Job Control 505

Names and Functions of the Control Panel

You can set up the printing system from the control panel of the copier.

This chapter describes the basic operation of the control panel, the setup menu and functions of the printing system setup. Refer to the operating manual of the copier for other functions and screens of the control panel.

The control panel has the following names and functions.



	Name	Function
1	LCD TOUCH SCREEN	Displays printing system status; various setting menus and setup items; help information; interactive screens; and touch keys for selecting all functions.
2	CHECK	Displays a screen showing all settings that are selected for the current job when setting up the Wait mode on the printer driver screen.
3	MODE	Switches the machine operation mode to copy, printer, and scanner/server in turn.
4	KEYPAD	Enters numeric values.
5	INTERRUPT	Stops printing in progress to allow copying from the platen glass.
6	STOP	Stops the copying sequence, scanning or printing; deletes the stored memory.
7	TIMER	Lights when the timer function is set.
8	POWER SAVER ON/OFF	Activates Power-saving mode for times when the copier is inactive, or activates timer interrupt mode when weekly timer function is active.
9	START	Activates scanning or copying. Restarts the printing after Wait Mode - Wait or Proof.
10	[C] (CLEAR QTY.)	Allows resetting of print quantity.
11	[P] (COUNTER)	Displays the Counter Screen or accesses programming modes for setting special functions.
12	HELP	Displays a screen with help for the currently selected function.
13	AUTO RESET	Restores copier to automatic mode settings or to key operator settings.
14	JOB MEMORY	Displays screens for selecting job store/job recall functions.

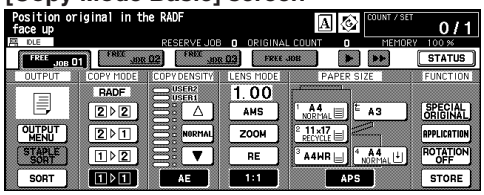
Switching Between Modes

The main body of the copier has following three modes:

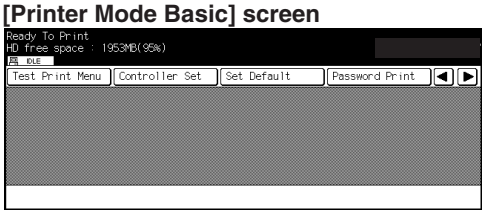
- Copy Mode
- Printer Mode
- Scanner/Server Mode

If you press the [MODE] button, the basic screens for each mode appear in the LCD touch screen sequentially.

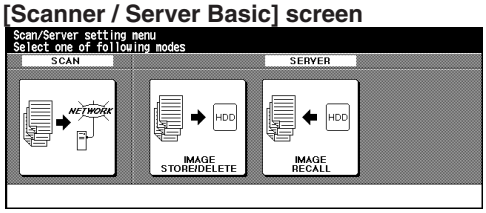
[Copy Mode Basic] screen



[Printer Mode Basic] screen



[Scanner / Server Basic] screen



This chapter describes how to operate the copier from the basic screen of the Printer mode and the Copy mode.

Select the target mode with the [MODE] button when you perform the operation described in this chapter.

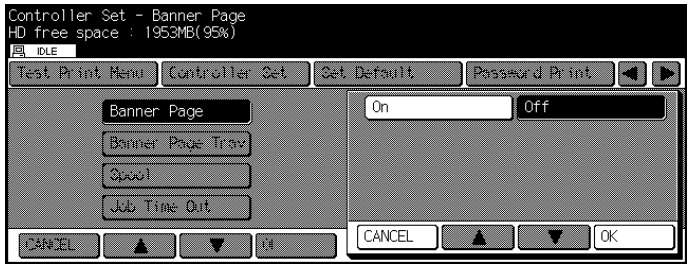
LCD Touch Screen

You may be required to operate the copier from the LCD touch screen when using this printing system.

Make sure to understand the following basic operations for using the system.

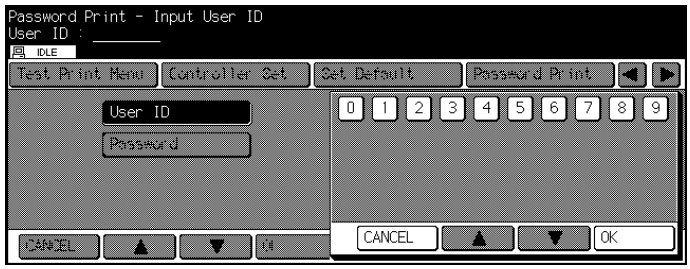
●Selecting an item

Touch button-shaped item displayed on the LCD touch screen to select the item. Selected items are high-lighted when touched.



●Inputting information

Touch alphabet characters and numbers displayed on the LCD touch screen to input the setting value.

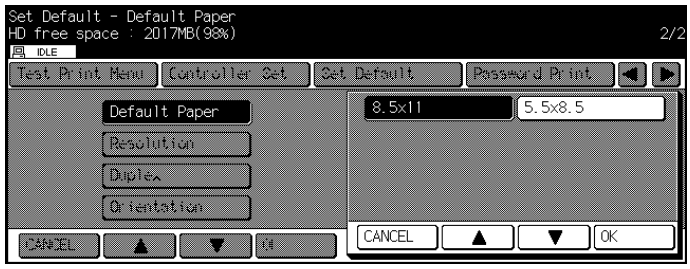


MEMO

There may be cases where you must input information from the numeric keypad on the control panel.

●Moving a page

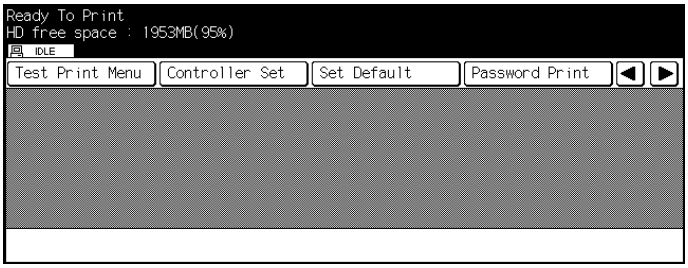
If items are too many to display on a page, there may be cases where the items are shown across multiple pages. Touch easily the [▼][▲] key on the LCD touch screen to move between pages.



LCD Touch Screen (Continued)

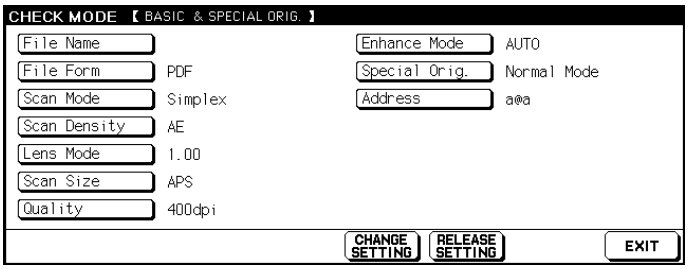
●Displaying subsequent screen

Touch [◀][▶] keys or [▲][▼] keys displayed on the LCD touch screen to display the remainder of the selection item list or the menu.



●Choosing an operation

Touch [OK], [Cancel] or [Exit] key displayed on the LCD touch screen to choose the selection or the operation.



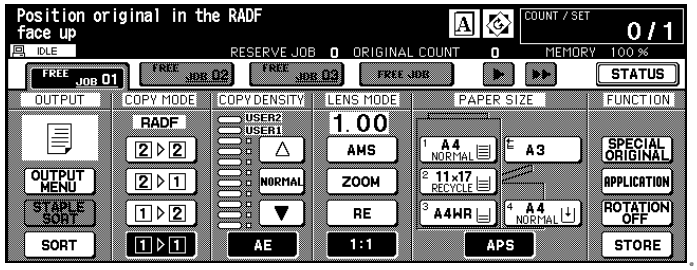
The LCD touch screen is covered with glass. Do not drop a heavy object on the glass, or put excess weight or pressure on it; otherwise the glass may break or become scratched.

Basic Screen

After the power switch is turned on, the Kyoceramita name displays for approximately 10 seconds, until initial machine settings are established.

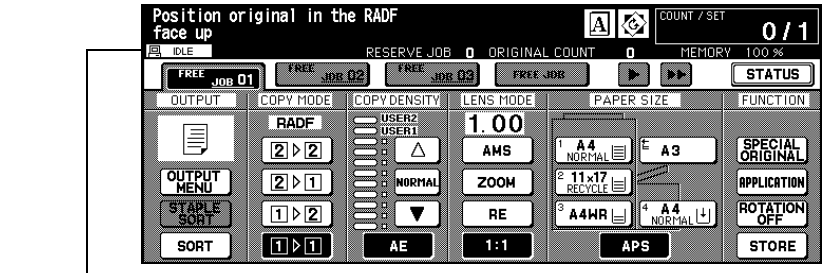
Once the copier gets ready to print/copy/scan, the [Copy Mode Basic] screen will appear.

[Copy Mode Basic] screen



The [Copy Mode Basic] screen displays the status of current mode and the settings.

The status of each mode is also displayed with a icon as shown in the illustration below.



Notice icon

[Notice icon] means the following when the copier is in Print mode:

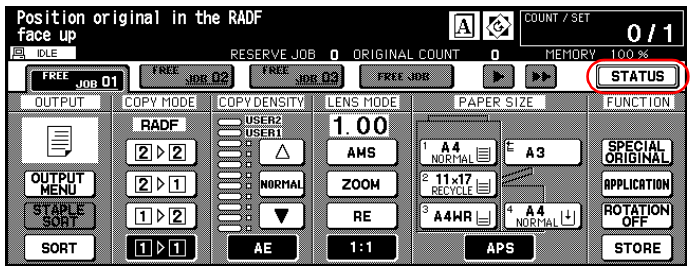
Status	Description
IDLE	The printing system is ready to receive the print data from your computer.
PRINT	The printing system is currently printing. The print data rasterized in the printing system is now being transferred to the E-RDH memory in the copier.
ERROR	The printing system generated an error message.
WAIT	The printing system is in warm-up mode.
INITIALIZING	The printing system is in initialization process.

Confirming the Status of a Print Job

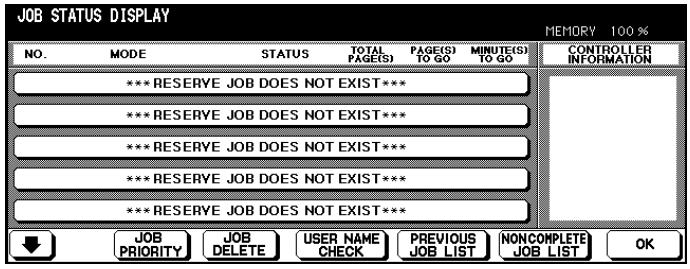
You can confirm the status of a print job from the control panel on the copier in this printing system.

●Operating procedures

1. Touch the [STATUS] key on the [Copy Mode Basic] screen.



The [Job Status Display] screen will appear.



2. Confirm the status of a print job.

3. Touch the [OK] key.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Confirming the Status of a Print Job (Continued)

●Contents of the [Job Status] Screen

Contents of the [Job Status] screen are as follows:

Item	Contents	
NO.	Displays the No. (1-99) for each job (print/copy/scan) assigned to the copier.	
MODE	Displays the current operation mode of the printing system:	
	COPIER	Current mode is the Copier mode
	PRINTER	Current mode is the Printer mode
	SCANNER / SERVER	Current mode is the Scanner/Server mode
STATUS	READY	Ready to use in each mode
	ERROR	Error in each mode
	PRINTING	Output in each mode
	RESERVE	Ready to reserve
	NO PAPER	No paper in paper tray in Copy/Print mode
	STOP	Stop in each mode
	JAM	Jam in each mode
	INTERRUPT	Interrupting the previous job
TOTAL PAGE(s)	Displays the number of print originals for each job. (0 - 9999)	
PAGE(s) TO GO	Displays the remaining print count of the job. 0 to 9999 (The number exceeding 9999 will be displayed as 9999↑.)	
MINUTE(s) TO GO	Displays the time (in minutes) required for completing the job. 1 to 999 Exceeding 999 minutes:999↑ Shorter than 1 minute:<1	
Other	The following message will be displayed on the bar when the reserved job does not exist. RESERVED JOB DOES NOT EXIST	

Setting up the Printer from the Control Panel

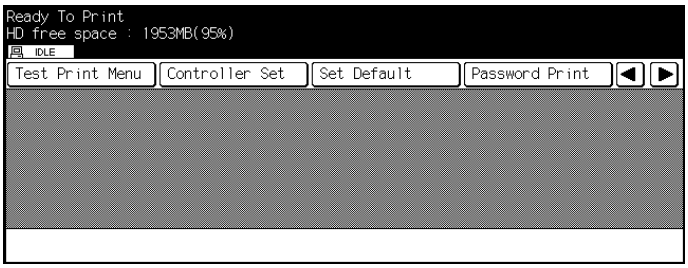
You can set up the printer from the control panel on the copier in this printing system.

●[Printer Mode Basic] Screen

When the printing system starts properly, the [Printer Mode Basic] screen can be displayed on the LCD by pressing the [MODE] button.

When the [MODE] button is pressed again, the LCD changes to the [Copy Mode Basic] Screen, and the normal copy settings become available.

[Printer Mode Basic] Screen



●Settings can be selected

The following settings can be selected from the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

Item	Contents
[Test Print Menu]	Display the [Test Print Setup] screen. You can print a test print by selecting an item.
[Controller Set]	Display the [Controller Set] screen. You can perform various settings related to the print controller.
[Set Default]	Display the [Set Default] screen. You can return various settings to factory default by selecting the item.
[Password Print]	Display the [Password Print] screen. Refer to "Chapter 5 Printing from Windows" for more information. Reference ▸ (p.256)
[PCL Setup]	Display the [PCL5e Setup] screen. You can perform various settings related to PCL5e.
[Network Setup]	Display the [Network Setup] screen. Refer to "Chapter 19 Copier Setup" for more information. Reference ▸ (p.525)
[Scan Error List]	Display the [Scan Error List] screen. Refer to "Chapter 14 Troubles Concerning the Scanner" for more information. Reference ▸ (p.472)

Setting up the Printer from the Control Panel (Continued)

●Setting Items

The following table shows the items that can be set from the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

Item	Contents	
[Test Print Menu]	PCL5e Demo Page	
	PCL5e Font List	
	PS Demo Page	
	PS Font List	
	Config. Data	
	NIC Config.	
[Controller Set]	Banner Page	On / Off*
	Banner Page Tray	Auto Tray* / Tray1 / Tray2 / Tray3 / Tray4 / Bypass Tray
	Spool	On / Off*
	Job Time Out	5sec. / 10sec. / 15sec. / 20sec. / 30sec. / 60sec.* / 120sec. / 180sec. / 240sec. / 300sec.
	Copier Time Out	15 sec. / 30 sec.* / 60 sec. / 90 sec.
	ScanDataAutoDel.	Off / 12 hour / 24 hour* / 2 days / 4 days / 6 days / 8 days / 10 days
	PDL Select	Auto* / PCL5e / PostScript
[Set Default]	Default Paper	A3R, A4, A5, B4R, B5, B6R, F4R,11 x 17R, 8.5 x 14R,8.5 x 11*, 5.5 x 8.5R, Postcard, 8KR, 5.5 x 8.5 The paper sizes you can set differ depending on specifications in the country and trays.
	Resolution	400 x 400 dpi / 600 x 600 dpi*
	Duplex	Off* / Long Edge / Short Edge
	Orientation	Portrait* / Landscape
	Copies	1* to 9999
	Override Paper	Off* / 8.5 x 11 → A4 / A4 → 8.5 x 11
[Password Print]	Refer to "Chapter 5 Printing from Windows". Reference (p.256)	
[PCL Setup]	Point Size	
	Pitch	
	Font Number	Refer to "Appendix C Font". Reference (p.610)
	Font Lines	
	Courier Style	Dark / Light*
	CR/LF Mapping	CR/LF / CR*
	Input Tray	Auto Tray* / Tray1 / Tray2 / Tray3 / Tray4 / Bypass Tray
	Symbol Set	Refer to "Appendix D Symbol Set". Reference (p.621)
[Network Setup]	Refer to "Chapter 19 Copier Setup". Reference (p.525)	
[Controller Time]	Refer to "Chapter 14 Troubles Concerning the Scanner". Reference (p.472)	

Setting up the Printer from the Control Panel (Continued)

MEMO

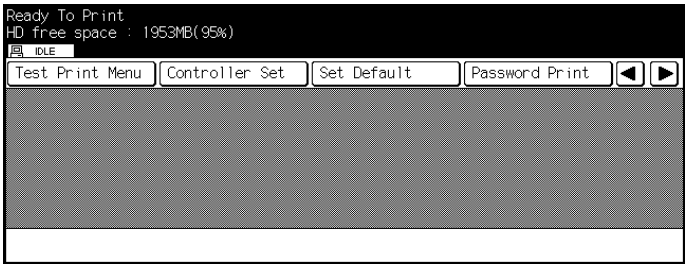
- The setting values marked with an asterisk (*) are the default.
- [PS Demo Page] and [PS Font List] can be selected only when the PS3 option is installed.
- Refer to the followings for specific procedures on setting up the printer from the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.
- The setting values may vary depending on models of machine.
- Some models of machine may not correspond to [PDL select], [Resolution], [Copies] and [Override Paper].
- The setting of [PCL Setup] may vary depending on models of machine.
- Test Print Menu Reference (p.484)
- Controller Set Reference (p.486)
- Set Default Reference (p.496)

Printing the Test Print

You can print the test print from the control panel.

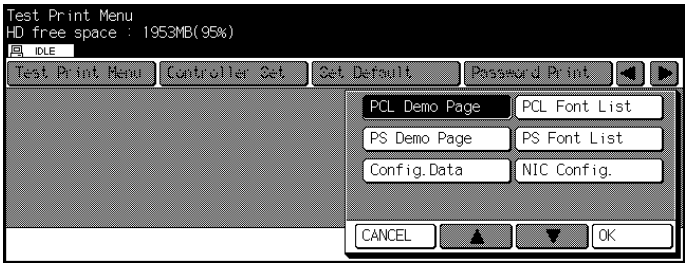
1. Press the [Mode] button, displays the [Printer Mode Basic] Screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



2. Touch the [Test Print Menu] key.

The [Test Print Setup] screen will appear.



3. Touch the key for the list you want to print the test print.

4. Touch the [OK] key.

The selected list will print.
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

MEMO

You can return to the [Printer Mode Basic] screen without printing the test print by touching the [CANCEL] key.

Printing the Test Print (Continued)

The following table shows the descriptions of the selectable lists and the printed lists.

Item	Contents
PCL5e Demo Page	Select to print the PCL5e Demo Page.
PCL5e Font List	Select to print the PCL5e Font List. Reference (p.604)
PS Demo Page	Select to print the PS Demo Page.
PS Font List	Select to print the installed PS font sample. Reference (p.607)
Config. Data	Select [Config. Data] to print the System Configuration data immediately. Items of the Config. Data are as follows: • Version information • Set Default (Default Paper / Orientation / Duplex / Resolution / Print Quality) • Controller Set (Interpreter / Banner Page / Job Time Out / Copier Time Out) • Installed Paper (Bypass Tray / Tray1 / Tray2 / Tray3 / Tray4) • Device Status (Total RAM installed / Hard disk free space) • Miscellaneous (PCL5e pages printed)
NIC Config.	Select to print information on the NIC configuration. Refer to "Chapter 19 Copier Setup" for details. Reference (p.524)

Setting the Banner Page

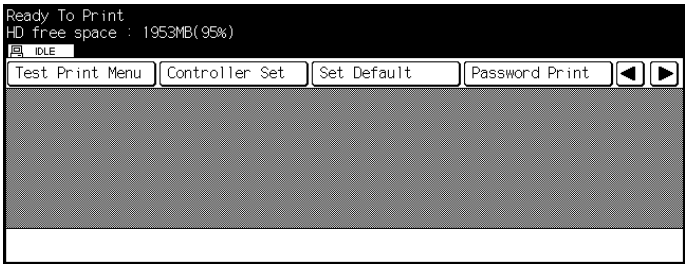
You can set whether or not to print the banner page from the control panel.

On a banner page as a log file of the printer, the followings are shown. The shown information varies depending on what printer driver you use.

Job	A job number is shown(Example:JOB #45).
User ID	It is always shown as [N/A].
User Name	A login name to the computer is shown.
Title	An application name and a file name are shown(Example:Microsoft Word-Test.doc).
Source	Network Card or Paralled is shown.
Language	It is shown as PCL5.
Printed	A date and a time are shown. Example:SAT DEC 22 21:06:47 2001

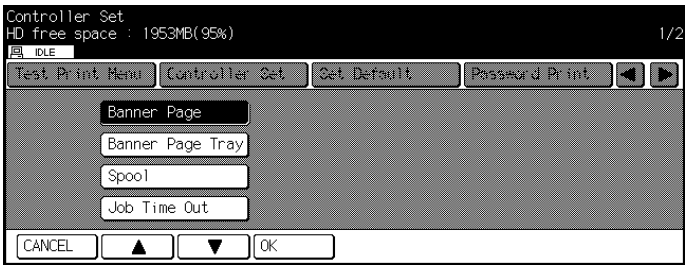
1. Press the [Mode] button to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



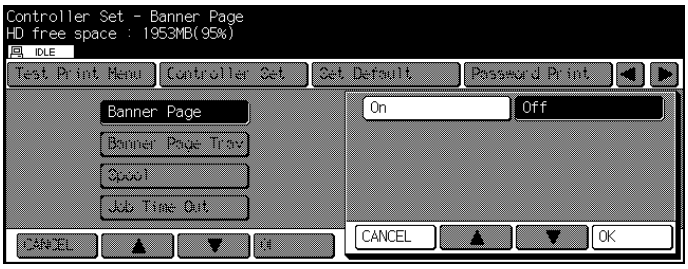
2. Touch the [Controller Set] key.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Banner Page] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Banner Page Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the [On] or [Off] key.

Setting the Banner Page (Continued)

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The banner page is set according to your selection.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Controller Set] screen without changing the setting

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

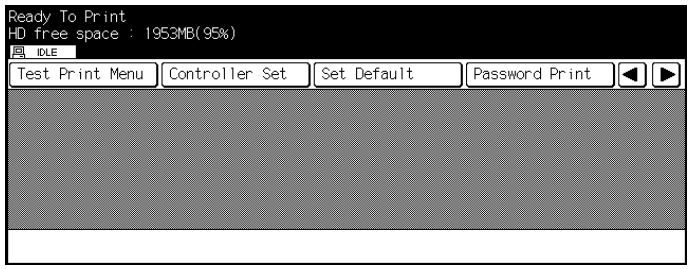
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Banner Page Tray

The following table shows the descriptions of the selectable lists and the printed lists.

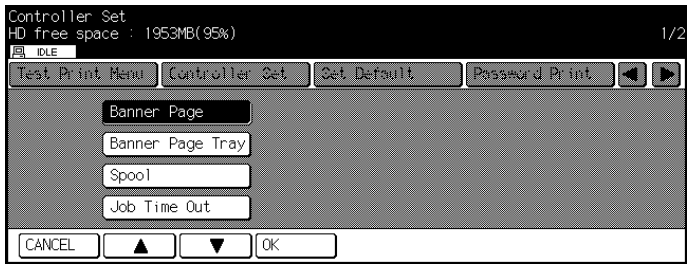
1. Press the [Mode] button to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



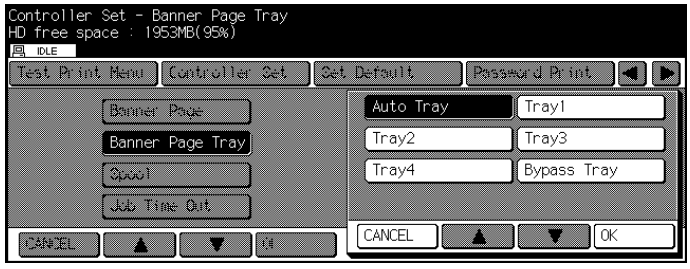
2. Touch the [Controller Set] key.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Banner Page Tray] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Banner Page Tray Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the [On] key or the [Off] key.

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The banner page is set according to your selection.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Controller Set] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

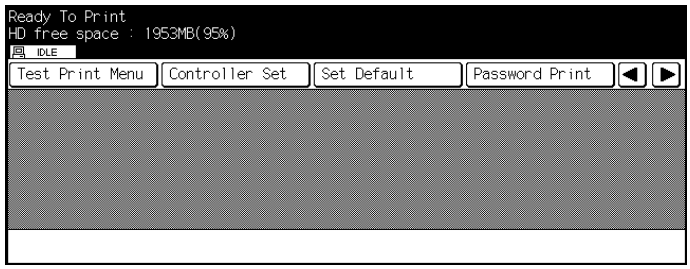
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Job Time Out

You can set the value of the job time out setting from the control panel.

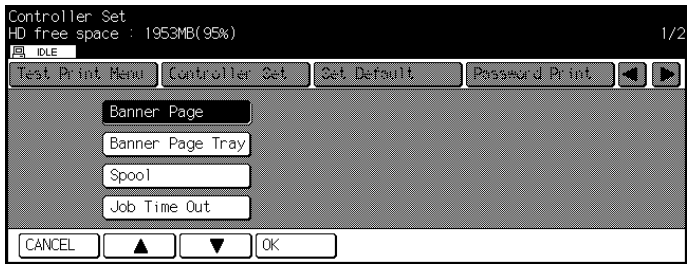
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



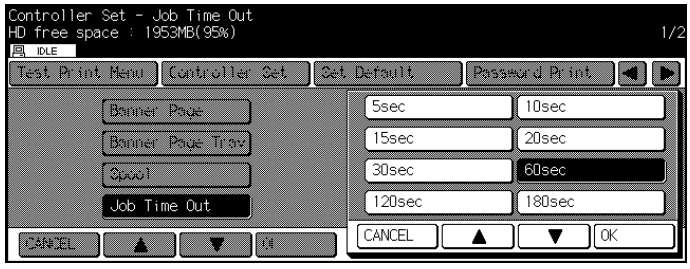
2. Touch the [Controller Set] key.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Job Time Out] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Job Time Out Set] screen will appear.



MEMO

Touch [▲] and [▼] to display the previous screen and the following screen of the [Job Time Out Set] screen respectively.

4. Touch the key for the value that you want to set.

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The job time out is set according to your selection.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Controller Set] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Copier Time Out

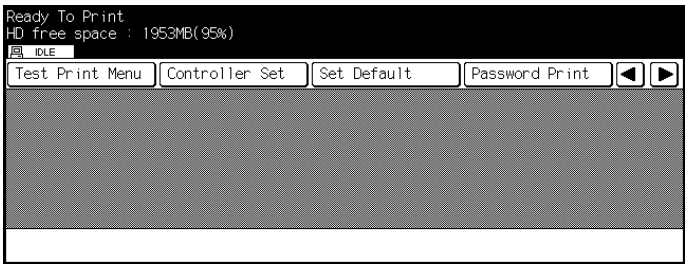
You can set the value of the copier time out setting from the control panel.

MEMO

The printing system receives the print data when it reaches the copier timeout value after the copy operation from the control panel of the copier.

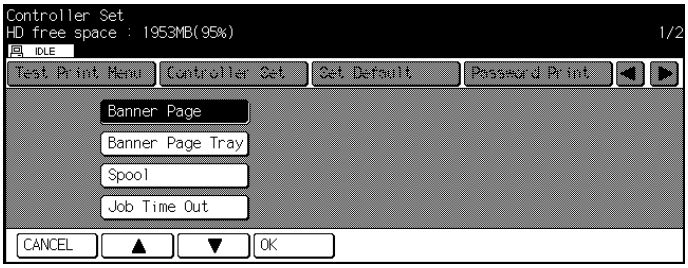
1. Press the [Mode] button, displays the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



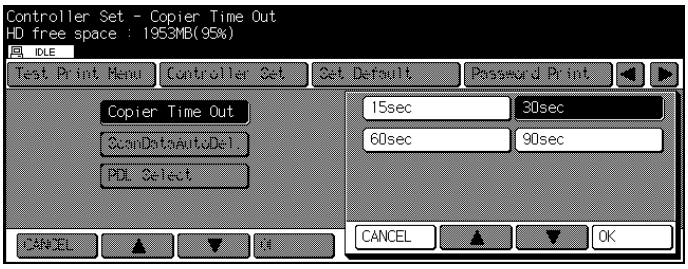
2. Touch the [Controller Set] key.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Copier Time Out] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Copier Time Out Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the value that you want to set.

Setting the Copier Time Out (Continued)

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The copier time out is set according to your selection.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Controller Set] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the ScanDataAutoDel.

You can set the time period for saving scanned data before the printing system deletes it automatically from the control panel.

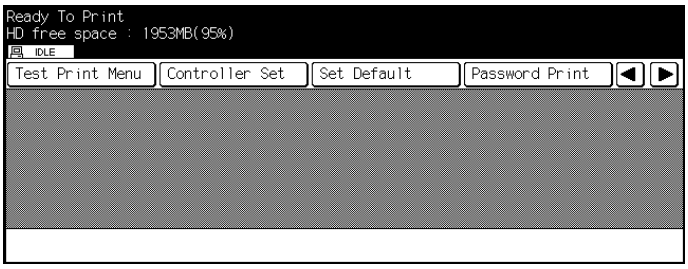
MEMO

The printing system deletes the scanned data automatically when it reaches the time out value.

If you set the ScanDataAutoDel setting to other than [OFF], you can reserve the free space in the internal hard disk automatically.

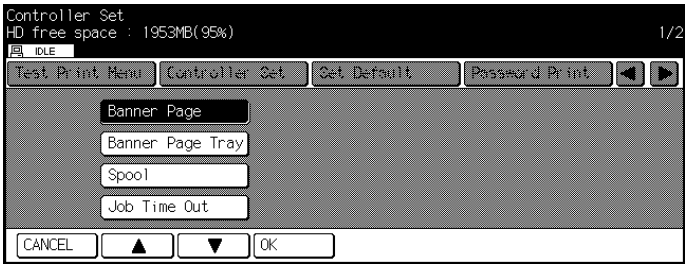
1. Press the [Mode] button, displays the [Printer Mode Basic] Screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



2. Touch the [Controller Set] key.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.

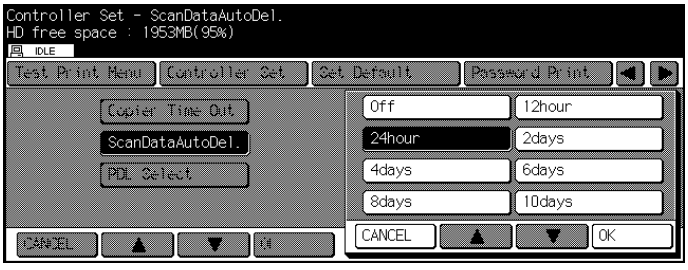


MEMO

Touch [▲] key and [▼] key to display the previous screen and the following screen of the [Controller Set] screen respectively.

3. Touch the [ScanDataAutoDel.] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [ScanDataAutoDel. Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the value that you want to set.

Setting the ScanDataAutoDel. (Continued)

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The ScanDataAutoDel setting is set according to your selection.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Controller Set] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

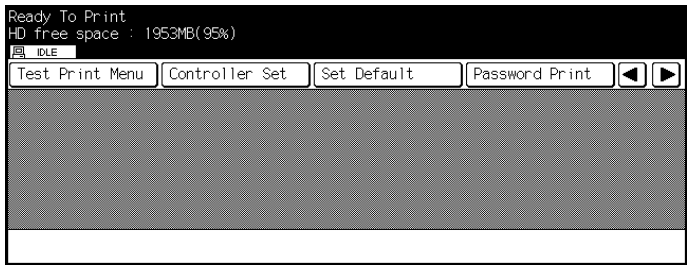
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the PDL

You can set the PDL from the control panel.

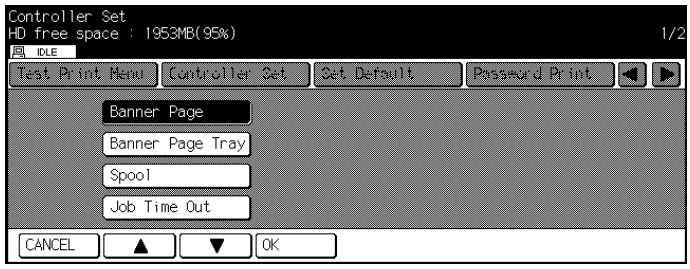
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



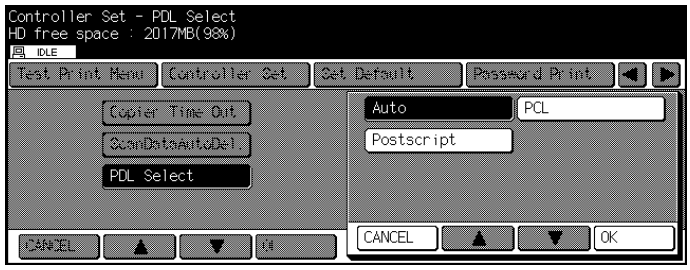
2. Touch the [Controller Set] key.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [PDL Select] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [PDL Select Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the PDL that you want to set.

MEMO

[PostScript] can be selected only when the PS3 option is installed.

Setting the PDL (Continued)

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The PDL is set according to your selection.

The [Controller Set] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Controller Set] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Default Paper size

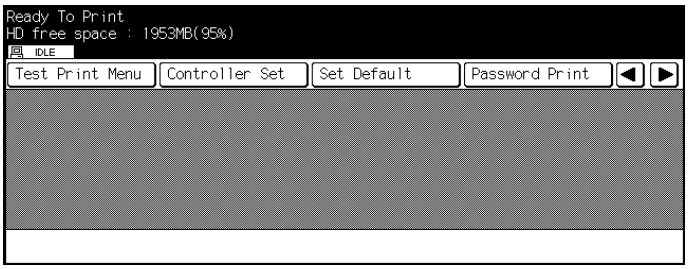
You can set the default paper from the control panel.

MEMO

The default paper that is set here is used if the print job does not request the specific paper.

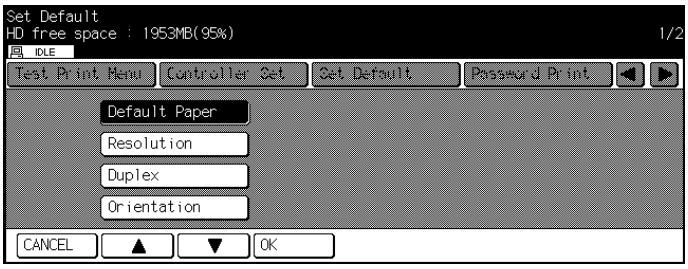
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



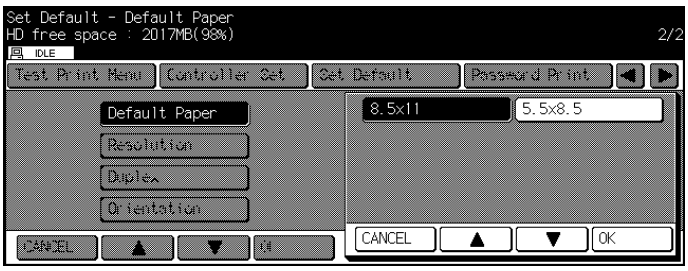
2. Touch the [Set Default] key.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Default Paper] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Default Paper Set] screen will appear.



MEMO

Touch [▲] key and [▼] key to display the previous screen and the following screen of the [Default Paper Size] screen respectively.

4. Touch the key for the paper that you want to set.

Setting the Default Paper size (Continued)

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The default paper is set according to your selection.

The [Default Paper Set] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Set Default] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

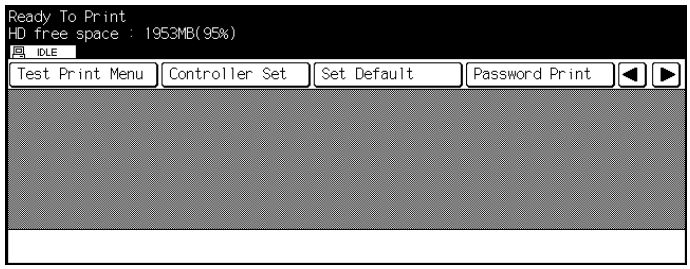
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Resolution

You can set the resolution from the control panel.

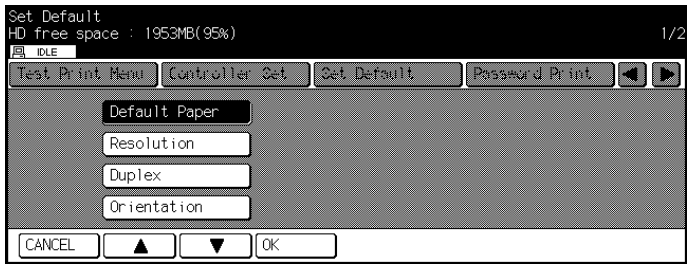
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



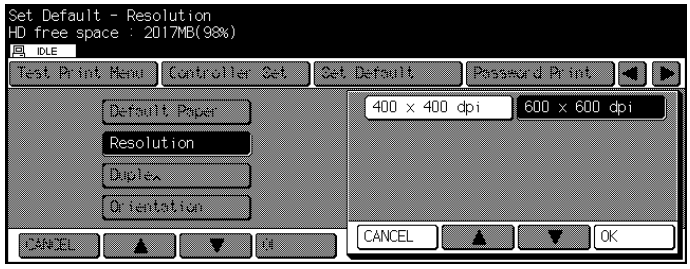
2. Touch the [Set Default] key.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Resolution] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Resolution Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the resolution that you want to set.

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The resolution is set according to your selection.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Set Default] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

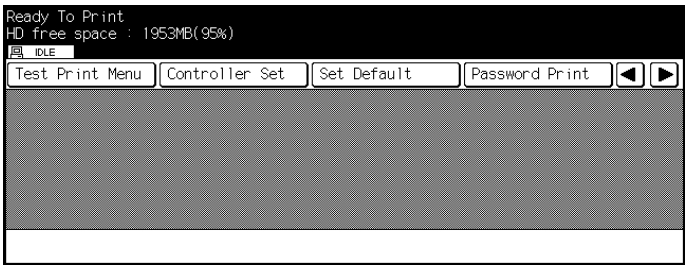
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Default Value for the Duplex

You can set the default printing direction at the duplex printing from the control panel.

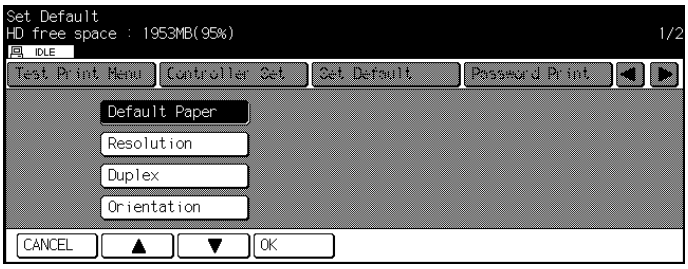
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



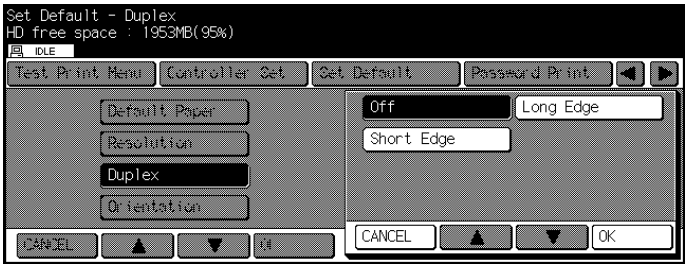
2. Touch the [Set Default] key.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Duplex] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Duplex Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the printing direction at the duplex printing that you want to set.

MEMO

- Off : set Duplex off (Default)
- Long Edge : set Long Edge Duplex
- Short Edge : set Short Edge Duplex

Setting the Default Value for the Duplex (Continued)

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The default value for the Duplex is set according to your selection.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Set Default] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

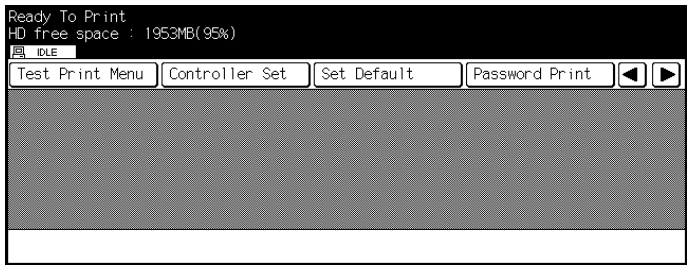
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Default Orientation

You can set the default orientation of the paper from the control panel.

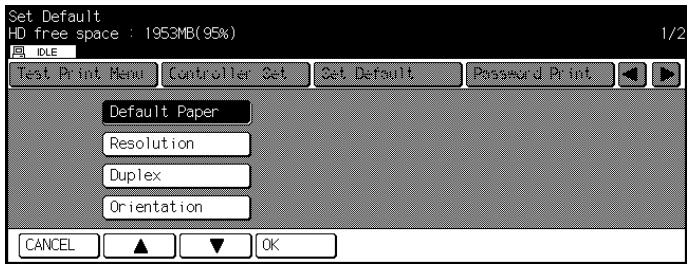
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



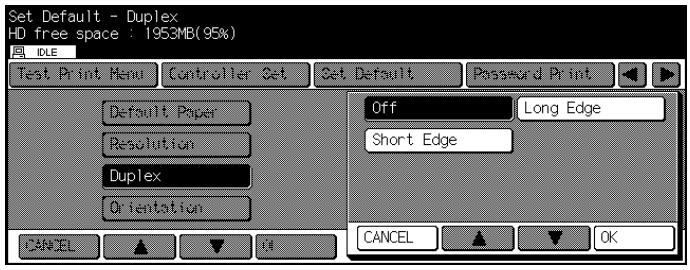
2. Touch the [Set Default] key.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Orientation] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Orientation Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the orientation that you want to set.

MEMO

- Portrait : set the Orientation to Portrait (Default)
- Landscape : set the Orientation to Landscape

Setting the Default Orientation (Continued)

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The default orientation is set according to your selection.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Set Default] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

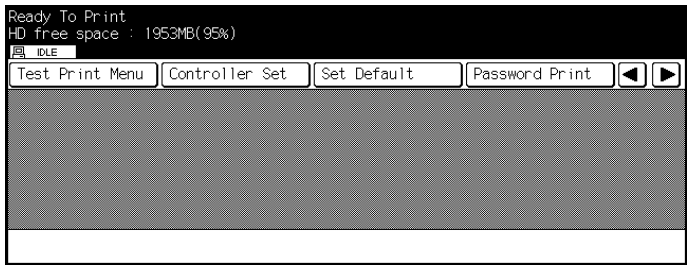
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Number of Pages to Copy

You can set the number of pages to copy from the control panel.

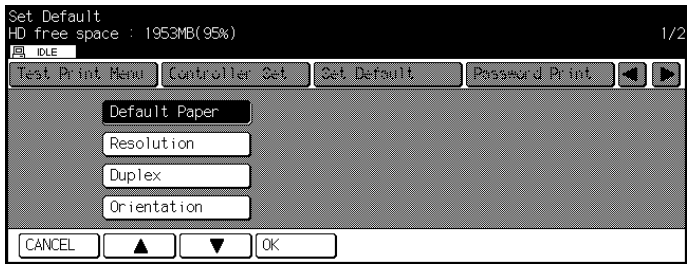
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



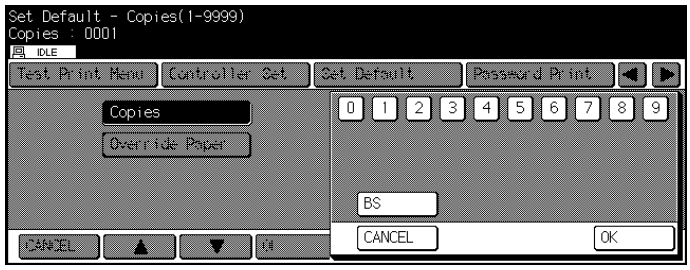
2. Touch the [Set Default] key.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Copies] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Copies Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the value that you want to set.

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The number of pages to be copied is set according to your selection.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Set Default] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

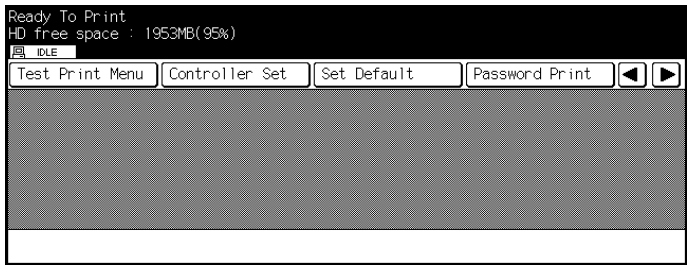
The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Setting the Override Paper

You can set the override paper from the control panel.

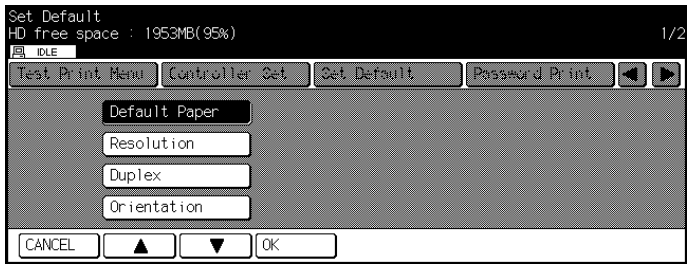
1. Press the [Mode] button, to display the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



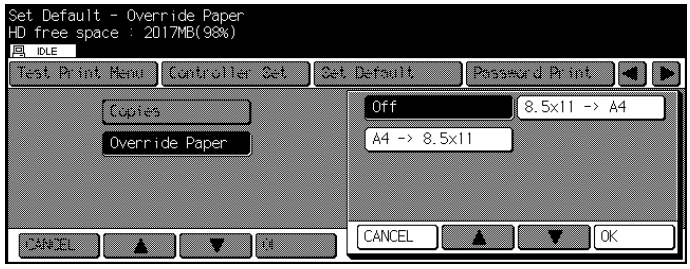
2. Touch the [Set Default] key.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.



3. Touch the [Override Paper] key, and then touch the [OK] key.

The [Override Paper Set] screen will appear.



4. Touch the key for the override papaer that you want to set.

5. Touch the [OK] key.

The override paper is set according to your selection.

The [Set Default] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [CANCEL] key if you want to return to the [Set Default] screen without changing the setting.

6. Touch the [CANCEL] key.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Using the Forced Output Function

You can use the forced output function from the control panel in this printing system.

●Forced Output

When the tray runs out of preset size papers, or when the tray does not contain papers whose size meets the demand from the printer driver, the printing system displays a message prompting the user to load additional papers.

The process by which the user selects a different size paper on the operation panel and lets printing continue is referred to as "Force Output."

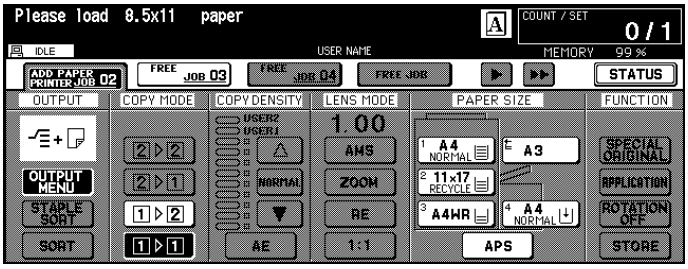
MEMO

When you choose not to use Forced Output, delete the print job, and change the setting concerned on the application, or set the requested size of papers in the tray.

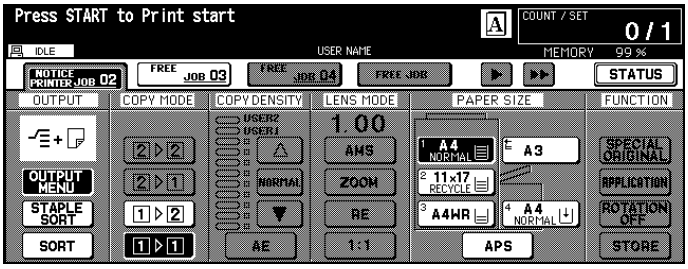
Reference (p.171)

●Procedure

1. Make sure that the LCD touch screen shows a message prompting the user to load additional papers of proper size.



2. Touch the key of the desired size displayed in the paper sizes area.



3. Press the [START] button.

4. The printout is made on the selected size of papers.

Reserving a Print Job

You can reserve a print job from the control panel in this printing system.

●Reserve

Reserving means that you make the settings for the next copying job while a job is printing, and print out the reserved job when the current job is completed.

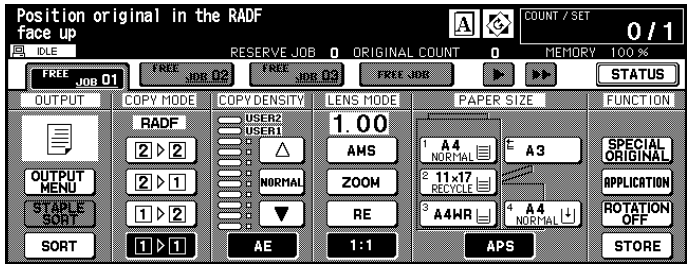
You can reserve up to 5 jobs.

Limitation

You cannot reserve a job if a job is interrupted.

●Procedure

1. Touch the [FREE] tab to set the conditions for a copying job.



MEMO

You cannot reserve a job if the [FREE] tab is dimmed. Wait until the dimming is canceled.

2. Press [START] button.

This copying job will be performed after the print job in progress is completed.

Canceling a Print Job

You can cancel the printing print job or the reserved job from the control panel in this printing system.

●Cancel

Canceling means clearing the print job in the copier and forcefully terminating the print job or the reserved job.

MEMO

The job is deleted in the different way if it is a password print job.

Reference (p.510)

Limitation

If the job is still on your computer, first, delete the job from your computer and press the [STOP] button on the control panel. You can not stop the remaining job completely by only pressing the [STOP] button. The [STOP] button can clear the memory of the print controller and E-RDH in the main body printer but can not clear the remaining job on your computer.

●Procedure for the printing print job

1. Press the [Stop] button to cancel the job.

The confirmation screen will appear.

2. Touch the [EXIT] key.

The printing job is canceled.

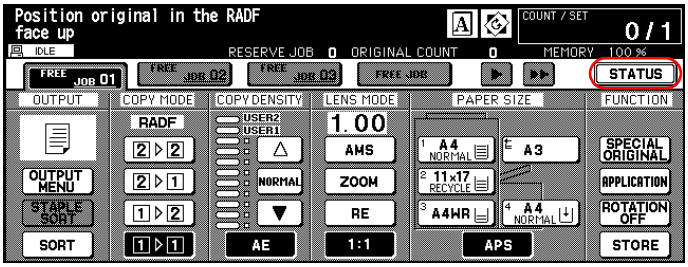
MEMO

The print job is not canceled if you select the [CANCEL] key.

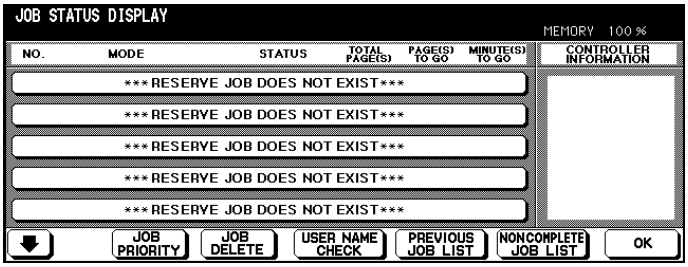
Canceling a Print Job (Continued)

●Procedure for the reserved print job

1. Touch the [STATUS] key on the [Copy Mode Basic] screen.



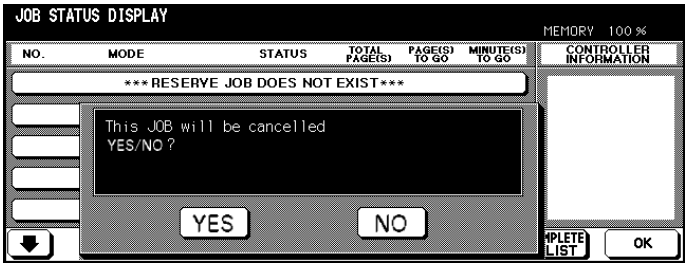
The [Job Status Display] screen will appear.



2. Select a job you want to delete.

3. Touch the [JOB DELETE] key.

The confirmation screen will appear.



4. Touch the [YES] key.

The reserved print job is canceled.

MEMO

The print job is not canceled if you select the [NO] key.

5. Touch the [OK] key.

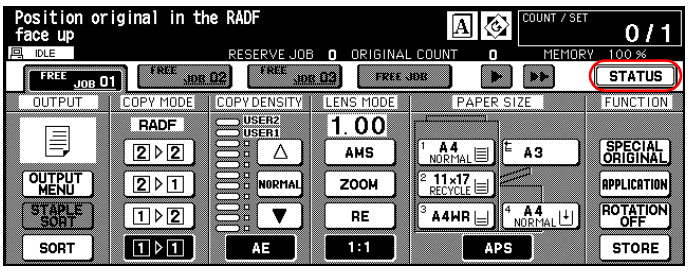
The [Copy Mode Basic] will appear.

Confirming the Canceled Print Job

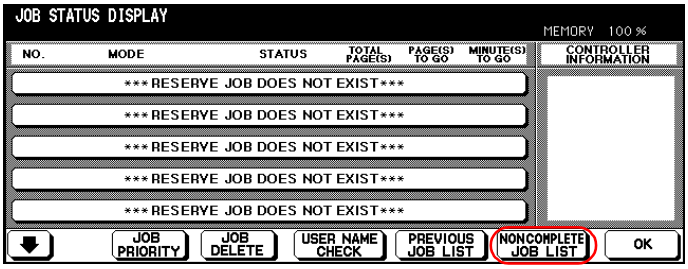
You can confirm the canceled print job from the control panel in this printing system.

●Procedure

1. Touch the [STATUS] key on the [Copy Mode Basic] screen.

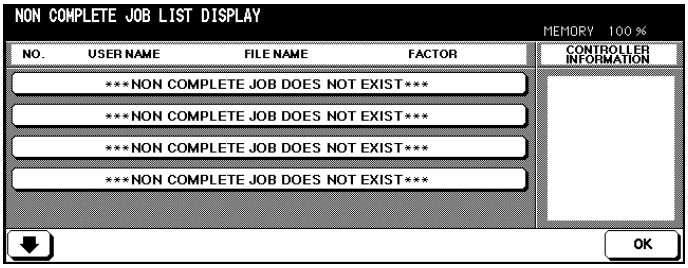


The [Job Status Display] screen will appear.



2. Touch the [NON COMPLETE JOB LIST] key.

The [Non Complate Job List] screen will appear.



MEMO

Touch [▲] key and [▼] key to display the previous screen and the following screen of the [Non Complete Job List] screen respectively.

Up to 4 screens or 16 jobs of non complete jobs are displayed.

3. Confirm the canceled job.

4. Touch the [OK] key.

The [Job Status Display] screen will appear.

5. Touch the [OK] key.

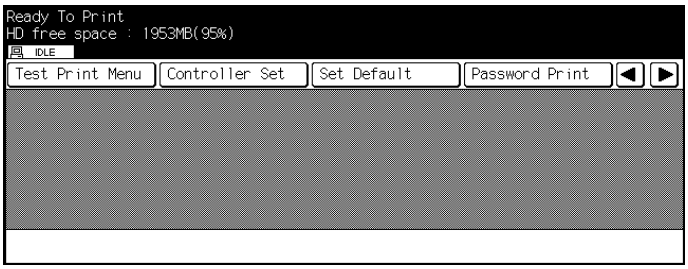
The [Copy Mode Basic] screen will appear.

Deleting a Password Print Job

You can delete a password print job from the control panel in this printing system.

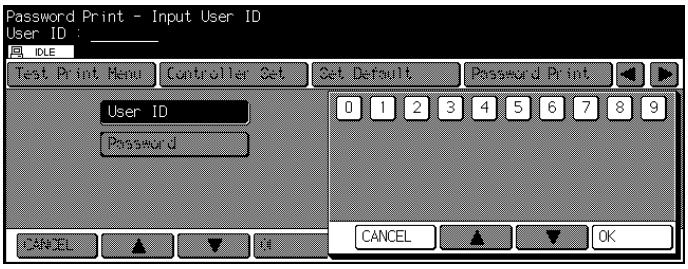
1. Press the [MODE] button to display the [Print Mode Basic] screen.

The [Printer Mode Basic] screen will appear.



2. Touch the [Password Print] key.

The [User ID] key, the [Password] key and numeric key etc. are displayed.



3. Enter your user ID using the numeric keys, and touch the [OK] key.

The ID is displayed with the [Password] key highlighted.

MEMO

You don't have to input your user ID if it is not set. Touch the [OK] key.

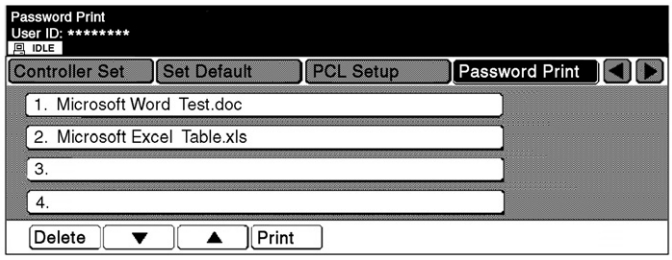
4. Enter your password using the numeric, uppercase or lowercase keys, and touch the [OK] key.

If no uppercase letters are displayed, you can touch the [Uppercase] key to display them..

If no lowercase letters are displayed, you can touch the [Lowercase] key to display them..

If no numbers are displayed, you can touch the [Number] key to display them..

When you touch the [OK] key, a list of the corresponding print jobs is displayed.



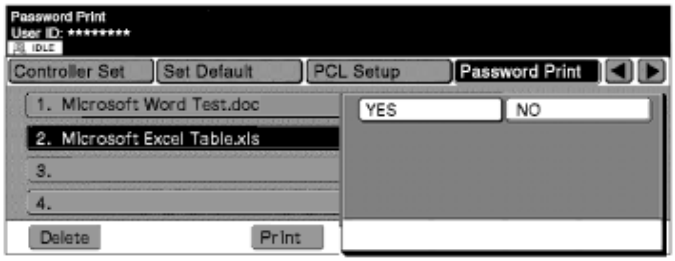
The list will be blank if there are no corresponding print jobs.

If this is the case, touch the [Cancel] key to terminate the Confidential Output feature.

Deleting a Password Print Job (Continued)

5. Select the print job you want to delete, and touch the [Delete] key.

The confirmation screen will appear.



6. Touch the [YES] key.

The print job is deleted. Then, the [Copy Mode Basic] screen will appear.

MEMO

Touch the [NO] key if you want to return to the [Print Job List] screen without deleting the print job.

Section

5

NetworkSettings(forAdministrator)

Chapter 18 Network Function Overview 513

Chapter 19 Copier Setup 519

Chapter 20 Printing by IP Peer-to-Peer from Windows 95/98/Me 544

Chapter 21 Printing by LPD/LPR from Windows NT 4.0/2000/XP 557

Chapter 22 Printing by IPP from Windows 2000/XP 564

Chapter 23 NetWare Configuration 568

Chapter 24 UNIX Configuration 571

Chapter 25 Apple Talk Configuration 581

Chapter 26 Troubleshooting of Network 582

Network Function of Print Controller

This chapter provides an overview of the network features. The network interface card has the following features:

Important

The network interface card is an optional.

- Features of the Network Function
- Features of the NetWare Print Server
- Features of the Web Utilities

MEMO

For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the separate volume, "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

●Features of the Network Function

The network function offers the following features:

- Automatic Selection of 100BaseTX (Fast Ethernet) or 10BaseT Ethernet connection
- Multiple protocols (TCP/IP, IPX/SPX and AppleTalk [EtherTalk]) supported
- Peer-to-peer printing over TCP/IP from Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me (by using a dedicated utility, IP-P2P)
- Peer-to-Peer printing over IPX/SPX for Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me (By using dedicated utility, IPX-P2P)
- LPD/LPR printing over TCP/IP for Microsoft Windows NT/2000/XP
- IPP printing over TCP/IP Microsoft Windows 2000/XP
- Automatic IP address acquisition by DHCP

●Features of the NetWare Print Server

The network interface card corresponds to the features of the Novell NetWare print server and supports both the bindery mode and the Novell Directory Service (NDS).

●Features of the Web Utilities

The network interface card has the built-in HTTP server, and enables the printing system management with coordination of the accompanied Management Access Program (MAP) and the standard Web browsers.

MEMO

For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the separate volume, "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

Accompanied Utilities

The CD-ROM contains utility programs used for the network interface card. The CD-ROM is compatible with Windows 95/98/Me/NT2.0/2000/XP or Mac OS. The English language version software included in the CD-ROM includes the following:

●MAP (Management Access Program)

Utility program to let Windows 95/98/Me/NT4.0/2000/XP identify IP- or IPX-based printing systems on networks. This also allows you to access the Web Utilities implemented in the network interface card, and make network and printing system settings by using the Web Utilities in conjunction with Web Browsers.

●IP-P2P

Program to execute peer-to-peer printing from Windows 95/98/Me via TCP/IP.

●IPX-P2P

Program to execute peer-to-peer printing from Windows 95/98/Me via IPX/SPX.

●NWSetup

Utility program to set up Novell NetWare for the network interface card from Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP.

●BOOTP Lite

Utility program to assign IP address to the network interface card through Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP.

●UNIX-TCP/IP Programs

Program for printing from various UNIX systems when not running lpd/lpr.

Network setting procedures

Before using the network interface card, you must first connect the network interface card to the network and then perform the setup procedures for the printing system.

To connect the network interface card to the network, use the Ethernet connector (RJ45) of the network interface card and a UTP cable (of category 5, recommended).

●Usage Types and Setting Items

To print using the network function, several settings and preparations are necessary. Settings and preparation may be different depending on the using environment. Network setting is also necessary when Network Scanner feature is used.

- **Windows 95/98/Me configuration (peer-to-peer)**

  To print over LAN (Local Area Network) in Windows 95/98/Me, with no print servers installed, you can link your print controllers with a configuration called peer-to-peer connection. In peer-to-peer connections, TCP/IP and IPX/SPX protocols are used, each with a dedicated utility program. Setup procedures are as follows:

  Reference ▶▶ (p.516) Windows 95/98/Me configuration (peer-to-peer)

- **Windows NT4.0/2000/XP configuration (LPD/LPR)**

  To print by LPD/LPR from Windows NT/2000/XP.

  Reference ▶▶ (p.516) Windows NT4.0/2000/XP configuration (LPD/LPR)

- **Windows 2000/XP configuration (IPP)**

  To print by IPP from Windows 2000/XP.

  Reference ▶▶ (p.517) Windows 2000/XP configuration (IPP)

- **NetWare configuration**

  To print in a Novell NetWare network, setup procedures depend on the NetWare version and resource management.

  Reference ▶▶ (p.517) NetWare configuration

- **UNIX configuration (LPD/LPR)**

  To print by LPD/LPR from UNIX.

  Reference ▶▶ (p.517) UNIX configuration (lpd/lpr)

- **Macintosh configuration (AppleTalk)**

  To print by AppleTalk from Macintosh

  Reference ▶▶ (p.518) AppleTalk configuration

- **Network Scanner feature configuration**

  To use the network scanner feature.

  Reference ▶▶ (p.518) Network Scanner feature configuration

Network setting procedures (Continued)

Windows 95/98/Me configuration (peer-to-peer)

For IP peer-to-peer connections

1. Make TCP/IP settings on the control panel of the copier.

Reference ▶▶ (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

2. Make TCP/IP settings on your computer (Windows 95/98/Me).

Reference ▶▶ (p.544) Basic TCP/IP setup

3. Install IP-P2P from the accompanying CD-ROM.

Reference ▶▶ (p.545) Installation of IP Peer-to-Peer

4. Install Printer Driver.

Reference ▶▶ (p.545) Installation of IP Peer-to-Peer

For IPX peer-to-peer connections

1. Add IPX/SPX Protocols to your computer.

Reference ▶▶ (p.552) Using IPX Peer-to-Peer

2. Install IPX-P2P from the accompanying CD.

Reference ▶▶ (p.553) Installation of IPX Peer-to-Peer

3. Install Printer Driver.

Reference ▶▶ (p.553) Installation of IPX Peer-to-Peer

Windows NT4.0/2000/XP configuration (LPD/LPR)

1. Make TCP/IP settings on the control panel of the copier.

Reference ▶▶ (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

2. Make TCP/IP settings on your computer (Windows NT/2000/XP).

3. Add/Create the Printer Port, and install Printer Driver.

Reference ▶▶ (p.557) LPD/LPR Setup

Network setting procedures (Continued)

Windows 2000/XP configuration (IPP)

1. Make TCP/IP settings on the control panel of the copier.

Reference (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

2. Make TCP/IP settings on your computer (Windows 2000/XP).

3. Install Printer Driver.

Reference (p.564) Internet Printing

NetWare configuration

With NetWare 3.x

1. Make NetWare settings on the control panel of the copier.

Novell NetWare Setup includes assigning a new name and password to the Network Interface Card Novell Print Server, identifying the preferred file server connection, setting up for Novell Directory Services (NDS), identifying the Ethernet frame type, and disabling Bindery Services.

Reference (p.530) NetWare Setup

2. Using PCONSOLE, configure for print server features.

Reference (p.568) Setup for NetWare 3.x

By using NDS with NetWare 4.x

1. Make NetWare settings on the control panel of the copier.

Reference (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

2. Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE, configure for print server features.

Reference (p.569) Setup for NetWare 4.x

By using bindery emulation with NetWare 4.x

1. Make NetWare settings on the control panel of the copier.

Reference (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

2. Using PCONSOLE, configure for print server features.

Reference (p.570) PCONSOLE

UNIX configuration (lpd/lpr)

Reference (p.514) UNIX-TCP/IP Programs

Reference (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

Reference (p.571) UNIX Printing through TCP/IP

Network setting procedures (Continued)

AppleTalk configuration

MEMO

To print from Macintosh, you need the PostScript3 option.

1. Make AppleTalk settings on the control panel of the copier.

AppleTalk Setup includes identifying the AppleTalk zone where the print server resides, and assigning a new name to the print server.

Reference (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

Reference (p.533) AppleTalk Setup

2. Make AppleTalk settings on your computer (Macintosh).

Reference (p.581) Preparation to print from Macintosh

3. Install Printer Driver.

Reference (p.111) Installing to Macintosh (PS3)

Network Scanner feature configuration

1. Make TCP/IP settings on the control panel of the copier.

Reference (p.527)

2. Make DNS, Email and FTP settings on the control panel of the copier or the Web Utilities.

Reference (p.535) FTP Setup

Reference (p.536) Email Setup

Reference (p.538) DNS Setup

General Description of the Network Setup

To print over TCP/IP, you need to assign an IP address to the network interface card. With the network interface card, you can print over TCP/IP in such ways as using IP-P2P in peer-to-peer printing setup via Windows 95/98/Me, using lpd/lpr via Windows NT4.0/2000/XP, and using IPP via Windows 2000/XP. Using AppleTalk(EtherTalk) also requires the TCP/IP setting.

Important

The network interface card is an optional.

To use the network scanning feature, you need to assign the IP address to the network interface card, and configure the settings for DNS, Email or FTP servers according to your need.

●Assigning IP Address

There are three ways to assign the IP address to the network interface card.

- Use DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) to automatically assign an IP address.
- Assign an IP address from the copier's control panel.
- Use MAP (Management Access Program) and Web Utilities for assigning an IP address

When initially connecting the network interface card to networks that are not using DHCP, you need to confirm the following information:

- IP address to assign to the network interface card
- Network address of the network interface card (MAC [Media Access Control] address or Ethernet address)

Check with the network administrator for the IP address assigned to the network interface card. To find the network (MAC) address of the network interface card, press [Printer Mode Basic] → [Network Setup] → [Unit Info] on the copier's control panel or refer to the Status Page (network setup list) that is output when turning ON the copier.

MEMO

Depending on the network interface card settings, the Status Page cannot be output.

Using DHCP

When assigning an IP address to the network interface card from the DHCP server, set up (reserve) to enable the IP address of the network interface card to be used continually on the DHCP server. Otherwise, the same address might be given to other hosts.

The network interface card is set to use DHCP by default. In this case, the network interface card generates a DHCP request when you reset/turn on the network interface card.

When the network interface card is set to use DHCP, the option [Enable DHCP] is ON, and no specific IP address is assigned to the network interface card, or the option [Enable IP address defined] is OFF.

Using Control Panel

For information about setting an IP address and others from the copier's control panel.

Reference (p.527) TCP/IP Setup

General Description of the Network Setup (Continued)

Using MAP

By using MAP (Management Access Program) included the accompanying CD-ROM that comes with the network interface card, you can automatically identify the network interface card on the network and set it up for TCP/IP by using Web Utilities. To use this method to assign the IP address to the network interface card, the following procedure should be performed on computers in advance:

- TCP/IP correctly configured
- MAP installed and MAP setup correctly executed

MEMO

For information about how to set up TCP/IP and how to install IPX/SPX-compatible protocol, refer to Windows Help menus for example.

●Accessing Web Utilities

The network interface card is provided with an HTTP server which has access to Web Utilities through a Web Browser, either Netscape or Internet Explorer. By accessing this server, you can change settings of the printing system.

- Use MAP to have the network interface card on the networks identified automatically, thereby accessing Web Utilities.
- Use a Web Browser to type the IP address assigned to the network interface card, and thereby access the Web Utilities. For example:

```
http://192.168.0.128/
```

MEMO

For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the separate volume, "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

General Description of the Network Setup (Continued)

Using BOOTP Lite (Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP)

From Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP, you can use the BOOTP Lite program to assign the IP address to the network interface card. TCP/IP must be set up correctly on the computer that will execute this program. To copy/install the program files in the Windows directory, perform the following procedure:

1. **Reset the print controller and the main body printer.**

   The BOOTP Lite program uses the BOOTP protocol. The BOOTP request is for a finite period of time. The print controller and the main body printer must be freshly reset for this to work.

2. **Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into CD-ROM drive, and double click [Bootpl32.exe] in the "English\NetUtil\BOOTP" folder.**

3. **Pull down the [Admin] menu to [Configure].**

4. **Enter the [IP address] that you want to assign to the network interface card, its [Subnet Mask] (make sure it matches what you are using on your subnet), [Default Gateway] (your router's IP address), and the [MAC address] of the network interface card.**

   Use colons as delimiters as shown on the Status Page rather than the dashes that Windows uses.

5. **Click on Go.**

6. **Wait about five minutes. The network interface card should recycle and produce a Status Page showing the IP parameters you have just entered.**

7. **Pull down the [Admin] menu to [Verify].**

   You should get a message back stating that [The Unit is Active]. If you do not get this message, verify that TCP/IP is enabled on the Status Page.

8. **When you get a response that the unit is active, you should be able to ping the network interface card.**

General Description of the Network Setup (Continued)

Using arp command (Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP)

From Windows 95/98/Me MS-DOS prompt or at Windows NT/2000 command prompt, you can use the arp command to assign the IP address to the network interface card. It is necessary that TCP/IP is set up correctly on the computer to execute the arp command. Perform the following procedure:

1. At Windows 95/98/Me, select [Start] → [Programs] → [MS-DOS prompt]. At Windows NT/2000/XP, select [Start] → [Programs] → [Accessories] → [Command prompt].

2. Execute the arp command.

For example, if the MAC address of the network interface card is 00:11:22:33:44:55 and the IP address to assign is 192.168.0.128, then input as shown below, and then press [Enter].

(Example: `C:\>arp -s 192.168.0.128 00-11-22-33-44-55`

3. Turn off the main power supply to the main body printer, then turn it back on.

A Status Page will be output. Check that the IP address is correctly set in the list. Or, when about 5 minutes have passed after having restarted the print controller and the main body printer using the ping command, check that the network interface card responds correctly. The ping command is also executed at Windows 95/98/Me MS-DOS prompt or Windows NT/2000 Command prompt. An example of executing a ping command is shown below.

(Example: `C:\>ping 192.168.0.128`

4. Open the prompt window as in 1.

5. Execute the ping command for the assigned IP address.

In this case, no response is returned from the network interface card.

(Example: `C:\>ping 192.168.0.128`

General Description of the Network Setup (Continued)

Using arp command (UNIX)

From UNIX you can use the arp command to assign an IP address to the network interface card. Perform the following procedure:

1. **Turn off the print controller and the main body printer.**
2. **Log in as superuser on a host on the same subnet as the network interface card.**

   If the server resides on another subnet, complete this procedure to store the IP address in the network interface card.
3. **Find the MAC address of the network interface card.**

   The address is printed on the Status Page each time you turn on the print controller and the main body printer.
4. **Edit the hosts file (usually /etc/hosts) or use NIS or DIS to add IP address and node name of the network interface card.**

   See the network administrator for the IP address. For example, a network interface card with a name of printfast and an IP address of 192.9.200.200 has the entry:

   ```
   192.9.200.200 printfast
   ```
5. **Add an entry to the arp cache for IP address and MAC address of the network interface card:**

   ```
   arp -s 192.9.200.200 0:40:c8:0:0:ff
   ```

   RS6000 (AIX) requires the ether option after arp -s. For example:

   ```
   arp -s ether 192.9.200.200 0:40:c8:0:0:ff
   ```
6. **Check the print controller and the main body printer to see that the network interface card is connected to the network.**

   Turn on the print controller and the main body printer.
7. **Send a ping command to the network interface card to verify it is running on the network:**

   ```
   ping 192.9.200.200 or ping printfast
   ```

   The network interface card will not respond to this ping command but it will read its IP address from the packets.
8. **Turn off the print controller and main body printer.**

   Turn them back on and send the ping command again to verify that the network interface card obtained its IP address. A confirmation message displays:

   ```
   192.9.200.200 is alive
   ```
9. **Remove the entry from the arp cache using the following command.**

   Specify the network interface card either by its IP address or by its name, for example:

   ```
   arp -d printfast
   ```

Outputing the Status Page

The Status Page is, by default, sent to the copier as a print job after the network interface card has started. Examples of the network setting list are shown below. You can output the list from the copier's control panel or the Web utilities.

Reference (p.484) Printing the Test Print

MEMO

For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the separate volume, "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

Please output the list and check the settings right after the installation or setting changes.

Examples of the Status Page

```
Unit Serial No: 123456                          Version: XX.XXX

Network Address: 00:11:22:33:44:55

Network Topology: Ethernet                      Connector: RJ45

Network Speed: 100 Megabits

Novell Network Information                      enable
   Print Server Name: IB1_123456
   Password Defined: No
   Preferred Services Context not defined
   Frame Type: 802.2 On 802.3

Peer-to-Peer Information                        enable
   Frame Type: 802.2 On 802.3
   Network ID: 0 h

TCP/IP Network Information                      enable
   Frame Type: Ethernet II                      Protocol Address: Not Configured
   Subnet Mask: 255.0.0.0                       Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0
   DNS Address: 0.0.0.0
   WINS Name: Not Registered - IB1_123456

IPP Network Information                         enable
   Internet Printing Protocol                   http://0.0.0.0:631/nic/Print

AppleTalk Network Information                   enable
   Frame Type: 802. SNAP On 802.3
   Protocol Address: Net Number: 65384          Node Number 224 Socket Number 129
   Preferred AppleTalk Zone:                    *
   Preferred AppleTalk Type:                    LaserWriter
```

```
Novell inactive

Peer-to-Peer Connection Information
   Printer Name: IB1_123456

AppleTalk Connection Information
   AppleTalk Printer Name: IB1_123456

TCP/IP Connection Information
   Port Number: 10001
```

Setups on the Control Panel

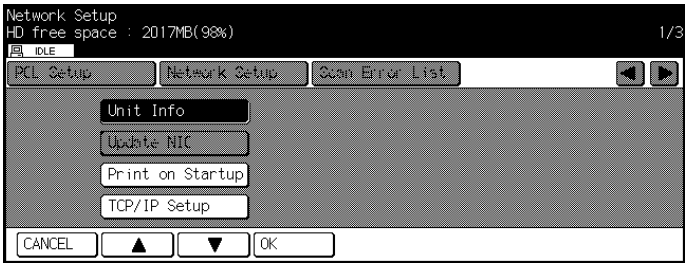
●Steps for Network Setup

A broad outline of the network setup is shown below. For setups performed on the copier's control panel for functions other than network functions, refer to the "Section 4 Control Panel (for Administrator)" in your User's Manual.

Reference (p.473)

1. Press the [MODE] button on the control panel to get to the [Printer Mode Basic] screen.

2. Touch [Network Setup] key.



3. Select the necessary option from the menu and configure the setting.

The [Network Setup] menu is three layers deep, offering the following options:

- Unit Info Reference (p.526)
- Update NIC Reference (p.526)
- Startup Page Reference (p.526)
- TCP/IP Setup Reference (p.527)
- NetWare Setup Reference (p.530)
- AppleTalk Setup Reference (p.533)
- WINS Setup Reference (p.534)
- FTP Setup Reference (p.535)
- Email Setup Reference (p.536)
- DNS Setup Reference (p.538)
- Admin Password Reference (p.538)
- Factory Default Reference (p.539)

4. When all settings are completed, touch [Update NIC] key.

5. After the Update NIC process, turn the main power to the copier off.

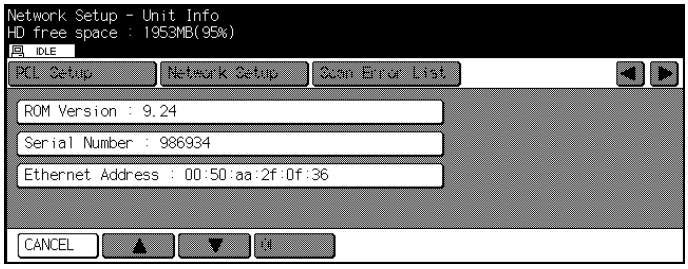
Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

6. Wait at least 10 seconds and turn the copier back on.

There are occasions when the print controller malfunctions if you recycle the copier's main power quickly. There are occasions when the Network Interface card malfunctions if you don't recycle the copier's main power.

●Unit Info

Shows information about the Network Interface Card's [ROM Version], [Serial Number] and [Ethernet Address].

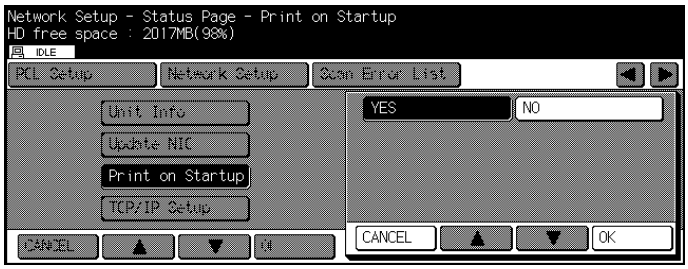


●Update NIC

Updates the Network Interface Card with your settings.

●Startup Page

Allows you to configure settings to get a network settings list or Status Page printed out.



Print on Startup

Lets you set whether you want to get Status Page printed out each time the copier is powered up. The default is [YES].

Interpreter

Lets you select the interpreter from [ASCII] and [PostScript]. The default is [ASCII].

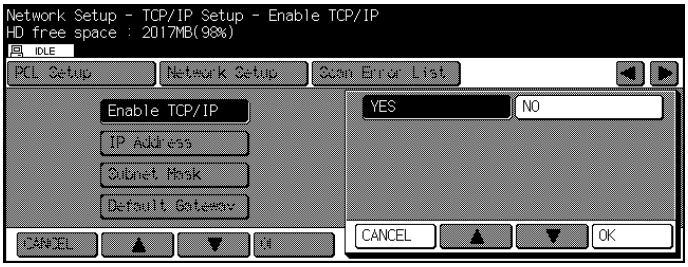
Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

●TCP/IP Setup

Lets you configure the TCP/IP settings.

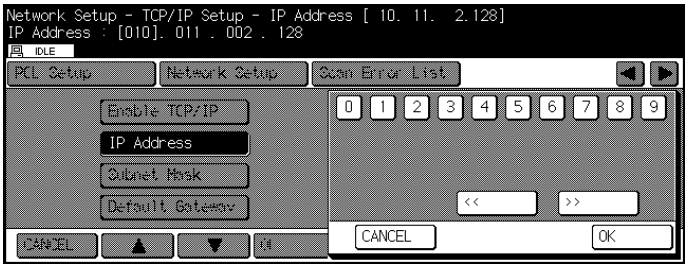
Enable TCP/IP

Lets you set whether TCP/IP is enabled or not. The default is [YES].



IP Address

Lets you enter an IP address. An IP address is made up of four sets of numbers (each from 0 to 255), separated by dots, (e.g, [192.168.0.10]).

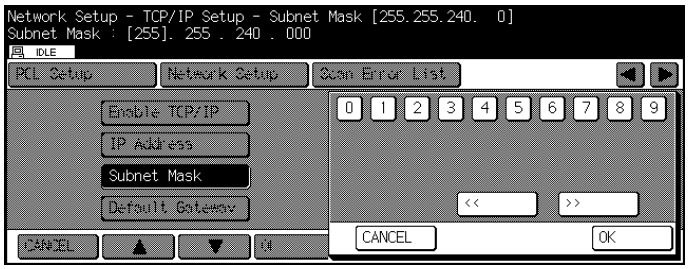


Important

To assign a specific IP address, specify a valid IP address to [IP Address], and select [YES] for [Enable IP address defined].

Subnet Mask

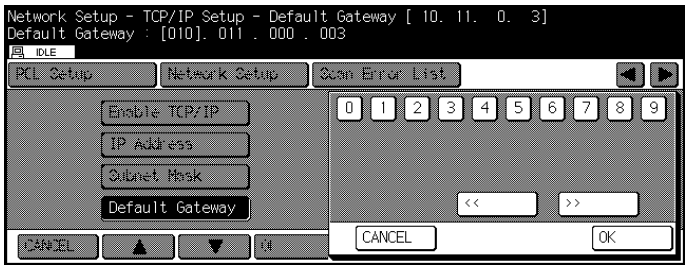
Lets you enter a subnet mask. A subnet mask is made up of four sets of numbers (each from 0 to 255), separated by dots, (e.g, [225.225.225.0]).



Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

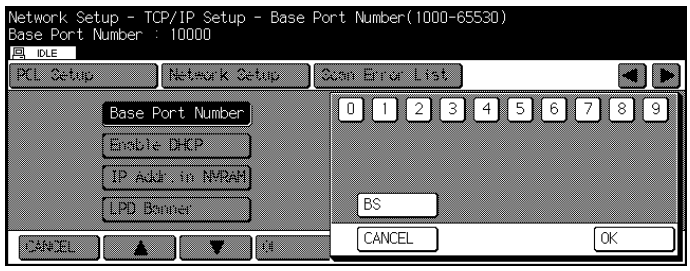
Default Gateway

Lets you enter the IP address of the default gateway. This IP address is made up of four sets of numbers (each from 0 to 255), separated by dots, (e.g, [192.168.0.1]).



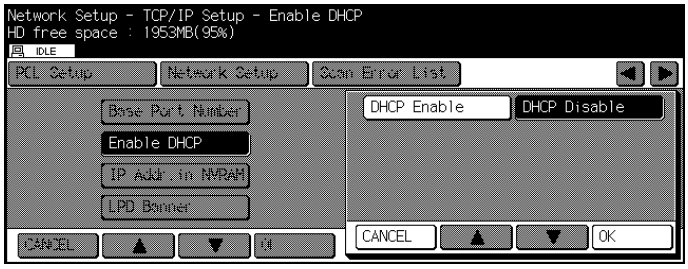
Base Port Number

Lets you enter a base port number from 1000 to 65530.
The default is [10000].



Enable DHCP

Lets you set whether DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) is enabled or not. The default is [DHCP Enable].



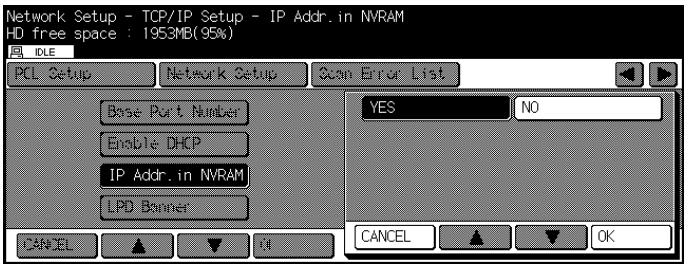
Important

If you selected [DHCP Disable], make sure to select [YES] for [Enable IP address defined], and specify a valid IP address to [IP Address].

Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

IP Addr. in NVRAM

Lets you set whether the entered IP address is stored in NVRAM or not. The default is [YES].

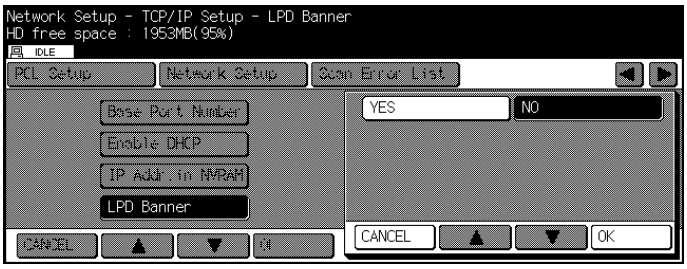


Important

If you selected [NO] for [Enable IP address defined], select [YES] for [Enable DHCP].

LPD Banner

Lets you set whether the LPD banner is printed or not when printing via lpd/lpr. The LPD banner is the capability of printing print information as a banner page when printing via lpd/lpr. The default is [NO].



Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

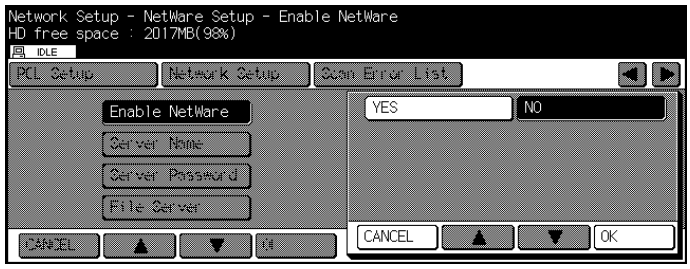
●NetWare Setup

Lets you set for printing with NetWare.

> ⚠
>
> The Network Interface Card takes long to start up if Novell NetWare is not a primary protocol and NetWare is enabled.
> Be sure to select [No] to disable NetWare in an environment where Novell NetWare is not used.

Enable NetWare

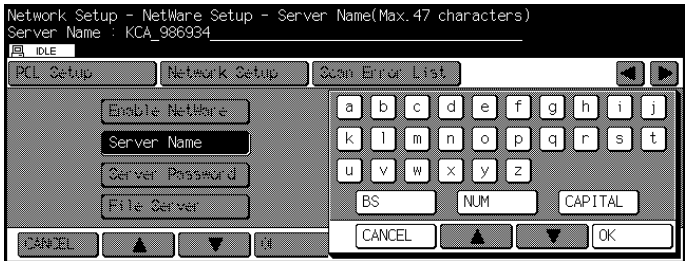
Lets you set whether NetWare is available or not. The default is [YES].



Server Name

Lets you enter the name of the NetWare print server.

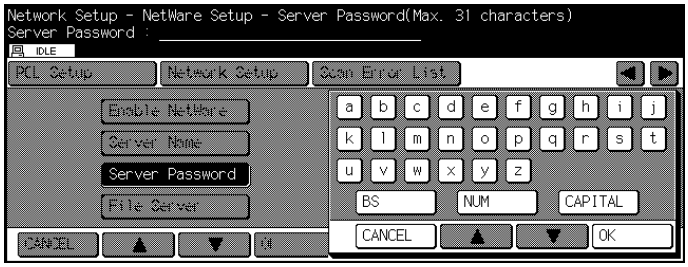
- A maximum of 47 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



Server Password

Lets you enter a password for the NetWare print server.

- A maximum of 31 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.

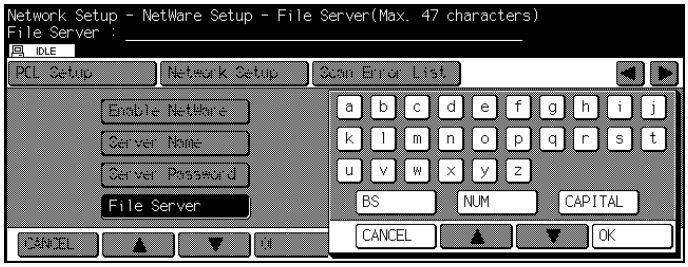


Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

File Server

Lets you enter the name of the NetWare file server.

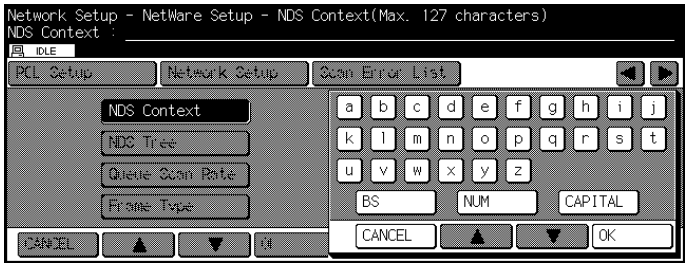
- A maximum of 47 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



NDS Context

Lets you enter the name of an NDS context (example: ou=standard.ou=organization_1).

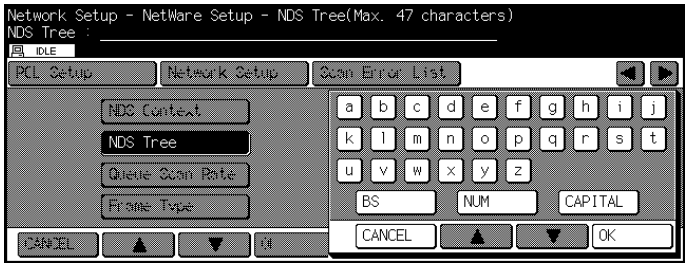
- A maximum of 127 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



NDS Tree

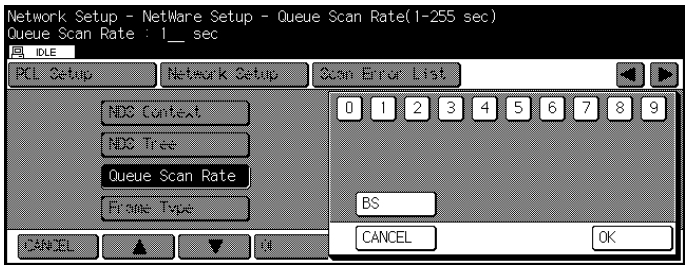
Lets you enter the name of an NDS Directory tree.

- A maximum of 47 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



Queue Scan Rate

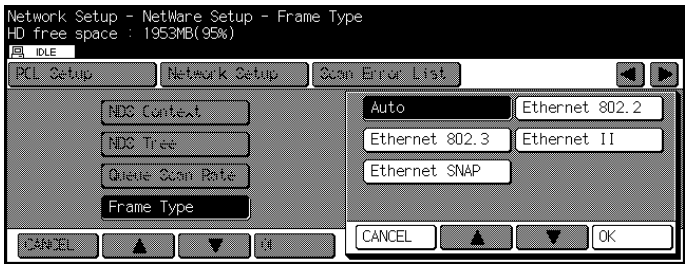
Lets you set up intervals (from 1 to 255 seconds) at which the Network Interface Card scans for new print queues. The default is [1] second.



Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

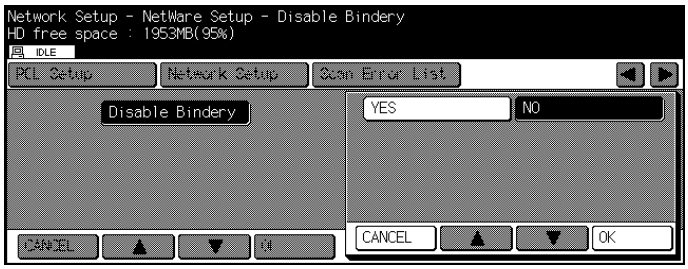
Frame Type

Lets you select frame types from the following for use on a LAN. The default is [Auto].



Disable Bindery

Lets you disable/enable bindery services of NetWare 4.x or later. Selecting [YES] disables bindery services and selecting [NO] enables bindery services. The default is [NO].



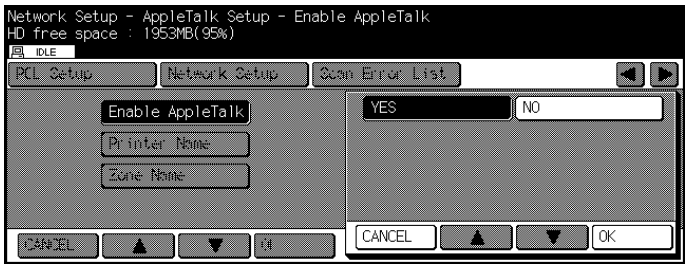
Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

●AppleTalk Setup

Lets you set up settings for printing via AppleTalk.

Enable AppleTalk

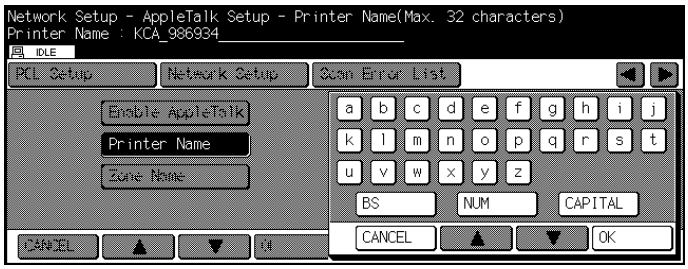
Lets you set whether AppleTalk is enabled or not. The default is [YES].



Printer Name

Lets you enter the name of a printer (NIC) used on an AppleTalk network.

- A maximum of 32 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



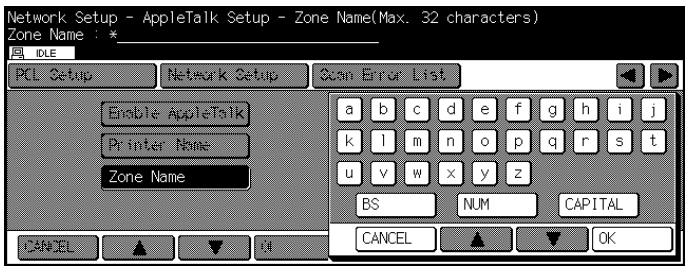
Limitation

You cannot use the following symbols.
: (colon), @ (at mark), * (asterisk), ~ (tilde), = (equal sign), ((left parenthesis),) (right parenthesis), - (hyphen)

Zone Name

Lets you enter the zone in which the Network Interface Card sits. Leave the field blank if there are no zones to specify (on networks without seed routers). No prints can be produced without specifying the correct zone.

- A maximum of 32 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

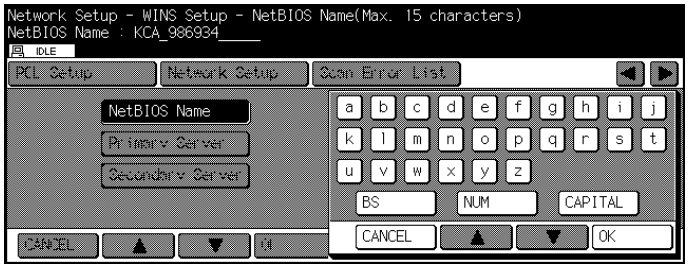
●WINS Setup

Lets you set up settings for printing over a NetBIOS network.

NetBIOS Name

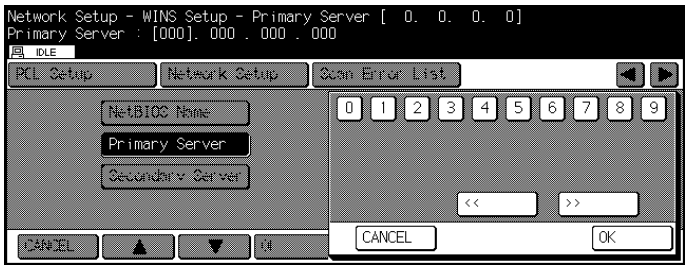
Lets you enter the NetBIOS name of the copier.

- A maximum of 15 bytes of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



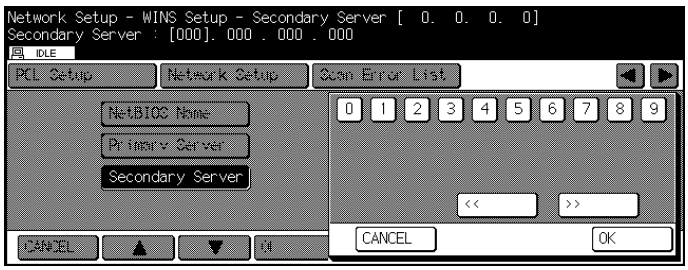
Primary Server

This is made up of four sets of numbers (each from 0 to 255), separated by dots. (Example: [192.168.0.1])



Secondary Server

This is made up of four sets of numbers (each from 0 to 255), separated by dots. (Example: [192.168.0.1])



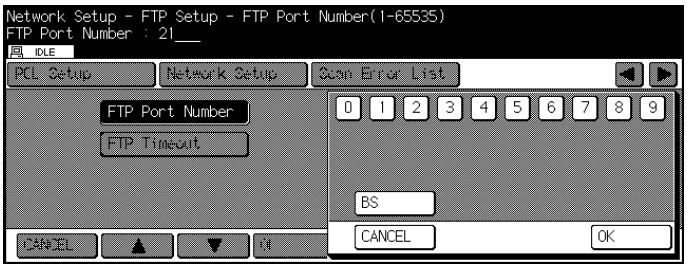
Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

●FTP Setup

Lets you set up settings for sending scanned image data to FTP servers.

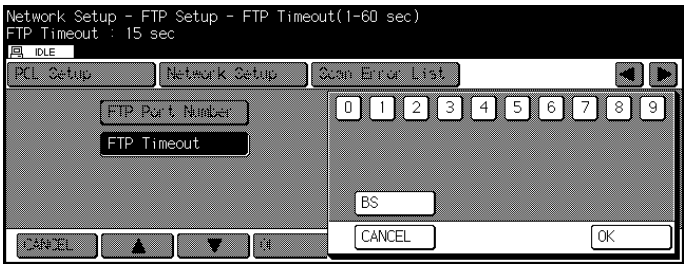
FTP Port Number

Lets you enter an FTP port number between 1 and 65535. The default is [21].



FTP Timeout

Lets you enter an FTP timeout value between 1 and 60 (sec.). The default is [15 sec].



Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

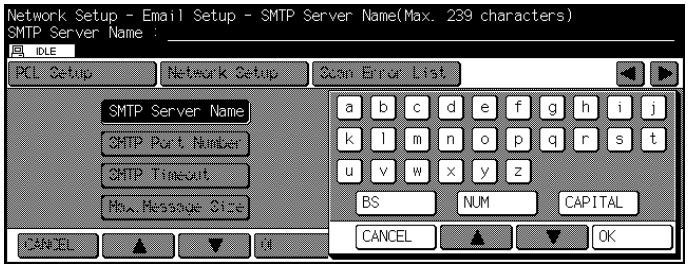
●Email Setup

Lets you set up settings for sending scanned image data by way of Email.

SMTP Server Name

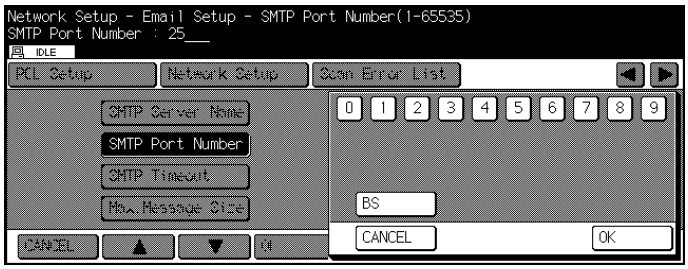
Lets you enter the name of an SMTP server.

- A maximum of 239 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



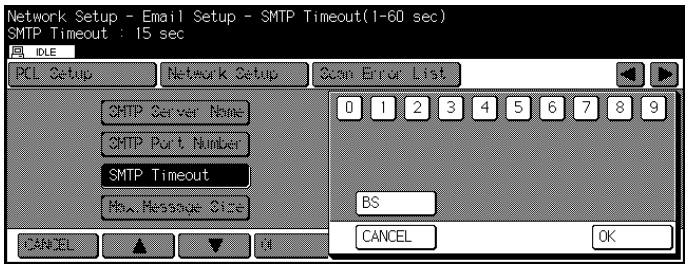
SMTP Port Number

Lets you enter an SMTP port number between 1 to 65535. The default is [25].



SMTP Timeout

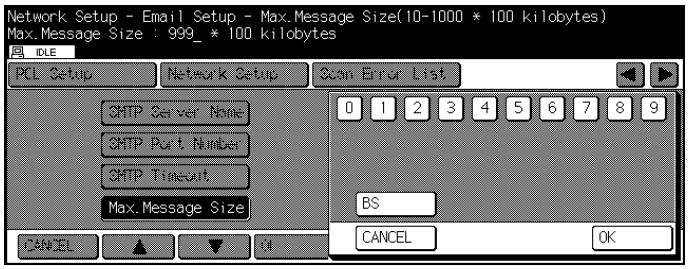
Lets you enter an SMTP timeout value between 1 to 60 (sec.). The default is [15 sec].



Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

Max. Message Size

Lets you enter a maximum SMTP message size between 10 to 1000 (x 100 KB). The default is [999 x 100 KB].



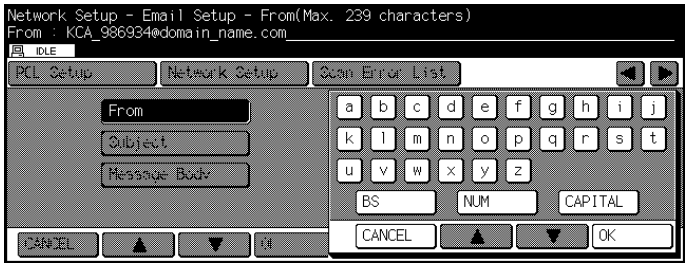
MEMO

This sets the maximum capacity that the SMTP server can receive for one email.

From

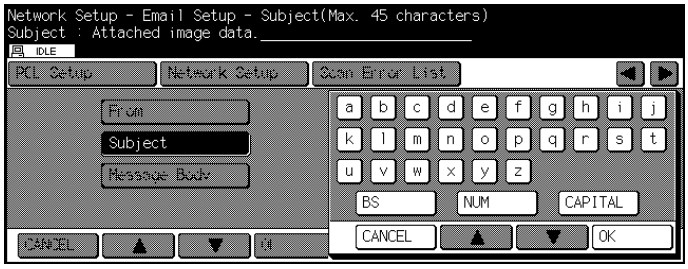
Lets you enter the system administrator's Email address. All returned mails from the system are sent back to the system administrator at this address.

- A maximum of 239 characters of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



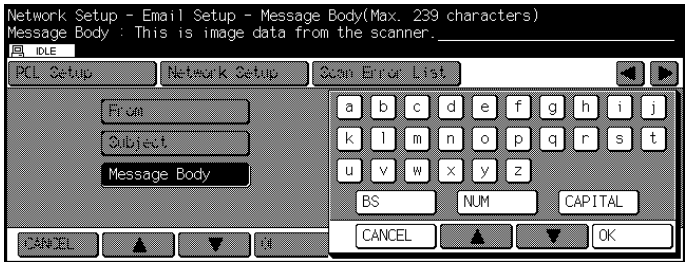
Subjects

Lets you enter the subject of an Email within the length of 45 characters (alphanumeric).



Message Body

Lets you enter an Email body text up to 239 characters (alphanumeric).



Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

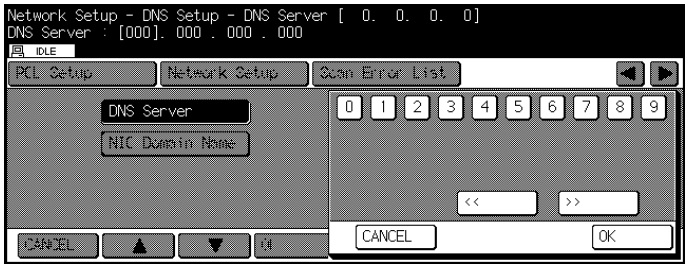
●DNS Setup

Lets you set up DNS (Domain Name Service) settings for the network your copier is connected to.

DNS Server

Lets you enter the address of a DNS server.

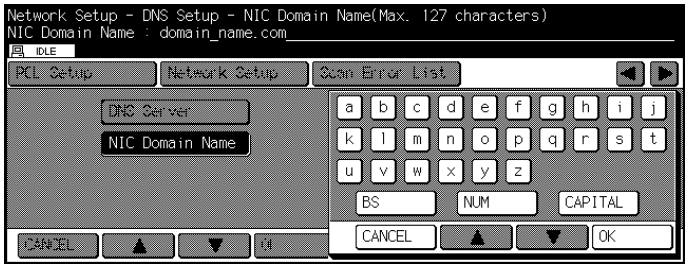
- This is made up of four sets of numbers (each from 0 to 255), separated by dots.


Network Setup - DNS Setup - DNS Server [0. 0. 0. 0]
DNS Server : [000]. 000 . 000 . 000
IDLE
PCL Setup
Network Setup
Scan Error List
DNS Server
NIC Domain Name
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
<<
>>
CANCEL
OK

NIC Domain Name

Lets you enter the domain name of a network interface card.

- A maximum of 127 bytes of symbols and alphanumeric characters is available.



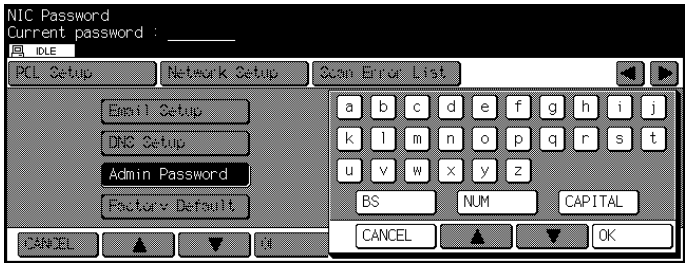
●Admin Password

Lets you enter a password between 4 and 8 bytes or change the current password.

You can use numbers, as well as alphabetical letters.

The default is [sysadm].

To change the password, enter it in [Current Password], enter a new password in [New Password], and again enter the new password in [Confirmation]. Press the [OK] button to validate the change.



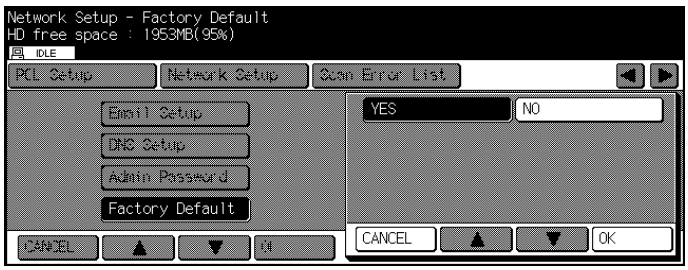
MEMO

If you have forgotten the renewed password, you can enter [3069] in [Current Password], enter a new password in [New Password] and [Confirmation].

Setups on the Control Panel (Continued)

●Factory Default

Lets you reset all the network configurations to default settings. To do this, you need to enter a password. You also need to turn the copier off, wait ten seconds, and turn it on again to complete the process.



Using MAP

A utility called MAP is provided on the CD-ROM that comes with the network interface card. This program automatically identifies the network interface cards on the networks and lists them in a Web Browser screen. From this Web Browser list you can select a network interface card to change its settings and control Web Utilities.

MEMO

For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the separate volume, "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

●Operating requirements

MAP is a utility that runs on Windows 95/98/Me/NT4.0/2000/XP. It identifies the network interface cards on the networks and achieves connection with HTTP servers implemented on the network interface cards. The MAP itself has no interface, so either of the following Web Browsers is required as an interface:

- Netscape Navigator
- Interment Explorer

To use a Web Browser, a TCP/IP protocol must be installed to a Windows-compliant computer.

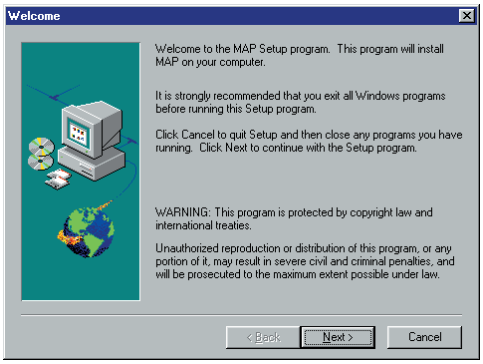
To identify the network interface cards, a TCP/IP protocol or an IPX protocol must be setup both on the network interface cards on the Windows-compliant computers.

●Installing MAP

Perform the following steps to install MAP:

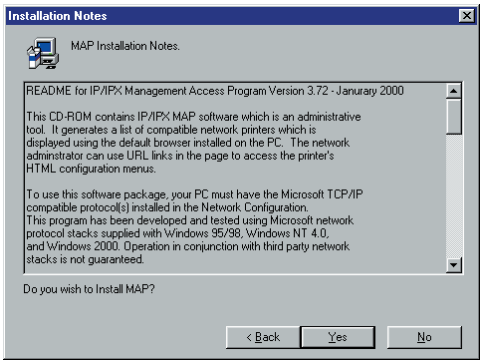
1. Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, and double-click on [Setup.exe] in the "\English\NetUtil\Map" folder.

[Welcome] window will appear.


Welcome
Welcome to the MAP Setup program. This program will install MAP on your computer.
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

2. Click the [Next] button.

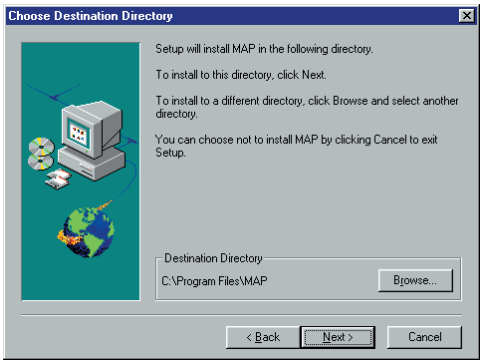
[Installation Notes] window will appear.


Installation Notes
MAP Installation Notes.
README for IP/IPX Management Access Program Version 3.72 - Janurary 2000
This CD-ROM contains IP/IPX MAP software which is an administrative tool. It generates a list of compatible network printers which is displayed using the default browser installed on the PC. The network adminstrator can use URL links in the page to access the printer's HTML configuration menus.
To use this software package, your PC must have the Microsoft TCP/IP compatible protocol(s) installed in the Network Configuration. This program has been developed and tested using Microsoft network protocol stacks supplied with Windows 95/98, Windows NT 4.0, and Windows 2000. Operation in conjunction with third party network stacks is not guaranteed.
Do you wish to Install MAP?
< Back
Yes
No

Using MAP (Continued)

3. Click the [Yes] button.

[Choose Destination Directory] window will appear.

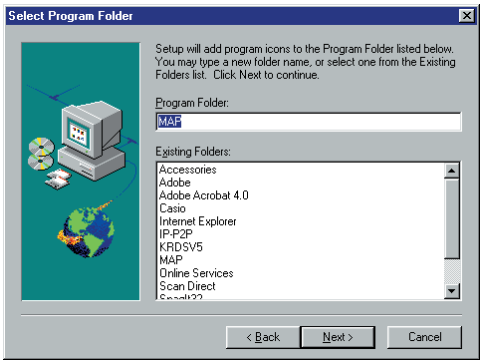

Choose Destination Directory
Setup will install MAP in the following directory.
To install to this directory, click Next.
To install to a different directory, click Browse and select another directory.
You can choose not to install MAP by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.
Destination Directory
C:\Program Files\MAP
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

By default setting, the destination folder is "C:\Program Files\MAP". To change this, press the [Browse] button to specify a folder.

4. Click the [Next] button.

[Select Program Folder] window will appear.



5. Click the [Next] button.

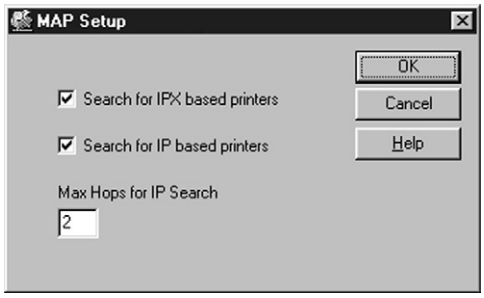
Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation.

Using MAP (Continued)

●Setting up MAP

As a result of executing the MAP setup program, two programs, "MAP Setup" and "MAP" are installed. The MAP Setup is a program to set up a necessary environment for MAP which identifies the network interface cards. To use the MAP, it is necessary to execute the MAP Setup program first.

To start the MAP Setup program, select [Start] → [Programs] → [Map] → [MAP Setup]. When the program starts, the following display will appear.



At the MAP Setup stage, you need to specify protocols used by the network interface cards and a maximum IP hop number. To do this, indicate check-mark next to [Search for IPX based printers] for IPX-based network interface cards, and [Search for IP based printers] for IP-based network interface cards.

When using an IP protocol, specify [Max Hops for IP Search], in which case you can select a number between 0 and 15. The default number is set to 2. If you select 0, only segments pertaining to computers, which restart the MAP, are found. If you select 2, all networks which are accessible passing through two or less routers are found.

Important

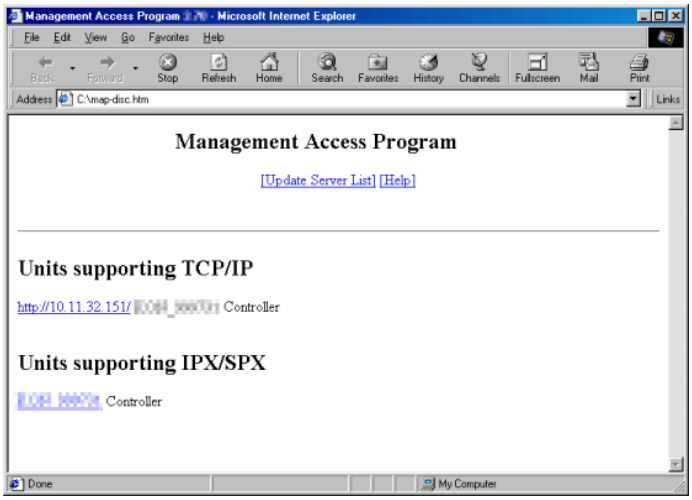
Note that selecting a large number can result in the occurrence of large traffic volume at one time.

Using MAP (Continued)

●Starting MAP

To start the MAP, select [Start] → [Program] → [Map] → [MAP].

Once started, MAP searches for the network interface cards existing on the networks according to the MAP setup. When identifying the network interface card, MAP starts a Web Browser specified as standard, and displays a list of available network interface cards. By default, the network interface card is named "IB1_(serial number)". When you select a desired network interface card from the list, the [MainPage] of Web Utilities is displayed.



If you designate the proxy setting in your Web Browser, you cannot access the Web Utilities. For more information see your network administrator.

This printing system employs a method which sends the print job directly to the print controller from the Windows 95/98/Me compliant computer, not through the dedicated print server.

This is called peer-to-peer printing.

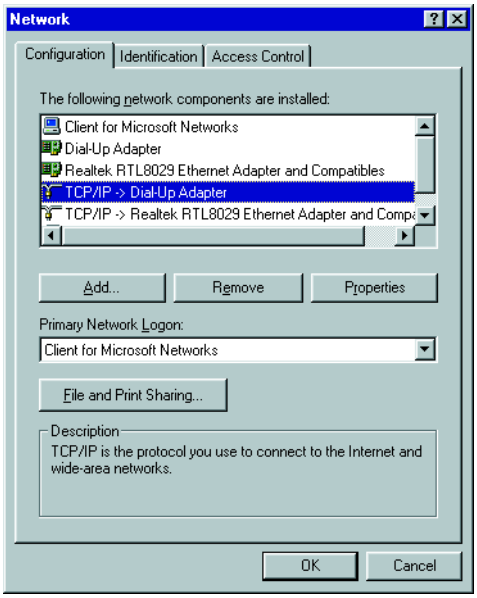
As peer-to-peer printing uses the network protocol TCP/IP, the network interface card must be set up for TCP/IP in advance. For each of the Windows 95/98/Me computers that perform peer-to-peer printing, it is necessary to set up TCP/IP, install and set up [IP-P2P] included in the accompanying CD-ROM, and set up the printer driver.

●Basic TCP/IP setup

Select [Network] from the [Control Panel] of a Windows 95/98/Me computer that uses the main body printer via the network interface card to display the [Network] dialog box. Click the [Configuration] tab and make sure that [TCP/IP] exists in the list of [The following network components are installed]. If it is not found, add TCP/IP.

MEMO

Refer to Windows 95/98/Me Help or some other means to add TCP/IP.



When [TCP/IP] exists in the [The following network components are installed] list, confirm the accuracy of the values of the IP address, etc. Select [TCP/IP] and click the [Properties] button. The [TCP/IP Properties] dialog box appears. Click the [IP Address] tab and confirm or define the TCP/IP address and subnet mask assigned to the computer. Continue the setup procedure on another screen if necessary. Click the [OK] button to return to the Network dialog box.

Consult your network administrator to determine the values of parameters for the IP address. If the IP address is inadequate, failures may occur in various locations in the network.

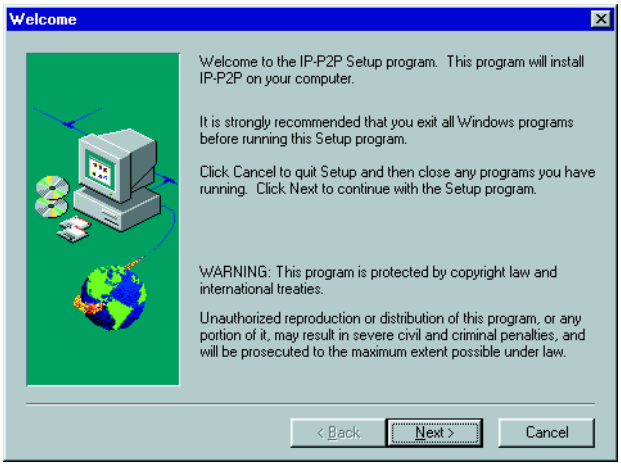
Using IP Peer-to-Peer (Continued)

●Installation of IP Peer-to-Peer

To install the IP Peer-to-Peer, double click [Setup.exe] in the [IP-P2P] folder of the accompanying CD-ROM. The installer will start. Install the program according to the instructions displayed on the screen. The [IP Peer-to-Peer Setup] dialog box will appear while installation is still in progress. Set up the necessary items shown in the next paragraph.

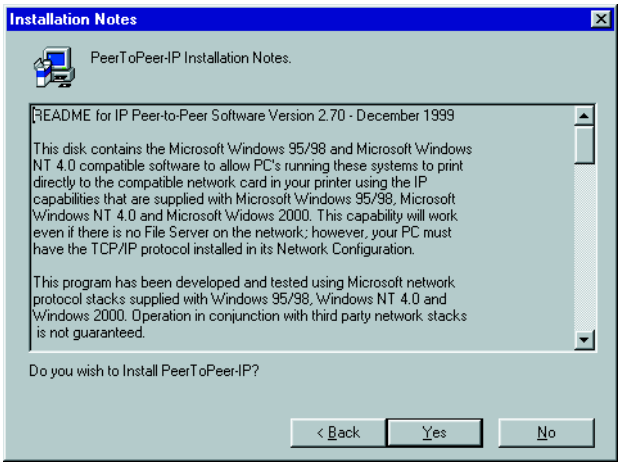
1. Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, and double-click on [Setup.exe] in the "\English\NetUtil\IP-P2P" folder.

[Welcome] window will appear.


Welcome
Welcome to the IP-P2P Setup program. This program will install IP-P2P on your computer.
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

2. Click the [Next] button.

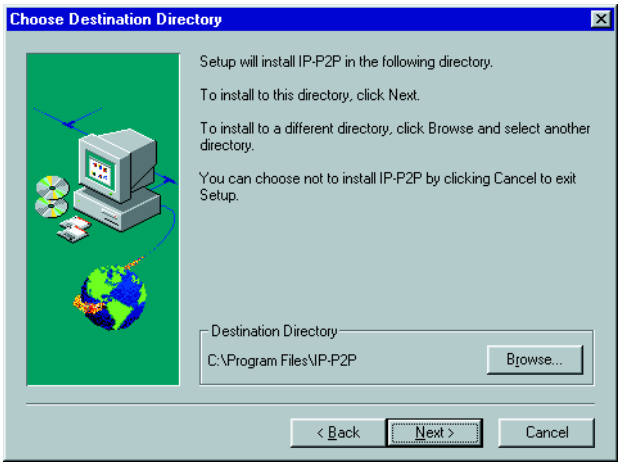
[Installation Notes] window will appear.


Installation Notes
PeerToPeer-IP Installation Notes.
README for IP Peer-to-Peer Software Version 2.70 - December 1999
This disk contains the Microsoft Windows 95/98 and Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 compatible software to allow PC's running these systems to print directly to the compatible network card in your printer using the IP capabilities that are supplied with Microsoft Windows 95/98, Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 and Microsoft Widows 2000. This capability will work even if there is no File Server on the network; however, your PC must have the TCP/IP protocol installed in its Network Configuration.
This program has been developed and tested using Microsoft network protocol stacks supplied with Windows 95/98, Windows NT 4.0 and Windows 2000. Operation in conjunction with third party network stacks is not guaranteed.
Do you wish to Install PeerToPeer-IP?
< Back
Yes
No

Using IP Peer-to-Peer (Continued)

3. Click the [Yes] button.

[Choose Destination Directory] window will appear.

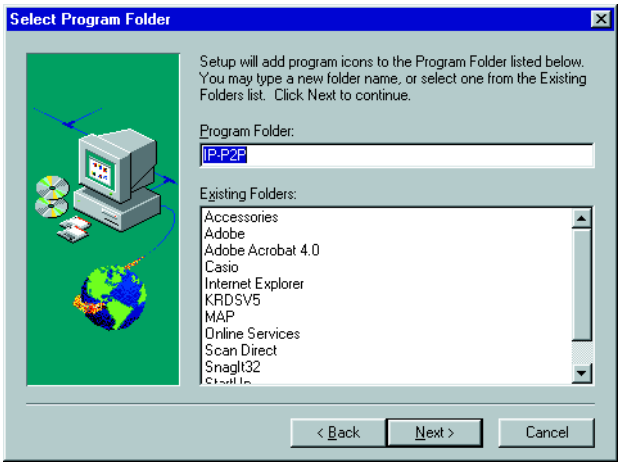

Choose Destination Directory
Setup will install IP-P2P in the following directory.
To install to this directory, click Next.
To install to a different directory, click Browse and select another directory.
You can choose not to install IP-P2P by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.
Destination Directory
C:\Program Files\IP-P2P
Browse...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

The default destination directory is [C:\Program Files\IP-P2P]. To change this, click the [Browse] button to select a destination directory.

4. Click the [Next] button.

[Select Program Folder] window will appear.



5. Click the [Next] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation.

●Uninstallation of IP Peer-to-Peer

When uninstalling the IP Peer-to-Peer, perform the following procedure.

1. Change the printer port or delete the printing system using IP Peer-to-Peer from the [Printers] folder.

2. Delete the [IP-P2P] by using [Add/Delete Applications] from the [Control Panel].

Using IP Peer-to-Peer (Continued)

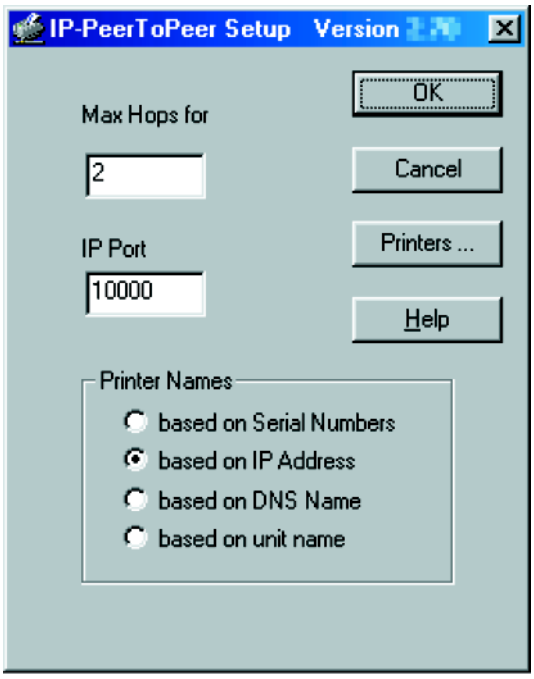
●IP Peer-to-Peer setup

You can set up the IP Peer-to-Peer while installation is in process.

To change the setting, select [Start] → [Programs] → [Ip-p2p] → [IP-P2P] to start up IP Peer-to-Peer.

1. Start IP Peer-to-Peer.

Once IP Peer-to-Peer begins the [IP Peer To Peer Setup] dialog box appears to enable you to set up the [Max Hops for], [IP Port], and [Printer Names] of the printing system.



Max Hops for

IP Peer-to-Peer broadcasts a search for the network interface card on the network.

The default of Max Hops for (0-15) is 2. When the value is set to 0, a search will be exercised only in the segment in which the computer with an activated IP Peer-to-Peer belongs. When the value is 2, up to two network routers will be searched everywhere accessible via up to two routers.

Important

Note that the greater the value of Maximum Hop Count, the more traffic that is generated.

IP Port

You need to enter the same number as set in the copier by selecting [TCP/IP Setup]-[Base Port Number]. The Default is [10000].

Printer Names

Designate the network interface card name indicated when you selected the printer port during the printer driver setup. You may use the serial number of the network interface card, IP address, DNS name, or any unit name as the network interface card name.

To change the currently assigned printer name, restart Windows. Then execute the IP Peer-to-Peer again to set up the network interface card for printing via IP Peer-to-Peer. The [Printers] dialog box can be displayed by clicking the [Printers...] button.

[OK] button

Exits IP-PeerToPeer after saving your settings.

[Cancel] button

Exits IP-PeerToPeer without saving your settings.

[Printers...] button

Displays the [Printers] dialog box.

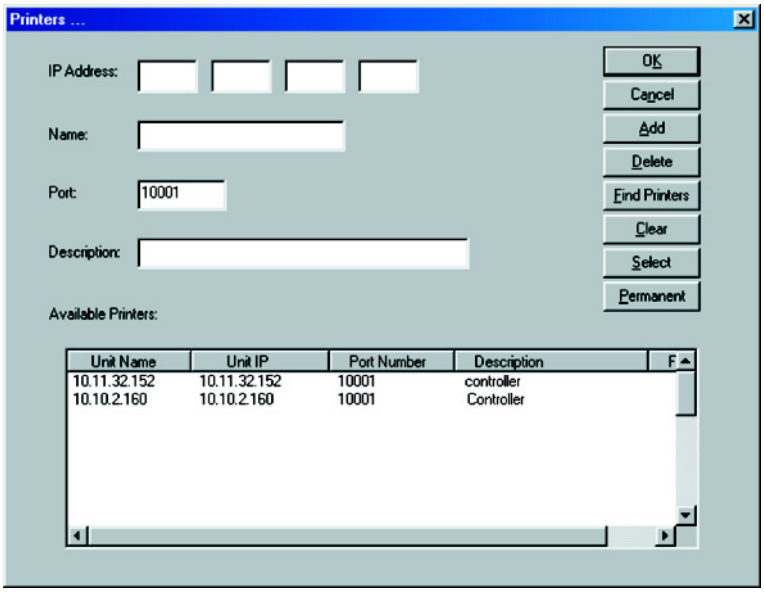
[Help] button

Allows you to get help.

2. Click [Printers...] button to display the [Printers] dialog box.

[Printers] dialog box will appear.

Set up the network interface card to print using IP Peer-to-Peer. You can search the list available network interface card and manually add or remove network interface cards to the Windows Port Listing.



OK

Accepts all changes made to setup and exits to the previous screen.

Cancel

Discards any changes made to setup and exits to the previous screen.

Add

Allows a user to manually add a printer to the [Available Printers] list

Delete

Deletes the highlighted printer(s) from the [Available Printers] list.

Find Printers

Finds printers connected to a network (network interface card) in the range specified in [Max Hops for] of [IP Peer-to-Peer] dialog box, and displays in the [Available Printers].

Clear

Clears the [Available Printers] list. This will not clear any printer marked with the [P] flag.

Select

In the [Available Printers] list, marks the [S] flag to the highlighted printers.

Printers marked with the [S] flag are added to the Windows port listing in the [Add Printer Wizard].

Permanent

Flags the highlighted printer(s) with the [P] flag. Any printer marked with this flag will not be removed from the [Available Printers] list, even if the printer is physically removed from the network or the [Clear List] button is selected (described above)

S flag

In the [Available Printers] list, highlight printers and click [Select] to mark the [S] flag. Click [Select] again to clear the [S] flag.

Printers marked with the [S] flag are added to the Windows port listing in the [Add Printer Wizard]. Added to the Windows port listing enables the network printer to be used as a local printer virtually.

P flag

In the [Available Printers] list, highlight printers and click [Permanent] to mark the [P] flag. Click [Permanent] again to clear the [P] flag.

Printers marked with the [P] flag will not be removed from the list even if the [Clear] button is selected.

M flag

[M] flag is marked when a printer is added manually.

Adding and Deleting Printers Manually

Enter the following items and click the [Add] button to add printers to the [Available printers] list if a target printer (network interface card) is not found.

MEMO

Each of the [S], [M] and [P] flags are marked if printers are added manually.

IP Address

Enter the IP Address assigned to a printer (network interface card).

Name

Enter the printer name to be displayed when you select the printer port during the printer driver setup.

Port

Enter the number added [1] to the number set in the copier by selecting [TCP/IP Setup]-[Base Port Number].
Default is [10001].

Description

Enter the description text. This text is displayed following the port number when you select the printer port during the printer driver setup.

Click [Unit Name] to select the printing system. Click [Delete] to delete the highlighted printing system.

3. Click the [OK] button when all settings are completed.

All setting values are stored when you return to the [IP Peer to Peer Setup] dialog. If you click the [Cancel] button before clicking [OK], the changed values will not be saved.

4. Click the [OK] button.

Click the [OK] button in the [IP Peer-to-Peer] dialog box to save the setting values. If you click the [Cancel] button, the values will not be changed.

Installation of Printer Driver

When all settings are completed, install the printer driver. When you are using IP Peer-to-Peer, specify the connection type as [Local], and the printer name set in IP Peer-to-Peer to the [Printer Port].

MEMO

For more information on installation and setting of the printer driver, refer to "Section 2 How to Print" in this Manual.

Reference (p.37)

1. Turn on the computer and start Windows.

Exit from all active Windows applications, if required.

2. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Settings] from the Start menu to click [Printers] from the sub-menu.

The [Printers] window will open.

MEMO

Shut down all open Windows applications.

3. Double-click the [Add Printer] icon of the [Printers] window.

The [Add Printer Wizard] will appear to set the printer.

4. Click the [Next] button.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.

5. Select [Local] and click the [Next] button.

The window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.

6. Click the [Have Disk] button.

The [Install From Disk] window will appear.

7. Click the [Browse] button.

The [Open] window will appear.

8. Set the "User Software CD" on the CD-ROM drive.

9. Change [Drive] to the CD-ROM drive.

From the [Folder] list, double-click on "English\Printer\Win9x_Me" folder. If [Setup.inf] is displayed on the list of [File] name, click the [OK] button. The [Install From Disk] window will appear.

10. Click the [OK] button.

The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to select the printer manufacturer and model will appear.

11. Be sure that in the list of [Printers], [Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL] is highlighted, then click the [Next] button.

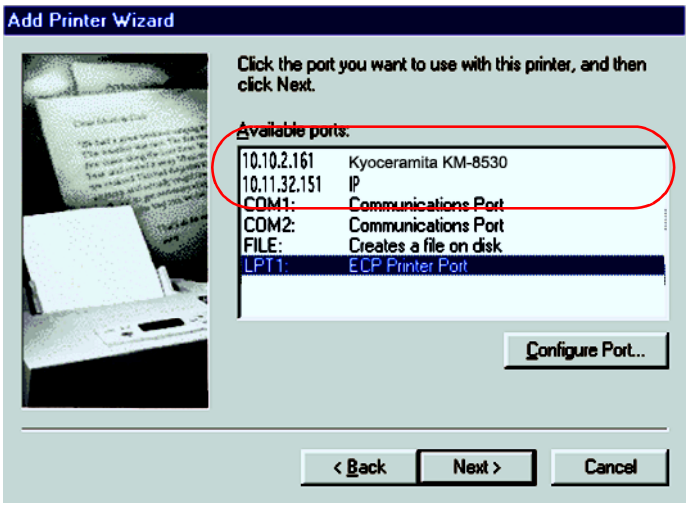
The next [Add Printer Wizard] window to assign a port will appear.

MEMO

The model name of print controller is displayed in [xxx].

Installation of Printer Driver (Continued)

12. From [Available ports], choose the printer name you have set up in IP PeerToPeer Setup.



13. From [Printer Name] text box, check the printer name.

To change the printer name, enter a new printer name to the [Printer Name] text box.

14. Select whether to use this printer as the default printer, and click the [Next] button.

Select [Yes] to set it as a default printer, and select [No] not to set it as a default printer. The test print selection window will appear.

15. Select whether to perform the test print.

Select [Yes (recommended)] to perform the test page, or select [No] not to print it.

16. Click the [Finish] button.

Necessary files will be copied from the "User Software CD" to complete the installation.

17. The test print starts.

Ensure the test page is printed properly.

If the test page is printed properly, click the [Yes] button.

If you selected [No] on the print test selection window, the test page will not be printed.

18. The installation is completed.

The printer driver of the printing system becomes available without restarting your computer.

Using IPX Peer-to-Peer

Windows Peer-to-Peer printing allows Windows 95/98/Me computers to print to the printing system without an intervening server and without using IP. The main features of the Windows IPX Peer-to-Peer printing are as follows:

- Runs on Windows 95/98/Me "out of the box".
- Runs on networks that do not have a NetWare file server, as well as those that do.
- Implements IPX peer-to-peer bi-directional printing between Windows PCs and the printing system.

●Introduction and preparation

The Peer-to-Peer implementation uses the IPX/SPX stacks that are provided with Windows 95/98/Me. The IPX Peer-to-Peer provided will establish a connection with the printers supporting IPX Peer-to-Peer, without using an intermediate file server, whether or not your network uses Novell NetWare.

When configuring the network capabilities for the Windows computer, you must include the [IPX/SPX Compatible Protocol]. If you are not using NetWare, you do not need to activate any NetWare Client application.

This inclusion of IPX/SPX can also be done after initial Windows installation by going to the [Network] setup function under [Control Panel]. To do this, you will need the Windows CD.

> MEMO
> Because Peer-to-Peer uses the IPX/SPX Protocol, Novell operation must remain enabled on the network interface card, even if traditional Novell printing facilities are not being used. The name of the Peer-to-Peer printer, as it appears in the Windows Port List, is the same as the Novell Print Server name, and may be changed by changing the Novell Print Server name using the Web Utility or MAP utility.

On power up, the network interface card checks the network to see if there is Novell activity. If there is, it will use the same frame type and the local network number that it senses. If, in addition, the network interface card can log on to a file server, it will assume that Novell is normally used and will store this frame type and new number in NVRAM so that, when it comes up again, it will not have to spend the time sensing (which can take some time).

However, if the network interface card cannot attach to a file server, it will use the sensed values, but will not store them.

If the network interface card does not see any Novell activity, it will use 802.2 on 802.3 as a frame type and will assign itself a network number of 0. The frame type and network number being used is reported on the Status Page.

If a network interface card is being moved from a site that had active Novell to a site that does not, the unit should be reset to factory default to clear the frame type and network number information.

Using IPX Peer-to-Peer (Continued)

●Installation of IPX Peer-to-Peer

To install the IPX Peer-to-Peer, perform the following procedure:

1. **Insert the CD-ROM that came with the network interface card into the CD-ROM drive.**
2. **From the Windows main window, click on [Start].**
3. **Click on [Run].**
4. **From [Run], type <CDROM drive>:\IPX-P2P\SETUP.EXE.**
5. **Click on [OK].**
6. **At the [IPX Peer-to-Peer Setup] screen, click on [Next].**

MEMO

- If setup detected a previous installation of the IPX Peer-to-Peer, it will prompt you to have Setup delete the old driver and continue the installation procedure. Click on [Yes] or [No]. Once the IPX Peer-to-Peer is installed, each printer on the network that supports this peer-to-peer capability will appear as a [Port] under [Printer Properties].
- To use the Peer-to-Peer connection, create a logical printer using the [Add Printer Wizard] according to the instructions for the print controller. Set up the printer as a [LOCAL] printer. Use the driver that came with the print controller. When the [Add Printer Wizard] asks you to choose the [Port], select the name of the Peer-to-Peer printer you wish to print to. When you complete the installation, select the [Print Test Page] option.

When uninstalling the IPX Peer-to-Peer, perform the following procedure.

1. Delete the printer using IPX Peer-to-Peer from the [Printer] folder.
2. Delete the [IPX-P2P] by using [Add/Delete Applications] from [Control Panel].

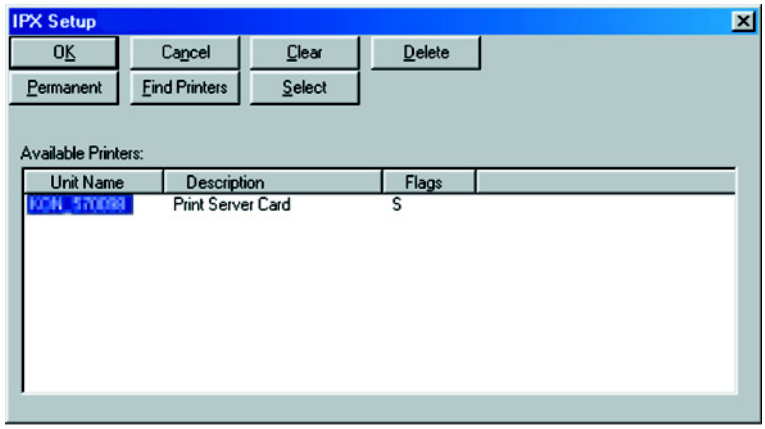
Using IPX Peer-to-Peer (Continued)

●IPX Peer-to-Peer setup

IPX Peer-to-Peer printing allows you to print to a network printer for networks without a file server or for networks where you do not want to use the network interface card for printing.

Use peer-to-peer printing on Windows 95/98/Me systems. Click on the [IPX-P2P] menu item in Windows to bring up the [IPX Setup] screen.

An explanation for each field on the screen is described below:



OK:
Accepts changes made to setup and exits the program.

Cancel:
Discards any changes made to setup and exits the program.

Clear:
Clears the [Available Printers] list below. This will not clear any printer marked with the [Permanent] flag.

Delete:
Deletes the highlighted printer(s) from the [Available Printers] list below. Printers deleted in this fashion will no longer be listed in the [PORT] listing when adding a printer.

However, this does not actually delete the printer from the network, it only removes it from the list maintained on this computer. The printer may be re-added to the list by selecting the [Find Printers] button (described below) as long as it remains connected to the network.

Permanent:
Flags the highlighted printer(s) with the [P] flag. Any printer marked with this flag will not be removed from the [Available Printers] list, even if the printer is physically removed from the network or the [Clear List] button is selected (described above).

Find Printers:
Initiates a search routine out to the network. This routine will then list all printers found on the network by their print server name (defined in the printer). The default Print Server Name for a printer is a three letter identifier and the six digit serial number of the network interface card (e.g., IB1_(serial number)).

Select:
Flags the highlighted printer(s) with the "S" flag. Only 30 printers may be selected at one time. When displaying the [PORT] list during the process of adding or changing a printer, only [Selected] printers will be displayed.

Using IPX Peer-to-Peer (Continued)

Available Printers:

List of printers that was detected on the network. This list can be cleared using the [Clear List] button (described above) and this list can be updated or refilled using the [Find Printers] button (described above).Printers in this list are described with three fields:

• Unit Name:

This is the print server name defined in the printing system. The default print server name for a printing system is a three letter identifier and the six digit serial number of the network interface card (e.g., IB1_(serial number)).

• Description:

Printer's description. This field usually contains the manufacturer's name and the printer's model.

• Flags:

[S], selected or [P], permanent. Any printers marked with an [S] flag will be displayed in the [Window's Port] Listing. When displaying the Windows port list during the process of adding or changing a printer, only [Selected] printers will be displayed. Only 30 printers may be selected at one time.

Any printer marked with a [P] flag will not be removed from the [Available Printers] list, even if the printer is physically removed from the network or the [Clear List] button is selected.

Add Printers for IPX Peer-To-Peer Printing

You can add printers manually whenever the program cannot find printers automatically because of router setup or hop count setting. In general, this should not be necessary:

Step 1: Use IPX-P2P to Add Printers

1. **Click on the IPX-P2P menu item in Windows. The [IPX Peer-to-Peer Setup] screen will appear.**
2. **A list of available IPX-enabled printers is displayed after a brief pause while the program searched the network.**
3. **Highlight the printer(s) you wish to have displayed in the Windows Printer Port listing and click "Select". This will ensure these the printers are included in the Windows Printer Port listing. You may have a maximum of 30 printers selected at any one time.**
4. **Click OK when you have finished selecting all the printers you wish to have displayed in the Windows Printer Port list.**

Step 2: Use the Add Printers option in Windows.

1. **Click on the Add Printer button.**
2. **Select Local Printer from the menu.**
3. **Select the make and model of the printer you want to use. A list of printer ports appears. Any IPX peer-to-peer printers that have been selected from IPX-P2P Setup will appear in this list.**

Using IPX Peer-to-Peer (Continued)

4. Select the IPX printer you want to use.

5. Complete the remainder of the printer setup procedure as you would normally.

MEMO

You may change the printer driver setting at a later time by doing the following:

1. Right click on the printer driver icon and select properties.
2. Select the Details tab (it may take up to 15 seconds to access).
3. Click on the arrow in the box labeled Print to the Following Port.
4. Select the printer address you wish to use.
5. Click OK.

LPD/LPR Setup

The network interface card is equipped with the standard print server protocol (LPD: Line Printer Daemon) for TCP/IP, which enables you to use network printing service for TCP/IP (LPR: Line Printer Remote) from Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 3 or later) or Windows 2000/XP computers to print.

To use the TCP/IP network protocol for LPD/LPR printing, the network interface card must be set up for TCP/IP in advance.

Important

Confirm that TCP/IP is set up correctly on the Windows NT/2000/XP computer using the main body printer via the network interface card before setting up the print controller.

MEMO

For TCP/IP setting refer to Windows NT/2000/XP on-line help, etc.

● Adding a printer port on Windows NT 4.0

To print by LPD/LPR from Windows NT computer, add a printer port and install the printer driver on Windows NT.

Before doing

Confirm the following settings:

- TCP/IP setting to each Windows NT computer
- Installation of [Microsoft TCP/IP Printing]

Important

Installation of [Microsoft TCP/IP Printing]
Select [Network] from the [Control Panel] of Windows NT 4.0 to display the [Network] dialog box. Click the [Service] tab and make sure that [Microsoft TCP/IP Printing] exists in the list of [Network Services]. If it is not found, add it.

MEMO

For details, refer to Windows NT on-line help, etc.

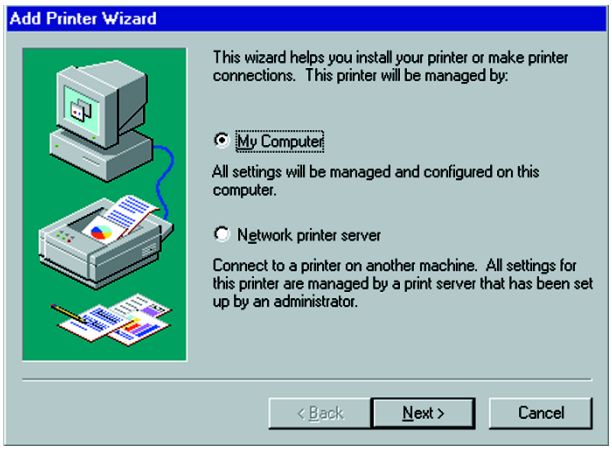
To add a various services to Windows NT, the CD-ROM for setting up Windows is required.

LPD/LPR Setup (Continued)

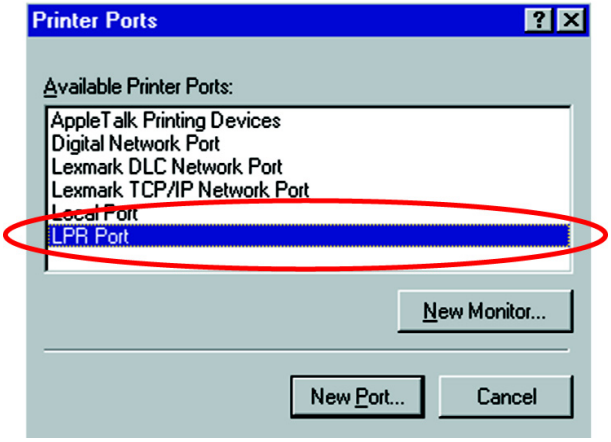
Adding a printer port

To add a printer port, perform the following procedure. The CD-ROM containing the printer driver must be on hand:

1. **Click the [Start] button and select [Printers] from [Settings].**
2. **Double-click [Add Printer] to activate [Add Printer Wizard].**
3. **Select [My Computer] and then click [Next] button.**


Add Printer Wizard
This wizard helps you install your printer or make printer connections. This printer will be managed by:
My Computer
All settings will be managed and configured on this computer.
Network printer server
Connect to a printer on another machine. All settings for this printer are managed by a print server that has been set up by an administrator.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

4. **Click the [Add Port] button.**
5. **Select [LPR Port] from [Available Printer Ports] in the [Printer Port] dialog box. Click the [New Port] button.**



6. **Type the IP address assigned to the network interface card for [Name or address of server providing lpd] in the [Add LPR compatible printer] dialog box.**
7. **Type [PORT1](upper case) for [Name of printer or print queue on that server], and click the [OK] button.**

LPD/LPR Setup (Continued)

8. In the list of available ports, put a checkmark next to the LPR port you created and click [Next] button.

9. You come to the step of installing the printer driver. Follow the wizard information.

Reference ▶ (p.55) Installing to Windows NT4.0 (PCL5e)

●Creating a printer port on Windows 2000

To print by LPD/LPR from a Windows 2000 computer, create a printer port and install the printer driver on Windows 2000.

Before doing

Confirm the following settings:

- TCP/IP setting to each Windows 2000 computer
- Installation of [Print Services for Unix]

Important

Installation of [Print Services for Unix]
Select [Network and Dialup Connections] from the [Control Panel] of Windows 2000 to display the [Network and Dialup Connections] dialog box. Then select the [Optional Networking Components] in the [Advanced] menu to indicate the [Optional Components Wizard].
Select the [Other Network File and Print Services] and then click the [Details] button to display the [Other Network File and Print Services] dialog box. Make sure that the [Print Services for Unix] is checked.
If it is not checked, add it.

MEMO

For information regarding adding the [Print Services for Unix], refer to Windows 2000 on-line help, etc.
To add a various services to Windows 2000, the CD-ROM for setting up Windows is required.

Creating a printer port

To add a printer port, perform the following procedure. The CD-ROM containing the printer driver must be on hand:

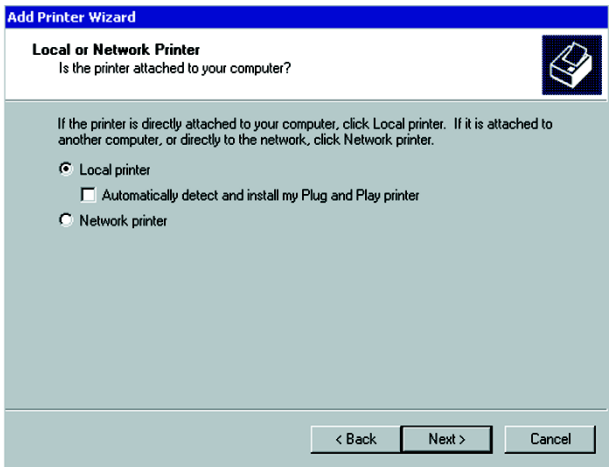
1. Click the [Start] button and select [Printers] from [Settings].

2. Double-click [Add Printer] to activate [Add Printer Wizard].

3. Click [Next] button.

LPD/LPR Setup (Continued)

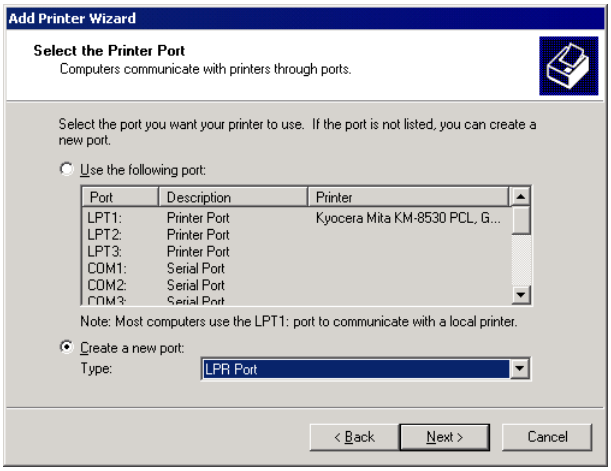
4. Select [Local printer] and click [Next] button.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
Is the printer attached to your computer?
If the printer is directly attached to your computer, click Local printer. If it is attached to another computer, or directly to the network, click Network printer.
Local printer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
Network printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

Check [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] off.

5. Select [Create a new port] and then choose [LPR Port] from [Type]. Click the [Next] button.


Add Printer Wizard
Select the Printer Port
Computers communicate with printers through ports.
Select the port you want your printer to use. If the port is not listed, you can create a new port.
Use the following port:
Port
Description
Printer
LPT1: Printer Port Kyocera Mita KM-8530 PCL, G...
LPT2: Printer Port
LPT3: Printer Port
COM1: Serial Port
COM2: Serial Port
Note: Most computers use the LPT1: port to communicate with a local printer.
Create a new port:
Type:
LPR Port
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. Type the IP address assigned to the network interface card for [Name or address of server providing lpd] in the [Add LPR compatible printer] dialog box.

7. Type [PORT1](upper case) for [Name of printer or print queue on that server], and click the [OK] button.

8. Follow the wizard information to install the printer driver.

Reference ▶▶ (p.71) Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e)

LPD/LPR Setup (Continued)

●Creating a printer port on Windows XP

To print by LPD/LPR from Windows 2000 computer, create a printer port and install the printer driver on Windows 2000.

Before doing

Confirm the following settings:

- TCP/IP setting to each Windows XP computer
- Installation of [Print Services for Unix]

Important

Installation of [Print Services for Unix]
Select [Network and Internet Connections] from the [Control Panel] of Windows XP to display the [Network and Internet Connections] window and select [Network Connections] to display the [LAN or High-Speed Internet] window. Then select the [Optional Networking Components] in the [Advanced] menu to indicate the [Optional Components Wizard].
Select the [Other Network File and Print Services] and then click the [Details] button to display the [Other Network File and Print Services] dialog box. Make sure that the [Print Services for Unix] is checked.
If the [Print Services for Unix] is unchecked, check it, and add the service from the Windows XP CD.

MEMO

For information regarding adding the [Print Services for Unix], refer to Windows XP on-line help, etc.
To add a various services to Windows XP, the CD-ROM for setting up Windows is required.

Creating a printer port

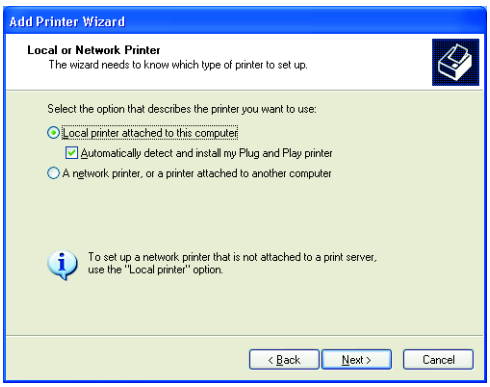
To add a printer port, perform the following procedure. The CD-ROM containing the printer driver must be on hand:

1. Click the [Start] button and select [Printers and Faxes].

2. Double-click [Add a printer] to activate [Add Printer Wizard].

3. Click [Next] button.

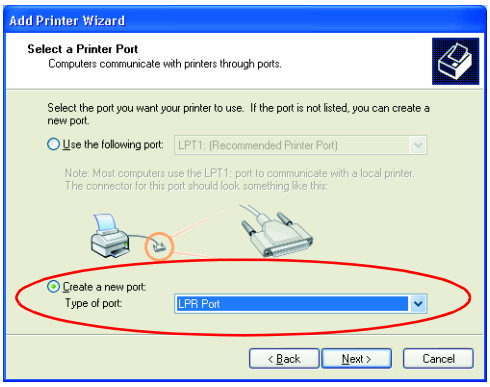
4. Select [Local printer attached to this computer] and click [Next] button.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
The wizard needs to know which type of printer to set up.
Select the option that describes the printer you want to use:
Local printer attached to this computer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer
To set up a network printer that is not attached to a print server, use the "Local printer" option.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

MEMO

Check [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] off.

5. Select [Create a new port] and then choose [LPR Port] from [Type of port]. Click the [Next] button.


Add Printer Wizard
Select a Printer Port
Computers communicate with printers through ports.
Select the port you want your printer to use. If the port is not listed, you can create a new port.
Use the following port:
LPT1: (Recommended Printer Port)
Note: Most computers use the LPT1: port to communicate with a local printer. The connector for this port should look something like this:
Create a new port:
Type of port:
LPR Port
< Back
Next >
Cancel

6. Type the IP address assigned to the network interface card for [Name or address of server providing lpd] in the [Add LPR compatible printer] dialog box.

7. Type [PORT1](upper case) for [Name of printer or print queue on that server], and click the [OK] button.

8. Follow the wizard information to install the printer driver.

Reference ▶▶ (p.91) Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e)

LPD/LPR Setup (Continued)

Adding Print Services for Unix

If [LPR Port] is not displayed at step 5 of "Adding a printer port", perform installation of print service for Unix.

1. Click the [Start] button and select [Network and Dialup Connections] from the [Control Panel].

MEMO

For Windows XP, select [Start]-[Control Panel], and select [Network and Internet Connection]-[Network Connection] from the [Control Panel] window displayed.

2. Select the [Optional Networking Components] in the [Advanced] menu.

3. Check the [Other Network File and Print Services] box on.

4. Click the [Details] button.

5. Make sure that the [Print Services for Unix] is checked, and click the [OK] button.

6. Click the [Next] button.

7. When [Disk Insertion] window is displayed, follow the instructions and insert the Windows CD to the CD-ROM drive, and click the [OK] button.

Necessary files are copied.

Follow the procedures of "Adding a printer port" from the beginning again and activate [Add Printer Wizard].

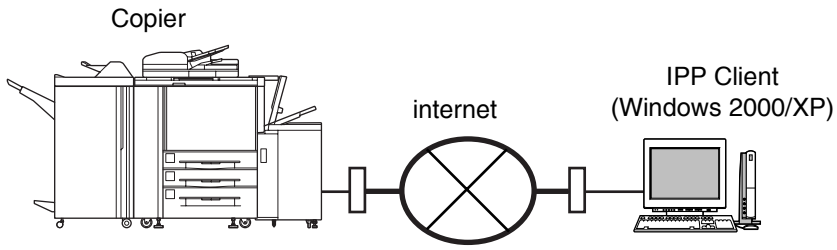
Reference ▸ (p.559) Creating a printer port on Windows 2000

Reference ▸ (p.561) Creating a printer port on Windows XP

Internet Printing

This printing system works with IPP (Internet Printing Protocol).

IPP lets you send a print job to a printer connected to the Internet or an intranet: with this protocol, this printing system will produce outputs as requested via Internet or intranet.



●Settings on the Copier

To run a print job over IPP, TCP/IP settings must have been previously established.

You can also set IPP attributes. To do this, choose [Network Setup]-[Set IPP Printer Attributes] from the Web Utilities.

MEMO

For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

Internet Printing (Continued)

●Settings on Windows 2000

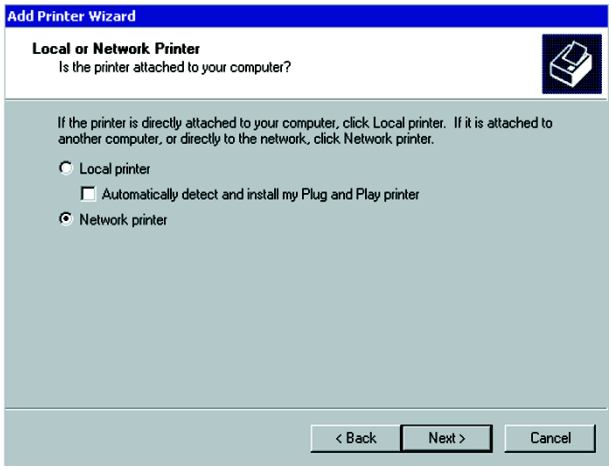
Complete the steps shown below to add the copier to the existing installation on your computer running under Windows 2000. TCP/IP settings must have already been set up on your computer. You need the accompanying CD-ROM which includes the printer driver.

1. Click the [Start] button, and select [Printers] from [Settings].

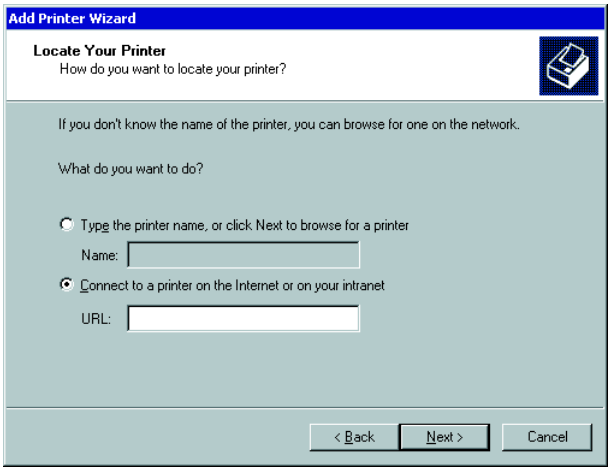
2. Double-click [Add Printer] to run [Add Printer Wizard].

3. Click [Next] button.

4. Choose [Network printer] and click [Next] button.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
Is the printer attached to your computer?
If the printer is directly attached to your computer, click Local printer. If it is attached to another computer, or directly to the network, click Network printer.
Local printer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
Network printer
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. Choose [Connect to a printer on the Internet or your intranet].


Add Printer Wizard
Locate Your Printer
How do you want to locate your printer?
If you don't know the name of the printer, you can browse for one on the network.
What do you want to do?
Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer
Name:
Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet
URL:
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Internet Printing (Continued)

6. Enter the copier's URL in the [URL] field like this:

http:// printer's IP address :631/ipp

In the "printer's IP address" column, enter the IP address assigned to your Network Inteface Card. Alternatively, you can enter the host name of the copier's (NIC's) host name.

If you designate the proxy setting in your Internet Explorer, you cannot access the your printer over IPP. For more information see your network administrator.

7. Click [Next].

The [Add Printer Wizard] will appear.

8. The wizard will take you through the process of installing the printer driver of the [Add Printer Wizard].

Reference (p.71) Installing to Windows 2000 (PCL5e)

Internet Printing (Continued)

●Settings on Windows XP

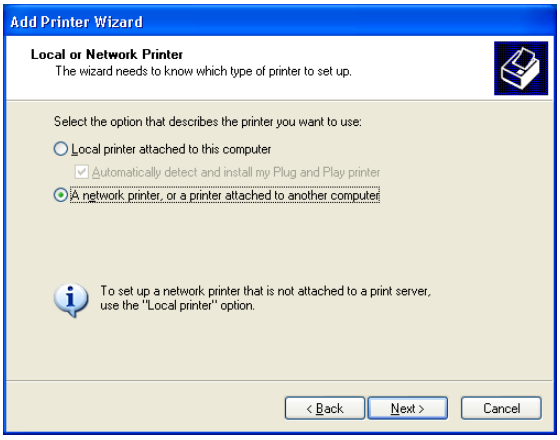
Complete the steps shown below to add the copier to the existing installation on your computer running under Windows XP. TCP/IP settings must have already been set up on your computer. You need the accompanying CD-ROM which includes the printer driver.

1. Click the [Start] button of the task bar. Then, select [Printers and Faxes] of the Start menu.

2. Double-click [Add a printer] to run [Add Printer Wizard].

3. Click [Next] button.

4. Choose [Network printer] and click [Next] button.


Add Printer Wizard
Local or Network Printer
The wizard needs to know which type of printer to set up.
Select the option that describes the printer you want to use:
Local printer attached to this computer
Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer
A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer
To set up a network printer that is not attached to a print server, use the "Local printer" option.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. Choose [Connect to a printer on the Internet or your intranet].

6. Enter the copier's URL in the [URL] field like this:

http:// printer's IP address :631/ipp

In the "printer's IP address" column, enter the IP address assigned to your Network Inteface Card. Alternatively, you can enter the host name of the copier's (NIC's) host name.

If you designate the proxy setting in your Internet Explorer, you cannot access the your printer over IPP. For more information see your network adminisrator.

7. Click [Next].

The [Add Printer Wizard] will appear.

8. The wizard will take you through the process of installing the printer driver of the [Add Printer Wizard].

Reference ▸▸ (p.91) Installing to Windows XP (PCL5e)

Setup for NetWare 3.x

Before setting up NetWare, you have to define the print server name, etc., from the Web Utilities.

Reference (p.530) NetWare Setup

The setup procedure of NetWare 3.x is as follows. To perform this procedure, you need authorization to perform this procedure.

1. **Start up PCONSOLE and select the file server to use.**

   MEMO
   Refer to the manual of Novell NetWare for setting up with PCONSOLE.

2. **Generate and assign a print queue.**
3. **Define the network interface card as the print server.**
4. **Define the notification list/password as necessary.**
5. **Set up the primary file server as necessary.**

On completion of setup, turn off the main power of the print controller and the main body printer and turn it on again.

The main body printer will print out a Status Page indicating the file servers equipped with print server and the queues that the file servers will service.

Reference (p.524) Outputing the Status Page

MEMO
Define the primary file sever if the network connects to many sites and has more than one file server. PCONSOLE should be used to set up the primary file sever.

Setup for NetWare 4.x

Novell NetWare 4.x can operate in two modes, NetWare Directory Service (NDS) and Bindery Emulation Service (Bindery Emulation). Bindery Emulation and NDS will be executed simultaneously. It is also possible to set up the print server so that it operates only in Bindery Emulation mode or in NDS mode.
The print server set up for NDS mode will also service the file server of an old version operating in Bindery mode.

If NDS is not set up properly for the print server and Bindery Service mode is not operating, the print server cannot find the file server and Novell NetWare protocol will be indicated as inactive in the Status Page.

●Setup information

NDS

Novell Directory Service (NDS) offers a different, more advanced approach to network management than previous NetWare versions. Generally, it stores and tracks all network objects.

All 4.x servers must have NDS loaded in order to function. In this way, every NetWare 4.x server is a Directory server, because it services named Directory objects such as printing systems, print server and print queues.

With the appropriate privileges, you can create a print server object, which, once configured in its context (or location) on the network, eliminates the setup of print servers on every network server.

NDS provides true enterprise networking based on a shared network database rather than individually defined physical sites. The result is a greatly improved print server setup and management.

Bindery Emulation

NetWare 4.x also provides backward compatibility for 3.x and 4.x print service through Bindery emulation.

The Directory Information Base (DIB) is used to store information about servers and services, users, printing systems, gateways, etc. It is a distributed database, allowing access to data anywhere on the network wherever it is stored.

Pre-4.x NetWare versions provide the same data found in the DIB but the data is stored in the NetWare Bindery. The DIB was designed with more flexible access, more specific security, and, since it is distributed, was designed to be partitioned.

The Directory uses an object-oriented structure, rather than the flat-file structure of the Bindery, and offers network-oriented access, rather than server-oriented access found in the Bindery.

The Directory is backward-compatible with the NetWare Bindery through Bindery Emulation mode. When Bindery emulation is enabled, Directory Services will accept Bindery requests and respond just as if a Bindery existed on the NetWare server being accessed.

Be aware that information obtained from the Bindery query may not be stored in the server since the Directory is a partitioned and distributed database. Even though the NetWare 4.x server is not operating from a Bindery, the applications making Bindery requests will not know the difference.

Setup for NetWare 4.x (Continued)

●NDS setup

Web Utilities

This is used for context setup of the print server (network interface card).

MEMO

For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

Novell NWADMIN

Novell NWADMIN (NetWare Administration) is used to generate a directory tree and print queue objects in the print server, printing system and tree.

The network interface card is provided with a plug-and-play feature to support NetWare administration utility (NWADMIN) that enables the NDS administrator to perform centralized management of print servers.

MEMO

Refer to the Novell NetWare manual for details of Setup with NWADMIN.

PCONSOLE

NetWare allows the use of PCONSOLE as an alternative of NWADMIN. PCONSOLE is used to set up static information of print servers regarding which queues to service and to whom information is given in case of trouble.

MEMO

Refer to the Novell NetWare manual for details of setup with PCONSOLE of NDS.

●Setup for Bindery Emulation

Make sure of the Bindery Context.

Before connecting the print server (network interface card) to the Novell NetWare 4.x server of Bindery mode, make sure that the NetWare server contains the bindery context.

If the bindery context does not exist, the network administrator should modify the AUTOEXEC.NCF file to add an adequate SET command and restart the NetWare server or enter a SET command from the console prompt to make changes.

⚠

Note that any command entered following the console prompt is effective immediately but the definition of the autoexec.ncf file becomes effective only after turning off power and on again.

Setup with PCONSOLE in Bindery mode.

If you are sure that the bindery context exists in the file server, you can set up the print server with PCONSOLE.

MEMO

Refer to the Novell NetWare manual for details of setup with PCONSOLE.

⚠

In Bindery mode, only upper-case letters are valid for the printer server password.

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP

●Introduction

This section explains how to configure the network interface card and your network for use with TCP/IP communication in various UNIX environments. Independent setup and installation procedures are provided for most popular UNIX systems.

The TCP/IP capability of the network interface card will also operate with lpr spoolers on other systems, and with spooler/supervisor capabilities that communicate raw print jobs to the TCP/IP port of the network interface card. This port number is 10001.

MEMO

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a protocol for network management services. SNMP is supported for Management Information Base (MIB) II over the IP for the network interface card. This support allows you to query MIB II to get system information about the network interface card.

The network interface card can support UNIX TCP/IP printing in two modes:

- Host-based where a supplied line printer daemon is run on one or more workstations and print data is communicated to the network interface card via a TCP/IP port.
- Printer-based lpd where the print controller appears as a host running a line printer daemon.

Many operating systems provide the option of using host-resident printing or printer-resident printing.

In general, printer-based lpd is easier to use on BSD UNIX systems. This requires an entry in the printcap file once the network interface card has its IP information. Some UNIX System V systems have restrictions on support of remote lpd printers, requiring that the host-based lpd approach be used.

Each printing mode has certain advantages over the other mode, as follows:

- The host-resident method can print the username and filename on its banner page; whereas the printer-resident method prints a banner page with the host's name.
- The printer-resident method requires you to configure the print controller and the network interface card only one time, when you install the network interface card; whereas, the host-resident method requires that a printing daemon be installed on every host that you want to be able to print jobs.

MEMO

The network interface card will also operate with other host-resident print supervisor/spooler programs that present a print image to the print controller over a TCP/IP port.

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

●Printing overview

Considering both the host-based and printer-based TCP/IP printing capabilities, the network interface card works with the following systems:

- All UNIX systems that support lpd
- System V Rel. 4 (on 386 platforms)
- DEC ULTRIX RISC Versions 4.3 and 4.4
- DEC OSF/1 Versions 2.0 and 3.0
- Solaris:
  Version 1.1.3 (SunOS 4.1.3),
  Version 2.3 (SunOS 5.3),
  Version 2.4, and
  Version 2
- HP-UX Series 700 and 800 Version 9.01 and Version 10
- IBM AIX Version 3.2.5 and Version 4.0
- SCO UNIX Version 3.2
- AS400

MEMO

- If the systems you are using do not run lpd, refer to "Installing UNIX TCP/IP programs".
- The UNIX-TCP/IP Programs on accompanying CD-ROM also include source code so that you can recompose host-based code for configuring on other System V platforms.

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

●Configuring IP address to the network interface card

Regardless of the printing mode selected, the network interface card must be given the IP address and routing parameters. You can configure the IP address for the network interface card in one of the following ways:

- Use DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol).

  Reference ●●▸ (p.519) Using DHCP

- Use arp and ping capability.

  Reference ●●▸ (p.523) Using arp command (UNIX)

- Use BOOTP (Internet Boot Protocol).

  Reference ●●▸ (p.521) Using BOOTP Lite (Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP)

- Use reverse ARP (rarp) capability (Ethernet II frame type only).

  Reference ●●▸ (p.523) Using arp command (UNIX)

- Use arp command, MAP (Management Access Program), or BOOTP Lite for Windows.

  MEMO

  You can use the BOOTP, rarp, or arp and ping procedures only when the network interface card is in its default state (when no IP information has been entered).

Depending on the topology, you may need to provide the MAC address of the network interface card. The MAC address is the 12-character code that is printed on the Status Page each time the print controller and the main body printer is turned on.

After the network interface card has an IP address, you must use the MAP utility, or other dedicated utilities (for Windows or Macintosh) to change an IP address, Subnet Mask and Default Gateway.

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

●lpd UNIX Printing

lpd is an implementation of the standard UNIX line printer daemon that lets you print across a TCP/IP network without the need to install software on your workstation, with all filtering and banners done by the network interface card.

Remote printing uses the same commands (lpr, lpq, lpc) as local printing.

The process begins when the lpr call finds the printer on a remote system by looking at the remote (rm) entry in the /etc/printcap file for that printer.

lpr handles a print job for a remote printer by opening a connection with the lpd process on the remote system and sending the data file (followed by the control file containing control information for this job) to the remote system.

The printer-based lpd then filters the data and prints the job according to information contained in the control file and its own printcap file.

The network interface card lpd recognizes the format of a certain printer emulation and filters the data, if possible, so it can be printed on the printer you specify.

You can indicate to the network interface card lpd what type of print controller it is attached to by either:

- Accepting the default port setting (PCL5e, PostScript and other), or
- Changing the listed emulations via a standard IP based Web Browser.

The sections that follow give specific **lpd** setup instructions for various systems.

Setting Up a BSD Remote Printer to Use lpd

To set up a remote printer on the host that sends jobs to the network interface card using printer resident lpd, add an entry to the /etc/printcap file on your host for each printer you use. Perform the following procedure:

1. Open the /etc/printcap file.

Make an entry naming the network interface card as the remote host and PORT1 as the remote printer name. A typical printcap entry is as follows:

```
<printer_name>\ (for example, lprprinter)
:lp=:\
:rm=<remote_host>:\ (for example, name as entered in /etc/hosts)
:rp=PORT1:\
:sd=/usr/spool/lpd/<printer_name>:
(for example, spool directory on system used to spool
data and control files)
```

This entry will send jobs spooled at /usr/spool/lpd/<printer_name> to the printer designated <printer_name> to be printed at PORT 1 (the internal connection to the printer) of the network interface card designated as <remote_host>.

2. Create the spooling directory. For example, type:

```
mkdir /usr/spool/lpd/<printer_name>
```

3. To print via the spooler, use the lpr command. Type:

```
lpr-P <printer_name> < file_name>
```

Installation and testing are done. You are now ready to print.

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

Setting Up an AIX version 2.5 Remote Printer to Use lpd

Use the following procedure to set up a remote printer on the host that sends jobs to the network interface card using the lpd of the network interface card.

1. **At the prompt, type:**

   ```
   #smit spooler <cr>
   ```

2. **When a window appears, select [Manage Remote Printers].**
3. **When a menu appears, select [Client Services].**
4. **Another menu appears, select [Remote Printer Queues].**
5. **Another menu appears, select [Add a Remote Queue].**
6. **When a window appears, change the values shown to configure the network interface card.**

   The values displayed are default values. You must replace the short and long form filter values with the values shown in the following table.

Data Requested	Example	Data Description
Name of queue to add	print1	Name of local printer
queue Destination Host	printfast	NIC IP hostname
Short Form Filter	/usr/lpd/bsdshort	Required value
Long Form Filter	/usr/lpd/bsdlong	Required value
Name of remote printer queue	PORT1	Network interface card
Name of device to add	print1	Name of local queue

7. **After you have supplied all values, press Enter.**

   You can now print.

Setting Up an AIX 4.0 System

Use these procedures to install the network interface card in a AIX 4.0 system:

1. **Run SMIT Printer.**
2. **Select [Print Spooling].**
3. **Select [Add a Print Queue].**
4. **Select [Remote].**
5. **Use [Standard Processing].**
6. **Assign a queue name.**
7. **Use the host address of the Network Interface Card for the Remote System.**
8. **Use [PORT1] for the queue on the remote system.**
9. **Add a description (optional).**
10. **Press [Enter] to generate.**

    Installation is complete. Test your printer by executing the following command:

    ```
    lp -d<queue_name> <file_name>
    ```

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

Setting Up an HP-UX Remote Printer to Use lpd

Set up a remote printer on the host that sends jobs to the network interface card using the lpd of the network interface card. To do this:

1. **At the prompt, type:**

   ```
   sam
   ```

2. **When a window appears, select [Printer/Plotter Manager].**

3. **When the menu appears, select [List printer and plotters].**

4. **When a list appears, select [Actions] in the title bar.**

5. **From the pull-down menu, select [Add Remote Printer].**

6. **When a window appears, add values to configure the network interface card.**

   See example below.

Data Requested	Example	Description of Input Data
Printer Name	myprinter	name to be used in lp command
Remote System Name	fastprint	Network Interface Card hostname as in /etc/hosts
Remote printer Name	PORT1	lpd queue name

7. **At the bottom of the screen, select [Remote Printer is on BSD system] from the three choices available.**

8. **Click on the OK button.**

9. **Ping the unit to test communications. Type:**

   ```
   ping  <IP address of the network interface card>
   ```

10. **Ping should confirm your IP address with the message:**

    ```
    <IP address of the network interface card> is alive
    ```

11. **If the connection is confirmed, you can now print.**

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

Setting Up an AS/400 System to Use lpd

When working with the output queue description (WORKOUTQD), there are several fields that must be defined for the network interface card to function properly as a remote printer device.

Use the following procedure to define fields for the network interface card to make it function as a remote printer:

1. **When prompted for the remote system, type INTNETADR so the AS/400 recognizes the device as an IP device.**
2. **Port must be [PORT 1].**
3. **Connection type must be [IP].**
4. **Internet address must be the IP address of the network interface card.**
5. **Destination type must be [OTHER].**
6. **When prompted for transforming SCS to ASCII, type YES to allow the AS/400 do the character translation.**
7. **Manufacturer type and model must be the print driver that goes with your print controller.**

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

Setting Up a DEC ULTRIX 4.3 RISC or OSF1 Remote Printer

Use the following procedure to set up a remote printer on the host that sends jobs to the network interface card.

1. **At the prompt, type: lprsetup, then select [add].**
2. **Enter a name for your printer, then press [Enter].**
3. **"Do you want more information on specific printer types?" Press Enter. A list of ULTRIX-supported printers is listed.**
4. **Type: remote, and press [Enter].**
5. **Enter a printer synonym (alias) and press [Enter].**
6. **Designate a spooler directory and press [Enter], or accept the default spooler directory displayed and press [Enter].**
7. **Designate a remote system name and press [Enter].**
8. **Designate PORT1 as the remote system printer name and press [Enter].**
9. **You are asked to enter the name of a printcap symbol from a displayed list. Type: Q, and press [Enter].**
10. **Your configuration is displayed.**

    You are asked whether these values are final. Type: Y or N, and press Enter. An example is shown below.

Printer #7 Symbol	Type	Representative Value
lp (line printer)	STR	
rm (remote host)	STR	Network Interface Card_host
rp (remote printer)	STR	PORT1
sd (spooler directory)	STR	/usr/spool/lpd7

11. **Add comments to the printcap file. For example, you can type:**

    `Lois' printer down the hall <Enter>`

12. **Select exit to save your configuration, then press [Enter]. You are now prepared to print.**

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

Setting Up a SCO UNIX Remote Printer to Use lpd

Use the following procedure to set up a remote printer on the host that sends jobs to the network interface card using lpd.

1. At the prompt, enter the mkdev rlp command.

You cannot run mkdev rlp twice. If you have additional printers to be configured, use the rlpconf command.

2. You are now asked a series of questions. Respond as follows (shown in bold type):

```
Please enter a printer name: lprprinter1
Is lprprinter1 a remote printer or a local printer? R
Enter remote host name: lprprinter
Confirm the information you entered: Y
Confirm the preceding connection as your system
default: Y
Enter another printer name or quit setup: Q
```

3. If necessary, stop and restart your remote daemon.

4. Using a line editor of your choice, edit the /etc/printcap file and change the:

rp=entry to PORT1.

UNIX Printing through TCP/IP (Continued)

Setting Up System V Release 4 and Solaris 2.X to Use lpd

If your system recognizes the LPSYSTEM command, you do not need to install the dedicated utility, Kyoceramita's host-side software. Another option is the admintool if your system supports it.

- LPSYSTEM Installation

The following procedure must be executed from the Bourne Shell.
Type: **SH** then press Enter to enter the Bourne Shell program.

Use the following procedures to install LPSYSTEM:

1. **lpsystem -t bsd < Print server host name in /etc/hosts file >**
2. **lpadmin -p <local printername> -s <remote host name or IP address> !PORT1**

   Your system may want its IP address instead of the remote host name.
3. **Enable <local printername>**
4. **Accept <local printername>**

Printing on Linux

1. **Start x terminal.**
2. **At the command prompt, enter the printtool command.**

   The Red Hat Print System Manager window opens.
3. **Click the Add button.**

   The Add Printer Entry window opens.
4. **Choose Remote Unix (lpd) Queue and click OK .**

   The Edit Remote Unix Queue Entry window opens.
5. **Specify the following:**
   - The printer name
   - The spooler directory (typically, `/usr/spool/lpd/prntr-name`)
   - The IP address of the Network Interface Card (in the **Remote Host** field)
   - `PORT1` (in In the **Remote Queue** field)
   - An input filter (optional)
   - When you finish, click OK.
6. **Restart the daemon by choosing lpd -> Restart lpd in the Print Server Manager.**

Preparation to print from Macintosh

●Configuration for Apple Talk

The AppleTalk protocol must be enabled before printing can be performed.

Use the Control Panel, MAP utility or Web Utilities for Windows to check or to enable the AppleTalk protocol.

Important

Macintosh OS X is not supported.

Reference (p.533) AppleTalk Setup

Reference (p.533) Printer Name

Reference (p.533) Zone Name

- Print to the printing system by using Chooser to select the network and printer.
- The network interface card is found in Chooser as IB1_(serial number) 1, where 1 stands for the print controller.

●How To Access The HTTP Server With A Web Browser

Access to the HTTP Server allows you to perform all network interface card functions.

Use the following procedure to access HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) with the standard Web Browser, such as Netscape or Internet Explorer (4.x or higher).

1. Assign an IP address to the network interface card.

Reference (p.527) IP Address

2. Start the Web Browser you normally use.

When the Browser is up and running, type http:// followed by the IP address of the unit in the Location field at the top of the Browser screen, or by going to [File] at the menu bar and choosing Open Location. Example: For a unit with an IP address of 199.9.200.200, type:

```
http://199.9.200.200
```

If you designate the proxy setting in your Web Browser you cannot access the Web Utilities.
For more information on the proxy settings. See your network administrator.
For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

Resetting the Network Interface Card to Factory Default

●Resetting the Network Interface Card to Factory Default

You can cause the network interface card to restore all parameters to factory default values, so the network interface card appears just as it came from the factory. You may choose to do this when the network interface card is moved to a new location where the environment (NetWare file servers, IP subnets, and so on) is different.

This process is called "Reset to Factory Default".
It can be done with a control panel on the copier or Web Utilities.

- Control Panel

  Reference (p.539) Factory Default

- Web Utilities

  MEMO
  For more information on the Web Utilities, refer to the "Web Utilities User's Reference Guide."

  Resetting to factory default value means that the network interface card loses all data such as names and IP address. It does not lose its serial number or MAC address.

How to Diagnose Problems

Use the following list to determine the cause of printing problems:

1. Verify that the printing system is functioning properly.

- Make sure the printing system is operating properly by generating a test page.
  For instructions on generating a test page, refer to "Section 4 How to Setup" in this Manual.

  Reference (p.114) Test Page Print

- Does the LCD Touch Screen of the main body printer display an error message?
  Refer to the Kyoceramita User's Manual designed for your specific main body printer.

2. Check the Status Page to see what protocols are enabled and active.

Refer to the appropriate chapter to confirm that you have installed and configured your network protocol correctly for the network interface card.

Reference (p.524) Outputing the Status Page

3. Determine if other users can print.

If they can't and they are all on the same NOS, go to the troubleshooting section for that NOS operation manual.

4. When you have determined the nature of the problem, use the checklists in the next section.

How to Diagnose Problems (Continued)

●Troubleshooting Network Hardware Connections

- For 100BaseTX or 10BaseT, check that the network connector is plugged into the RJ connector on the network interface card.
- Try another cable to make sure you do not use a defective cable.

●Troubleshooting MAP Problems

If the MAP cannot detect a target network interface card, check the following:

- Are the network settings on the network interface card correctly made?
- Did you correctly select the MAP settings?
- Are the protocols used by the computer on which the MAP is to run correctly set up?
- Are the Web Browsers used by the computer on which the MAP to run correctly set up?
- If nothing irregular is found, turn off the main power supply to the print controller and the main body printer, then turn it back on, wait several minutes and try running the MAP again.

●Troubleshooting NetWare Protocol

It is recommended that you use MAP to get the NetWare setup and parameter values. If you have not resolved the problem after running MAP, go through the checklists in this section.

NetWare Checklist

- Is the print server name (network interface card name) entered correctly? The factory default name is IB1_(serial number). The serial number can be found on the Status Page.
- Did you assign print queues to the printing system? It is recommended that you assign each print queue to only one network interface card-connected printing system. If print queues are assigned to other network printers, the print jobs may be going to another network printer.
- Did you set up the print controller to the type Remote Other/Unknown?
- If the PCONSOLE or NWADMIN settings are correct, the connection between the printing system and network may have been broken. Turn the print controller and the main body printer off and, using PCONSOLE or NWADMIN, wait for the status message "Not Connected". Turn the print controller and the main body printer on and the status should change to "Waiting for Job".

File Server Checklist

- Is there enough disk space on the File Server and is it running?
- Is the correct file server associated with the printing system? Use PCONSOLE or NWADMIN to check this.
- Did you have the proper rights to configure the print controller? (supervisor or administrator)
- Are the File Server and the network interface card communicating? Run NetWare's COMCHECK utility from any network workstation to check this.
- Are there enough user positions on the File Server?

How to Diagnose Problems (Continued)

Workstation Checklist

- Is the network loaded onto the workstation? Refer to the NetWare documentation.
- Is the application set up to print to the printing system? For instance, are you using the correct driver?
- Is the workstation connected to the correct print queue? Print a file and verify that the file goes to the queue.
- Are the print queues assigned to the network interface card-connected printing system also assigned to another network printer? If they are, the print jobs may be going to that printer.
- From PCONSOLE or NWADMIN, enter a sample print job directly into an assigned queue. Does the job become Active? Is the job printed?
- Is AUTO ENDCAP enabled? Auto Endcap lets you send data to a network printer. Use PCONSOLE or NWADMIN to check. If not, enable it.
- To check AUTO ENDCAP, use PRINTCON. If AUTO ENDCAP is disabled, enable it.

Print Server Configuration Checklist

If all your hardware connections are correct, check the following:

- Use MAP to check the status of the print server. The [Unit Status] screen shows the status for the selected print server. This report includes a status of file servers and queues assigned to a printing system along with a description of any problems.
- The printer may not be assigned to the correct print queues. Use PCONSOLE or NWADMIN to direct print jobs to the correct queues, then check to see if the print job is in the queue.
- If print servers were added or changed, use PCONSOLE or NWADMIN to make sure you configured the new devices correctly.
- Make sure the print server name has been entered correctly. If you changed the name in MAP, you must also change the name in PCONSOLE or NWADMIN before you can print.
- Use PCONSOLE or NWADMIN to check the Printer Status. Make sure it is not stopped.
- You cannot use PCONSOLE Version 1.0 to configure the print server. Contact Novell Inc. for an upgrade.

Printer Server/File Server/Printer Checklist

Check the following to see if:

- The print server can log into the file server, and can service jobs from a File Server.
- The print server name is listed on that File Server. Use PCONSOLE or NWADMIN to set up the print server to the File Server.
- The password assigned to the print server through PCONSOLE matches the password assigned through MAP. Use MAP to update the password stored in the print server memory.
- The print job is in the print queue and waiting to be printed. Use PCONSOLE or NWADMIN to check if the print jobs are being sent to the printing system.

How to Diagnose Problems (Continued)

Workstation to Print Server Connection Checklist

To make sure the workstation is communicating with the print server, check the following:

- Print a file from the workstation and make sure the print job gets to the print queue using PCONSOLE or NWADMIN. If the print job does get to the queue, the problem is not with the workstation/print server connection.
- Use CAPTURE to send data to the printing system from a workstation software application. Refer to your NetWare print server manual for information.
- Make sure another printer is not taking the print jobs from the queues before the print server can service the job. To do this, disable the other printer until you can verify the print server-connected printing system setup.

Print Server Loses Its Novell File Server Connection

If the print server loses its connection to the file server, it can take approximately 5 to 10 minutes to reconnect. If the connection is not made after a reasonable amount of time, check the error conditions to troubleshoot the problem.

Unable to Print than a Different Context

The print server does not support printing from a context different than the context in which you are installed. If you want to do this, you must create an alias queue.

MEMO

Refer to your NetWare Manual for more information.

Appendices

Appendix A Product Specifications 588

Appendix B Function List 595

Appendix C Font 604

Appendix D Symbol Set 621

Product Specifications (Printing System (2))

Type:	Built-in box type for the KM-8530 Printer/Copier
Paper (PCL5e):	5.5" x 8.5" / 8.5" x 11" / 8.5" x 14" / 11" x 17" / A3 / A4 / A5 / A6 / B4 / B5 / B6 / F4 / 8K / 16K / 5.5" x 8.5" (Wide) / 8.5" x 11" (Wide) / 11" x 17" (Wide) / A3(Wide) / A4(Wide) / A5(Wide) / B4(Wide) / B5(Wide) / A4 Tabstock / 8.5" x 11" Tabstock
Paper (PS3):	Statement / Letter / Legal / Tabloid / A3 / A4 / A5 / A6 / B4 / B5 / B6 / F4 / 8K / 16K / Statement (Wide) / Letter(Wide) / Tabloid (Wide) / A3(Wide) / A4(Wide) / A5(Wide) / B4(Wide) / B5(Wide) / Letter Tabstock / A4 Tabstock / Custom May be different depending on the specification of each country. The paper with "W" at the end of the document size represents "Wide paper". If there is no space for displaying "Wide" in the driver, it is replaced --> with "+".
Paper Feeding and Amount of Feeding Paper:	Same as the copier
Load Output Paper:	Same as the copier
Mode:	Dual operation of the copier and the printer (5 jobs, including scanning jobs, can be processed at the maximum.)
Special Printing (PCL5e):	Duplex printing, selection of sheet types (manual paper feed), selection of Output Tray, Layout (Nup function), Scaling Function, Sorting, Booklets, 2-in-1 Function, 2-in-1 repeat function, Fold, Stitch and Trim Function, Staple Function, Wait Mode Function, Image Shift Function, Front/Back Cover Function, Watermark, Punch Function, Tandem Print etc.
Special Printing (PS3):	Duplex printing, selection of sheet types (manual paper feed), selection of Output Tray, Negative Image Printing, Mirror Image Printing, Layout (Nup function), Scaling Function, Offset, Booklets, 2-in-1 Function, 2-in-1 repeat function, Fold, Stitch and Trim Function, Staple Function, Wait Mode Function, Image Shift Function, Front/Back Cover Function, Watermark, Punch Function, Tandem Print etc.
Orientation:	Portrait and Landscape
Resolution:	Printing System:400 x 400 dpi / 600 x 600 dpi Scanning System: 200 dpi / 300 dpi / 400 dpi / 600 dpi
Gradation:	1 bit
No. of Prints:	1 to 9999
Continuous Print Speed:	85 ppm (A4, 8.5 x 11)(See Note 1)
Printable Area:	Standard: Top and Bottom Margins:2.5 mm Right and Left Margins:2.5 mm Wide Size: Margins 0 mm (unlike standard size's) Max. Printable Area: 303 x 458 mm
Warm-up Time:	Same as the copier
CPU:	Intel Pentium III 866 MHz
System Memory:	64 MB (Standard) Expandable up to 512 MB (Option: MB-4A / MB-4B)

Product Specifications (Printing System (2)) (Continued)

Host Interface:	Parallel port Centronics (IEEE 1284 / amphenol 25 pin male connector)
Network Interface:	Ethernet (100Base-TX / 10Base-T)
Printer Description Language:	PCL5e Adobe PS3 (optional PS3 kit required)
Built-in Fonts:	80 Agfa Microtype fonts 136 Adobe PostScript fonts
Compliant OS:	Windows 95/98/Me Windows NT 4.0 (NT Service Pack 3 or more) Windows 2000 Windows XP Mac OS 7.1 to 9.x (Mac OS X is not supported at September 2002) (optional PS3 kit required)
Printer Driver (PCL5e):	There are 2 types of PCL drivers, each supported by the following. Windows 95/98/Me Windows NT4.0/2000/XP
Printer Driver (PS3):	There are 5 types of PS drivers, each supported by the following. Windows 95/98/Me Windows NT4.0 Windows 2000/XP Mac OS 7.1 to Mac OS 8.5 Mac OS 8.5 to Mac OS 9.x (Mac OS X is not supported at September 2002)
Compliant Host Computer:	A Windows-based computer Macintosh (optional PS3 kit required)
Options:	UG-1 (PostScript Option) IB-1 (Network Interface Card) MB-4A (64 MB) / MB-4B (128 MB)
Dimensions:	200 mm(W) x 350 mm(H) x 415 mm(D) 7.9" (W) x 13.8" (H) x 17" (D)
Weight:	Approx. 11 kg Approx. 242.5 lb
Power:	Supplied from the copier
Working Environment:	Temperature: 10 °C to 30 °C 50 °F to 86 °F Humidity: 10 % to 80 %RH (non-condensing)

Restrictive Conditions

When the Weekly Timer function of the copier is activated, power is not turned off until the data output is finished, if data remains in the E-RDH.

Note:These speeds are based on continuous printing following the storage of all pages in the E-RDH memory or based on continuous printing of the same image on multiple pages.

Note:Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Product Specifications (Network Interface Card (NIC))

Type:	Print Controller Built-in type
Frame Type:	IEEE 802.2/802.3/Ethernet II/IEEE 802.3 SNMP
Ethernet Connection:	100Base-TX / 10Base-T
Network Connector:	RJ-45
Protocols:	TCP/IP (BOOTP, ARP, RARP, ICMP, DHCP, SNMP, HTTP, SMTP, FTP, IPP), IPX/SPX, AppleTalk (EtherTalk)
Compliant OS (NOS):	Novell NetWare (3.x, 4.x), Windows 95/98/Me, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, UNIX, MAC OS 7.x or more
Multiple Protocols:	Automatic selection
Printing Method:	Peer-to-Peer (TCP/IP for Windows 95/98/Me), Pserver (IPX/SPX), lpd/lpr (TCP/IP for Windows NT 4.0/2000), lpd/lpr (TCP/IP for UNIX), AppleTalk (EtherTalk)
Dedicated Utilities:	IP-P2P, IPX-P2P, MAP (Management Access Program), NWSetup, UNIX-TCP/IP Programs
Standard Utilities:	Web Browser (Netscape Navigator, Internet Explorer)
Operating Conditions:	0 to 50 °C, 5% to 80% RH
Status Indicators:	Green LED, Yellow (amber) LED (one each)
Settings:	Stored in nonvolatile memory

UTP cable specifications

Use the following universal Ethernet standard when configuring your 10/100BaseT UTP cables to connect to the RJ-45 connector on the Network Interface Card. The cable should be Category Type 5 or better (depending on length).

Pin No.	Color	Ethernet
8	Blue/White	
7	Blue	
6	Orange/White	Receive-
5	Green/White	
4	Green	
3	Orange	Receive+
2	Brown/White	Transmit-
1	Brown	Transmit+

Factory Default Settings (NIC)

Data transfer speed:		Automatic recognition
Password:		sysadm
TCP/IP:	IP Address	0.0.0.0
	Subnet Mask	255.0.0.0
	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
	Base Port Number	10001
	DHCP	Enabled
	IP Address	Enabled
	LPD Banner	Enabled
	Ethernet Frame Type	Ethernet II
Novell NetWare:	NetWare (IPX/SPX)	Enabled
	Print Server Name	xxx_(serial number) *1
	Print Server Password	No Value
	Scan Rate Print Queue	1 Sec.
	Ethernet Frame Type	Auto Search*2
	Disable Bindery	Enabled
	Preferred NDS Context	No Value
	Preferred NDS Tree	No Value
AppleTalk:	AppleTalk	Enabled
	Printer Name	xxx_(serial number)*1
	Ethernet Frame Type	802.2 On 802.3
Peer-to-Peer:	Peer-to-Peer	Enabled
	Printer Name	xxx_(serial number)*1
	Ethernet Frame Type	Auto Search*2

*1 [xxx] varies depending on models of machine.

*2 If the Network Interface Card cannot find the frame type when starting, [802.2 On 802.3] must be selected.

Function List (Print Controller)

Classification	Setting Items	Set Value	Description	95/98/ Me	NT4.0/ 2000	XP
Paper tab	Copies	1 to 9999	This function is used to specify the number of copies to be printed.	O	O	O
	Collate	On / Off	This function is used to specify how to output multiple pages.	O	O	O
	Orientation	Portrait Landscape	This function is used to specify orientation.	O	O	O
	Paper size	5.5" x 8.5" 8.5" x 11" 8.5" x 14" 11" x 17" A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm B4 - 250 x 354 mm B5 - 182 x 257 mm B6 - 128 x 182 mm F4 - 8.0" x 13" 8K - 267 x 390 mm 16K - 195 x 267 mm 5.5" x 8.5" W 8.5" x 11" W 11" x 17" W A3W- 297 x 420 mm A4W - 210 x 297 mm A5W - 148 x 210 mm B4W - 250 x 354 mm B5W - 182 x 257 mm A4 Tabstock 8.5" x 11" Tabstock	The paper sizes you can set differ depending on specifications in the country and trays. Refer to the operating manual of the copier for details. The paper with "W" at the end of the document size represents "Wide paper". If there is no space for displaying "Wide" in the driver, it is replaced --> with "+".	O	O	O
	Media Type	Plain paper Thin paper Thick paper Tab sheet Trace OHP [Transparency] OHP-Interleave [Blank] OHP-Interleave [Print] User defined type	This function is used to specify the paper type to be printed from the Bypass tray.	O	O	O
	Paper Source	Auto Select Bypass tray Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4	This function is used to specify the paper tray.	O	O	O

Function List (Print Controller) (Continued)

Classification	Setting Items	Set Value	Description	95/98/ Me	NT4.0/ 2000	XP
Paper tab (Features)	Duplex	None Flip on long edge Flip on short edge	This function is used to set the mode of Duplex printing.	O	O	O
	Output Tray	Default Sub Tray Main Tray	This function is used to specify the output tray.	O	O	O
	Password Print	Off/On	This function is used to set the password print.	O	O	O
	Settings	-	Press this button to open [Password Print] dialog. Enter your User ID and password.	O	O	O
	Restore Defaults	-	This function is used to return the settings to default settings.	O	O	O
	Offset	Off On	This function is used to specify offset mode.	O	O	O
	Staple	None Single Left Double Top Double Left Single Right Double Right	This function is used select the staple position.	O	O	O
	Combination	None Booklet Booklet-Right 2-in-1 2-in-1 Repeat	This function is used to arrange page layout.	O	O	O
	Punch	None Left Top Right	This function is used to select the punch position.	O	O	O
	Fold & Stitch	None Fold Only Fold & Trim Fold & Stitch Fold, Stitch & Trim Z-Fold[A3, B4, 11 x 17.8k] Z-Fold[8.5 x 14] Three-Fold	This function is used to arrange the finishing method for printed papers.	O	O	O
	Wait Mode	None Wait Wait with Proof	This function is used to confirm setting or to proof a print out before starting the entire print job.	O	O	O
	Image Shift	Off On	This function is used to create a new binding margin on papers. Printing System (2) does not correspond to this.	O	O	O
	Output Order	FaceDown FaceUp		O	O	O
	Smoothing	None Type1 Type2 Type3		O	O	O
	Toner Save	Normal Toner Save Draft		O	O	O
	Tandem Print	Off On	Two copiers print at the same time.	O	O	O

Function List (Print Controller) (Continued)

Classification	Setting Items	Set Value	Description	95/98/ Me	NT4.0/ 2000	XP
Graphics tab	Halftoning	Solid Black and White Patterned Grays Diffused Grays	This function is used to select the method of the image processing for halftones.	O	O	O
	Brightness	-100 to 100	This function is used to make an adjustment on halftones.	O	O	O
	Contrast	-100 to 100	This function is used to make an adjustment on halftones.	O	O	O
	Negative	Off/On	This function is used to print image with reversed tone.	O	O	O
	Restore Defaults	-	This function is used to return the settings to default settings.	O	O	O
POD tab	Image Shift	Shift Value of Printer Engine Shift Value of Printer Driver	This function is used to create a new binding margin on papers.	O	O	O
	Image Storage	Off/On Store Store and Print	This function is used to storage the image.	O	O	O
	Image Storage - Settings	-	Press this button to open [Image Storage] dialog. Enter your Job ID and password.	O	O	O
	Chapter	Off/On	This function is used to chapter.	O	O	O
	Chapter - Pages	-	This function is used to specify the page to be chaptered.	O	O	O
	Restore Defaults	-	This function is used to return the settings to default settings.	O	O	O
Options tab	Layout - Pages per sheet	1 / 2 / 4 / 6 / 9 / 16	This function is used to print more than one page of a document on one sheet of paper.	O	O	O
	Layout - Scaling	10 to 400	This function is used to specify the enlargement or reduction rate of image in percentage.	O	O	O
	Resolution	400 x 400 600 x 600		O	O	O
	TrueType options	Outline soft fonts Bitmap soft fonts Rasters	This function is used to specify how to output TrueType fonts.	O	O	O

Function List (Print Controller) (Continued)

Classification	Setting Items	Set Value	Description	95/98/ Me	NT4.0/ 2000	XP
Watermarks tab	Watermark - Text	None CONFIDENTIAL COPY DRAFT FILE COPY FINAL PROOF TOP SECRET	This function is used to specify the watermark.	O	O	O
	Watermark - Page	All but first page All pages First page only No watermark	This function is used to specify the page on which a selected watermark is printed.	O	O	O
	Watermark - Top/Bottom	Top Bottom	This function is used to specify whether to print watermarks in the foreground or background.	O	O	O
	Watermark - Count	-	This function is used to specify how many copies of the watermark on each page.	O	O	O
	Watermark - Separation	-	This function is used to specify how far apart multiple watermarks are on the page.	O	O	O
	Font - Name	Arial Arial Black Courier New Symbol Tahoma Times New Roman Wingdings, etc.	This function is used to specify the font of the selected watermark. (A list of the fonts installed in the PC is displayed.)	O	O	O
	Font - Color	Black Dark Gray Light Gray White	This function is used to specify the color of the selected watermark.	O	O	O
	Font - Darkness	0 to 100	This function is used to control the density of the watermark text.	O	O	O
	Font - Bold	Off/On	This function is used to apply bold formatting to the watermark text.	O	O	O
	Font - Italic	Off/On	This function is used to apply italic formatting to the watermark text.	O	O	O
	Font - Size	1 to 300	This function is used to specify the font size of the selected watermark.	O	O	O
	Position	Automatically User defined (X: 0 to 100) (Y: 0 to 100)	This function is used to specify the position of the selected watermark.	O	O	O
	Position - Angle	0 to 360	This function is used to specify the control the "lean" angle of the selected watermark.	O	O	O
	Adjustment	Move Rotate	This function is used to specify the type of adjustment.	O	O	O
	Show layout	-	This function is used to preview your settings in layout with the current watermark settings.	O	O	O
	New	-	This function is used to create a custom watermark.	O	O	O

Function List (Print Controller) (Continued)

Classification	Setting Items	Set Value	Description	95/98/ Me	NT4.0/ 2000	XP
Watermarks tab	Delete	-	This function is used to delete the selected watermark.	O	O	O
	Restore Defaults	-	This function is used to return the settings to default settings.	O	O	O
Overlay tab	Symbol - File	None (default)	This function is used to specify a BMP file (Microsoft Windows standard) as an overlay form printed on paper.	O	O	O
	Symbol - Page	All but first page All pages First page only No overlay	This function is used to specify the page on which a selected overlay form is printed.	O	O	O
	Symbol - Select Bitmap	-	This function is used to register a Bitmap image for overlay.	O	O	O
	Shade - Color	Black	This function is used to specify color for a bitmap image. Only Black is selectable.	O	O	O
	Shade - Dark-ness	0 to 100	This function is used to specify Darkness of a bitmap image for overlay.	O	O	O
	Size	Automatically User defined (10 to 100)	This function is used to specify the magnification ratio of over-lay image in percentage.	O	O	O
	Position	Automatically User defined (X: 0 to 100) (Y: 0 to 100)	This function is used to specify the position of overlay image.	O	O	O
	Show layout	-	This function is used to preview your settings in layout with the current watermark settings.	O	O	O
	Restore Defaults	-	This function is used to return the settings to default settings.	O	O	O

Function List (Print Controller) (Continued)

Classification	Setting Items	Set Value	Description	95/98/ Me	NT4.0/ 2000	XP
Cover tab	Front Cover	Off/On Blank Printed	This function is used when front covers are used.	O	O	O
	Front Cover - Tray	Bypass tray Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4	This function is used to select a paper source used for front covers.	O	O	O
	Back Cover	Off/On Blank Printed	This function is used when back covers are used.	O	O	O
	Back Cover - Tray	Bypass tray Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4	This function is used to select a paper source used for back covers.	O	O	O
	Sheet Insertion	Off/On Blank Printed	This function is used when inter-sheets are used.	O	O	O
	Sheet Insertion - Pages	-	This function is used to specify the page to be inserted.	O	O	O
	Sheet Insertion - Tray	Bypass tray Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4	This function is used to select a paper source used for inter-sheets.	O	O	O
	Sheet Insertion - Advanced	Off/On	This function is used to perform advanced settings.	O	O	O
	Sheet Insertion - Settings	-	Press this button to open [Sheet Insertion Advanced Settings] dialog. Specify the page to be inserted, per each tray.	O	O	O
	PI Cover Sheet	Off/On	This function is used when PI cover sheets are used.	O	O	O
	PI Front Cover	None On	Specify the tray you intend to use with PI Front Cover Sheet.	O	O	O
	PI Back Cover	None On	Specify the tray you intend to use with PI Back Cover Sheet.	O	O	O
	Restore Defaults	-	This function is used to return the settings to default settings.	O	O	O
About tab	-	-	This function is used to show version information of the printer driver.	O	O	O

Function List (PostScript3 Option)

●Printer Special Functions

Setting Items	Set Value	Description	Note	95/ 98/ Me	NT 4.0	Win 2000	Win XP	Mac
Job Offset	Off / On	When [On] is selected, every set of copies is offset upon exit.		O	O	O	O	O
Print Position	Left / Middle / Right							
Collate	Sort / Group	Prints multiple sets according to the selected method. sorting or each page grouping.		O	O	O	O	O
Combination	None / Booklet / Booklet-Right / 2-in-1 / 2-in-1 Repeat	Prints 2 pages onto 1 sheet with the selected method.		O	O	O	O	O
Fold, Stitch	- None - / Fold only / Fold, Trim / Fold, Stitch / Fold, Stitch, Trim / Z-fold (A3, B4, 11 x 17, 8K) / Z-fold (8.5 x 14) / Three-fold	Makes folded / stitched / trimmed set according to the selected method.		O	O	O	O	O
Stapling	None / Single (Portrait) / Single (Landscape) / SingleRight (Portrait) / SingleRight (Landscape) / Double Side (Portrait) / Double Side (Landscape) / Double SideRight (Portrait) / Double SideRight (Landscape) / Double Top (Portrait) / Double Top (Landscape)	Staples the set by the selected positioning method.		O	O	O	O	O
Punch	- None - / Left (Portrait) / Left (Landscape) / Top (Portrait) / Top (Landscape)/ Right (Portrait) / Right (Landscape)	Punches the set by the selected positioning method. In some case of the settings of punching / stapling / paper / size combination, punch function can not be used.		O	O	O	O	O
Wait Mode	- None - / Wait / Wait with Proof	Stops before printing out multiple sets according to the selected method.		O	O	O	O	O
Output Order	FaceDown / FaceUp	Outputs sheets of paper, face up or down, as selected.		O	O	O	O	O
Image Shift	Off / On	When [On] is selected, prints documents with the binding margins set up from the LCD Panel of copier.		O	O	O	O	O
Front Cover	None / Printed / Blank	Inserts a paper on the top of each set of copies as a front cover by the selected method.		O	O	O	O	O
Front Cover Tray	- None - / Manual Feed / Tray 1 / Tray 2 / Tray 3 / Tray 4	Use the paper of a selected tray as a front cover.		O	O	O	O	O
Back Cover	None / Printed / Blank	Inserts a paper on the bottom of each set of copies as a back cover by the selected method.		O	O	O	O	O
Back Cover Tray	- None - / Manual Feed / Tray 1 / Tray 2 / Tray 3 / Tray 4	Use the paper of a selected tray as a back cover.	When Printed/Blank is set up in Back Cover, Manual Feed is automatically selected as Back Cover Tray if you set up None in Back Cover Tray.	O	O	O	O	O
PI-Tray(Front)	None / On	Inserts a sheet from the PI-Tray to the top of each set of copies.		O	O	O	O	O
PI-Tray(Back)	None / On	Inserts a sheet from the PI-Tray to the bottom of each set of copies.		O	O	O	O	O
Smoothing	None / Type1 / Type2 / Type3			O	O	O	O	O
Toner Save	Normal / Toner Save /Draft			O	O	O	O	O
Tandem Print	Off / On		Two copiers print at the same time.	O	O	O	O	O

Function List (PostScript3 Option) (Continued)

●Paper / Output

Setting Items	Set Value	Description	Note	95/ 98/ Me	NT 4.0	Win 2000	Win XP	Mac
Paper Size	Statement / Letter / Legal / Tabloid / A3 / A4 / A5 / A6 / B4 / B5 / B6 / F4 / 8K / 16K / Statement (Wide) / Letter(Wide) / Tabloid (Wide) / A3(Wide) / A4(Wide) / A5(Wide) / B4(Wide) / B5(Wide) / Letter Tabstock / A4 Tabstock / Custom	Selects a paper size. The paper with "W" at the end of the document size represents "Wide paper". If there is no space for displaying "Wide" in the driver, it is replaced --> with "+".	[Custom] can only be selected when using a Macintosh. This may vary depending on models of machine.	O	O	O	O	O
Orientation	Portrait / Landscape / Rotated	Prints onto selected paper direction. [Rotated] is available with [Landscape].	Try "Rotated" if you want to get a uniform orientation with Mixed Original.	O	O	O	O	O
Print on Both Side (Duplex)	None / Flip on long edge / Flip on short edge	Performs duplex printing with specified method.		O	O	O	O	O
Paper Source	AutoSelect Tray / Tray1 / Tray2 / Tray3 / Tray4 / Manual feed	Prints using the selected input tray.		O	O	O	O	O
Output Bin	Default / Sub Tray / Main Tray	Prints to the selected output tray.	When Default is selected, outputs to Main Tray.	O	O	O	O	O
Paper type	Plain Paper / Thin Paper / Thick Paper / Tabbed Sheet / Trace / OHP(Transparency) / OHP-Interleave(Blank) / OHP-Interleave(Print) / User defined type	Prints under the condition of each selected paper type. (with Manual Feed)	When OHP-Interleave(Blank)/OHP-Interleave(Print) is selected in Paper type, the tray specified in paper source is used for interleaving papers. OHP is fed from Manual feed. For paper type settings of each tray except Manual feed, sets up from the copier. For details, see the "Copier User's Manual"	O	O	O	O	O
Margins	Units (Inches / Millimeters), Top / Bottom / Left / Right	Prints with the margins set using the specified unit.		O	-	-	-	-
Layout	1 / 2 / 4 / 6 / 9 / 16 / Booklet	Prints the selected page(s) onto 1 sheet.		O	O	O	O	O
Print page border	-	Prints the page border when the check box is checked in over 2-up (Layout) printing.		O	-	-	-	O

●Graphic

Setting Items	Set Value	Description	Note	95/ 98/ Me	NT 4.0	Win 2000	Win XP	Mac
Resolution	400 dpi / 600 dpi	Prints with specified resolution		O	-	-	-	O
Scaling	25-400	Prints the document image reduced or enlarged to the specified value.	1-1000 (WindowsNT / 2000)	O	O	O	O	O
Special-Print as a negative image	-	Prints with black and white reversed under selection.	Negative Output (WindowsNT / 2000)	O	O	O	O	O
Special-Print as a mirror image	-	Prints with left and right reversed under selection.	Mirrored Output (WindowsNT / 2000)	O	O	O	O	O
Convert gray text to PostScript gray	-	Prints the image after converting gray text to PostScript gray.		O	-	-	-	-
Convert graphics to PostScript gray	-	Prints the image after converting graphics to PostScript gray.		O	-	-	-	-

Function List (PostScript3 Option) (Continued)

●Installable options

Setting Items	Set Value	Description	Note	95/ 98/ Me	NT 4.0	Win 2000	Win XP	Mac
Finisher	No Finisher / DF-630 / DF-635	Lets printer recognize the selected finisher.		O	O	O	O	O
Sheet Feeder	None / PI-108	Lets printer recognize the selected Sheet Feeder.		O	O	O	O	O
Trimmer Unit	None / TU-108	Lets printer recognize the selected Trimmer Unit.		O	O	O	O	O
Punch Unit	None / PU-108 / PZ-108	Lets printer recognize the selected Punch Unit.		O	O	O	O	O
Large Capacity Tray	None / LT-402 / LT-412	Lets printer recognize the selected Large Capacity Tray (Tray 4).		O	O	O	O	O
Memory Configuration	64 - 512 (MB RAM)	Lets printer recognize the selected value as available printer memory.		O	O	O	O	O

Font List (Print Controller)

Internal Fonts list

Courier ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Times ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Times Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Times Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Times Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Omega ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Omega Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Omega Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CG Omega Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Coronet ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Claredon Condensed ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Medium ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Medium Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Medium Condensed ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Bold Condensed ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Medium Condensed Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Univers Bold Condensed Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Antique Olive ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Antique Olive Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Antique Olive Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Garamond Antiqua ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Garamond Halbfett ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Garamond Kursiv ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Garamond Kursiv Halbfett ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Marigold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Albertus Medium ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Albertus Extra Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Arial ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Arial Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Arial Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Arial Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Font List (Print Controller) (Continued)

Times New ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Times New Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Times New Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Times New Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica Bold Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica Narrow ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica Narrow Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica Narrow Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Palatino Roman ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Palatino Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Palatino Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Palatino Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Avant Garde Book ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Avant Garde Demi ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Avant Garde Book Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Avant Garde Demi Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Bookman Light ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Bookman Demi ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Bookman Light Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Bookman Demi Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
New Century Schoolbook Roman ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
New Century Schoolbook Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
New Century Schoolbook Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Times Roman ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Times Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Times Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Times Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Symbol ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓΗΙφκλμνοπθ12345
SymbolPS ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓΗΙφκλμνοπθ12345
Wingdings
Courier Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Courier Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Courier Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Letter Gothic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Letter Gothic Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345
Letter Gothic Italic ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Font List (Print Controller) (Continued)

CourierPS ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CourierPS Bold ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CourierPS Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

CourierPS Bold Oblique ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Line Printer ABCDEFGHIjklmnopq12345

Font List (PostScript3)

Eurostile Extended Two **	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<:
Geneva ¤	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans ‡	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans Bold ‡	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
GillSans Condensed Bold ‡	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
GillSans Bold Italic ‡	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
GillSans Condensed ‡	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans Extra Bold ‡	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
GillSans Italic ‡	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
GillSans Light ‡	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
GillSans Light Italic ‡	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Goudy Oldstyle	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Goudy Bold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Goudy Bold Italic	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Goudy ExtraBold	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Goudy Oldstyle Italic	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Helvetica †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Helvetica Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Helvetica Bold Oblique †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Helvetica Condensed †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Helvetica Condensed Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Helvetica Condensed Bold Oblique †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Helvetica Condensed Oblique †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Helvetica Narrow †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Helvetica Narrow Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Helvetica Narrow Oblique †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Helvetica Oblique †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
HoeflerText Black ¤	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
HoeflerText Black Italic ¤	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
HoeflerText Italic ¤	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
HoeflerText Ornaments ¤	
HoeflerText ¤	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Joanna ‡	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Joanna Bold ‡	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Joanna Bold Italic ‡	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Joanna Italic ‡	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
LetterGothic	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
LetterGothic Bold	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
LetterGothic Bold Slanted	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
LetterGothic Slanted	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
ITC Lubalin Graph Book °	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
ITC Lubalin Graph Book Oblique °	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*

Font List (PostScript3) (Continued)

ITC Lubalin Graph Demi °	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
ITC Lubalin Graph Demi Oblique °	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Marigold *	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?< > ~"'
ITC Mona Lisa Recut °	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789 !@#$% &*?
Monaco ¤	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[] {} !@#$%^&*?<>~"'
New Century Schoolbook Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
New Century Schoolbook Italic †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
New Century Schoolbook Roman †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
NewYork ¤	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Optima †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Optima Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Optima Bold Italic †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Optima Italic †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Oxford *	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Palatino Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Palatino Bold Italic †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Palatino Italic †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Palatino Roman †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Stempel Garamond Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Stempel Garamond Bold Italic †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Stempel Garamond Italic †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Stempel Garamond Roman †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
ITC Symbol °	ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓαβχδεφγ0123456789[]{}!≅#∃%⊥&*?<>~∀ə
Tekton •	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Times Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Times Bold Italic †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Times Italic †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Times Roman †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Times New Roman ‡	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Times New Roman Bold ‡	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Times New Roman Bold Italic ‡	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Times New Roman Italic ‡	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Univers †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Univers Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
Univers Bold Oblique †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
Univers Oblique †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Univers Light †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
Univers Light Oblique †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
UniversCondensed †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
UniversCondensed Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
UniversCondensed Bold Oblique †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
UniversCondensed Oblique †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*

Font List (PostScript3) (Continued)

UniversExtended †	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'
UniversExtended Bold †	**ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'**
UniversExtended Bold Oblique †	***ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'***
UniversExtended Oblique †	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
Wingdings ˇ	♋♌♍♎♏♐♑
ITC ZapfChancery MediumItalic °	*ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]{}!@#$%^&*?<>~"'*
ITC ZapfDingbats °	✓✔✕✖✗✘

Adobe, PostScript, the Adobe logo and the PostScript logo are trademarks
of Adobe Systems Incorporated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions.
• registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated
* trademark of AlphaOmega Typography
¤ trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.
•• registered trademark of Ludlow Type Foundry
registered trademark of International Typeface Corporation
† trademark of Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
§ registered trademark of Marcel Olive
˜ trademark of Microsoft Corporation
‡ trademark of The Monotype Corporation
** trademark of Nebiolo

Font Number List (Control Panel-PCL Setup)

Font#	Font	Pitch/Point
0	line printer	16.67/8.5
1	line printer	16.67/8.5
2	line printer	16.67/8.5
3	line printer	16.67/8.5
4	line printer	16.67/8.5
5	line printer	16.67/8.5
6	line printer	16.67/8.5
7	line printer	16.67/8.5
8	Courier Bold Italic	scalable
9	Courier Bold	scalable
10	Courier Italic	scalable
11	Courier	scalable
12	Letter Gothic	scalable
13	Letter Gothic Italic	scalable
14	Letter Gothic Bold	scalable
15	Courier PS	scalable
16	Courier PS Oblique	scalable
17	Courier PS Bold	scalable
18	Courier PS Bold Oblique	scalable
19	CG Times Bold Italic	scalable
20	CG Times Bold	scalable
21	CG Times Italic	scalable
22	CG Times	scalable
23	Albertus Medium	scalable
24	Albertus Extra Bold	scalable
25	Antique Olive	scalable
26	Antique Olive Italic	scalable
27	Antique Olive Bold	scalable
28	Univers Medium	scalable
29	Univers Medium Italic	scalable
30	Univers Bold	scalable
31	Univers Bold Italic	scalable
32	Claredon Condenced	scalable

Font Number List (Control Panel-PCL Setup) (Continued)

Font#	Font	Pitch/Point
33	Coronet	scalable
34	Garamond Antiqua	scalable
35	Garamond Kursiv	scalable
36	Garamond Halbfett	scalable
37	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	scalable
38	Marigold	scalable
39	CG Omega	scalable
40	CG Omega Italic	scalable
41	CG Omega Bold	scalable
42	CG Omega Bold Italic	scalable
43	SymbolPS	scalable
44	Times New	scalable
45	Times New Italic	scalable
46	Times New Bold	scalable
47	Times New Bold Italic	scalable
48	Helvetica	scalable
49	Helvetica Oblique	scalable
50	Helvetica Bold	scalable
51	Helvetica Bold Oblique	scalable
52	Univers Medium Condensed	scalable
53	Univers Medium Condensed Italic	scalable
54	Univers Bold Condensed	scalable
55	Univers Bold Condensed Italic	scalable
56	ITC Avant Garde Book	scalable
57	ITC Avant Garde Book Oblique	scalable
58	ITC Avant Garde Demi	scalable
59	ITC Avant Garde Demi Oblique	scalable
60	ITC Bookman Light	scalable
61	ITC Bookman Light Italic	scalable
62	ITC Bookman Demi	scalable
63	ITV Bookman Demi Italic	scalable
64	Arial	scalable
65	Arial Italic	scalable

Font Number List (Control Panel-PCL Setup) (Continued)

Font#	Font	Pitch/Point
66	Arial Bold	scalable
67	Arial Bold Italic	scalable
68	Helvetica Narrow	scalable
69	Helvetica Narrow Oblique	scalable
70	Helvetica Narrow Bold	scalable
71	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	scalable
72	New Century Schoolbook Roman	scalable
73	New Century Schoolbook Italic	scalable
74	New Century Schoolbook Bold	scalable
75	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic	scalable
76	Palatino Roman	scalable
77	Palatino Italic	scalable
78	Palatino Bold	scalable
79	Palatino Bold Italic	scalable
80	Courier	scalable
81	Times Roman	scalable
82	Times Italic	scalable
83	Times Bold	scalable
84	Times Bold Italic	scalable
85	ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic	scalable
86	Courier	scalable
87	Symbol	scalable
88	Wingdings	scalable

Screen Fonts

Two types of screen fonts are contained in the User Software CD.

PostScript Type 1 font

TrueType font

The PostScript Type 1 font has the same design as the internal printer font. It is recommended to install this font when desiring to match the monitor display with printed results in the case of printing when using the printer font.

For a list of the types of fonts available, refer to “Appendix C Font List.”

Reference (p.604)

For details on the installation of screen fonts, refer to the ReadMe file in the Mac or Windows folder on the “User Software CD.”

The “User Software CD” includes two ReadMe files, one in the Mac folder, and the other in the Windows folder. They are distinguished as follows:

ReadmeE.txt in the Windows folder

Readme(E) in the Mac folder

Screenfonts Installation procedure

A. How to install PostScript Type1 fonts under Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0

In order to use PostScript Type 1 fonts in Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0, you must first install Adobe Type Manager (ATM), and then install the fonts through ATM. ATM version 4.0 or higher is required for Windows 98/Me/NT and 3.02 or higher for Windows 95.

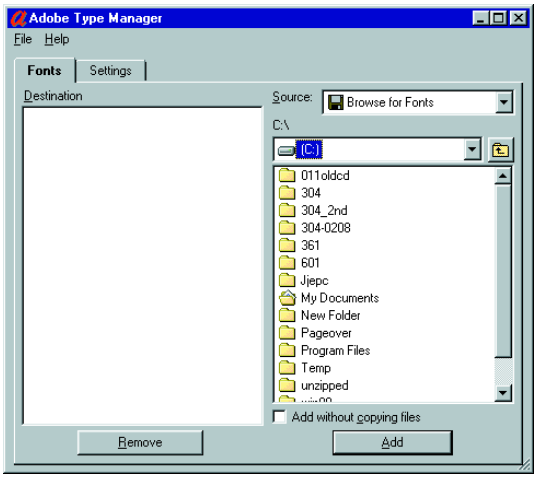
If ATM is not installed, you will need to install an ATM compliant to your OS using the “User Software CD.”

Reference (p.617)

If ATM version is lower than which mentioned above, you must first uninstall the lower ATM, and then install adequate ATM.

To Install Type1 fonts in Windows95/98 and NT 4.0 using ATM Light 4.1:

1. Choose [Start] - [Programs] - [Adobe] - [Adobe Type Manager] - [Adobe Type Manager 4.1].

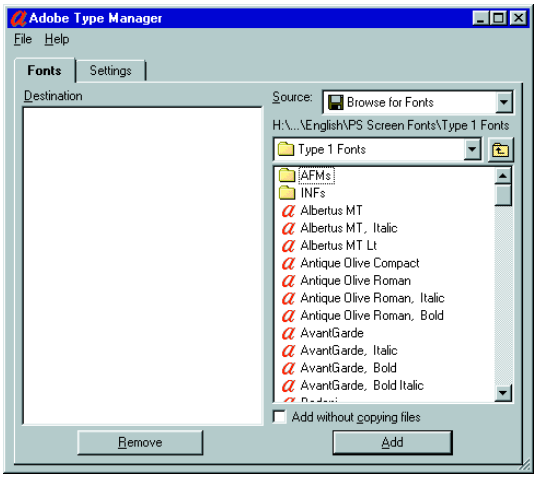


2. In ATM, click the [Font] tab.

Screen Fonts (Continued)

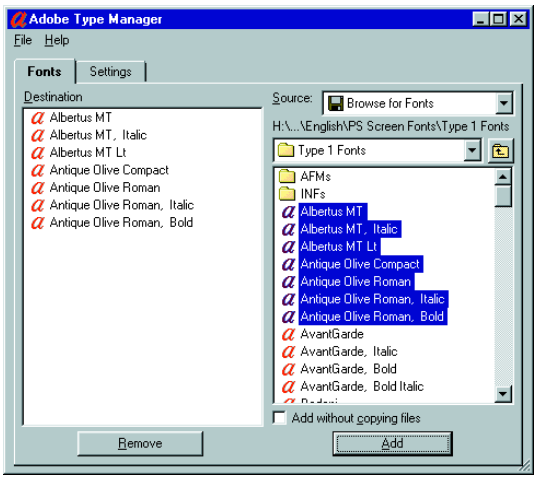
3. **Choose [Browse For Fonts] from the [Source] pop-up menu.**

4. **Select to "\English\Screenfonts" folder on the "User Software CD."**



5. **Select the fonts you want to install. You can click to select one font, Ctrl-click to select several fonts, or Shift-click to select a contiguous group of fonts.**

6. **Press the [Add] button to install the fonts.**



7. **Exit ATM.**

Screen Fonts (Continued)

B. How to install TrueType fonts under Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0

In order to use your TrueType fonts in Windows 95/98/Me/NT 4.0, you must first install them, which can be done either of two ways:

1)

Copy the .ttf font files to your "\windows\fonts" folder (Windows95/98/Me), or "\winnt\fonts" folder (Windows NT 4.0) from "User Software CD."

2)

1. **Choose [Start] - [Setting] - [Control Panel].**
2. **Double-click on the [Fonts] icon.**
3. **Go to the [File] menu, select [Install new font].**
4. **In the [folders] panel at the lower left, navigate to the location "\English\Screenfonts" folder on the "User Software CD."**
5. **Click on [Select all].**
6. **Click on [OK].**

Screen Fonts (Continued)

C. How to install PostScript Type1 & TrueType fonts in Windows 2000/XP

Windows 2000/XP supports PostScript Type 1 fonts at the system level just like TrueType fonts.You do not need to install ATM.

You have two ways of running the installation: 1) and 2), below. You can use either way.

1)

Copy the font files at "\English\Screenfonts\PS Screen Fonts" folder on the "User Software CD" to your "\winnt\fonts" folder.

2)

1. **Choose [Start] - [Setting] - [Control Panel].**
2. **Double-click on the [Fonts] icon.**
3. **Go to the [File] menu, select [Install new font].**
4. **In the [folders] pane at the lower left, navigate to the location "\English\Screenfonts" folder on the "User Software CD."**
5. **Click on [Select all].**
6. **Click on [OK].**

Screen Fonts (Continued)

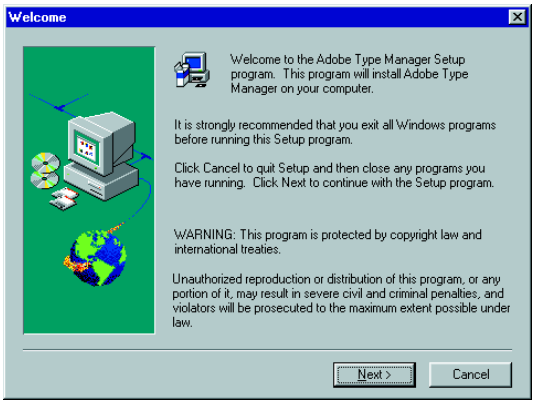
D. How to install ATM

1. Turn on computer and start Windows.

ATM install program will require restart the computer after installation. Before installation, exit from all active applications, if running.

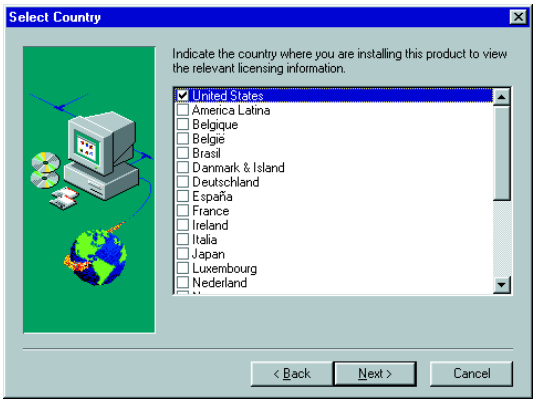
2. Double-click the [atm41eng.exe] file in the "\English\Screenfonts" folder of the "User Software CD."

The setup program starts running and an installation window appears.


Welcome
Welcome to the Adobe Type Manager Setup program. This program will install Adobe Type Manager on your computer.
It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.
WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and violators will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
Next >
Cancel

3. Click the [Next] button.

The window is switched to [Select Country].



4. Select your country, then click the [Next] button.

The [Software License Agreement] window will appear.

5. Click the [Yes] button.

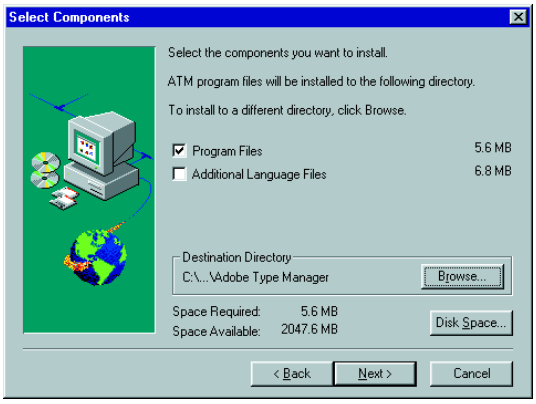
Use of Adobe Type Manager (ATM) is subject to the terms and conditions of the [Software License Agreement]. If you agree by them, click the [Yes] button.

The [User Information] window will appear.

Screen Fonts (Continued)

6. Type in user information (Name, Company), then click the [Next] button. You are asked to confirm your entry. If it is OK, click the [Yes] button.

The [Select Components] window will appear.



7. Click the [Next] button.

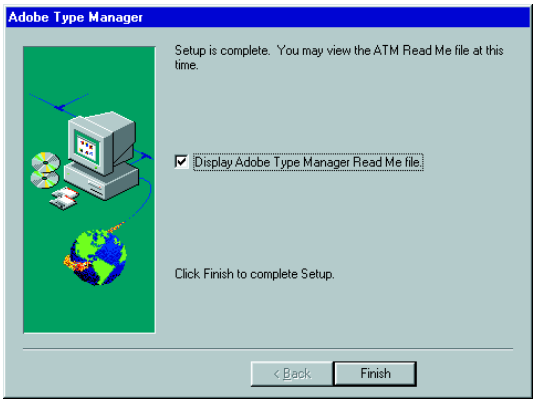
The [Select Program Folder] window will appear.

8. Click the [Next] button.

The [Start Copying Fils] window will appear.

9. Click the [Next] button.

The file copy process starts. Upon completion of the process, an [Adobe Type Manager] window will appear.

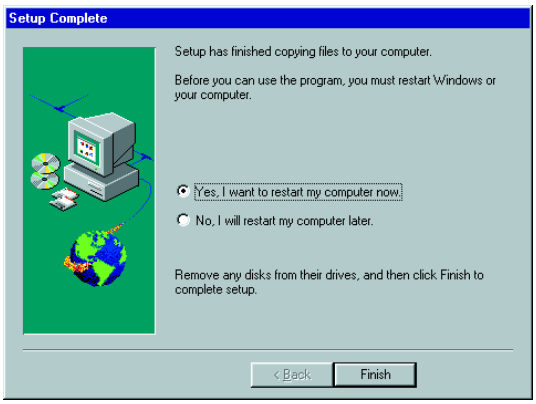

Adobe Type Manager
Setup is complete. You may view the ATM Read Me file at this time.
Display Adobe Type Manager Read Me file
Click Finish to complete Setup.
< Back
Finish

Screen Fonts (Continued)

10. Click the [Finish] button.

When the [Display Adobe Type Manager Read Me file.] check box is checked, clicking the [Finish] button opens the ReadMe file.

After closing the ReadMe file or unchecking the [Display Adobe Type Manager Read Me file.] check box, the [Setup Complete] window will appear when you click the [Finish] button.


Setup Complete
Setup has finished copying files to your computer.
Before you can use the program, you must restart Windows or your computer.
Yes, I want to restart my computer now.
No, I will restart my computer later.
Remove any disks from their drives, and then click Finish to complete setup.
< Back
Finish

11. Click the [Finish] button and Windows restarts.

When Windows is restarted, Adobe Type Manager (ATM) goes into effect.

Downloading New Fonts

Important

- When downloading fonts, you need to set [Controller Set]-[Spool] to [Off] in Printer Menu Screen on the copier control panel.
- For details on the menu structure of the copier control panel as well as on how to access Printer Menu Screen, refer to the “Print Controller User’s Guide,” Chapter 15 Control Panel.
- Select [disk0] when downloading fonts onto the hard disk in the Print Controller.
- Downloaded to [disk1], the fonts are not available for use.
- Downloading fonts to [disk1] might result in the Print Controller not functioning dependably.

After having downloaded fonts, turn the copier off, wait 10 seconds at least, then turn it back on. If you don’t do so, you cannot use the downloaded fonts dependably.

For details on how to download fonts, refer to the User’s Guide that comes with the fonts.

About Symbol Sets

By setting the symbol set, the print controller can be adapted to various character codes.

Before changing the symbol set, the symbol set now being set to the print controller should be identified.

●Symbol Sets List (Control Panel-PCL Setup)

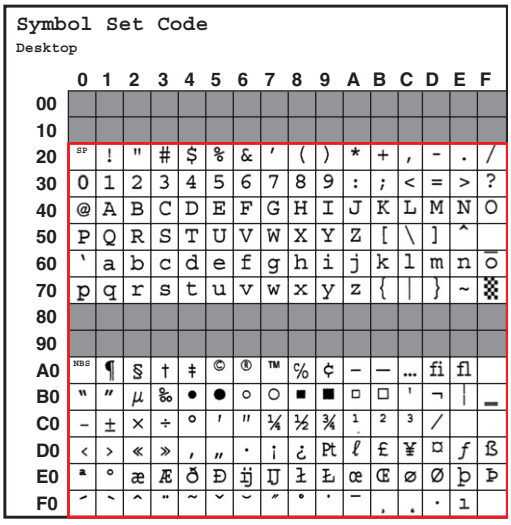
Symbol Set ID	Symbol Set Name (WebUtilities)	Symbol Set Name (Printer LCD panel)
7J	Desktop	DESKTOP
0S	ISO 11 Swedish	ISO 11
0I	ISO 15 Italian	ISO 15
2S	ISO 17 Spanish	ISO 17
1G	ISO 21 Germany	ISO 21
1E	ISO 4 United Kingdom	ISO 4
0U	ISO 6 ASCII	ISO 6
0D	ISO 60 Danish	ISO 60
1F	ISO 69 French	ISO 69
0N	ISO 8859/1 Latin 1	ISO L1
2N	ISO 8859/2 Latin 2	ISO L2
5N	ISO 8859/9 Latin 5	ISO L5
1U	Legal	LEGAL
8M	Math-8	MATH-8
12J	MC Text	MC TEXT
6J	Microsoft Publishing	MS PUBL
10U	PC-8	PC-8
11U	PC-8 D/N (Danish/Norwegian)	PC-8 D/N
9T	PC-8 Turkish	PC8-TK
12U	PC-850	PC-850
17U	PC-852	PC-852
15U	Pi-Font	PI FONT
5M	PS Math	PS MATH
10J	PS Text	PS TEXT
8U	Roman-8	ROMAN-8
13J	Ventura International	VN INTL
6M	Ventura Math	VN MATH
14J	Ventura US	VN US
9U	Windows 3.0 "Latin 1"	WIN 3.0
19U	Windows 3.1 Latin 1 "ANSI"	WIN L1

About Symbol Sets (Continued)

Symbol Set ID	Symbol Set Name (WebUtilities)	Symbol Set Name (Printer LCD panel)
9E	Windows 3.1 Latin 2	WIN L2
5T	Windows 3.1 Latin 5	WIN L5
Not Supported:	**Not Supported:**	**Not Supported:**
19M		Symbol
579L		Wingdings

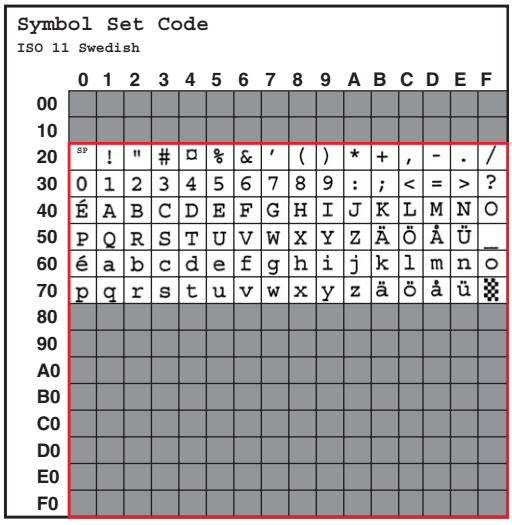
Symbol Set List

Symbol sets which can be used are shown below.



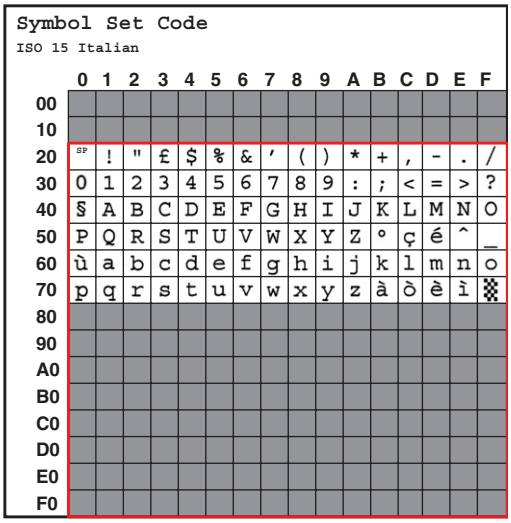
Symbol Set Code
Desktop

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0	NBS	¶	§	†	‡	©	®	™	%	¢	–	—	…	fi	fl	
B0	"	"	µ	‰	•	●	○	○	■	■	□	□	'	¬	¦	‗
C0	–	±	×	÷	°	′	″	¼	½	¾	¹	²	³	⁄		
D0	‹	›	«	»	‚	„	·	¡	¿	Pt	ℓ	£	¥	¤	ƒ	ß
E0	ª	º	æ	Æ	ð	Ð	ij	IJ	ł	Ł	œ	Œ	ø	Ø	þ	Þ
F0	´	`	^	"	~	ˇ	˘	˝	°	·	¯	¸	˛	·	ı	



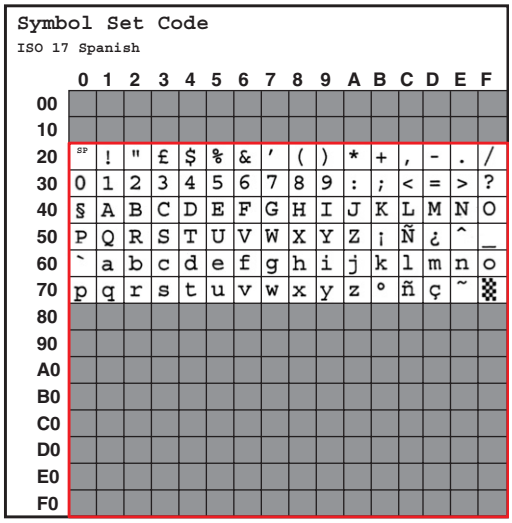
Symbol Set Code
ISO 11 Swedish

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	¤	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	É	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	Ä	Ö	Å	Ü	_
60	é	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	ä	ö	å	ü	
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																



Symbol Set Code
ISO 15 Italian

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	£	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	§	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	°	ç	é	^	_
60	ù	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	à	ò	è	ì	
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																



Symbol Set Code
ISO 17 Spanish

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	£	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	§	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	¡	Ñ	¿	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	º	ñ	ç	~	
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																

MEMO

- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)

Symbol Set Code
ISO 21 Germany

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	§	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	Ä	Ö	Ü	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	ä	ö	ü	ß	▒
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																

Symbol Set Code
ISO 4 United Kingdom

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	£	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	¯	▒
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																

Symbol Set Code
ISO 6 ASCII

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	▒
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																

Symbol Set Code
ISO 60 Danish

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	Æ	Ø	Å	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	æ	ø	å	¯	▒
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																

MEMO

- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)

Symbol Set Code
ISO 69 French

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	£	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	à	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	°	ç	§	^	_
60	µ	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	é	ù	è	¨	
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																

Symbol Set Code
ISO 8859/1 Latin 1

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0		¡	¢	£	¤	¥	|	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬	-	®	¯
B0	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	¸	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
C0	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
D0	Ð	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	Ý	Þ	ß
E0	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
F0	ð	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ý	þ	ÿ

Symbol Set Code
ISO 8859/2 Latin 2

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0	NBS	Ą	˘	Ł	¤	Ľ	Ś	§	¨	Š	Ş	Ť	Ź	-	Ž	Ż
B0	°	±	˛	ł	´	ľ	ś	ˇ	¸	š	ş	ť	ź	˝	ž	ż
C0	Ŕ	Á	Â	Ă	Ä	Ĺ	Ć	Ç	Č	É	Ę	Ë	Ě	Í	Î	Ď
D0	Đ	Ń	Ň	Ó	Ô	Ő	Ö	×	Ř	Ů	Ú	Ű	Ü	Ý	Ţ	ß
E0	ŕ	á	â	ă	ä	ĺ	ć	ç	č	é	ę	ë	ě	í	î	ď
F0	đ	ń	ň	ó	ô	ő	ö	÷	ř	ů	ú	ű	ü	ý	ţ	˙

Symbol Set Code
ISO 8859/9 Latin 5

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0	NBS	¡	¢	£	¤	¥	|	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬	-	®	¯
B0	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	¸	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
C0	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
D0	Ğ	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	İ	Ş	ß
E0	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
F0	ğ	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ı	ş	ÿ

MEMO

- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)

Symbol Set Code
Legal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0																
B0																
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0																

Symbol Set Code
Math-8

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	√	"	°	∞	÷	α	'	(	)	×	+	,	−	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	℮	Ɛ	<	=	>	≈
40	∴	A	B	Γ	Δ	E	Z	H	Θ	I	K	Λ	M	N	Ξ	O
50	Π	P	Σ	T	ϒ	Φ	X	Ψ	Ω	∇	∂	ς	≤	≠	≥	_
60	∵	α	β	γ	δ	ϵ	ζ	η	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	o
70	π	ρ	σ	τ	υ	ϕ	χ	ψ	ω	ϑ	φ	ϖ	≃	≡	≢	
80																
90																
A0		↑	→	↓	←	⇑	⇒	⇓	⇐	↕	↔	⇕	⇔	⇄	⇆	
B0	¯	∀	∃	⊤	⊥	∪	∩	∈	∋	∉	⊂	⊃	⊄	⊅	⊆	⊇
C0	⊕	⊙	⊗	⊖	⊘	∧	∨	⊻	¬	∘	·	•	●	○	†	‡
D0	Å	⊣	⊢	⌊	∍	∫	∮	∠	∅	ℵ	ב	ג	ℭ	ℑ	ℜ	ℶ
E0	⌈	⌊	⌈	{	⌊	⌈	ϕ	⌋	⧹	‖	∠	⁄	–	=	*	≅
F0	⌉	⌋	⌉	}	⌋	⌋	⌋	⌟	⌝	⟩	_	⧹	⟨	∓	+	

Symbol Set Code
MC Text

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00		SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK			EN	SUB	ESC	FS	GS	RS	US
10	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB								
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80	Ä	Å	Ç	É	Ñ	Ö	Ü	á	à	â	ä	ã	å	ç	é	è
90	ê	ë	í	ì	î	ï	ñ	ó	ò	ô	ö	õ	ú	ù	û	ü
A0	†	°	¢	£	§	•	¶	ß	®	©	™	´	¨	≠	Æ	Ø
B0	∞	±	≤	≥	¥	μ	∂	∑	∏	π	∫	ª	º	Ω	æ	ø
C0	¿	¡	¬	√	ƒ	≈	Δ	«	»	…		À	Ã	Õ	Œ	œ
D0	-	—	"	"	'	'	÷	◊	Ÿ	Ÿ	⁄	¤	‹	›	fi	fl
E0	‡	·	‚	„	‰	Â	Ê	Á	Ë	È	Í	Î	Ï	Ì	Ó	Ô
F0		Ò	Ú	Û	Ù	ı	ˆ	˜	¯	˘	˙	°	¸	˝	˛	ˇ

Symbol Set Code
Microsoft Publishing

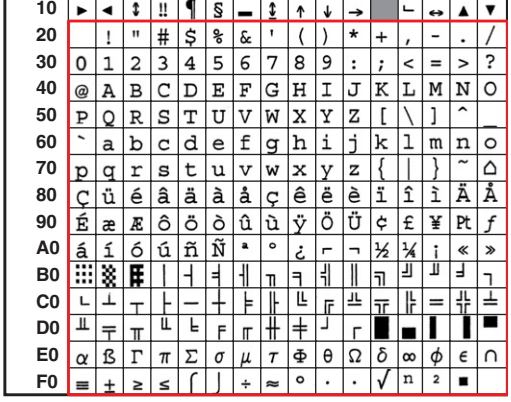
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00		SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK									
10	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EN	SUB		FS	GS	RS	US
20	SP	1	″	3	4	5	7	′	9	0	8	†	‚	–	...	⁄
30													‟	‡		
40	2												Ĺ	—	–	Ŀ
50			℞	Š	™					Ÿ	Ž				6	
60	‵			%									ℓ			œ
70				š							ž				‟	
80																
90															Pt	ƒ
A0		′	″	^	~					fi	fl	ff	ffi	ffl	<	>
B0	°	•	●	●	○	○	○	■	■	■	□	□	□	‰	◆	◇
C0		ˋ	´	^	~	¯	˘	·	¨		°	¸		˝	˛	ˇ
D0		ˋ	´	^	~	¯	˘	·	¨		°			˝	˛	ˇ
E0	Ω						Ŀ	Ł	Ł			’			‘	’n
F0						ı	ij	l·	ł							

MEMO

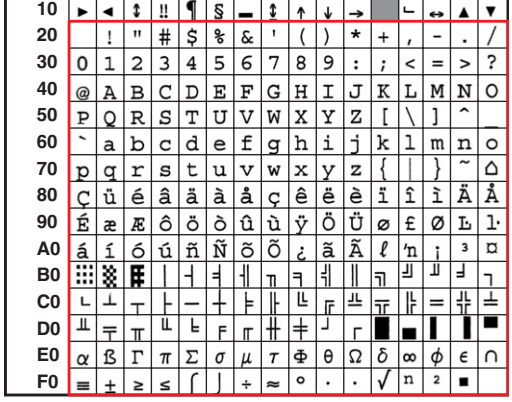
- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)

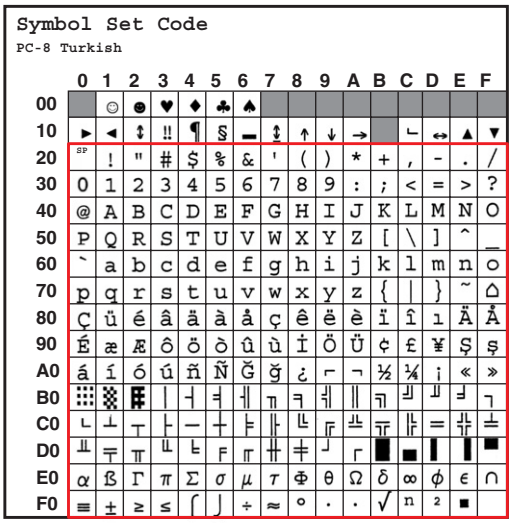
Symbol Set Code
PC-8



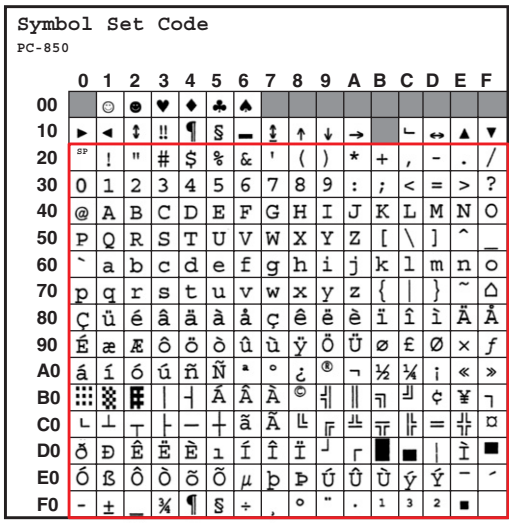
Symbol Set Code
PC-8 D/N (Danish/Norwegian)



Symbol Set Code
PC-8 Turkish



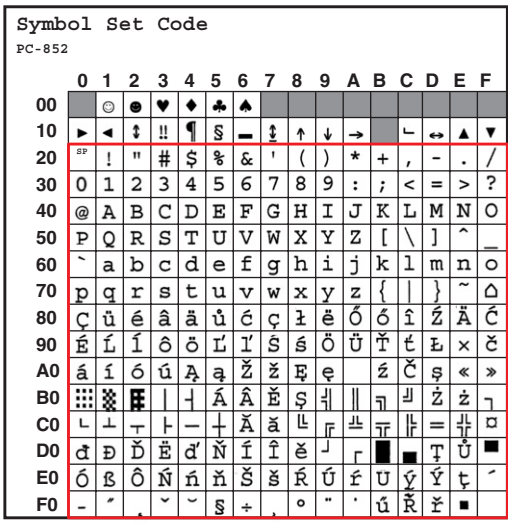
Symbol Set Code
PC-850

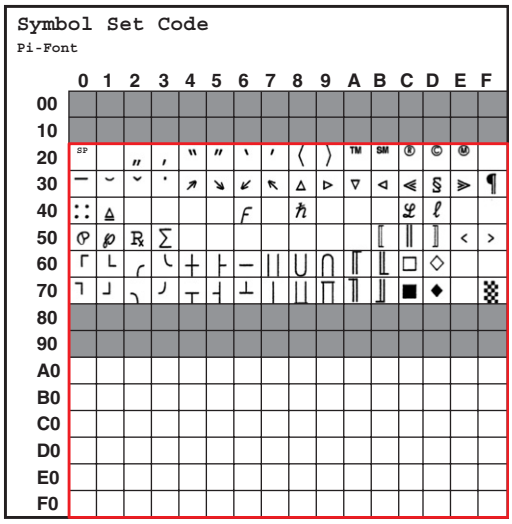


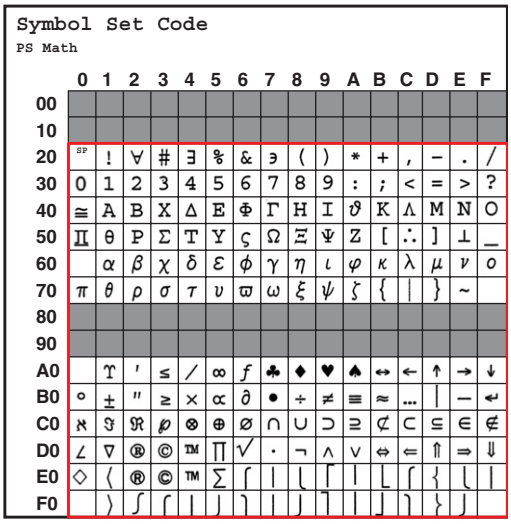
MEMO

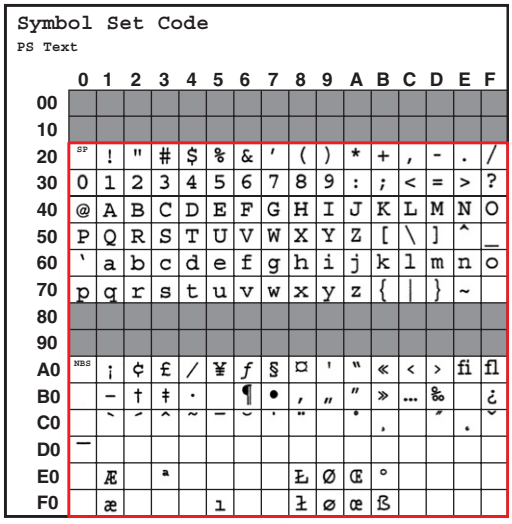
- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)









MEMO

- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)

Symbol Set Code
Roman-8

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0	NBS	À	Â	È	Ê	Ë	Î	Ï	´	`	^	"	~	Ù	Û	£
B0	¯	Ý	ý	°	Ç	ç	Ñ	ñ	¡	¿	¤	£	¥	§	ƒ	¢
C0	â	ê	ô	û	á	é	ó	ú	à	è	ò	ù	ä	ë	ö	ü
D0	Å	î	Ø	Æ	å	í	ø	æ	Ä	ì	Ö	Ü	É	ï	ß	Ô
E0	Á	Ã	ã	Ð	ð	Í	Ì	Ó	Ò	Õ	õ	Š	š	Ú	Ÿ	ÿ
F0	Þ	þ	·	µ	¶	¾	–	¼	½	ª	º	«	■	»	±	

Symbol Set Code
Ventura International

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0	„	À	Â	È	Ê	Ë	Î	Ï	©	®	™	‹	›	Ù	Û	
B0	‰	"	"	°	Ç	ç	Ñ	ñ	¡	¿	¤	£	¥	§	ƒ	¢
C0	â	ê	ô	û	á	é	ó	ú	à	è	ò	ù	ä	ë	ö	ü
D0	Å	î	Ø	Æ	å	í	ø	æ	Ä	ì	Ö	Ü	É	ï	ß	Ô
E0	Á	Ã	ã			Í	Ì	Ó	Ò	Õ	õ	Š	š	Ú	Ÿ	ÿ
F0	Œ	œ	¶	†	‡	–	–			ª	º	«	•	»		…

Symbol Set Code
Ventura Math

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	∀	#	∃	%	&	∋	(	)	*	+	,	−	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	≅	Α	Β	Χ	Δ	Ε	Φ	Γ	Η	Ι	ϑ	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ο
50	Π	Θ	Ρ	Σ	Τ	Υ	ς	Ω	Ξ	Ψ	Ζ	[	∴	]	⊥	_
60	‾	α	β	χ	δ	ε	φ	γ	η	ι	φ	κ	λ	μ	ν	ο
70	π	θ	ρ	σ	τ	υ	ϖ	ω	ξ	ψ	ζ	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0	◇	√	⌊	⌈	|	⌊	⌊	|	⇑	⇒	⇓	⊄	⊂	⌋	|	}
B0	®	⊃	≥	⌈		♣	⊕	⊗	⊆	∪	—	...	|	∧	↵	≈
C0	≤	♦	≥	∂	ℵ	'	ℜ	℘	∞	♠	α	•	/	♥	×	ϒ
D0	↓	←	®	"	ƒ	ℑ	©	±	→	↑	≠	≡	°	↔	⌉	∫
E0	|	·	∠	⌋		〈	⌈	〉		¬	∇	⌈	|	⌉	⌋	÷
F0	∏	™	⇐	⇔	∨	∑	™	|	⌋	⌀	∩	∈	©	∉	⌉	〈

Symbol Set Code
Ventura US

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00																
10																
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90																
A0	″								©	®	™					
B0	‰	"	"	°										§		¢
C0																
D0																
E0																
F0			¶	†	‡	—	–						•			…

MEMO

- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)

Symbol Set Code
Windows 3.0 "Latin 1"

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00		SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK									
10	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EN	SUB		FS	GS	RS	US
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80																
90		‘	’													
A0	NBS	¡	¢	£	¤	¥	|	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬	-	®	¯
B0	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	¸	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
C0	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
D0	Ð	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	Ý	Þ	ß
E0	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
F0	ð	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ý	þ	ÿ

Symbol Set Code
Windows 3.1 Latin 1 "ANSI"

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00		SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK									
10	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EN	SUB		FS	GS	RS	US
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80			,	ƒ	„	…	†	‡	ˆ	‰	Š	‹	Œ		Ž	
90		‘	’	“	”	•	–	—	˜	™	š	›	œ		ž	Ÿ
A0	NBS	¡	¢	£	¤	¥	|	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬	-	®	¯
B0	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	¸	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
C0	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
D0	Ð	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	Ý	Þ	ß
E0	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
F0	ð	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ý	þ	ÿ

Symbol Set Code
Windows 3.1 Latin 2

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00		SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK									
10	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EN	SUB		FS	GS	RS	US
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80			,		„	…	†	‡		‰	Š	‹	Ś	Ť	Ž	Ź
90		‘	’	“	”	•	–	—		™	š	›	ś	ť	ž	ź
A0	NBS	ˇ	˘	Ł	¤	Ą	|	§	¨	©	Ş	«	¬	-	®	Ż
B0	°	±	˛	ł	´	µ	¶	·	¸	ą	ş	»	Ľ	˝	ľ	ż
C0	Ŕ	Á	Â	Ă	Ä	Ĺ	Ć	Ç	Č	É	Ę	Ë	Ě	Í	Î	Ď
D0	Đ	Ń	Ň	Ó	Ô	Ő	Ö	×	Ř	Ů	Ú	Ű	Ü	Ý	Ţ	ß
E0	ŕ	á	â	ă	ä	ĺ	ć	ç	č	é	ę	ë	ě	í	î	ď
F0	đ	ń	ň	ó	ô	ő	ö	÷	ř	ů	ú	ű	ü	ý	ţ	˙

Symbol Set Code
Windows 3.1 Latin 5

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
00		SOH	STX	ETX	EOT	ENQ	ACK	BEL								
10	DLE	DC1	DC2	DC3	DC4	NAK	SYN	ETB	CAN	EN	SUB		FS	GS	RS	US
20	SP	!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
30	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
40	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
50	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
60	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
70	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
80			,	ƒ	„	…	†	‡	ˆ	‰	Š	‹	Œ			
90		‘	’	“	”	•	–	—	˜	™	š	›	œ			Ÿ
A0	NBS	¡	¢	£	¤	¥	|	§	¨	©	ª	«	¬	-	®	¯
B0	°	±	²	³	´	µ	¶	·	¸	¹	º	»	¼	½	¾	¿
C0	À	Á	Â	Ã	Ä	Å	Æ	Ç	È	É	Ê	Ë	Ì	Í	Î	Ï
D0	Ğ	Ñ	Ò	Ó	Ô	Õ	Ö	×	Ø	Ù	Ú	Û	Ü	İ	Ş	ß
E0	à	á	â	ã	ä	å	æ	ç	è	é	ê	ë	ì	í	î	ï
F0	ğ	ñ	ò	ó	ô	õ	ö	÷	ø	ù	ú	û	ü	ı	ş	ÿ

MEMO

- The area enclosed with red lines presents the scope confined by the print controller for confirmation.
- The gray-out area indicates that no characters have been allocated there.

Symbol Set List (Continued)

Characters which can be used only for the specific character set are shown in the following table.

The numerals on the top of the table represent the code values of characters which are replaced in the US ASCII character set. See the US ASCII character set for other characters.

SYMBOL SET	23	24	40	5B	5C	5D	5E	60	7B	7C	7D	7E
ISO4 United Kingdom 1E	£	$	@	[	\	]	^	`	{	|	}	¯
ISO6 ASCII 0U	#	$	@	[	\	]	^	'	{	|	}	~
ISO11 Swedish 0S	#	¤	É	Ä	Ö	Å	Ü	é	ä	ö	å	ü
ISO15 Italian 0I	£	$	§	°	ç	é	^	ù	à	ò	è	ì
ISO17 Spanish 2S	£	$	§	¡	Ñ	¿	^	`	°	ñ	ç	~
ISO21 Germany 1G	#	$	§	Ä	Ö	Ü	^	`	ä	ö	ü	ß
ISO60 Danish 0D	#	$	@	Æ	Ø	Å	^	`	æ	ø	å	¯
ISO69 French 1F	£	$	@	°	ç	§	^	µ	é	ù	è	¨

Index (Object)

C

Cover (Windows)
To set a Back Cover 222
To set a Front Cover 218
To set an Insertion Sheet 226
To set a Thick Cover 229

Cover (Macintosh)
To set a Back Cover 378
To set a Front Cover 376
To set a Thick Cover 380

F

Finish (Windows)
To adjust printing position inside the paper 245
To set Fold, Stitch, Trim (Trimmer Unit) 248
To set punching 241
To set stapling 234
To set the Punch Unit 238

Finish (Macintosh)
To set center binding, folding and cutting (Trimmer Unit) 390
To set punching 387
To set stapling 383
To set the Punch Unit 386

Font (Windows)
To download the font information 311
To print without using printer fonts 304
To replace TrueType with the printer font 306

Font (Macintosh)
To print without using printer fonts 408
To restrict fonts that can be downloaded 409

Index (Object) (Continued)

M

Multiple pages (Windows)

To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big 205
To print a specific page on the front face 212
To print a twofold booklet 209
To print the document of multiple pages on a single page 202
To set to print on both sides 199

Multiple pages (Macintosh)

To print 2 pages on a single paper twice as big 370
To print a twofold booklet 372
To print the document of multiple pages on a single page 368
To set to print on both sides 367

Multiple sets of copies (Windows)

To output offset copies 194
To print by sets 189
To print page by page collectively 191
To set the number of copies to be printed 187

Multiple sets of copies (Macintosh)

To output offset copies 364
To print by sets 362
To print page by page collectively 363
To set the number of copies to be printed 361

P

Paper-related items (Windows)

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio 164
To print in rotation 155
To set the margins 169
To set the orientation 153
To set the printing position of the wide paper 167
To set the size of the output paper 157
To set the type of manual-feed paper 160

Index (Object) (Continued)

Paper-related items (Macintosh)

To enlarge or reduce by a specified ratio 347

To set the margins 349

To set the orientation 341

To set the printing position of the wide paper 348

To set the size of the output paper 342

To set the type of manual-feed paper 344

W

Watermark (Windows)

To change a Watermark 282

To create a new Watermark 273

To print a Watermark 277

Watermark (Macintosh)

To change a Watermark 397

To create a new Watermark 395

To print a Watermark 393

Index (Item)

Numerics

2-in-1 ..... 205, 370
2-in-1 Repeat 205, 370

B

Back Cover 223, 378
Bindery Emulation 569
Booklet 209, 372
Brightness 291
Bypass tray 176

C

Chapter 212
Collate 189
Contrast 291
control pane 474
copies 187, 361
Copy Mode 475
custom size 350

F

Face Up 214
FaceUp 374
Feed Tray 354
Finisher 179, 356
Flip on long edge 199, 367
Flip on short edge 199, 367
Fold & Stitch 249
Fold & Trim 249
Fold only 249, 391
Fold, Stitch 391
Fold, Stitch, Trim 391
Front Cover 219, 376

G

Group 191, 363

H

Halftoning 290

I

Image Shift 245, 389
Image Storage 260
IP Peer-to-Peer 545
IPP 564
IPX Peer-to-Peer 554

J

Job ID 263
Job Offset 194

L

Landscape 153, 341
Large Capacity Tray 173, 353

M

Main Tray 357
Main tray 179, 182
Manual feed 176
margins 169, 349

N

NDS 569
NetWare 568

O

Offset 194, 364
OHP 160, 344
Output Tray 182
Overlay 268, 270

P

Page Setup 333
Pages per sheet 202, 368
Paper handling 202
Password 256
PI Cover Sheet 229
PI Tray 231
Portrait 153, 341
Printer Mode 475
printing position 167, 348
PU-108 ..... 238, 386
Punch 242
PZ-108 ..... 238, 386

S

Scanner/Server Mode 475
scanning features 432
setup 38
Sheet Insertion 227
Smoothing 296, 403
Sort 362
Staple 236
stapling 383
staplings 234
Status Page 524
Sub Tray 357
Sub tray 179, 182

Index (Item) (Continued)

T

Toner Save 401

U

User ID 256

W

Wait 323, 413
Wait with Proof 319, 411
Watermark 273, 277, 393, 395

Z

Z-Fold 249

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.
Headquarters. MARKETING DEPARTMENT
225 Sand Road, P.O. Box40008
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL: (973)808-8444
FAX: (973)882-6000

2002.10